Workshop Manual

Tiguan 2016 ➤
Tiguan RUS 2017 ➤

General body repairs, interior

Edition 03.2017

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Repair Group

00 - Technical data
68 - Interior equipment
69 - Passenger protection
70 - Trim, insulation
72 - Seat frames
74 - Seat - padding, covers

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.
No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.

Copyright © 2017 Volkswagen AG, Wolfsburg

Contents

00 - Technical data 1

1 Safety information 1
1.1 Safety measures when working on vehicles with a start/stop system 2
1.2 Safety measures when working with pyrotechnic components 3
1.3 Storage, transportation and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components) 4
1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbag 5
1.5 Additional safety instructions for curtain airbag 5
1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbags 6
1.7 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system after an accident 6
1.8 Checking airbag securing parts after an accident 8
1.9 Accident without airbag triggering 9
1.10 Checking seat belts 9
1.11 Check belt webbing 9
1.12 Checking inertia reel (locking mechanism) 10
1.13 Visually checking belt buckle 11
1.14 Check operation of belt buckle 11
1.15 Checking belt relays, and buckle tongues 11
1.16 Checking securing parts and anchorage points after an accident 12
1.17 Checking seat belt restraint function for holding additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt) - country-specific 12
1.18 Checking child seat anchors after an accident 12
1.19 Safety instructions for automatically dimmable interior mirror 13

2 Repair notes 14
2.1 Contact corrosion 14
2.2 Routing and attachment of lines 14

68 - Interior equipment 15

1 Compartments/covers 15
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers 15
1.2 Assembly overview - centre storage compartment 17
1.3 Assembly overview - driver side footwell cover 18
1.4 Assembly overview - driver side dash panel cover 19
1.5 Assembly overview - steering column trim 20
1.6 Assembly overview - storage compartment on driver side 21
1.7 Assembly overview - glove compartment 22
1.8 Assembly overview - storage compartment in roof headliner 23
1.9 Removing and installing centre storage compartment 23
1.10 Removing and installing driver side footwell cover 24
1.11 Removing and installing driver side storage compartment 26
1.12 Removing and installing dash panel cover on driver side 27
1.13 Removing and installing upper steering column trim 28
1.14 Removing and installing lower steering column trim 29
1.15 Removing and installing front passenger side footwell cover 30
1.16 Removing and installing glove compartment 30
1.17 Removing and installing glove compartment cover 32
1.18 Removing and installing damper element for glove compartment lid 33
1.19 Service position for glove compartment lid 34
1.20 Removing and installing headliner storage compartment 34

2 Equipment 36
2.1 Assembly overview- net partition 36
2.2 Assembly overview - sun visors 37

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.3 Removing and installing sun visor . . . 37
2.4 Removing and installing sun visor centre mount . . . 39
2.5 Removing and installing roof grab handle . . . 40
2.6 Removing and installing bracket for net partition . . . 42
3 Centre console . . . 45
3.1 Assembly overview - centre console . . . 45
3.2 Removing and installing rear centre console trim . . . 46
3.3 Removing and installing front ashtray . . . 47
3.4 Removing and installing centre console insert . . . 47
3.5 Removing and installing centre console front storage compartment . . . 49
3.6 Removing and installing centre console trim in front footwell . . . 50
3.7 Removing and installing centre console . . . 50
3.8 Removing and installing centre console bracket . . . 55
3.9 Removing and installing trim for operating and display unit . . . 57
4 Front centre armrest . . . 58
4.1 Assembly overview - front centre armrest . . . 58
4.2 Removing and installing front centre armrest . . . 58
5 On inside . . . 61
5.1 Assembly overview - interior mirror . . . 61
5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror . . . 64

69 - Passenger protection . . . 75
1 Seat belts . . . 75
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points . . . 75
1.2 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt . . . 78
1.3 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt . . . 79
1.4 Assembly overview - rear centre three-point seat belt . . . 81
1.5 Assembly overview - front belt buckle . . . 82
1.6 Assembly overview - rear belt buckle . . . 83
1.7 Removing and installing front three-point seat belt . . . 83
1.8 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt . . . 86
1.9 Removing and installing front belt guide . . . 88
1.10 Removing and installing front belt end fitting . . . 89
1.11 Removing and installing rear outer belt end fitting . . . 89
1.12 Removing and installing rear centre belt end anchor . . . 90
1.13 Removing and installing belt height adjuster . . . 90
1.14 Removing and installing front belt buckle . . . 92
1.15 Removing and installing rear belt buckle . . . 93
2 Child seat anchors . . . 95
2.1 Assembly overview - rear child seat anchors . . . 95
2.2 Removing and installing guide for ISOFIX child seat anchor . . . 96
2.3 Removing and installing cover for Top Tether child seat anchor . . . 96
3 Airbag system . . . 97
3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system . . . 97
4 Airbag control unit . . . 99
4.1 Assembly overview - airbag control unit . . . 99
4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 . . . 99
5 Driver's airbag . . . 103
5.1 Assembly overview - driver side airbag . . . 103
5.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniter . . . 104
5.3 Renewing connector on airbag . . . 109
6 Front passenger side airbag . . . 111
6.1 Assembly overview - front passenger side airbag . . . 111
6.2 Removing and installing front passenger side airbag unit with igniter . . . 111

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

6.3 Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag .. 114
6.4 Removing and installing front passenger side airbag deactivated warning lamp K145 .. 115
7 Side airbags ... 116
7.1 Assembly overview - front side airbag ... 116
7.2 Assembly overview - rear side airbag ... 117
7.3 Removing and installing front side airbag with igniter ... 117
7.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag with igniter ... 119
8 Curtain airbags ... 122
8.1 Assembly overview - curtain airbag ... 122
8.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with igniter ... 122
9 Knee airbags ... 128
9.1 Assembly overview - knee airbag ... 128
9.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with igniter ... 129
10 Airbag crash sensors ... 132
10.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag crash sensors ... 132
10.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor, driver side G190 ... 133
10.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180 ... 135
10.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor G256 / G257 ... 138
11 Seat belt verification ... 141
11.1 Removing and installing Seat occupied sensor, front passenger side G128 ... 141
12 Pedestrian protection ... 142
12.1 Assembly overview - pedestrian protection ... 142
12.2 Removing and installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection G693 ... 143
12.3 Removing and installing crash sensor for pedestrian protection ... 145
12.4 Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection G598 / G599 ... 146
12.5 Remove and installing front pressure hose sensor for pedestrian protection G579 ... 150

70 - Trim, insulation ... 152
1 Front door trims ... 152
1.1 Assembly overview - front door trim ... 152
1.2 Removing and installing front door trim ... 153
1.3 Removing and installing interior door handle ... 158
1.4 Removing and installing trim ... 159
2 Rear door trims ... 162
2.1 Assembly overview - rear door trim ... 162
2.2 Removing and installing interior door handle ... 162
2.3 Removing and installing rear door trim ... 164
2.4 Removing and installing trim ... 168
3 Dash panel ... 170
3.1 Assembly overview - dash panel ... 170
3.2 Assembly overview - cover and trim for Head-up Display ... 172
3.3 Removing and installing dash panel end cover ... 172
3.4 Removing and installing dash panel trim ... 173
3.5 Removing and installing light switch trim ... 174
3.6 Removing and installing radio/navigation system blanking plate ... 175
3.7 Removing and installing dash panel ... 175
3.8 Removing and installing trim for Head-up Display ... 185
3.9 Removing and installing cover for Head-up Display ... 186
3.10 Removing and installing dash panel vents ... 188
3.11 Removing and installing side defroster vent ... 188
3.12 Removing and installing dash panel insert trim ... 189
4 Central tube for dash panel ... 192
4.1 Assembly overview - central tube for dash panel ... 192
4.2 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel ... 193

This electronic repair manual was created by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Reproduction, duplication or publication in any form or medium requires the prior written permission of Volkswagen AG.

4.3 Removing and installing crash bar . . . 198
5 Interior trims . . . 200
5.1 Overview of fitting locations - interior trims . . . 200
5.2 Assembly overview - sill panel moulding . . . 202
5.3 Assembly overview - A-pillar trim . . . 203
5.4 Assembly overview - B-pillar trim . . . 205
5.5 Assembly overview - C-pillar trim . . . 207
5.6 Assembly overview - wheel housing trim . . . 208
5.7 Assembly overview - foot rest and floor covering . . . 209
5.8 Removing and installing sill panel moulding . . . 210
5.9 Removing and installing A-pillar trim . . . 212
5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar gap cover . . . 220
5.11 Removing and installing B-pillar trim . . . 220
5.12 Removing and installing C-pillar trim . . . 224
5.13 Removing and installing wheel housing trims . . . 226
5.14 Removing and installing foot rest . . . 228
5.15 Removing and installing floor covering . . . 230
6 Luggage compartment trims . . . 232
6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trims . . . 232
6.2 Assembly overview - luggage compartment side trim . . . 234
6.3 Assembly overview - luggage compartment floor . . . 235
6.4 Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim . . . 236
6.5 Assembly overview - upper rear lid trim . . . 237
6.6 Removing and installing lower rear lid trim . . . 237
6.7 Removing and installing upper rear lid trim . . . 239
6.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim . . . 241
6.9 Removing and installing lock carrier trim . . . 244
6.10 Removing and installing fastening rings . . . 245
6.11 Removing and installing support for luggage compartment floor . . . 246
6.12 Removing and installing bag hooks . . . 247
7 Roof trims . . . 248
7.1 Assembly overview - moulded headliner . . . 248
7.2 Removing and installing moulded headlining . . . 248
7.3 Installing roof reinforcement to body . . . 251
72 - Seat frames . . . 254
1 Overview of seat variants . . . 254
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat variants . . . 254
1.2 Mounting front seat on seat repair stand . . . 254
2 Front seats . . . 257
2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components . . . 258
2.2 Assembly overview - front seat . . . 261
2.3 Assembly overview - front backrest . . . 265
2.4 Assembly overview - seat pan . . . 267
2.5 Assembly overview - seat height adjustment . . . 271
2.6 Assembly overview - seat depth adjustment . . . 273
2.7 Assembly overview - folding tray table . . . 274
2.8 Assembly overview - fire extinguisher . . . 275
2.9 Removing and installing front seat . . . 275
2.10 Removing front seat if seat longitudinal adjustment motor V28 / V31 is defective . . . 279
2.11 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter . . . 283
2.12 Removing and installing handle for seat height adjustment . . . 284
2.13 Removing and installing seat trim on tunnel side . . . 285
2.14 Removing and installing seat trim on sill side . . . 286
2.15 Removing and installing bracket for seat trim . . . 291

Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.16 Removing and installing lumbar support . . . 293
2.17 Removing and installing seat depth adjustment unit . . . 295
2.18 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit . . . 298
2.19 Removing and installing lower seat pan frame with seat longitudinal adjustment motor V28 / V31 . . . 300
2.20 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit . . . 302
2.21 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment unit . . . 303
2.22 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit . . . 305
2.23 Removing and installing front backrest . . . 306
2.24 Removing and installing head restraint . . . 308
2.25 Removing and installing head restraint guide . . . 310
2.26 Removing and installing storage compartment . . . 310
2.27 Removing and installing fire extinguisher holder on seat frame . . . 311
2.28 Removing and installing fire extinguisher holder . . . 312
2.29 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177 . . . 313
2.30 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 . . . 313
2.31 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit E470 / E471 . . . 314
2.32 Removing and installing massage control unit J740 . . . 315
2.33 Removing and installing seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory J136 . . . 316

3 Rear seats . . . 317
3.1 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats . . . 317
3.2 Assembly overview - locking mechanism . . . 319
3.3 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats . . . 320
3.4 Assembly overview - load-through hatch and centre armrest . . . 323
3.5 Removing and installing head restraint . . . 324
3.6 Removing and installing bench seat / individual seats . . . 325
3.7 Removing and installing rear seat backrest . . . 327
3.8 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism . . . 329
3.9 Removing and installing locking mechanism for load-through hatch . . . 330
3.10 Removing and installing through-loading aperture . . . 331
3.11 Removing and installing centre armrest . . . 332
3.12 Removing and installing seat trim on sill side . . . 333
3.13 Removing and installing seat trim on tunnel side . . . 334
3.14 Removing and installing head restraint guide . . . 334
3.15 Disconnecting and connecting Bowden cable for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest . . . 335
3.16 Removing and installing operating handle for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest . . . 336
3.17 Removing and installing Bowden cable for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest . . . 337

74 - Seat - padding, covers . . . 340
1 Front seat covers and padding . . . 340
1.1 Assembly overview - cover and padding for seat pan . . . 340
1.2 Assembly overview - cover and padding for backrest . . . 343
1.3 Assembly overview - seat heating element . . . 344
1.4 Assembly overview - backrest heater element . . . 345
1.5 Removing and installing cover and padding for seat pan . . . 345
1.6 Removing and installing backrest cover and backrest padding . . . 348
1.7 Separating cover and padding on seat pan . . . 352
1.8 Separating cover and padding on backrest . . . 355
1.9 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 . . . 359
1.10 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 . . . 360
2 Rear seat covers and padding . . . 361
2.1 Assembly overview - cover and padding for bench seat . . . 361
2.2 Assembly overview - rear seat backrest cover and padding . . . 363

2.3 Assembly overview - seat heating element 364
2.4 Removing and installing cover and padding for bench seat/individual seats 364
2.5 Removing and installing rear seat backrest cover and padding 366
2.6 Removing and installing cover and padding of load-through hatch 368
2.7 Removing and installing intermediate padding 369
2.8 Separating cover and padding for rear bench seat 370
2.9 Separating cover and padding for rear seat backrest 371
2.10 Removing and installing seat heating element 372
2.11 Removing and installing backrest heating element 373

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

00 – Technical data

1 Safety information

(VRL010184; Edition 03.2017)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

⇒ “1.1 Safety measures when working on vehicles with a start/stop system”, page 2

⇒ “1.2 Safety measures when working with pyrotechnic components”, page 3

⇒ “1.3 Storage, transportation and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components)”, page 4

⇒ “1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbag”, page 5

⇒ “1.5 Additional safety instructions for curtain airbag”, page 5

⇒ “1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbags”, page 6

⇒ “1.7 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system after an accident”, page 6

⇒ “1.8 Checking airbag securing parts after an accident”, page 8

⇒ “1.9 Accident without airbag triggering”, page 9

⇒ “1.10 Checking seat belts”, page 9

⇒ “1.11 Check belt webbing”, page 9

⇒ “1.12 Checking inertia reel (locking mechanism)”, page 10

⇒ “1.13 Visually checking belt buckle”, page 11

⇒ “1.14 Check operation of belt buckle”, page 11

⇒ “1.15 Checking belt relays, and buckle tongues”, page 11

⇒ “1.16 Checking securing parts and anchorage points after an accident”, page 12

⇒ “1.17 Checking seat belt restraint function for holding additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt) - country-specific”, page 12

⇒ “1.18 Checking child seat anchors after an accident”, page 12

⇒ “1.19 Safety instructions for automatically dimmable interior mirror”, page 13

1.1 Safety measures when working on vehicles with a start/stop system

Observe the following when working on a vehicle with a start/stop system:

WARNING

Risk of injury from automatic start of engine on vehicles with start/stop system.

- ***In vehicles with an activated start/stop system (indicated by a message in the dash panel insert), the engine may start automatically.***
- ***When working on the vehicle, make sure that the start/stop system is deactivated (switch off the ignition; switch the ignition on again if necessary).***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1.2 Safety measures when working with pyrotechnic components

Note

The following are pyrotechnic components:

- Airbag units
- Belt tensioner
- Belt force limiters (depending on vehicle equipment level)
- Battery isolation elements (depending on vehicle equipment level)
- Triggering mechanisms for pedestrian protection system

General notes

- Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.
- There are no replacement intervals for airbag units.
- Under no circumstances should checks be carried out with a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter.
- Pyrotechnic components may only be checked in installed state and with vehicle diagnosis, testing and information systems approved by the manufacturer.
- When working on pyrotechnic components and airbag control unit - J234- , battery earth strap must be disconnected with ignition switched ON. Then cover negative terminal.
- A waiting time of 10 seconds is necessary after disconnecting the battery.
- Battery must be connected with ignition SWITCHED ON. When doing this, there should be no-one inside the vehicle.
- If the ignition has not yet been switched on after the battery has been reconnected “warning lamps in dash panel insert are off”, the ignition (key or button) must only be switched on while sitting on the driver seat and with the seat set to rearmost position.
- Observe required procedures after connecting battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Before handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system, for example before separating an electrical connection, the mechanic must electrostatically discharge himself/herself. Electrostatic discharge is achieved by touching earthed metallic parts, such as the door striker plate.
- Wash hands after coming into contact with triggered pyrotechnic components of restraint system.
- Pyrotechnic components must not be opened or repaired; always use new parts (risk of injury).
- Pyrotechnic components that have been dropped onto a hard surface or show signs of damage must not be installed in a vehicle.
- Pyrotechnic components must be installed immediately after they have been removed from their packaging.
- If work is interrupted, the pyrotechnic component must be stored back in its packaging.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Leaving the pyrotechnic component unattended is prohibited.
- When connecting pyrotechnic components of the restraint system, only the person carrying out the work may be inside the vehicle.
- Pyrotechnic components must not come into contact with grease, cleaning solution or similar.
- The airbag unit must be renewed if any contamination such as oil, grease, paint or solvent penetrates the fabric.
- Pyrotechnic components must not be subjected to temperatures above 100°C, even for short periods.

Special instructions for driver and front passenger airbags

- Removed driver and front passenger airbag units must be stored with padded side upwards.

It is essential to carry out work in the following sequence when renewing airbag units:

1 - Remove old airbag unit and place to one side with padded side upwards.

2 - Remove new airbag unit from transport packaging and place to one side with padded side upwards.

3 - Immediately place old airbag unit in transport packaging.

4 - Install new airbag unit in vehicle.

Special instructions for belt tensioners

- Belt tensioner units must be handled with extreme caution during removal and installation. If handled incorrectly, there is a high risk of injury and damage in relation to the belt tensioner units.
- Belt tensioner units which are mechanically damaged (dents, fractures) always must be renewed.
- Never point open end of belt tensioner at another person.
- When connecting the belt tensioner unit, all mechanical parts (including those of the 3-point seat belt) must be properly attached. If connection of the belt tensioner unit is hindered due to tight conditions, the belt strap must be rolled up completely before connecting. In this case there is no heightened risk of safety as long as the additional safety instructions are heeded. Essentially this is aimed at battery disconnection and electrostatic discharge of the fitter prior to connection of the belt tensioner unit.
- Depending on the crash intensity, it is possible that the belt tensioner was triggered but the belt force limiter did NOT ignite. These parts are to be treated as unignited components!

1.3 Storage, transportation and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components)

- Storage must comply with the relevant national legislation.
- Transportation is subject to national and international regulations that govern packaging, marking, labelling and freight documentation in detail.
- Untriggered pyrotechnic components must be disposed of correctly in the original packaging in accordance with national legislation. Contact your importer if in any doubt.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Only completely ignited pyrotechnic components may be disposed of through the commercial waste system.

WARNING

- *This does not apply to belt tensioners which are operated by a Wankel type pump. Those must be disposed of like pyrotechnic components which were not triggered (e.g. airbags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery isolators).*
- *Reason: On belt tensioners which are operated by a Wankel type pump it is not possible to verify, using workshop means, if all igniters have been triggered.*

1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbag

- Under no circumstances may seat covers be fitted which have not been specifically approved for use on Volkswagen seats with side airbags.
- The backrest padding must not be cut out in the area of the side airbag.
- When installing, make sure the seam for the side airbag is straight.
- All padding clips (metal and plastic clips) must be renewed.
- When installing, all padding clips must be fitted in the same positions as the original ones.
- If the seat cover fabric is damaged (tears, burn marks, etc.) in the vicinity of the side airbag, the cover must always be replaced for safety reasons, as otherwise the side airbag will not inflate properly.
- Repairs may not be carried out on the backrest cover in the area of the side airbag (because of the special thread and precisely defined seam).
- Always renew the backrest padding after the side airbags have been triggered.
- All damaged components must be renewed after an accident. The original airbag unit can still be used if no signs of damage are found.
- If side airbag units are renewed, the sticker for the airbag number must be removed from the new side airbag unit and stuck over the old sticker on the seat pan.
- Never poke upholstery needles or any other sharp objects through the seat cover fabric in the vicinity of the airbag, seat occupied sensor, front passenger side - G128- and the seat occupied sensor mat.

1.5 Additional safety instructions for curtain airbag

- Inspect trims for damage prior to installing them.
- Always renew damaged pillar trims; never repair.
- Ensure proper seating of trims when installing them.
- When performing repair work behind the curtain airbag, always remove the entire module.
- To prevent any potential damage during removal and installation, curtain airbags must be handled with extreme caution.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Place removed curtain airbag modules in packaging or on a clean, flat surface on a cover.
- After body repairs in vicinity of curtain airbag, check body for weld spray droplets, deformations and areas of chafing (compare with opposite side if necessary).
- Until the gas generator is screwed in place, you must always hold it firmly by hand when handling (transportation, removal and installation etc.).
- Never twist, kink, throw, shake, pull, hang, squeeze, press, pinch or clamp any curtain airbag modules.
- Folding is acceptable as long as no damage is caused (in particular to the protective sleeve).

1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbags

The side airbag crash sensors respond to changes in pressure and must therefore be treated with particular caution. Observe the following:

- The correct installation position is vitally important: install only in the specified location in the door.
- Protect the crash sensor against mechanical shocks and impacts: any crash sensors which have been dropped must no longer be used. Remove the crash sensor when carrying out bodywork on the door.
- The crash sensor is matched to the volume of air inside the door: deformation of the door, resulting in a reduction in the air space in the door, impairs the function of the crash sensor.
- Avoid any major soiling of the crash sensor: do not use compressed air in the vicinity of the crash sensor. Protect the crash sensor against swarf from filing or drilling (example, during retrofitting of door speakers). Do not use cavity sealants or spray oil in the vicinity of the crash sensor.
- Protect against heat/cold: avoid heat effects, for example during spray painting or other body shop operations. The crash sensors must not be exposed to temperatures below -40°C (for example in aircraft holds without air conditioning).
- The crash sensor must be protected against humidity during storage and installation.

For the crash sensor to function properly, it is vital to ensure that the door forms an effective seal after being fitted. Observe the following:

- All components (e.g. cover, speakers, door trim) must be correctly fitted.
- The door trim retaining clips seal the system. If necessary, renew retaining clips.

1.7 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system after an accident

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic tester

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. All rights reserved. Transmission or reproduction of this document or parts thereof to third parties, processing or use of its contents and communication of its contents without Volkswagen AG's express written authorization are prohibited. Offenders will be held liable for payment of damages.

Note

- *The airbag control unit can be used with airbag generation 8.* »not 8.R« for up to 2 side and/or belt tensioner triggering actions.*
- *The airbag control unit can be used for up to 2 deployments of side airbag/driver airbag/front passenger airbag and/or belt tensioner with the airbag generation 9.*, 10.* and 8.R.*
- *After the third deployment, the error message "Control unit faulty" is displayed.*

The airbag control unit must be renewed:

- In the event of a driver/front passenger airbag deployment "however, not applicable for airbag generation 9.*, 10.* and 8.R" ⇒ page 7
- After 3 deployments of the side airbag/driver airbag/front passenger airbag and/or belt tensioner
- In the event of damage to the housing
- In the event of deformation to the tunnel within a 200 mm radius of the control unit

Always renew the following:

- All triggered airbag units.
- Battery isolation igniter - N253-

Additionally, in the event of the front passenger airbag being triggered:

- Dash panel
- Supports of front passenger airbag unit which have been bent out of shape (must not be bent back into shape)
- All sensors for front airbag at front end
- Remaining sensors for lateral acceleration in event of deformation of attachment points in vicinity of sensors

Additionally, in the event of the driver airbag being triggered:

- Return spring with slip ring
- All sensors for front airbag at front end
- Remaining sensors for lateral acceleration in event of deformation of attachment points in vicinity of sensors

Additionally, in the event of the side airbag being triggered:

- Pressure sensors on the triggered side
- Lateral acceleration sensors on the side affected
- Seat cover
- Padding
- In case of foldable backrest: side padding (if fitted)
- Remaining sensors for lateral acceleration in event of deformation of attachment points in vicinity of sensors

Additionally:

- All belt inertia reels with triggered belt tensioners
- All belt inertia reels with triggered belt tensioners

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- ♦ Belt buckles for all belt inertia reels with triggered belt tensioners and seat belt engaged
- ♦ Belt height adjuster (mechanical and electrical) for all belt inertia reels with triggered belt tensioners and seat belt engaged

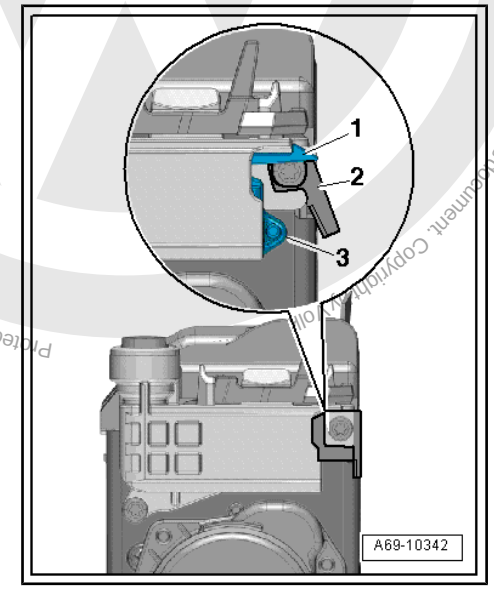
– If you suspect that belt tensioners or belt force limiters have been triggered, connect a vehicle diagnostic tester .

– Under “15 - Airbag” in »Guided Fault Finding« check whether there is a crash entry logged for the airbag control unit.

– At the same time check whether the “Resistance too high” fault is also logged for belt tensioners and/or belt force limiters. Triggered belt tensioners and/or belt force limiters have to meet both conditions. “Prerequisite: The airbag control unit has not yet been renewed”.

Note

- ♦ *The “Resistance too high” fault can also be logged in the event of a cable break. Under normal circumstances, no crash entry is then logged.*
- ♦ *Depending on the crash intensity, it is possible that the belt tensioner was triggered but »NOT« the belt force limiter. Observe notes on disposal of pyrotechnic components* *⇒ page 4* .
- ♦ *In addition, note the section: Checking seat belts* *⇒ page 9* .
- ♦ *Deployed belt force limiters can be identified by the following features:*
- ♦ *The pin -1- and lug -3- have popped out of the belt force limiter housing on the belt inertia reel.*
- ♦ *The strap -2- is no longer vertical but is pointing diagonally outwards.*



– If parts of the belt system are removed because of an accident, the belt system bolts must be renewed.

– In addition, the following must also be replaced if necessary (visual check): all damaged components.

– After renewing the airbag units or the control unit, affix stickers (only tear-off strips) to the registration card and return the registration card to the responsible Sales Centre or to the Importer for registration.

1.8 Checking airbag securing parts after an accident

All damaged securing parts must always be renewed. It is not permissible to bend the components back into shape or »make them fit«

The following components must be checked after the relevant airbag has been triggered.

In the event of the front passenger airbag being triggered:

- ♦ Central tube for dash panel; it must be possible to install the supports for the front passenger airbag and front passenger airbag unit tension-free. Otherwise the central tube must also be renewed.
- ♦ Check the glove compartment for damage. Renew it if damaged.

In the event of the driver airbag being triggered:

- Steering wheel: remove the steering wheel and place on a flat surface together with the steering collar. The full face of the steering collar must be in contact with the flat surface. Otherwise the steering wheel must be renewed.
- Check steering wheel for smoke residues. If any smoke residues are found, the steering wheel must be renewed.

1.9 Accident without airbag triggering

- If airbag warning lamp -K75- does not indicate a fault, there is no requirement to renew pyrotechnic components. The seat belts should be checked separately.

1.10 Checking seat belts

WARNING

The seat belt system must be inspected systematically after every accident! If damage is determined at any of the points to be checked, customer must be informed regarding necessity of changing belts.

Points to check

- Check belt webbing ⇒ page 9 .
- Check inertia reel (locking mechanism) ⇒ page 10 .
- Visually check belt buckle ⇒ page 11 .
- Check operation of belt buckle ⇒ page 11 .
- Check belt guide fittings and latch plates ⇒ page 11 .
- Check securing parts and anchorage points ⇒ page 12 .
- Checking seat belt restraint function for holding additional child seats (not for driver seat belt) - country-specific ⇒ page 12 .

Caution

If the customer refuses to have a damaged seat belt renewed, an appropriate comment should be made in the service notes.

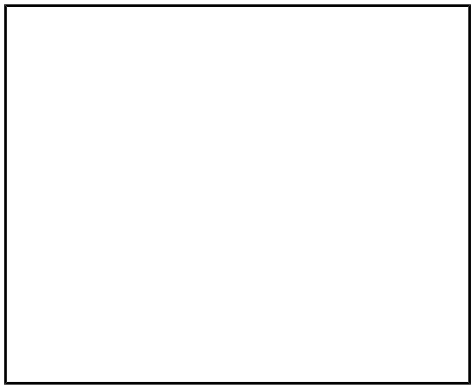
1.11 Check belt webbing

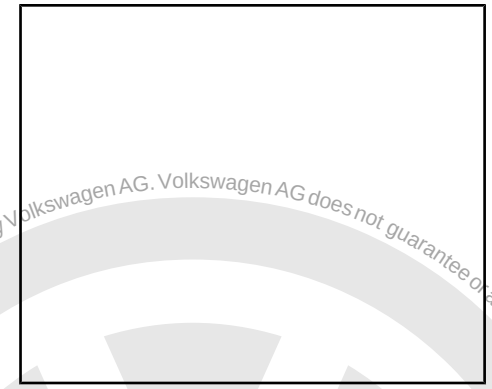
Sequence of operations

– Pull belt completely out of inertia reel or lap belt adjustment plate.

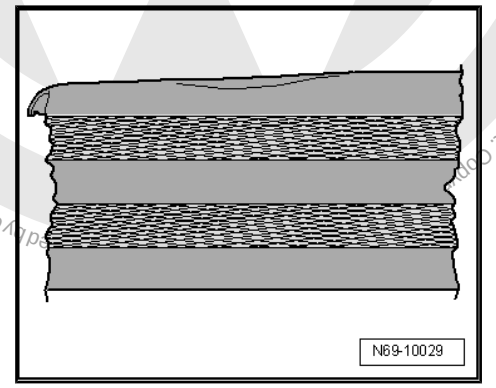
– Check belt webbing for soiling, and if necessary wash with a mild soapy solution ⇒ Owner's Manual .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.









- If either of the types of damage illustrated below (1 and 2) are determined on accident vehicle, renew seat belt complete with belt buckle.
- If damage as illustrated under points 1, 2, 3 and/or 4 is determined on a vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, it is sufficient to renew damaged belt only.
- 1 - Belt webbing cut, torn or chafed.
- 2 - Torn webbing loops on belt edge.
- 3 - Burns caused by cigarettes or similar.
- 4 - One edge of belt deformed or wavy.

1.12 Checking inertia reel (locking mechanism)

The inertia reel has 2 locking functions.

♦ The first locking function is triggered by the belt being jerked out of the reel (belt extension acceleration).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Test 1

– Pull belt out of inertia reel with firm jerk.

• Will not lock - renew seat belt complete with buckle.

• If difficulties are experienced when belt is extended or retracted, first check whether position of inertia reel has been altered.

• The second locking function is triggered by a change in vehicle speed (vehicle-dependent locking function).

Test 2

WARNING

For safety reasons, the road test should be carried out on a traffic-free stretch to ensure that other road users are not endangered.

– Put on seat belt.

– Accelerate vehicle to 20 km/h and then carry out emergency braking with foot brake.

• If seat belt is not locked by locking mechanism during braking procedure, renew seat belt complete with buckle.

1.13 Visually checking belt buckle

– Inspect belt buckle for cracks and chips.

• If damage is determined, renew seat belt complete with belt buckle.

1.14 Check operation of belt buckle

Checking belt buckle

– Push buckle tongue into belt buckle until it engages audibly. Check whether locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling firmly on belt webbing.

• If buckle tongue fails even once to engage properly in belt buckle during at least 5 tests, renew seat belt complete with belt buckle.

Checking release mechanism

– Release seat belt by pressing button on belt buckle with finger pressure. When belt is slack, latch plate must spring out of belt buckle on its own.

• Carry out test at least 5 times. If buckle tongue fails even once to spring out of buckle, renew seat belt complete with belt buckle.

WARNING

Under no circumstances whatsoever may lubricant be used to eliminate noise or stiffness in belt buckle buttons.

1.15 Checking belt relays, and buckle tongues

Plastic-coated fittings show fine, parallel scoring after stress on belt system (when belt was fastened during accident). (On the

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any transmission or reproduction of this document or part thereof to third parties requires the prior written permission of Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

other hand, wear caused by frequent belt use can be recognized by smooth wear, free of lines.)

– Inspect for deformation, fracturing and cracks in plastic.

• If scoring and/or damage is determined, renew seat belt complete with belt latch.

1.16 Checking securing parts and anchorage points after an accident

♦ Latch plate deformed (stretched)

♦ Height adjustment does not function.

♦ Anchorage points (seat, pillars, underbody) distorted or thread damaged

• If damage is determined on these parts, renew seat belt complete with belt buckle.

• If parts of the belt system are removed because of an accident, the belt system securing bolts must be renewed.

• Renew anchorage points.

Note

In the case of damage resulting not from an accident but, for example, from wear, only the part which is actually damaged need be renewed.

1.17 Checking seat belt restraint function for holding additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt) - country-specific

For the functional check, all seat belt components including the side trim must be installed.

Activating the restraint function

♦ Pull out seat belt webbing completely to stop.

Correct function

♦ The belt must retract with an audible noise.

♦ If the belt retraction is stopped, it should not be possible to pull the belt out again until the function is deactivated.

Deactivating

♦ Allow the belt to retract as far as the last 100 mm (approx.).

♦ The restraint function must switch off at the latest when 100 mm of the seat belt webbing are still pulled out. The belt then works normally again.

If the seat belt restraint function for holding additional child seats does not work properly, the seat belt must be renewed.

1.18 Checking child seat anchors after an accident

Points to check

♦ Child seat anchors must be checked for damage and deformation after an accident.

♦ Child seat anchors welded to the body or the seats/backrests or bolted in place may not be repaired or straightened.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Child seat anchors bolted to the body or the seats/backrests must be renewed in the event of damage or deformation.
- Child seat anchor securing bolts must be renewed if the bracket is damaged.

1.19 Safety instructions for automatically dimmable interior mirror

WARNING

- *The mirror glass is made of several layers and contains an electrolyte to achieve the dimming functionality. Beware of liquid electrolyte which runs out of a broken mirror glass.*
- *The liquid electrolyte can irritate skin, eyes and respiratory organs.*
- *If liquid electrolyte got into your eyes or onto the skin, wash it immediately with plenty of water. If the irritation continues, seek advice from a doctor immediately.*

Caution

If liquid electrolyte which ran out of a broken mirror glass comes in contact with plastic surfaces, the surfaces will be damaged. Wipe off spilled electrolyte immediately using clear water and a sponge.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any use of this document or parts of it outside the private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

2 Repair notes

⇒ “2.1 Contact corrosion”, page 14

⇒ “2.2 Routing and attachment of lines”, page 14

2.1 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fastening elements (screws, bolts, nuts, washers) are used.

For this reason, only connecting elements with a special surface coating have been fitted.

In addition, rubber, plastic and adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

In case of doubt about the reusability of parts renew them ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Observe the following:

- It is recommended to use genuine parts which are tested and compatible with aluminium.
- The use of VW parts is recommended.
- Damage resulting from contact corrosion is not covered by the warranty.

2.2 Routing and attachment of lines

If hydraulic, pneumatic or electrical lines are disconnected or removed and installed, make corresponding drawings or photos. This guarantees installation in the original position.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

68 – Interior equipment

1 Compartments/covers

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers”, page 15

⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - centre storage compartment”, page 17

⇒ “1.3 Assembly overview - driver side footwell cover”, page 18

⇒ “1.4 Assembly overview - driver side dash panel cover”, page 19

⇒ “1.5 Assembly overview - steering column trim”, page 20

⇒ “1.6 Assembly overview - storage compartment on driver side”, page 21

⇒ “1.7 Assembly overview - glove compartment”, page 22

⇒ “1.8 Assembly overview - storage compartment in roof headliner”, page 23

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing centre storage compartment”, page 23

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing driver side footwell cover”, page 24

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing driver side storage compartment”, page 26

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing dash panel cover on driver side”, page 27

⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing upper steering column trim”, page 28

⇒ “1.14 Removing and installing lower steering column trim”, page 29

⇒ “1.15 Removing and installing front passenger side footwell cover”, page 30

⇒ “1.16 Removing and installing glove compartment”, page 30

⇒ “1.17 Removing and installing glove compartment cover”, page 32

⇒ “1.18 Removing and installing damper element for glove compartment lid”, page 33

⇒ “1.19 Service position for glove compartment lid”, page 34

⇒ “1.20 Removing and installing headliner storage compartment”, page 34

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1 - Dash panel

- ❑ Assembly overview
  ⇒ page 170

2 - Centre storage compartment

- ❑ Assembly overview
  ⇒ page 17

3 - Glove compartment

- ❑ Assembly overview
  ⇒ page 22

4 - Centre console

- ❑ Assembly overview
  ⇒ page 45

5 - Steering column trim

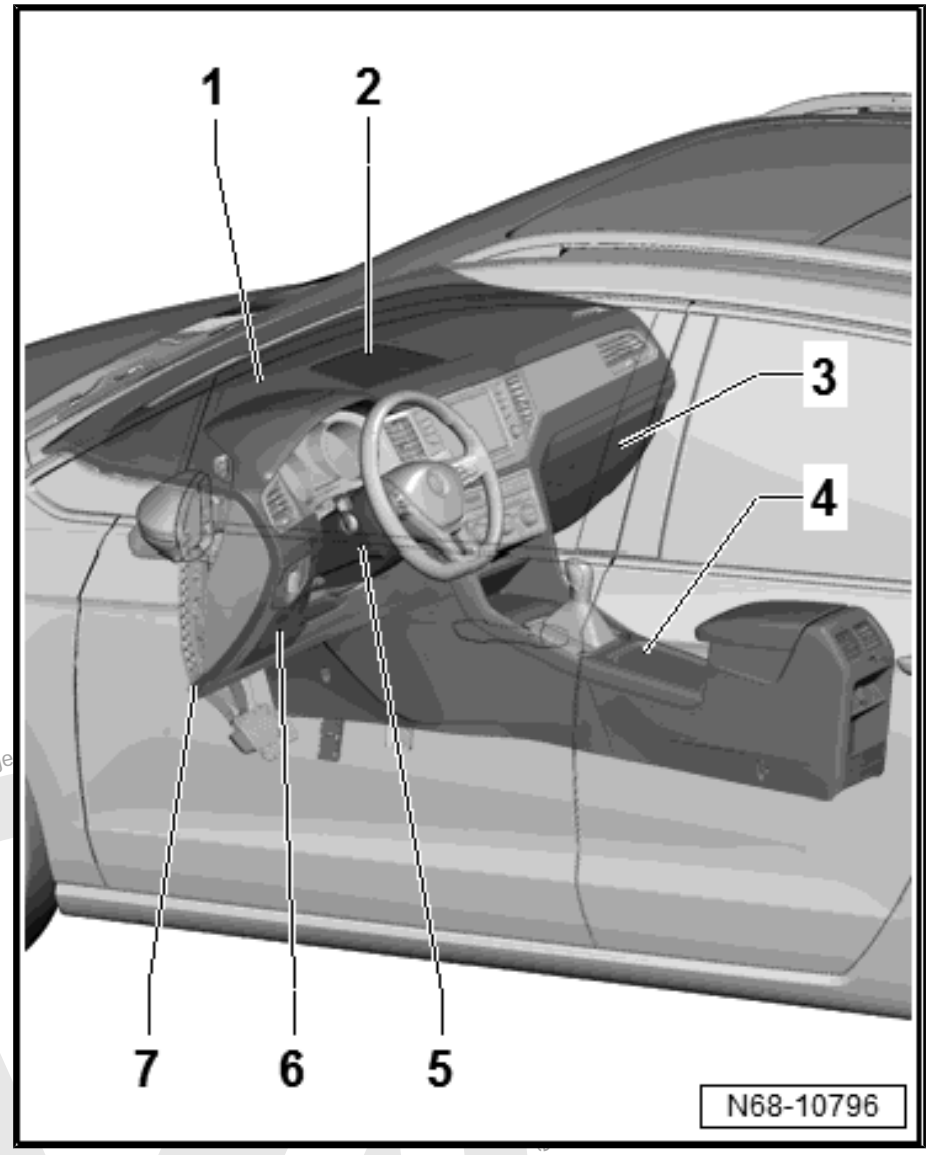
- ❑ Assembly overview
  ⇒ page 20

6 - Driver side storage compartment

- ❑ Assembly overview
  ⇒ page 21

7 - Driver side dash panel cover

- ❑ Assembly overview
  ⇒ page 19



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
correctness of information in this document.

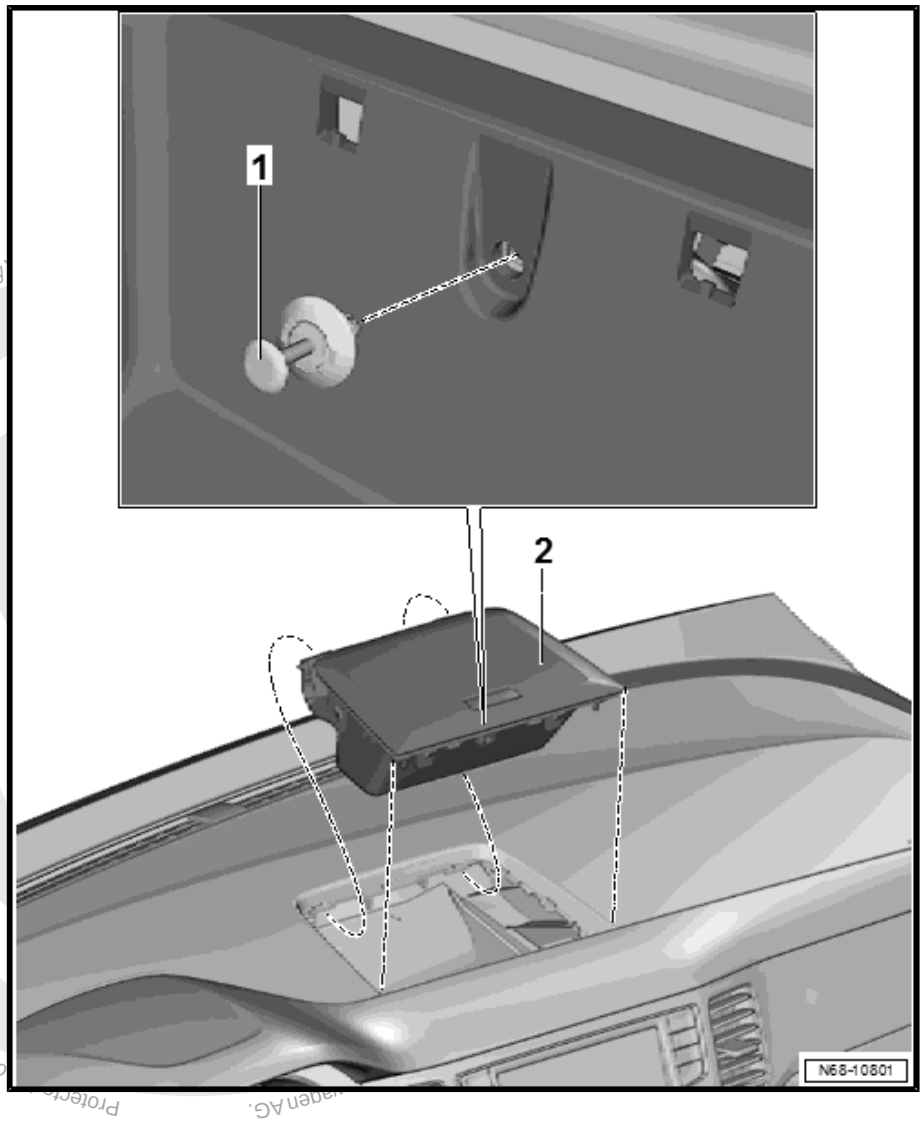
1.2 Assembly overview - centre storage compartment

1 - Fastener

- ❑ Renew clip if damaged or deformed.

2 - Centre storage compartment

- ❑ Equipment version without sound system
- ❑ Centre loudspeaker - R208- with loudspeaker trim may be fitted in place of centre storage compartment ⇒ Item 5 (page 171)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 23



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

1.3 Assembly overview - driver side footwell cover

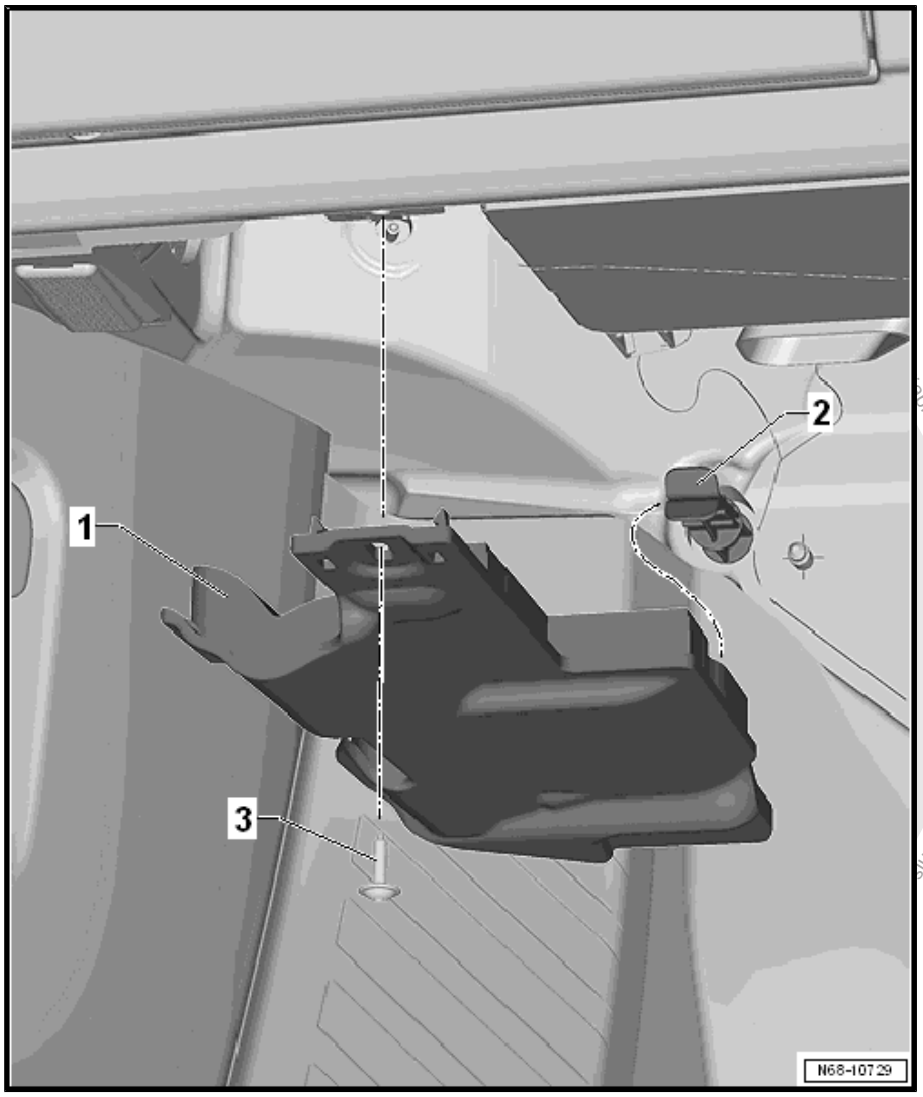
1 - Driver side footwell cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 24

2 - Bracket

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm



ability with respect to the correctness of information in this

1.4 Assembly overview - driver side dash panel cover

1 - Driver side dash panel cover

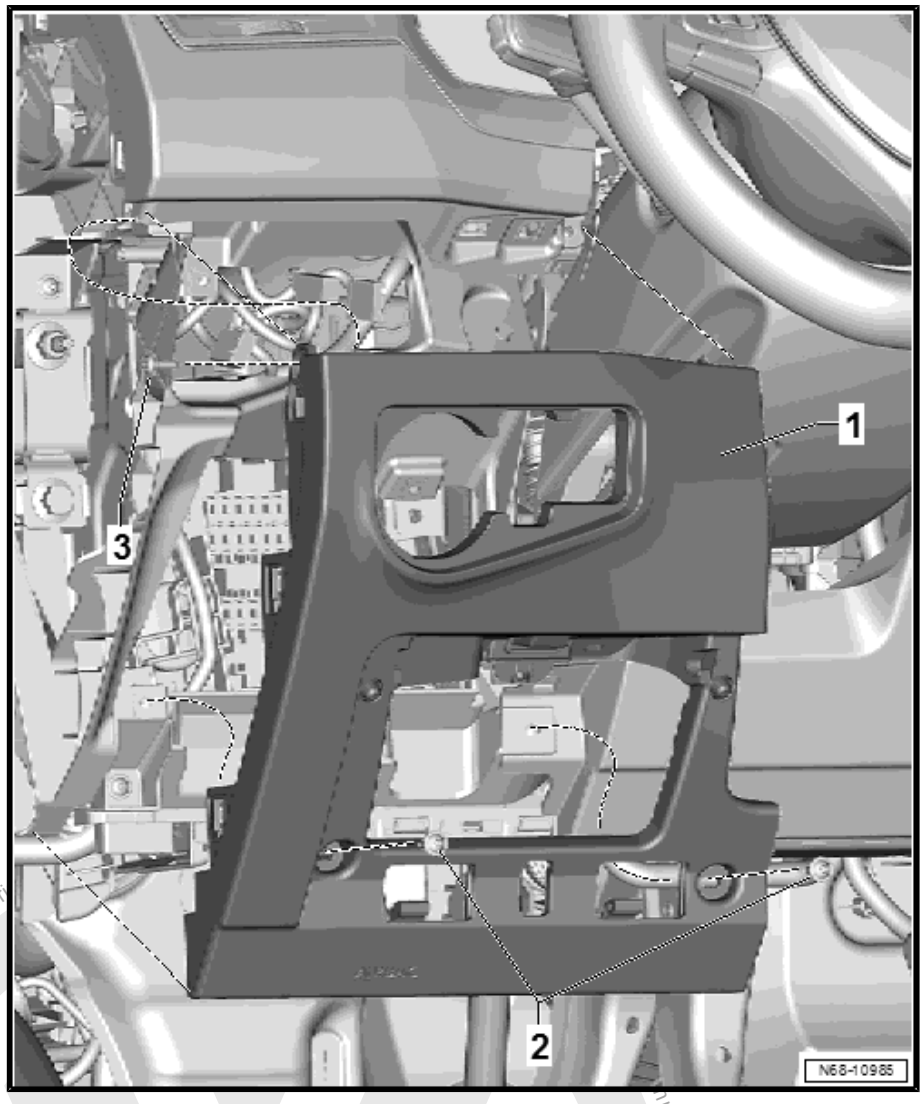
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 27

2 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authori
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
respect to the correctness of information in this documen

1.5 Assembly overview - steering column trim

1 - Dash panel insert trim

2 - Gap cover

- ❑ Part of dash panel insert trim

3 - Upper steering column trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 28
- ❑ Press until it audibly engages

4 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- ❑ With airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring - F138-
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Assembly overview - steering column switch module

5 - Bolts

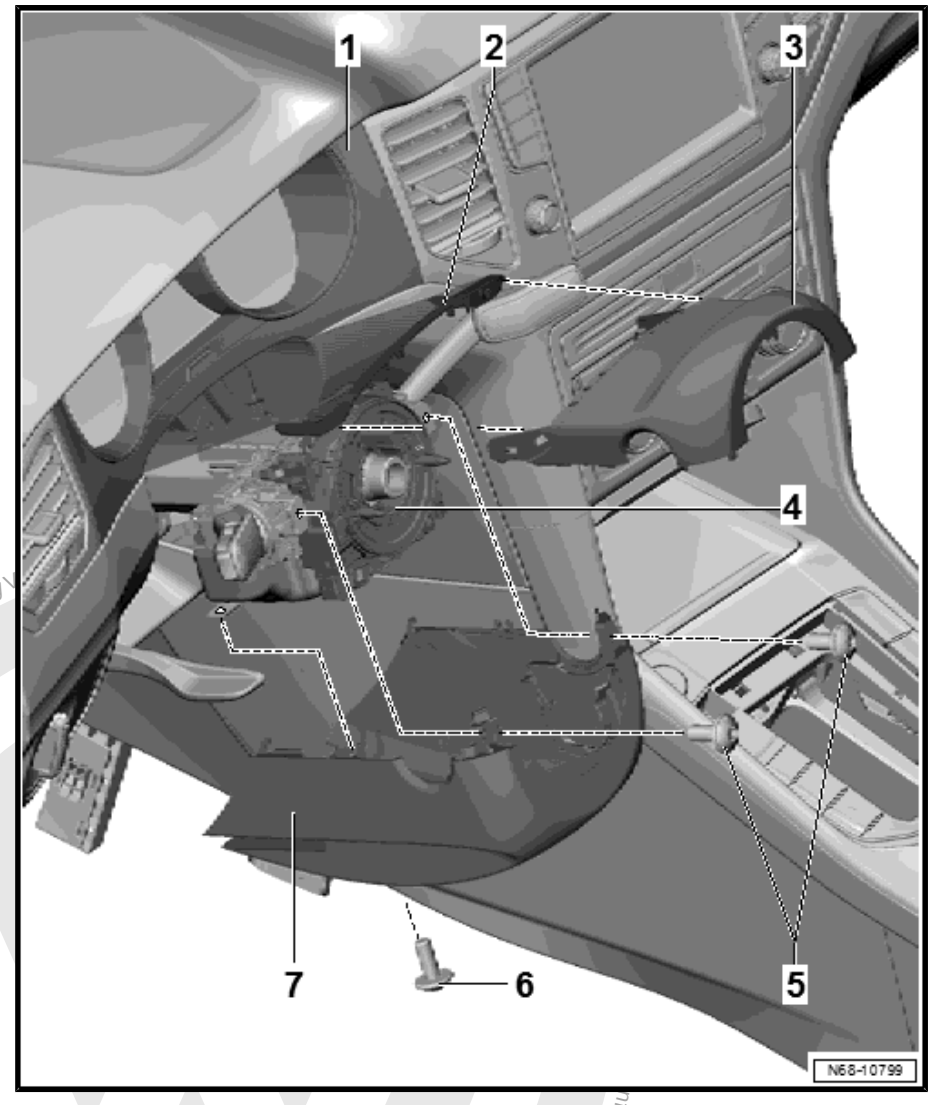
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

7 - Lower steering column trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 29



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document

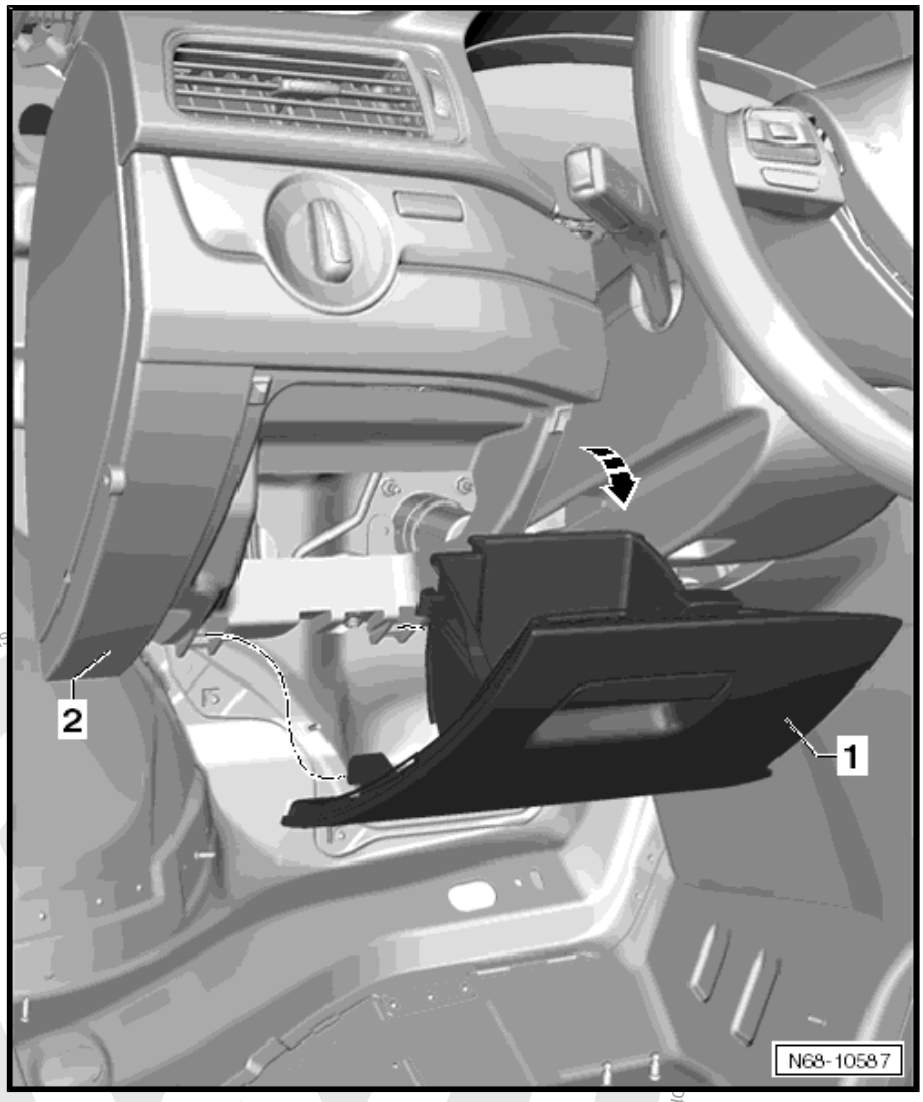
1.6 Assembly overview - storage compartment on driver side

1 - Driver side storage compartment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 26

2 - Driver side dash panel cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 27



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Use of information in this document

1.7 Assembly overview - glove compartment

1 - Glove compartment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 30

2 - Damper element

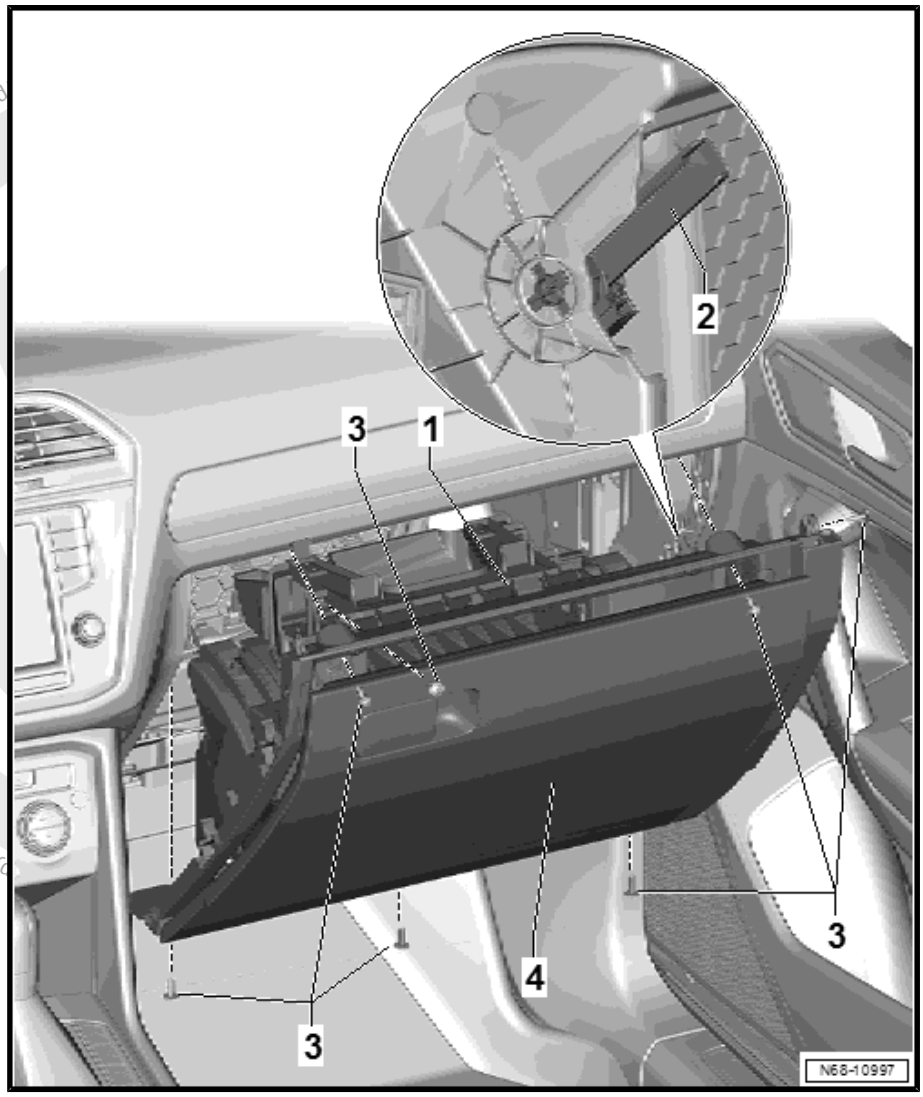
- ❑ For glove compartment lid.
- ❑ With glove compartment light switch - E26- .
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 33

3 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 7
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

4 - Glove compartment lid

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 32



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised.

1.8 Assembly overview - storage compartment in roof headliner

1 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 34

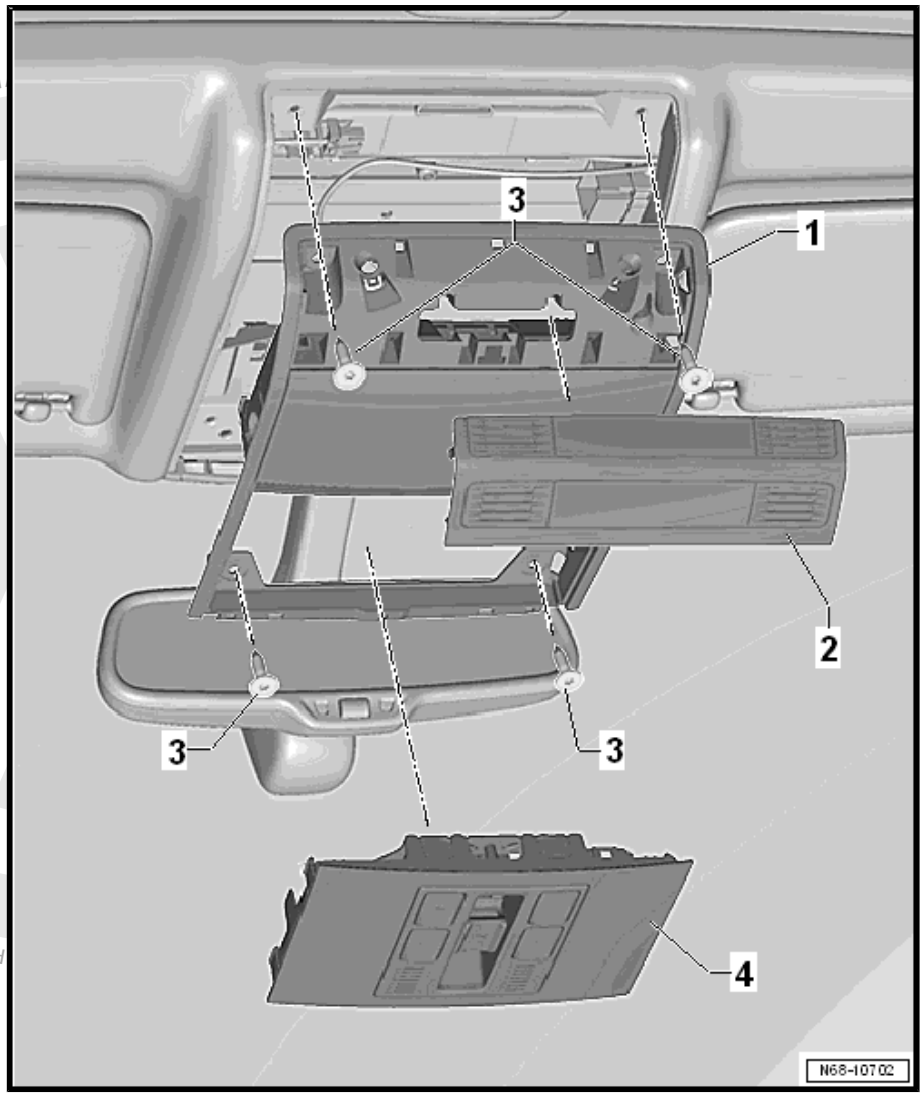
2 - Cover

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

4 - Front interior light - WX1-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .

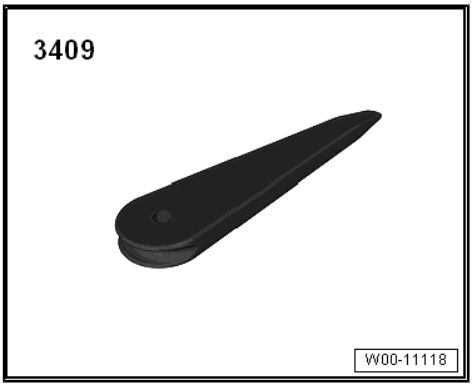


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen

1.9 Removing and installing centre storage compartment

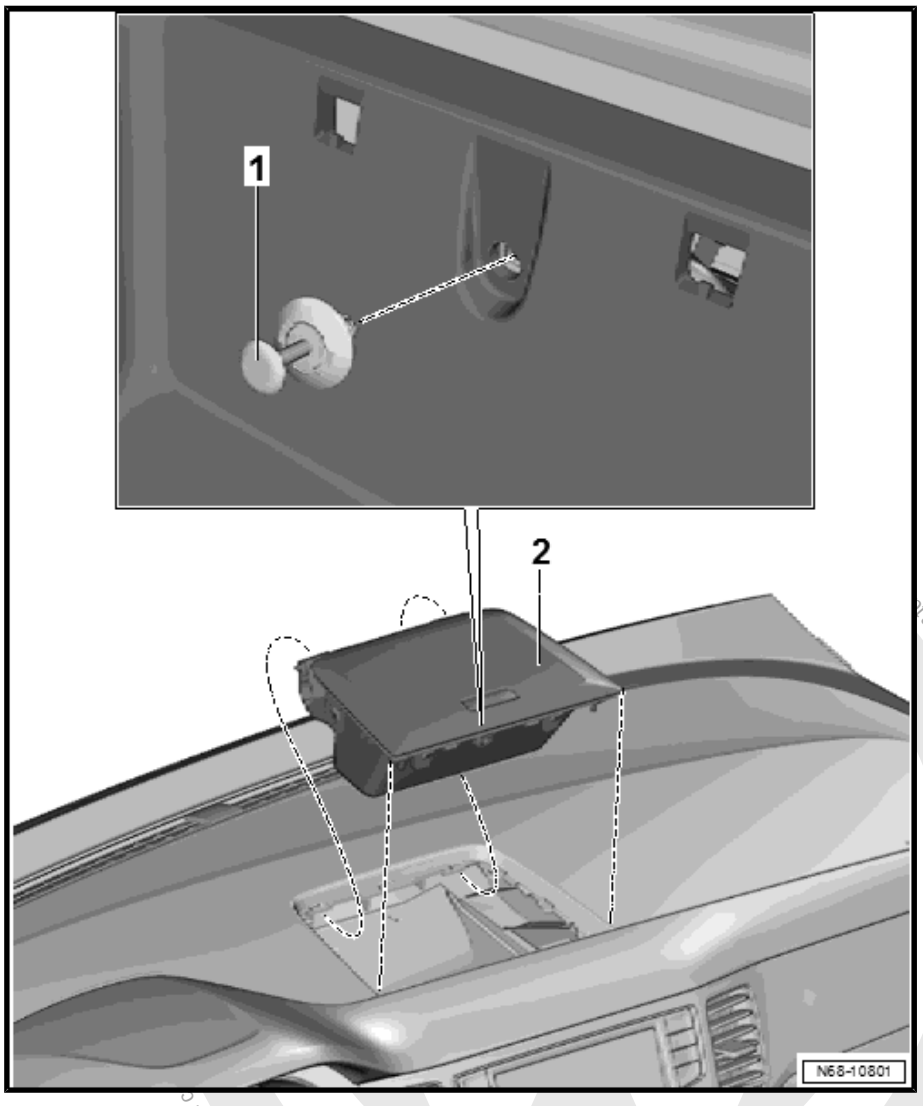
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Open centre storage compartment, and remove spreader clip -1-.



– Using removal wedge - 3409- , carefully unclip centre storage compartment -2- from dash panel.

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Note

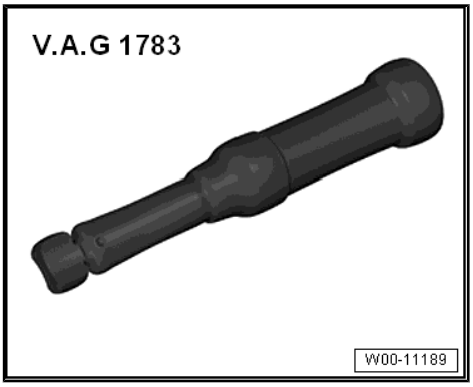
Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

1.10 Removing and installing driver side foot-well cover

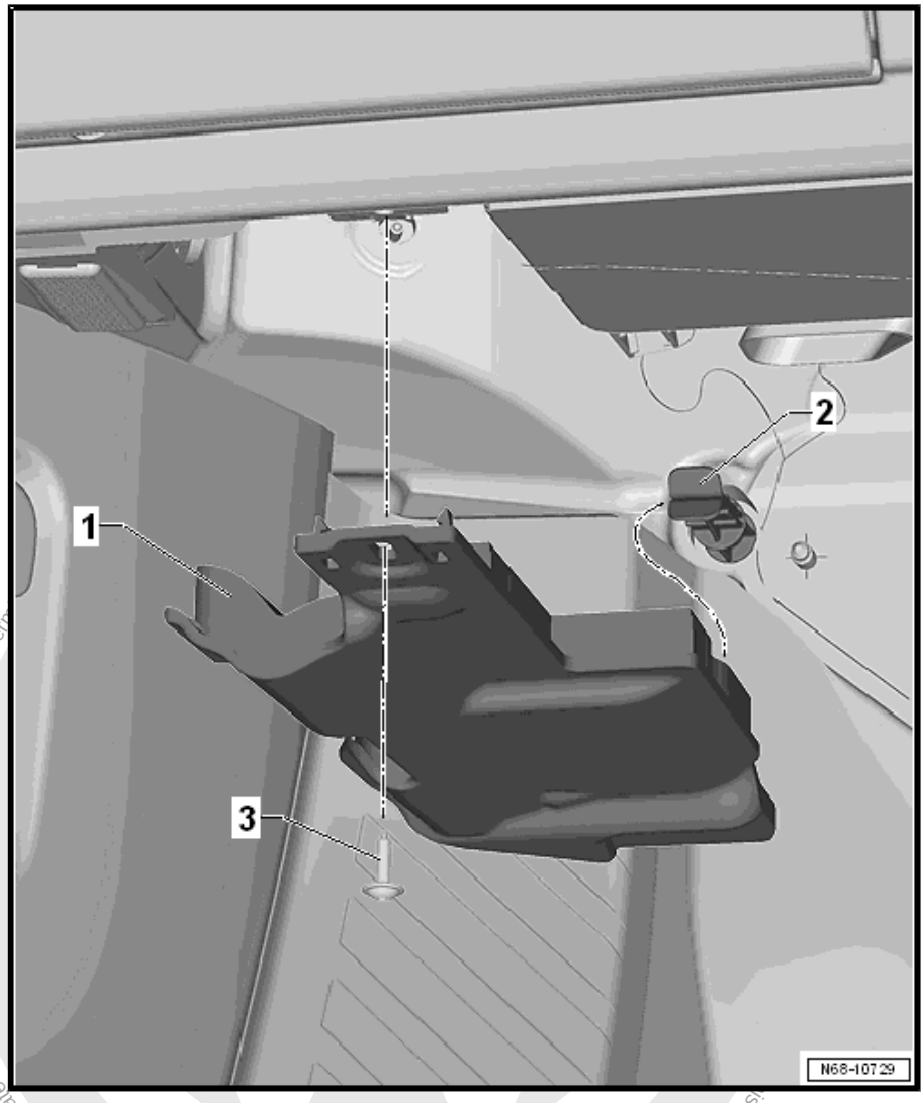
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing



– Unscrew bolt -3-.
– Pull driver side footwell cover -1- out of retainer -2- and remove it.

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. This document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

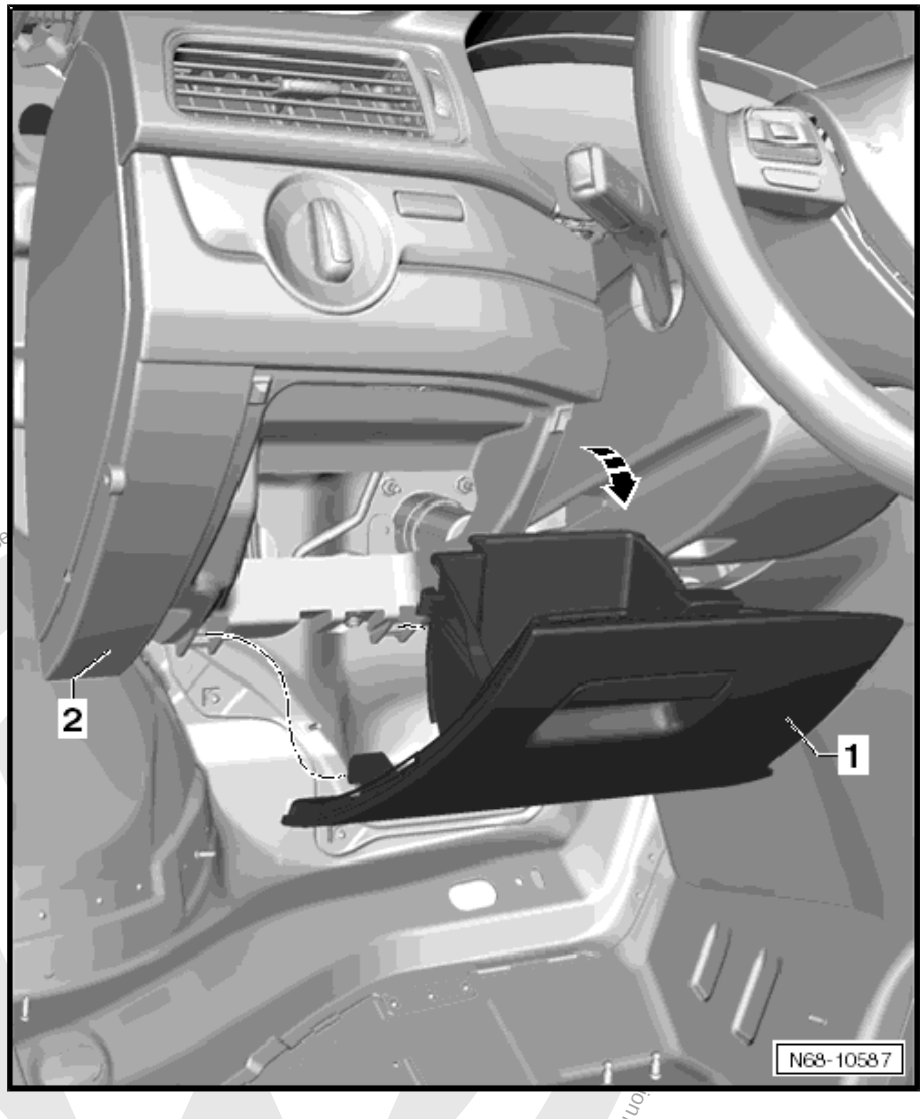
Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Torque settings

- ⇒ “1.3 Assembly overview - driver side footwell cover”, page 18

1.11 Removing and installing driver side storage compartment

Removing



– Open driver side storage compartment -1- in -direction of arrow-.

– Release driver side storage compartment -1- from upper catches and remove it at bottom from dash panel -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

1.12 Removing and installing dash panel cover on driver side

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing

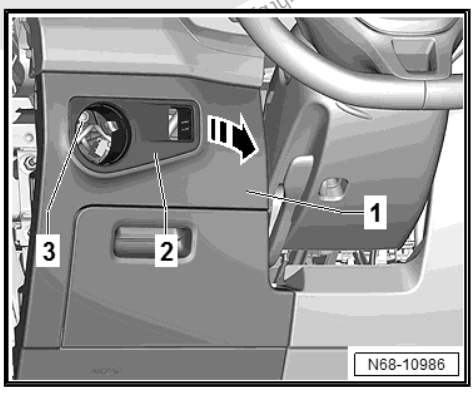
– Remove rotary light switch - EX1- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel .

– Unscrew bolt -3- of trim -2- for rotary light switch.

– Detach trim -2- from dash panel cover -1-, and disconnect all electrical connectors.

– Remove storage compartment in dash panel cover on driver side ⇒ page 26 .

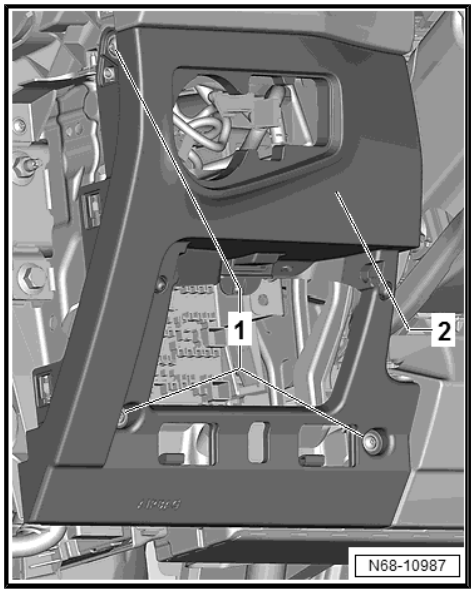
– Remove dash panel end cover on driver side ⇒ page 172 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

– Unscrew 3 bolts -1-.

– Unclip dash panel cover on driver side -2- from dash panel, and remove it.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

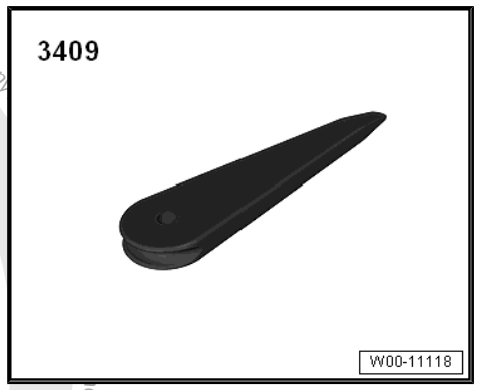
Specified torque

◆ ⇒ “1.4 Assembly overview - driver side dash panel cover”, page 19

1.13 Removing and installing upper steering column trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



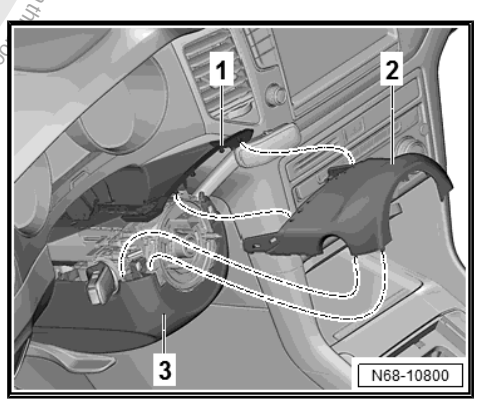
Removing

– Release locking lever of steering wheel positioner.

– Pull out steering wheel completely, push it down and fix it in place.

– Using removal wedge - 3409- , release upper steering column trim -2- from mountings of lower steering column trim -3-. To do this, turn steering wheel accordingly.

– If necessary, detach steering column trim from gap cover -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Note

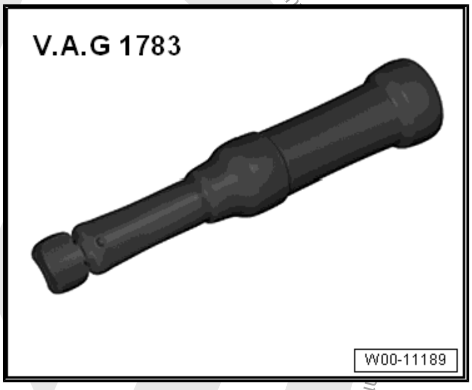
Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorized use, in whole or in part, is prohibited. Unauthorized copies or distribution may result in civil and criminal prosecution.

1.14 Removing and installing lower steering column trim

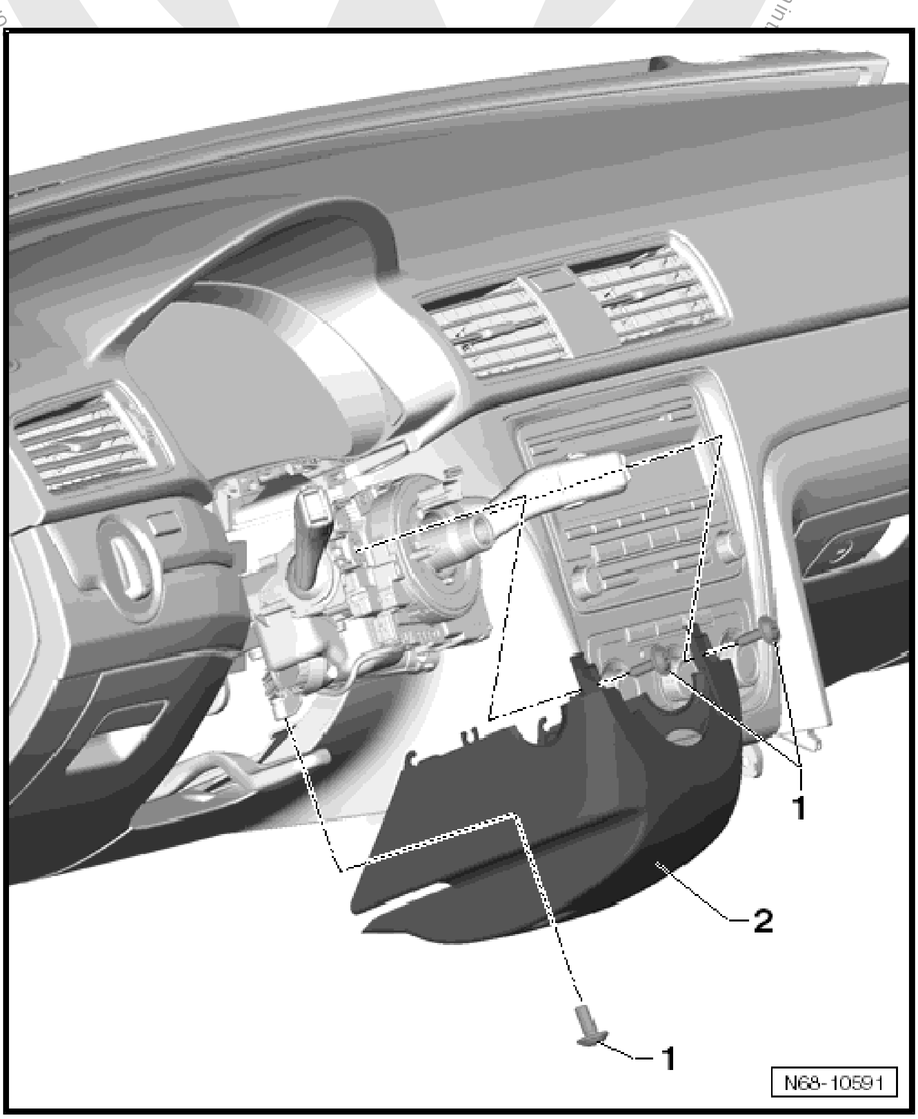
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in

Removing



– Remove upper steering column trim ⇒ page 28 .

– Unscrew bolts -1- from lower steering column trim. To do this, turn steering wheel accordingly.
– Remove lower steering column trim -2- from steering column.
– On vehicles with keyless locking and starting system disconnect connector for immobiliser reader coil - D2- .

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

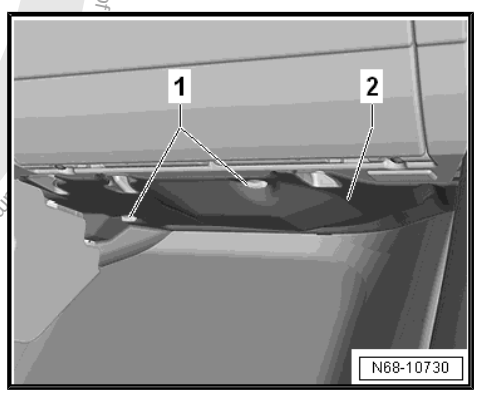
Torque settings

⇒ “1.5 Assembly overview - steering column trim”, page 20

1.15 Removing and installing front passenger side footwell cover

Removing

– Remove clip -1-.
– Release front passenger side footwell cover -2- from dash panel and centre console and remove it.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

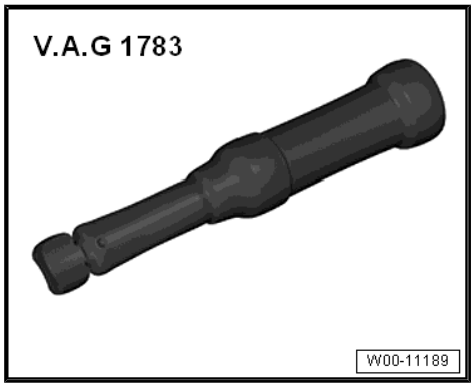
Note

- *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- *On vehicles with a loudspeaker in the front passenger footwell, there is a corresponding aperture in the footwell cover. During installation, make sure that the footwell cover is correctly seated on the loudspeaker trim.*

1.16 Removing and installing glove compartment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



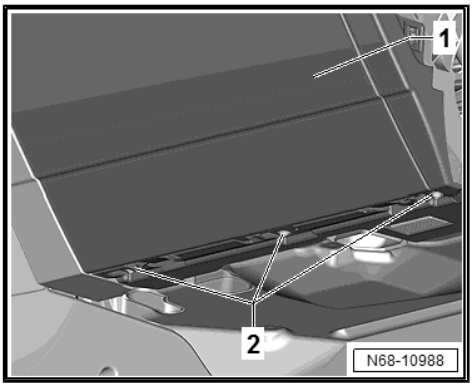
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

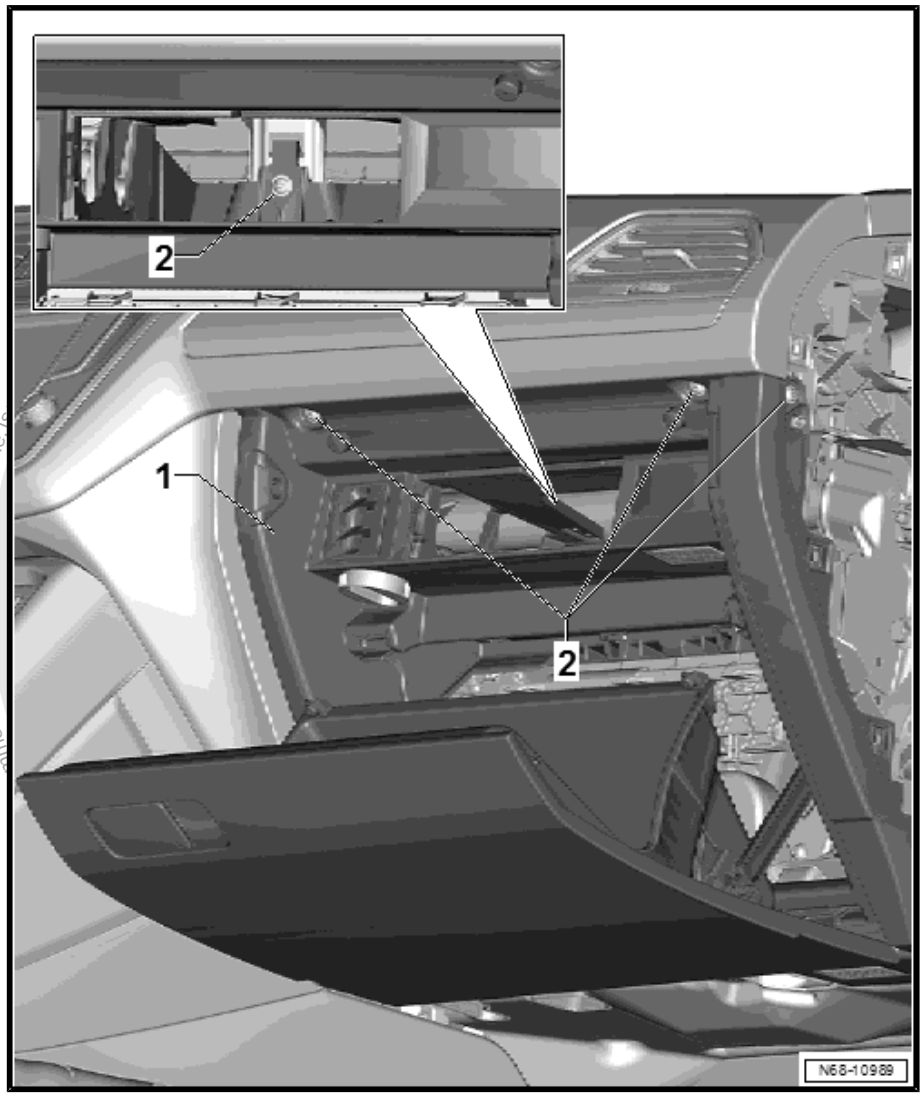
Removing

– Remove dash panel end cover on front passenger side ⇒ page 172 .

– If present, remove control unit 1 for information electronics - J794- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing control unit 1 for information electronics - J794- .

– Unscrew bolts -2- for glove compartment -1- in footwell.



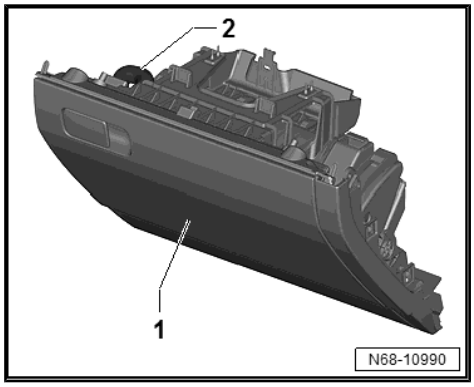


...mercial purposes, in part or in whole, in...

– Open glove compartment cover, and unscrew 4 bolts -2-.

– Unclip glove compartment from dash panel and pull it out until glove compartment cooling hose can be accessed.

– Pull glove compartment cooling hose -2- off glove compartment -1-.
– Disconnect any connectors from glove compartment, move cable guides clear to one side, and remove glove compartment.



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

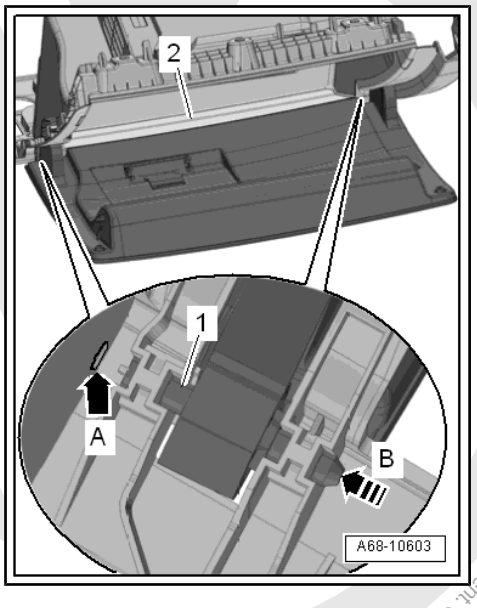
Torque settings

◆ ⇒ “1.7 Assembly overview - glove compartment”, page 22

1.17 Removing and installing glove compartment cover

Removing

– Remove glove compartment ⇒ page 30 .
– Place glove compartment on a soft surface.
– Move glove compartment lid to service position ⇒ page 34 .
– Drive out left and right hinge pins -1- in -direction of arrow B- using a drift.
– Remove glove compartment lid from glove compartment.



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part of with ie, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

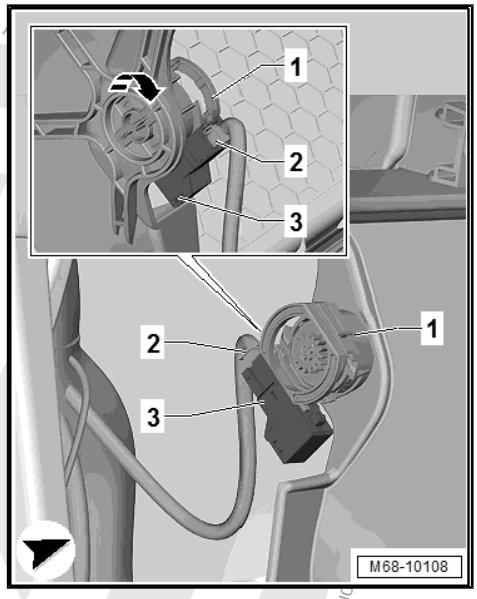
1.18 Removing and installing damper element for glove compartment lid

Removing

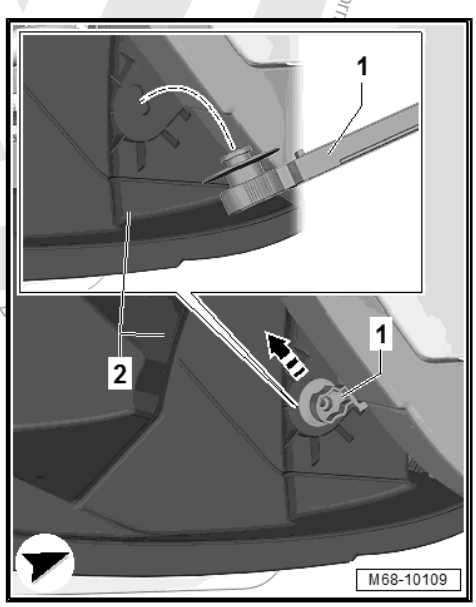
– Move glove compartment lid to service position ⇒ page 34.

– Disconnect electrical connector -2- on glove compartment light switch - E26- -3-.

– Turn damper element -1- -arrow- by 90° (1/4 turn) and remove it from glove compartment.



– Move/release rack -1- in -direction of arrow- and remove it from glove compartment lid -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Printed by Volkswagen AG. Copyright. Reproduction for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

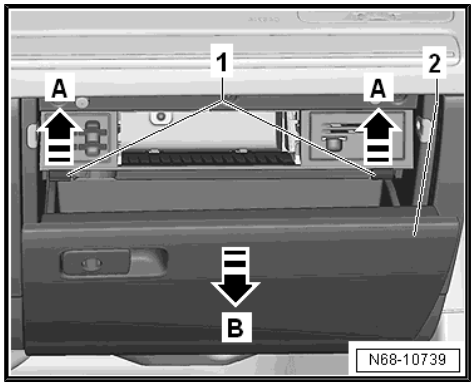
1.19 Service position for glove compartment lid

Moving to service position

- Glove compartment cover -2- opened.

– Push limit stops -1- for glove compartment lid -2- upwards -arrows A-.

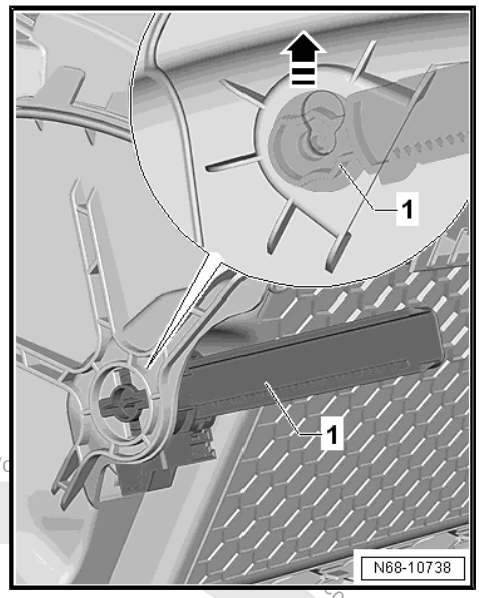
– Carefully open glove compartment cover -2- by approx. another 5 cm -arrow B-.



Caution

Do not open further than another 5 cm, because otherwise the toothed rack of the braking element will be pulled out of the damper element.

– Move/release rack -1- in -direction of arrow- and remove it from glove compartment lid.



Caution

If the toothed rack -1- is pulled out of the damper element when the "glove compartment cover is moved to the service position", carefully fit it back into the damper element.

Note

If the braking element falls out of the damper element when the "glove compartment cover is moved to the service position", fit it back into the damper element in the correct installation position.

Moving from service position

– Close glove compartment lid slowly.

– Close glove compartment lid further and engage it behind limit stops.

1.20 Removing and installing headliner storage compartment

– Switch off ignition.

– Unclip cover -1- from storage compartment in roof headliner -3-.

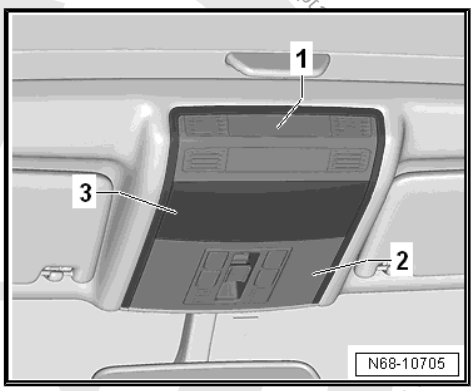
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept

Removing

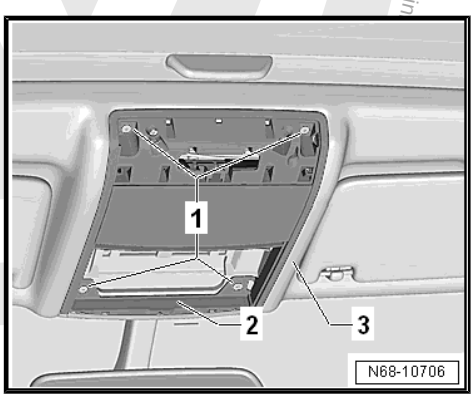
– Remove front interior light - WX1- -2- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .

– If necessary, remove interior mirror covers ⇒ page 61 .



– Unscrew bolts -1-.

– Remove storage compartment in roof headliner -2- from reinforcing frame in moulded headliner -3-.



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Torque settings

◆ ⇒ “1.8 Assembly overview - storage compartment in roof headliner”, page 23

Commercial use of this service, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information.

2 Equipment

⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview- net partition”, page 36

⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - sun visors”, page 37

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing sun visor”, page 37

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing sun visor centre mount”, page 39

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing roof grab handle”, page 40

2.1 Assembly overview- net partition

1 - Net partition

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

3 - Front frame eyelet

4 - Frame interior light

5 - Front frame eyelet

6 - Front eyelet

7 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

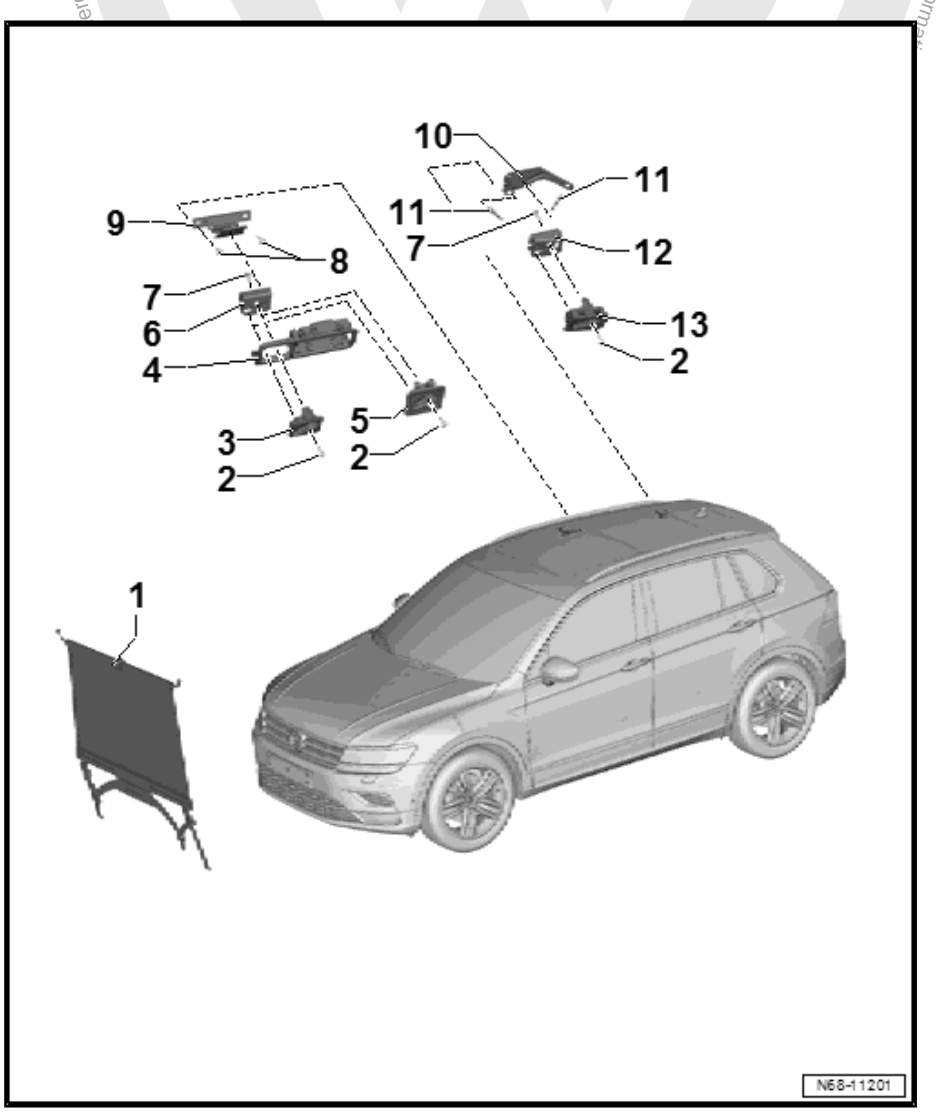
9 - Front bracket
- ❑ ⇒ page 42

10 - Retainer at rear
- ❑ ⇒ page 42

11 - Pop rivet
- ❑ Qty. 2

12 - Retainer at rear

13 - Rear frame eyelet



2.2 Assembly overview - sun visors

Note

The assembly overview is shown for the driver side. The assembly overview for the front passenger side is analogous.

1 - Sun visor

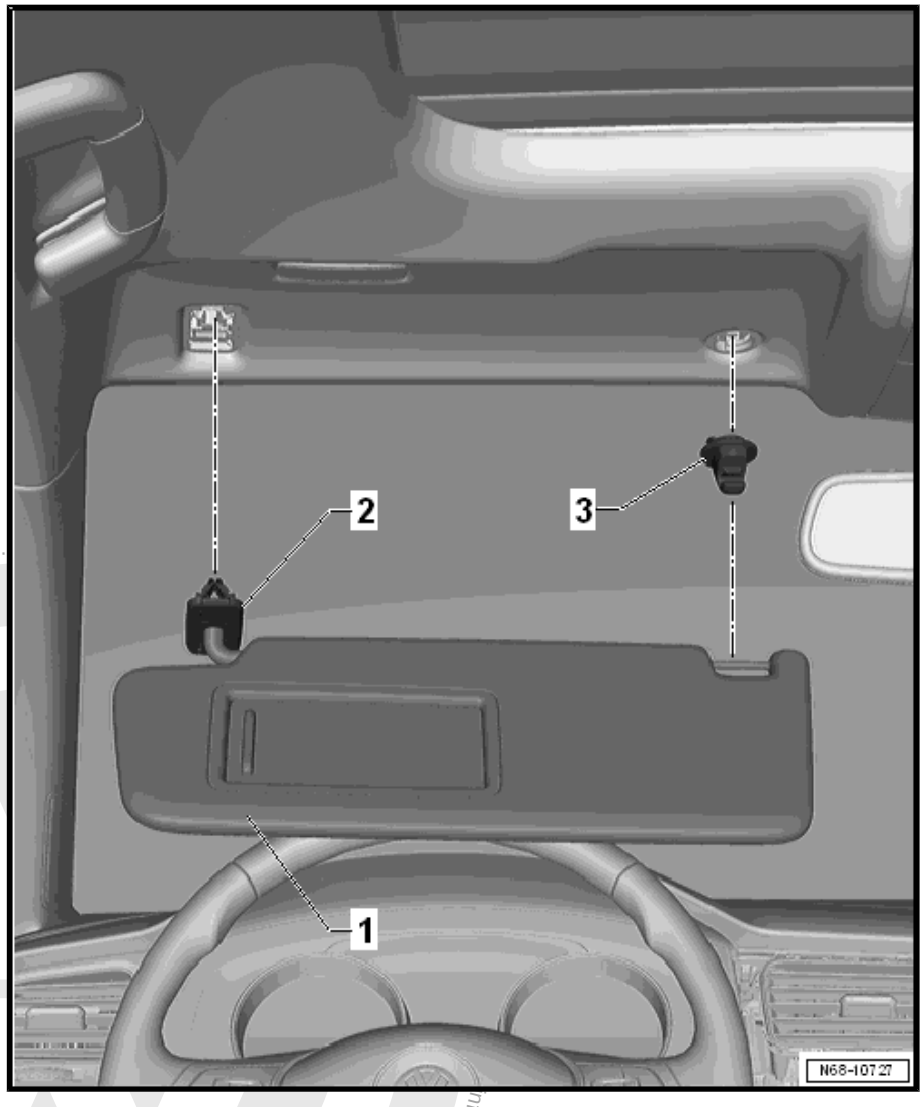
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 37

2 - Sun visor mount

- ❑ Cannot be separated from sun visor.

3 - Centre bearing

- ❑ For sun visor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 39



2.3 Removing and installing sun visor

Note

Removal and installation is described for the sun visor on driver side. Follow same instructions for the front passenger side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document is subject to copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Release pliers - T10558-

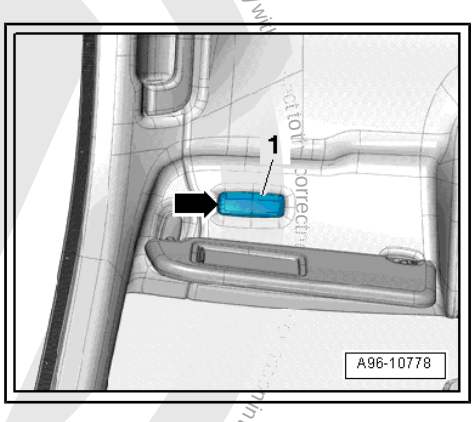


Removing

– Swing sun visor towards front.

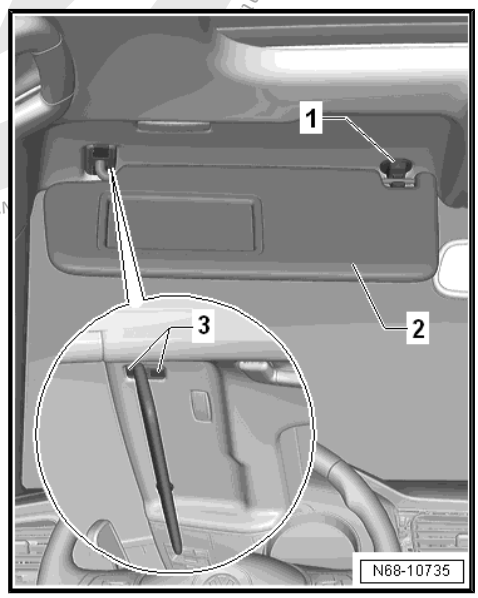
– Fit a flat-bladed screwdriver on recess -arrow- and carefully lever out light -1- for vanity mirror.

– Disconnect electrical connector.



– Detach sun visor -2- from centre mount -1-.

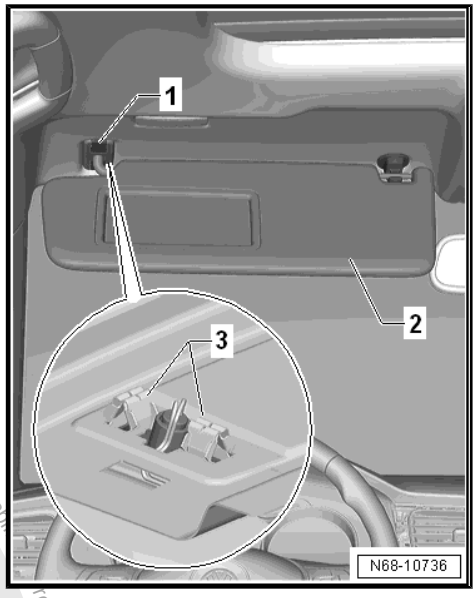
– Open caps -3- on sun visor mount.



Note

When carrying out the steps below, ensure that release pliers - T10558- are positioned centrally in retaining clips.

Printed by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness



– Release front retaining clip -3- in sun visor mount -1- from body mounting using release pliers - T10558- .
– Hold sun visor in such a way that the retaining clip does not engage again.
– Release rear retaining clip -3- in sun visor mount -1- from body mounting using release pliers - T10558- .
– Carefully remove sun visor -2- with sun visor mount -3- downwards from body mounting and remove transport lock.
– Pull wiring harness which is bonded to moulded headliner towards front. Disconnect connector and remove sun visor.

Note

Lower moulded headliner if the wiring harness is torn off while »pulling it towards front«. Use the wiring harness repair set - VAS 1978 B- to repair the electrical wiring harness.

Installing

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

– Wrap connector with one layer of foam tape.
– Grasp with one finger through recess in “vanity mirror” light. and slightly pull down moulded headliner.
– Push connector between moulded headliner and roof cross member towards rear by approx. 6 cm.
– Engage front retaining clip for sun visor mount in body mounting.
– Engage rear retaining clip for sun visor mount in body mounting.
– Ensure that both retaining clips are properly engaged in body.

Continue installation in reverse order of removal.

2.4 Removing and installing sun visor centre mount

Note

Removal and installation is described for the sun visor centre mount on the driver side. Follow same instructions for the front passenger side as appropriate.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

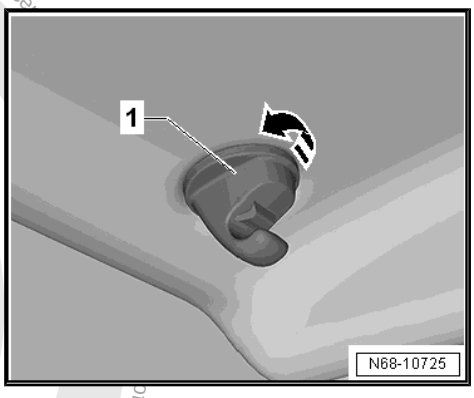
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Detach sun visor from sun visor centre mount and fold it aside.

– Turn sun visor centre mount -1- anti-clockwise -arrow- through 90° (1/4 turn).

– Remove sun visor centre mount -1- downwards.



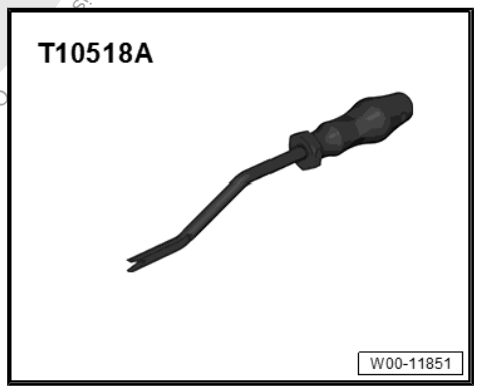
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.5 Removing and installing roof grab handle

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Release tool - T10518A-

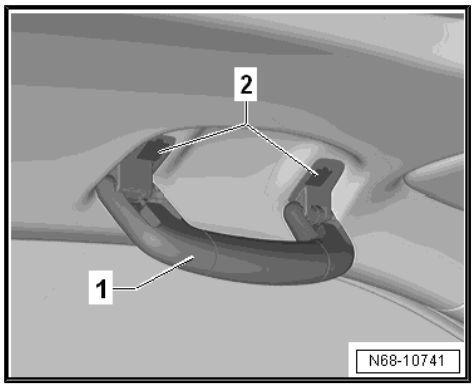


Note

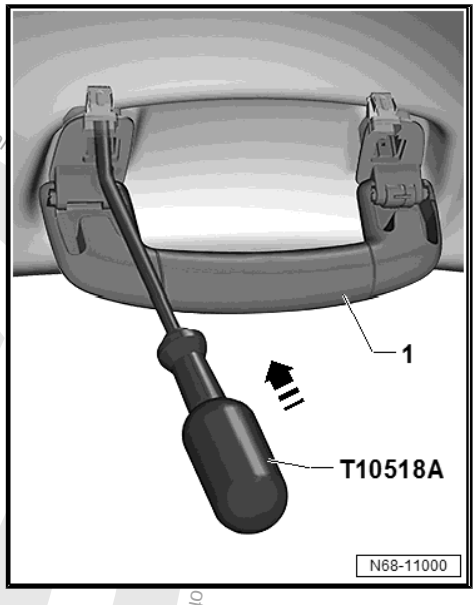
Removal and installation is described for the left front roof grab handle. Follow same instructions for the remaining roof grab handles as appropriate.

Removing

– Fold down roof grab handle -1- and unclip caps -2- using release tool - T10518A- .



– Fold down roof grab handle -1- and push release tool - T10518A- into left retaining clip -arrow- as far as stop.



Note

Greater force will be necessary in order to push the release tool - T10518A- into the retaining clip as far as stop.

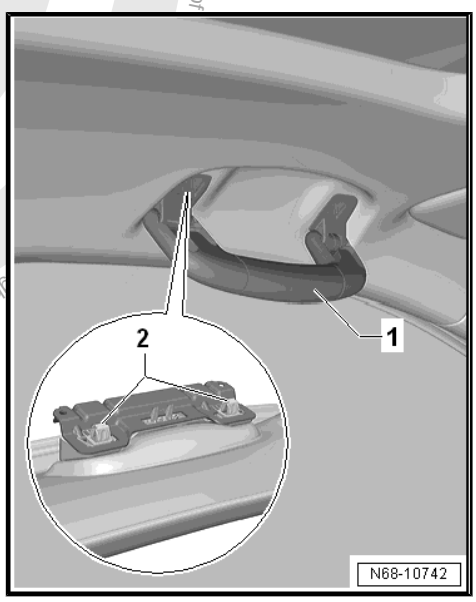
– With release tool - T10518A- being inserted, carefully pull on roof grab handle -1- in the area of the left retaining clip.

– Unclip right retaining clip in the same way.

– The retaining clips -2- of roof grab handle -1- are now detached from mountings in bracket for roof grab handle.

– Pull roof grab handle out of mountings.

– Slightly fit the 2 caps in roof grab handle, but do not engage them yet.

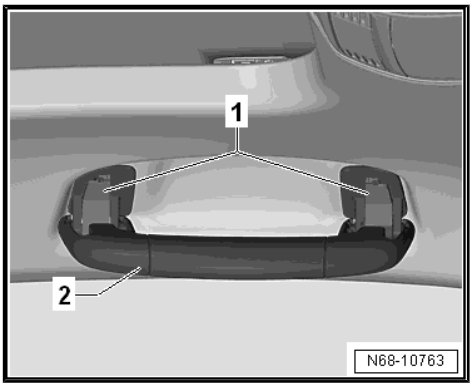


Installing

Note

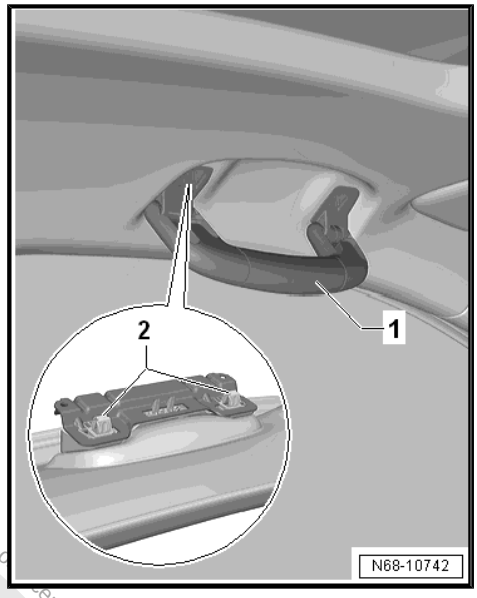
Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

- Roof grab handle -2- must be folded down during installation.
- Both caps -1- must be inserted in roof grab handle -2-, but they must not be engaged yet.



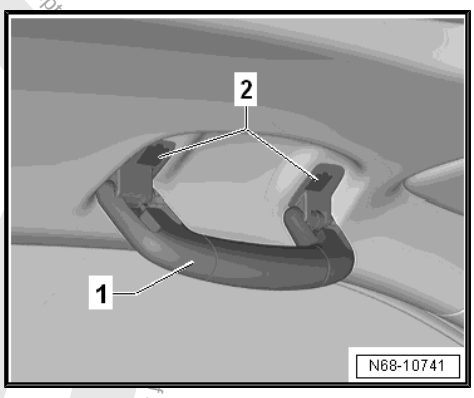
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Push roof grab handle -1- (folded down) into the assembly openings in vehicle roof using the 2 retaining clips -2-.



– Release roof grab handle -1-. As a result, caps -2- will audibly engage in locking position.

– Fold down roof grab handle, and check if both caps have fully engaged in roof grab handle. In this case the caps are flush with the respective base of the roof grab handle.



2.6 Removing and installing bracket for net partition

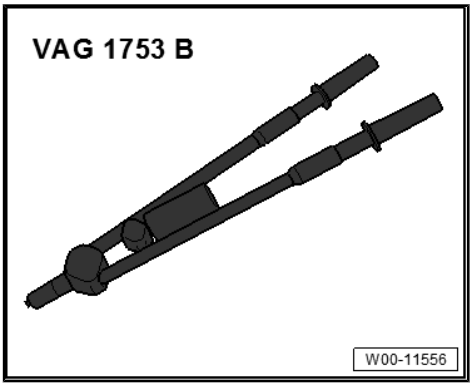
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee the correctness and completeness of information in this document.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



- Hand drill
- Safety goggles

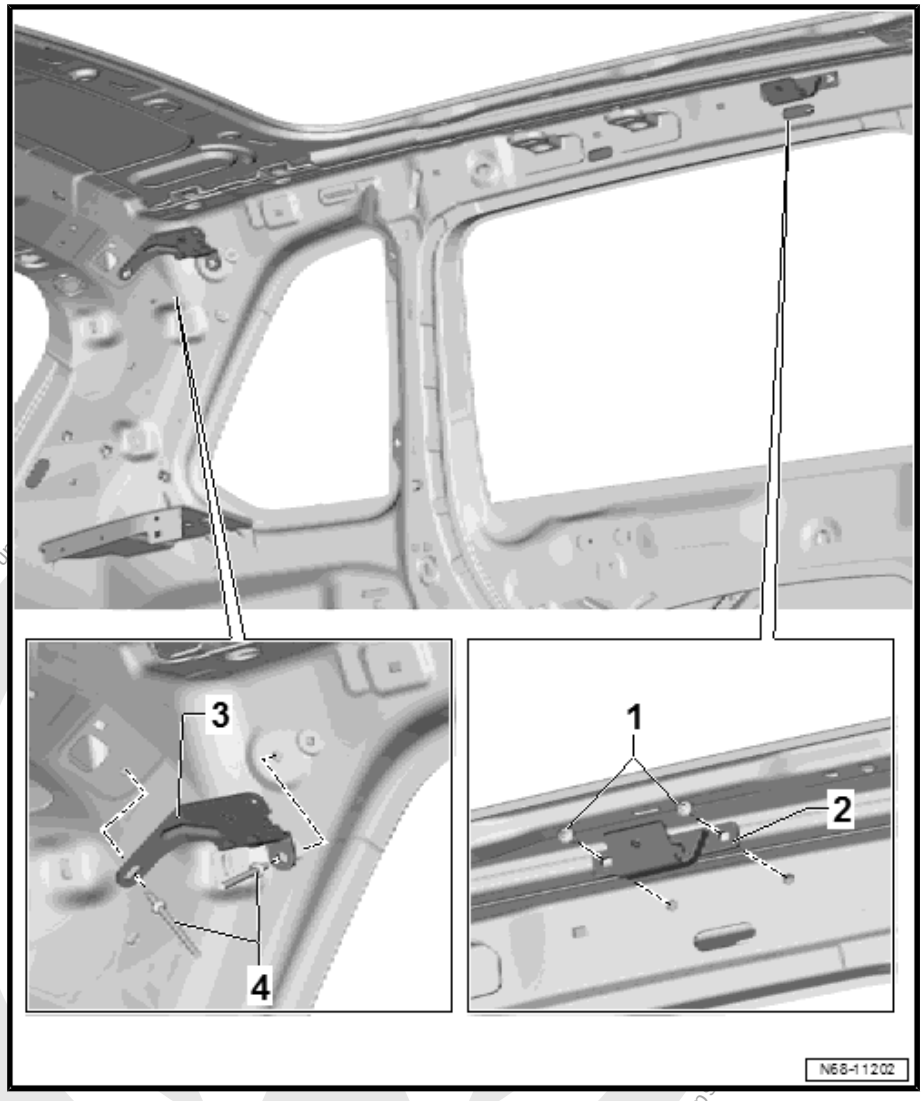
Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side.
Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Removing

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 248 .
– Unscrew two bolts -1-.
– Remove front bracket -2-.
– Drill out 2 pop rivets -4-.
– Remove rear bracket -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.

Installing

– Install in reverse order of removal.

Use special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B- to install pop rivets.

Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts securing front bracket to body	4.5 Nm

3 Centre console

⇒ “3.1 Assembly overview - centre console”, page 45

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing rear centre console trim”, page 46

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing front ashtray”, page 47

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing centre console insert”, page 47

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing centre console trim in front footwell”, page 50

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing centre console”, page 50

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing centre console bracket”, page 55

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing trim for operating and display unit”, page 57

3.1 Assembly overview - centre console

Volkswagen AG does not guarantee

1 - Trim for operating and display unit
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 57

2 - Centre console insert
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 47

3 - Bolts
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

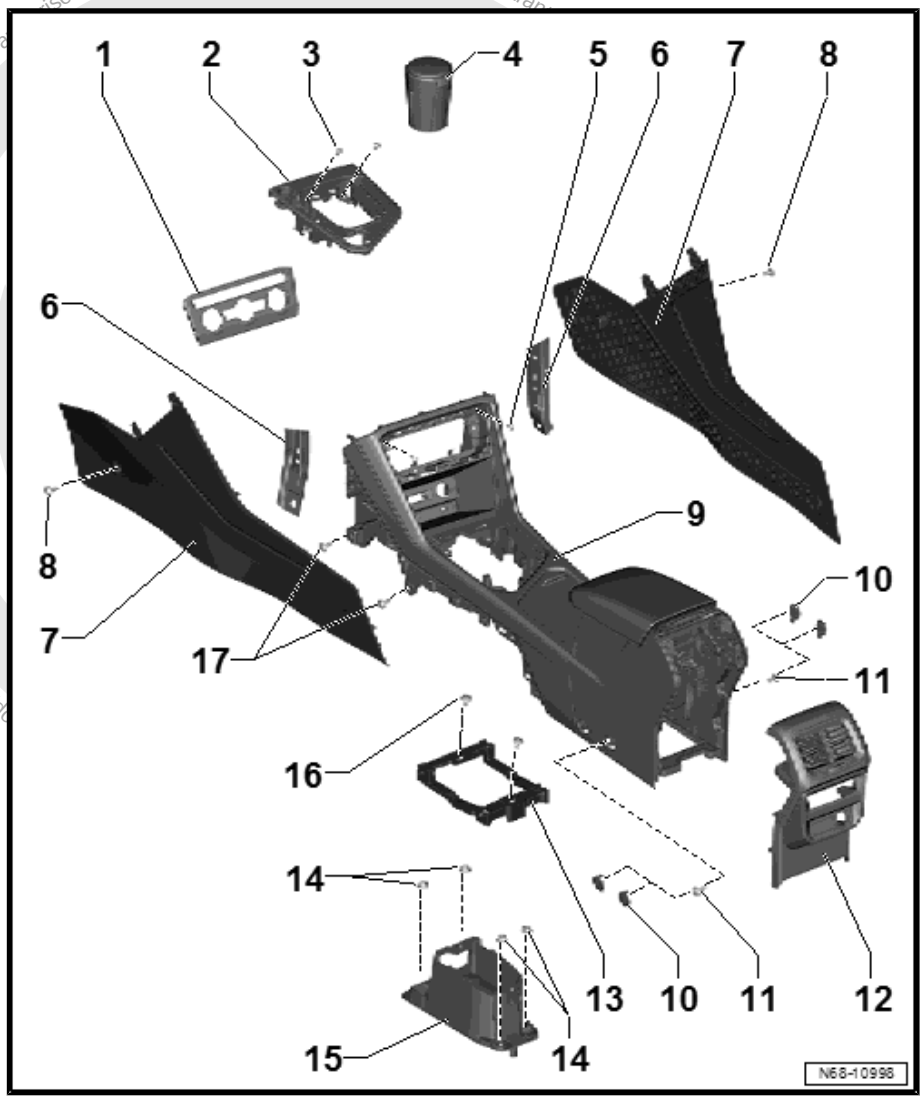
4 - Front ashtray
- ❑ Equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 47

5 - Bolts
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

6 - Front bracket
- ❑ For centre console trim in footwell.
- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 55

7 - Centre console trim in footwell
- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 50

8 - Bolts
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 1.5 Nm



9 - Centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 50

10 - Cap

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Press into centre console.

11 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ 8 Nm

12 - Rear trim, centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 46

13 - Securing bracket

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 55

14 - Nuts

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ 8 Nm

15 - Insulation for selector housing

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 55

16 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 8 Nm

17 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

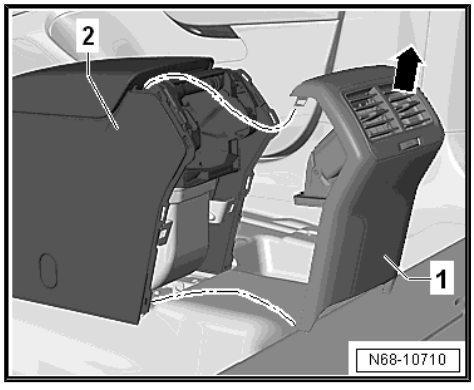
3.2 Removing and installing rear centre console trim

Removing

– Move front seats as far forwards as possible.

– Pull rear trim -1- at bottom towards rear off centre console -2-.

– Pull rear trim -1- upwards off centre console -2- -arrow-.



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

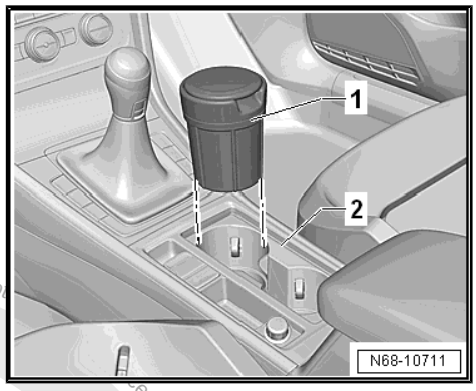
Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3.3 Removing and installing front ashtray

Removing

– Remove front ashtray -1- upwards from centre console -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

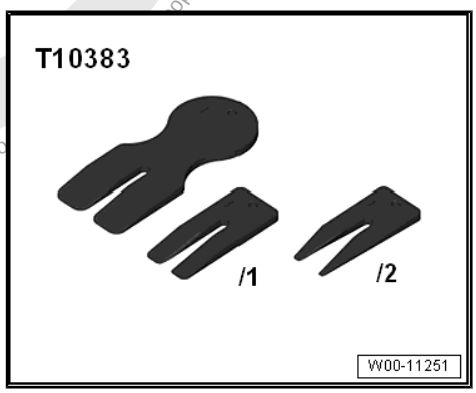
3.4 Removing and installing centre console insert

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



♦ Wedge - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Release tool - T10236-



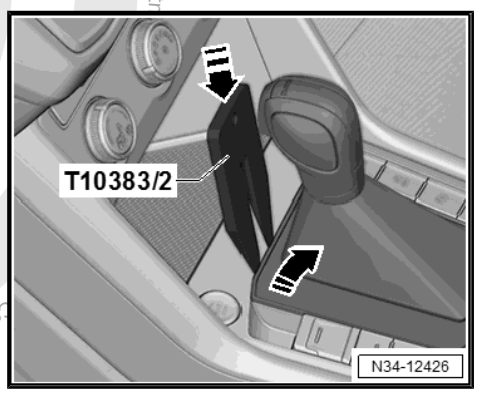
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– On vehicles with dual clutch gearbox, shift selector lever to position “D”.

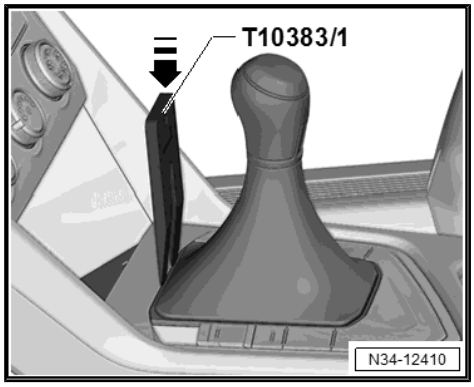
– Switch off ignition.

– Fit wedge - T10383/2- at front between centre console and selector cover, and lever selector cover off centre console by carefully pushing wedge downwards.



– On vehicles with manual gearbox, carefully press in wedge - T10383/1- between frame of gear lever boot and plastic frame -arrow- as shown.

– Carefully lever off gear lever boot from plastic frame.

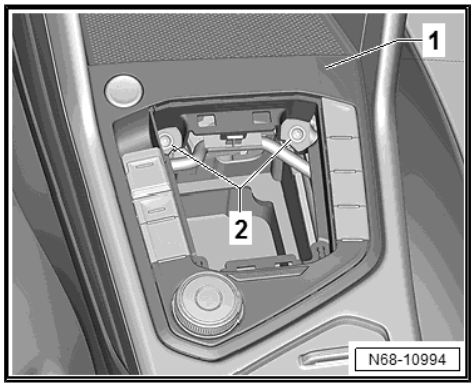


– Unscrew bolts -2-.

– Carefully lift front section of centre console insert -1-, and pull it upwards.

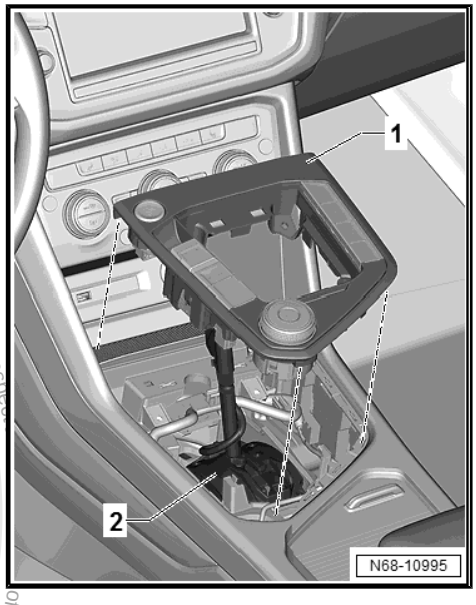
– Use release tool - T10236- to release wiring harness catches.

– Disconnect electrical connectors.



– Carefully lift centre console insert over selector lever/gear lever -2-.

– Remove switch from centre console insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in centre console .



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “3.1 Assembly overview - centre console”, page 45

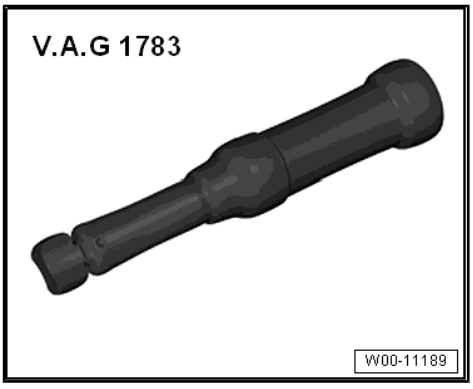
3.5 Removing and installing centre console front storage compartment

Note

The storage compartment of the centre console is located behind the centre console insert.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 50 .

– Unscrew 2 bolts on underside of centre console.

– Unclip storage compartment from centre console.

Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. All rights reserved. Transmission or reproduction for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.

Torque settings

Component	Specified torque
2 bolts on centre console	1.5 Nm

3.6 Removing and installing centre console trim in front footwell

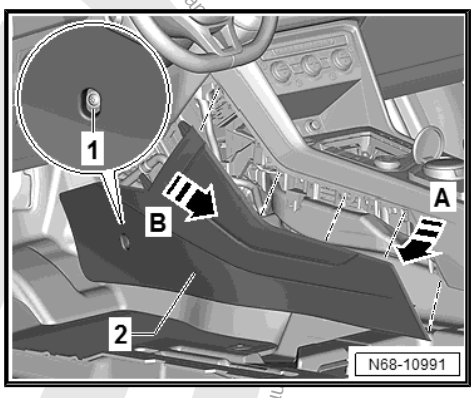
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing

- Unscrew front bolt -1- at side.
- Release centre console trim in footwell -2- from mountings in centre console -arrow A-.
- Pull centre console trim in footwell -2- out of mountings in centre console -arrow B-.



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Torque settings

- ⇒ “3.1 Assembly overview - centre console”, page 45

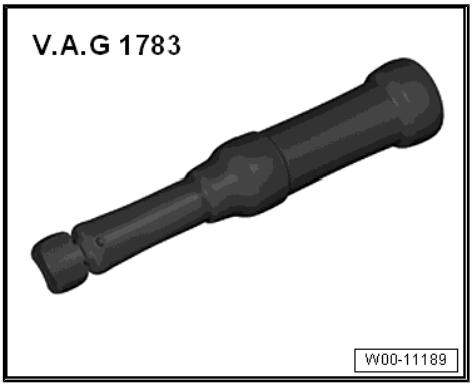
3.7 Removing and installing centre console

Removing

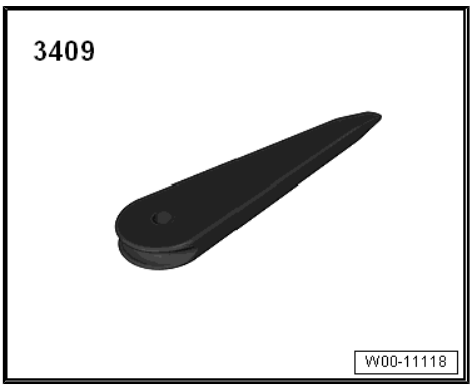
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use, in whole or in part, for commercial purposes, in any form, is prohibited unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



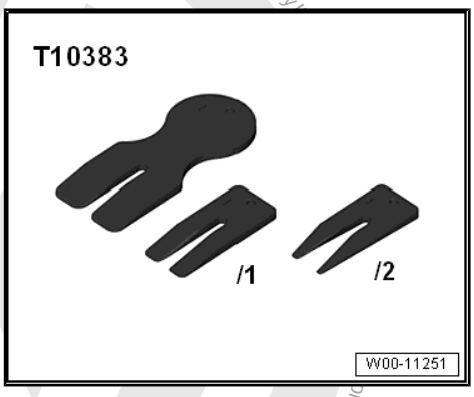
- Removal wedge - 3409-



- Release tool - T10236-



- Wedge - T10383-



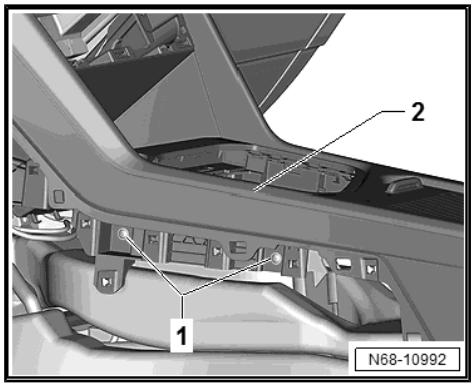
Removing centre console

– Remove left and right centre console trim in front footwell ⇒ page 50 .

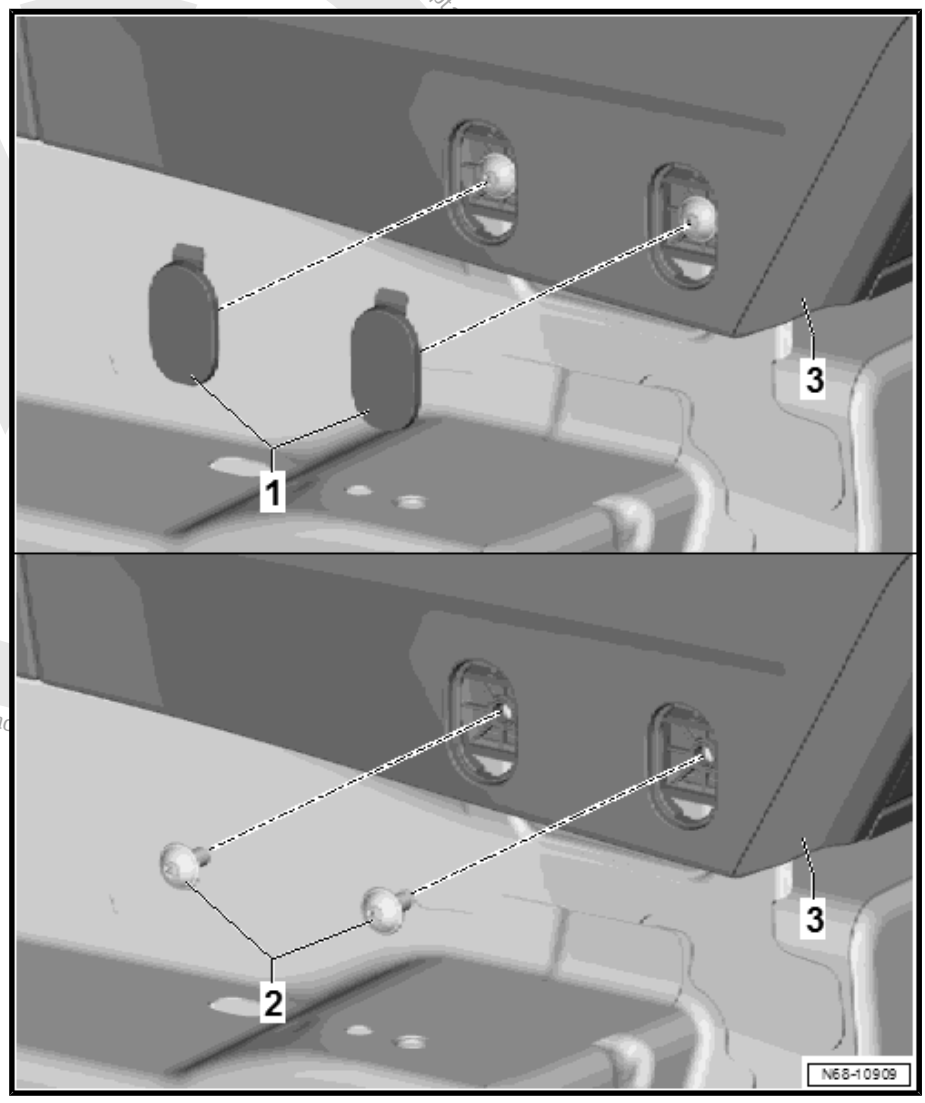
– Removing and installing trim for operating and display unit ⇒ page 57 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove operating and display unit ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit .
– Remove centre console insert ⇒ page 47 .
– On each side, unscrew 2 bolts -1- for centre console -2-.
– Move both front seats to foremost and highest position.

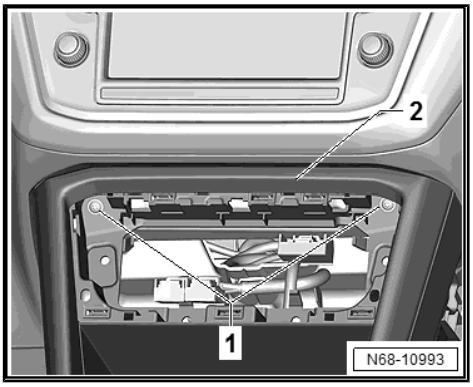


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept

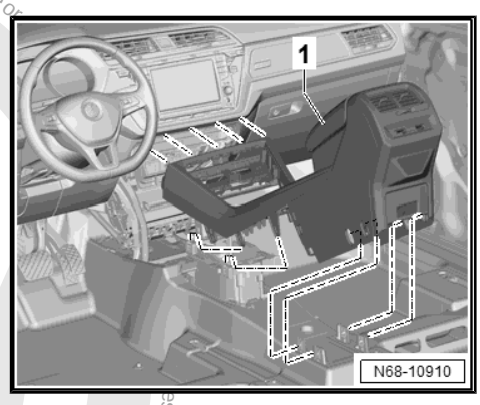


– Remove caps -1- on left and right from centre console -3- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Unscrew bolts -2- for centre console -3- on left and right.

– Unscrew bolts -1- for centre console -2-.



– Lift up rear of centre console -1- and pull it towards rear out of dash panel.
– Carefully guide centre console -1- over gear lever/selector lever to remove.

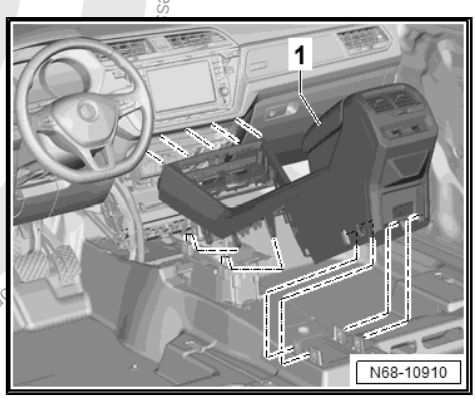


Installing centre console

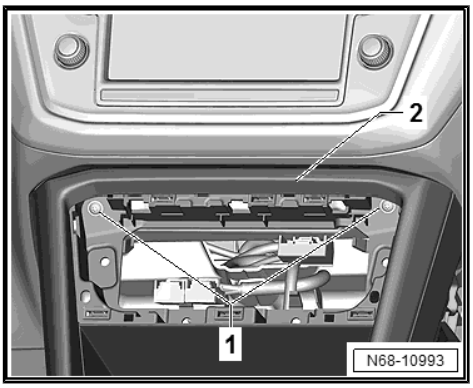
Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

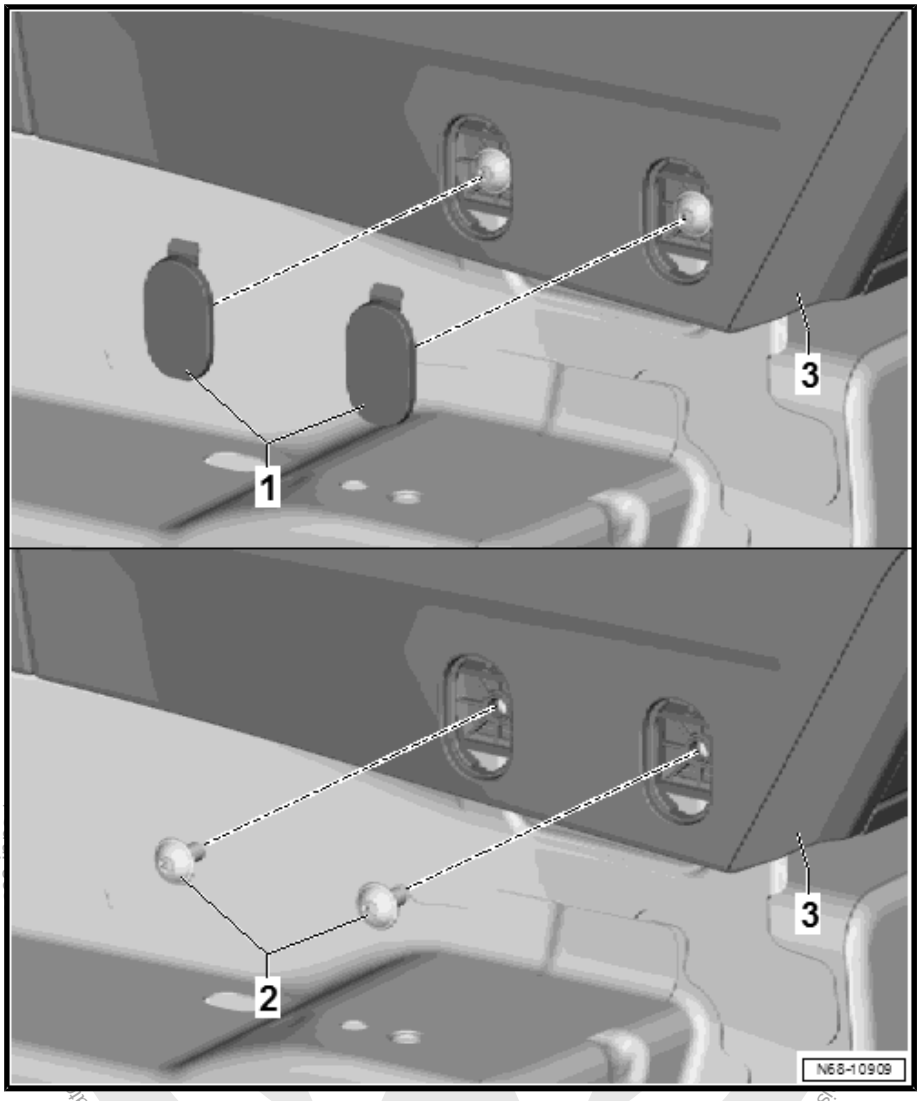
– Carefully insert centre console -1- and engage in dash panel.



– Secure centre console -2- to dash panel using 2 bolts -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

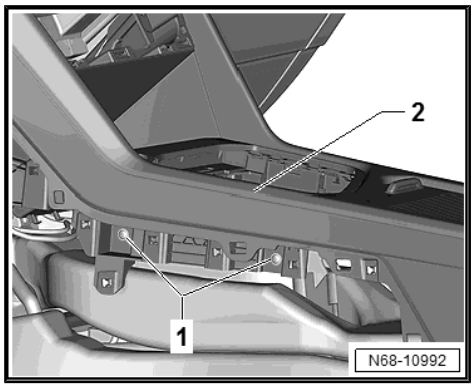


– Secure centre console -3- on left and right with bolts -2-.
– Insert caps -1- into centre console -3- on left and right.
– Move both front seats to rearmost position.
– Secure centre console -2- with 2 bolts -1- on each side.
– Install centre console insert ⇒ page 50 .

Continue installation in reverse order of removal.

Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “3.1 Assembly overview - centre console”, page 45



Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3.8 Removing and installing centre console bracket

⇒ "3.8.1 Centre console bracket, removing and installing mounting bracket and insulation for selector mechanism", page 55

3.8.1 Centre console bracket, removing and installing mounting bracket and insulation for selector mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



- Release tool - T10236-



Removing, front bracket

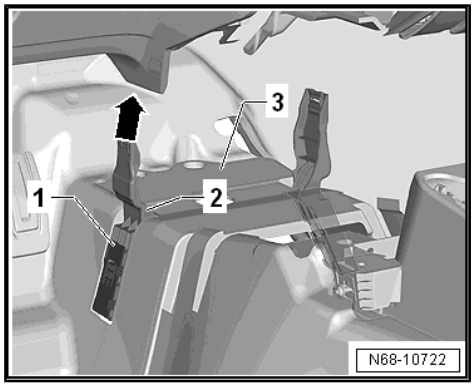
Note

The removal and installation procedure is described for the front bracket on the driver side. Follow same instructions for the front passenger side as appropriate.

– Remove centre console trim in footwell ⇒ page 50 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Push floor covering in area of front bracket -2- aside.
– Release cover -1- from front bracket -2- and remove it.
– Remove front retainer -2- upwards from tunnel -3-.



Installing, front bracket

Note

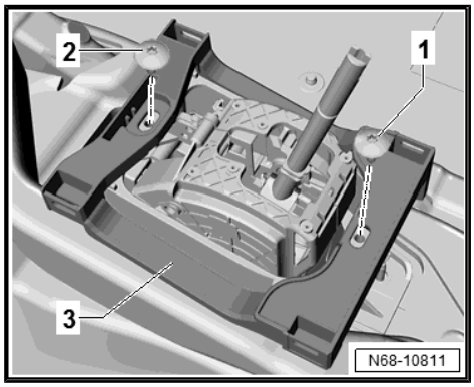
Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.

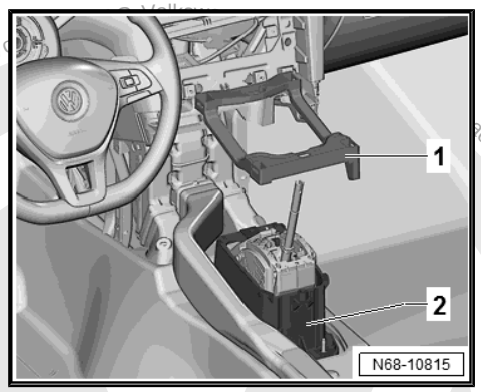
Removing, front bracket securing element and insulation for gear selector

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 50 .

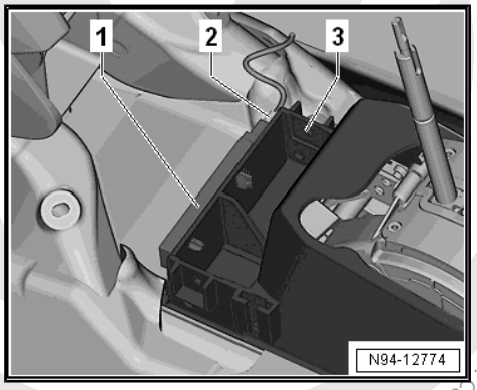
– Unscrew bolt -1- behind selector mechanism.
– Unscrew bolt -2- in front of selector mechanism.



– Pull mounting bracket -1- off selector mechanism insulation -2-.
– Remove air duct vent at front of centre console ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct; Assembly overview - air duct and air distribution in passenger compartment .
– If fitted, release 2 catches of wiring harness on left-hand side of centre console using release tool - T10236- .

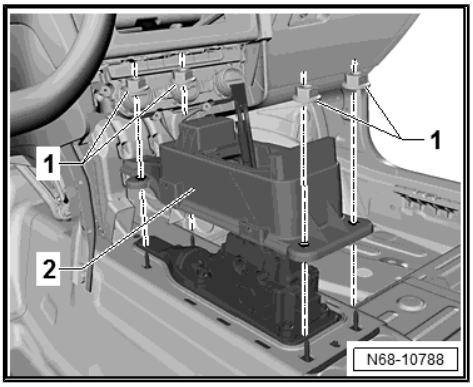


– If fitted, lever off interior aerial 1 for entry and start system - R138- -1- from gear selector insulation -3- using release tool - T10236- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Remove 4 nuts -1-.
– Remove selector mechanism insulation -2-.



Installing, front bracket securing element and insulation for gear selector

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

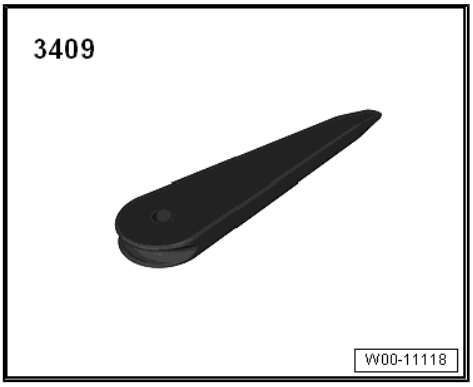
Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “3.1 Assembly overview - centre console”, page 45

3.9 Removing and installing trim for operating and display unit

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

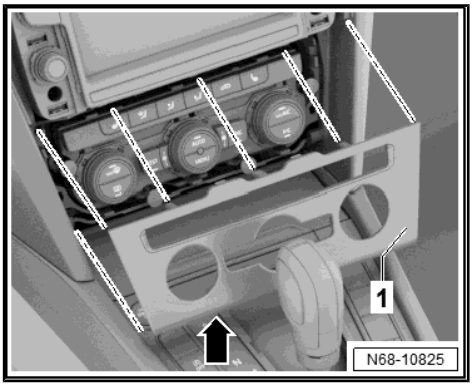
– Using removal wedge - 3409- , carefully unclip trim -1- from assembly aperture in dash panel.

Installing

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

4 Front centre armrest

⇒ “4.1 Assembly overview - front centre armrest”, page 58

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing front centre armrest”, page 58

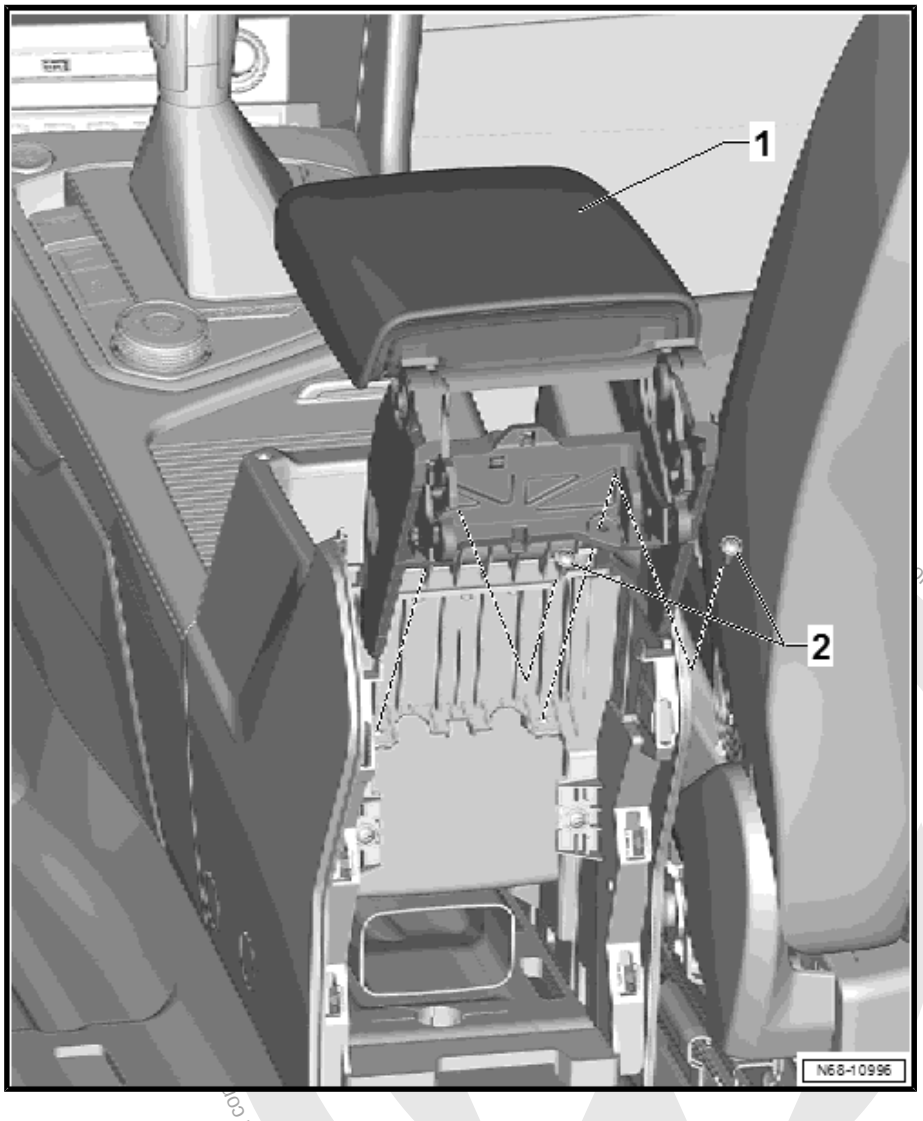
4.1 Assembly overview - front centre armrest

1 - Front centre armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 58

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 1.5 Nm



4.2 Removing and installing front centre armrest

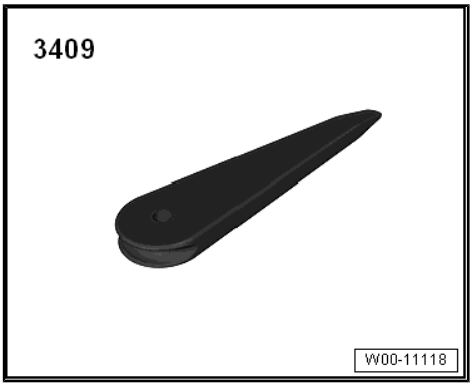
Country-specific version: Should the centre armrest become locked in an accident, its functionality remains intact.

In this case, remove rear centre console ⇒ page 46 and release centre armrest.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

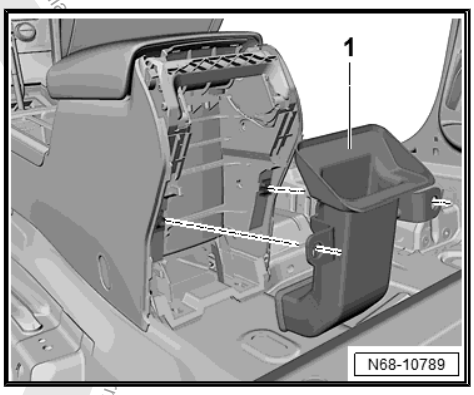
♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



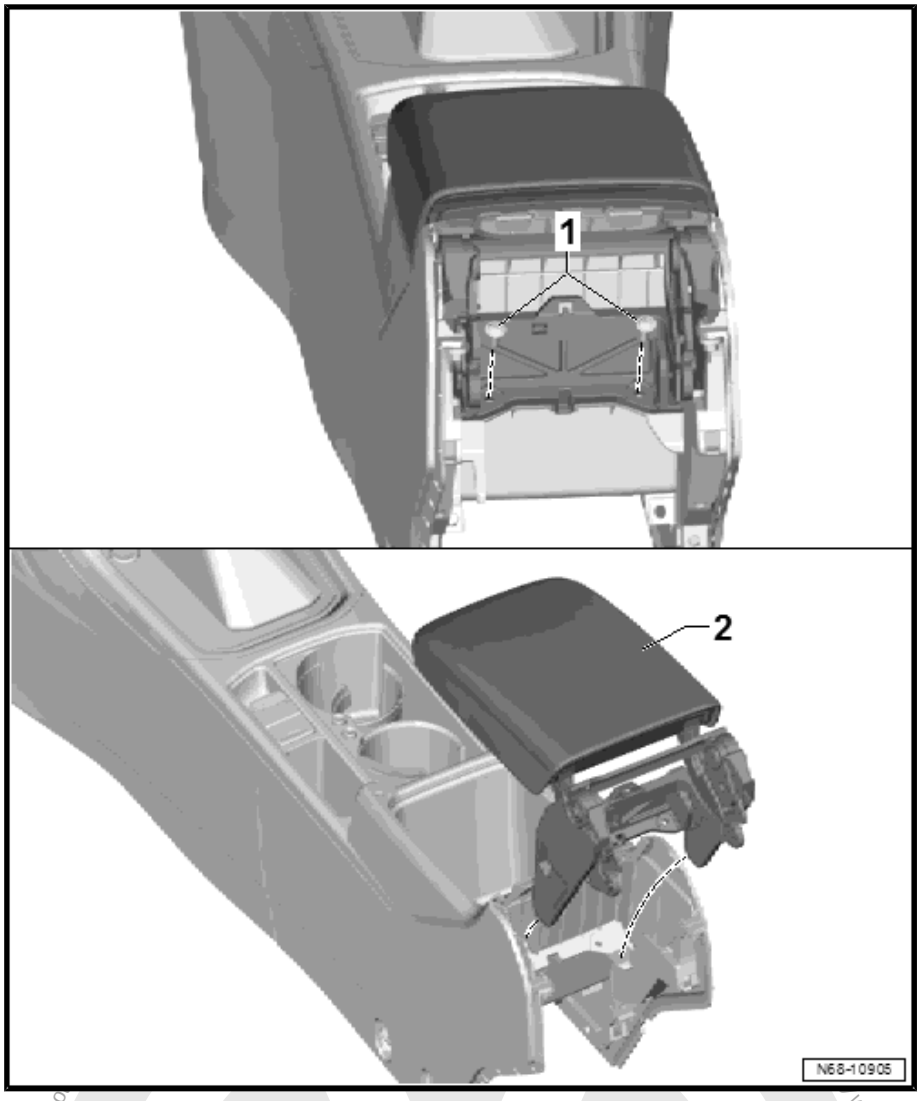
Removing

– Remove trim at rear of centre console ⇒ page 46 .

– Remove air duct -1- for rear centre console vent ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct; Assembly overview - air duct and air distribution in passenger compartment .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Unscrew 2 bolts -1- for centre armrest.
– Pull centre armrest -2- upwards out of centre console.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Torque settings

◆ ⇒ “4.1 Assembly overview - front centre armrest”, page 58

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We reserve all rights with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

5 On inside

⇒ “5.1 Assembly overview - interior mirror”, page 61

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror”, page 64

5.1 Assembly overview - interior mirror

⇒ “5.1.1 Assembly overview - manually operated anti-dazzle interior mirror”, page 61

⇒ “5.1.2 Assembly overview - manually operated anti-dazzle interior mirror, with humidity sender G355 ”, page 62

⇒ “5.1.3 Assembly overview - automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror with rain and light sensor G397 ”, page 62

⇒ “5.1.4 Assembly overview - interior mirror with front camera for driver assist systems R242 ”, page 64

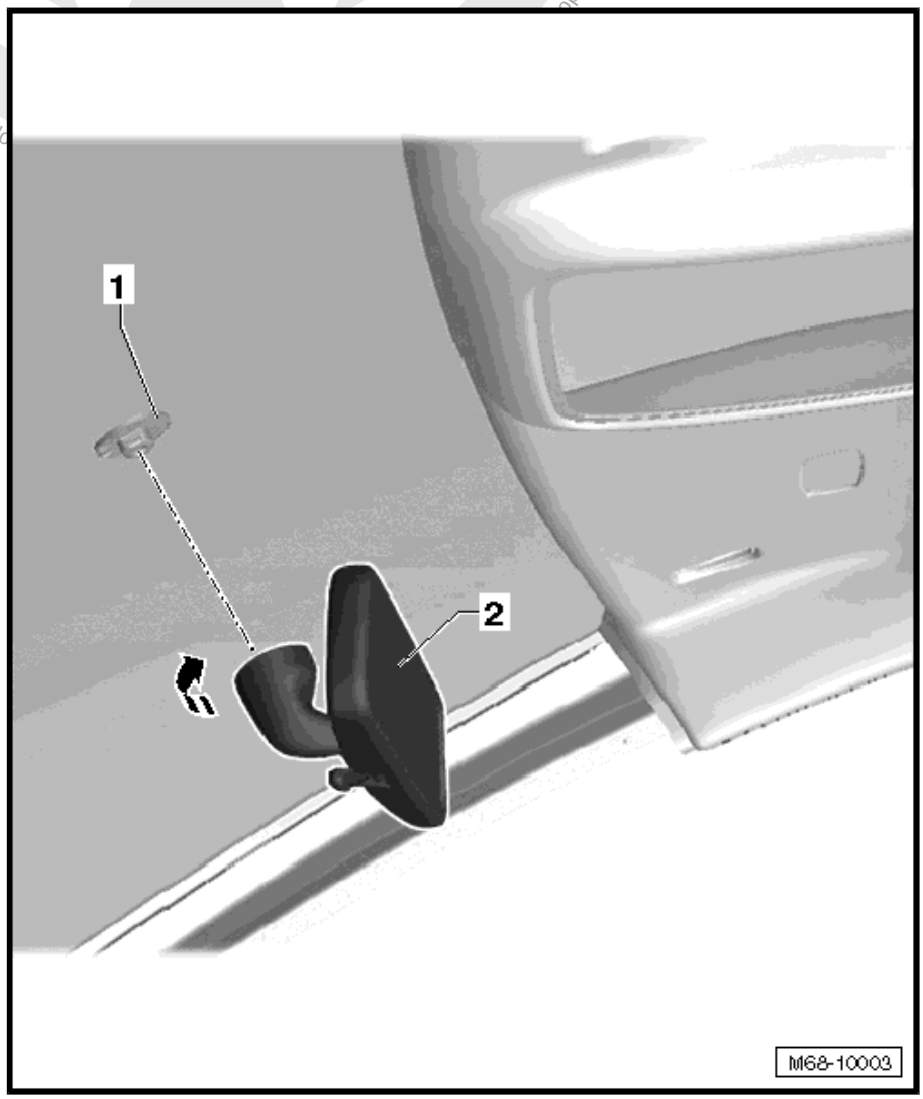
5.1.1 Assembly overview - manually operated anti-dazzle interior mirror

1 - Support plate

- ❑ For interior mirror
- ❑ Glued to windscreen
- ❑ Can be reattached to windscreen if detached
- ❑ Materials for attaching retaining plate: Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - On inside

- ❑ Manually operated
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 64



Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

5.1.2 Assembly overview - manually operated anti-dazzle interior mirror, with humidity sender - G355-

1 - Cable guide cover

2 - On inside

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 65

3 - Front cover

- ❑ For mirror base

4 - Spring clip

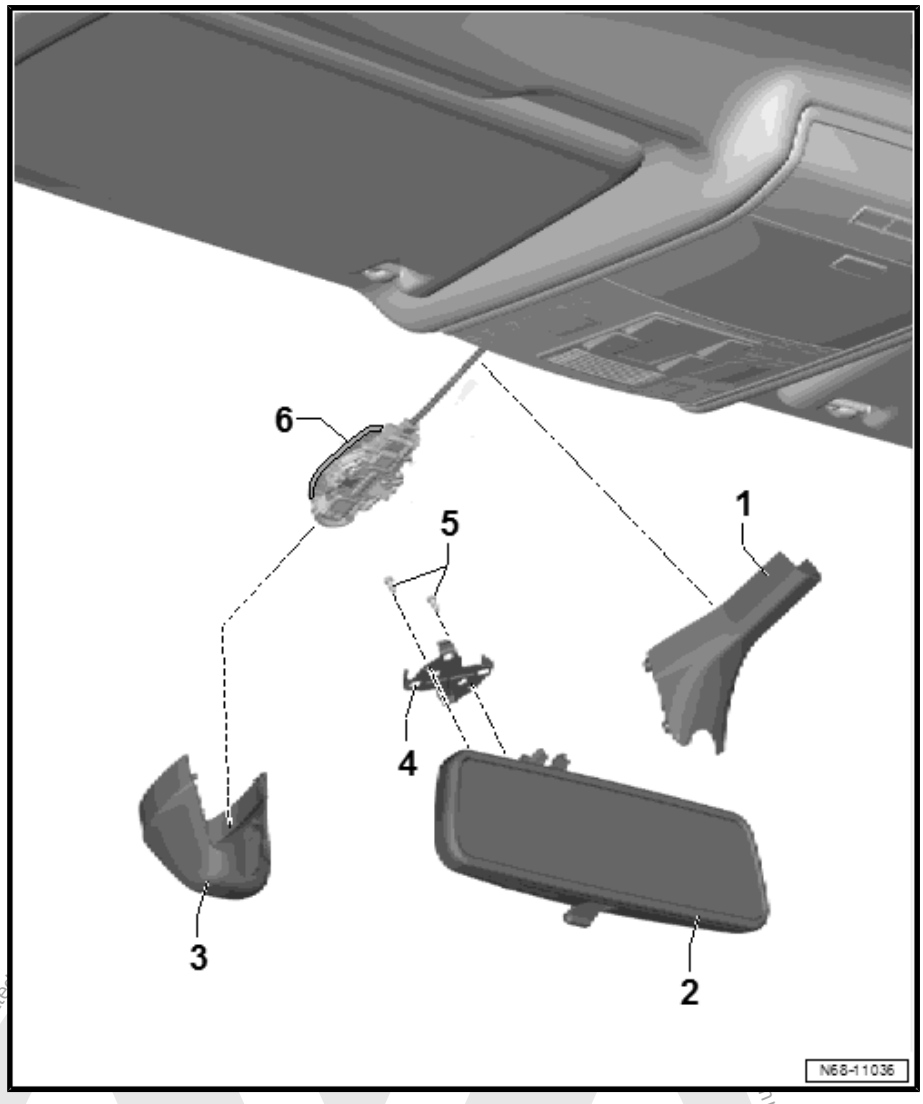
- ❑ Always renew spring clip after removal of interior mirror
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

5 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

6 - Support plate

- ❑ For interior mirror.
- ❑ Glued to windscreen
- ❑ Can be reattached to windscreen if detached
- ❑ Materials for attaching retaining plate: Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



5.1.3 Assembly overview - automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror with rain and light sensor - G397-

Optionally with main beam assist

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
No liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1 - Cable guide cover

2 - On inside

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing

3 - Front cover

- ❑ For mirror base

4 - Spring clip

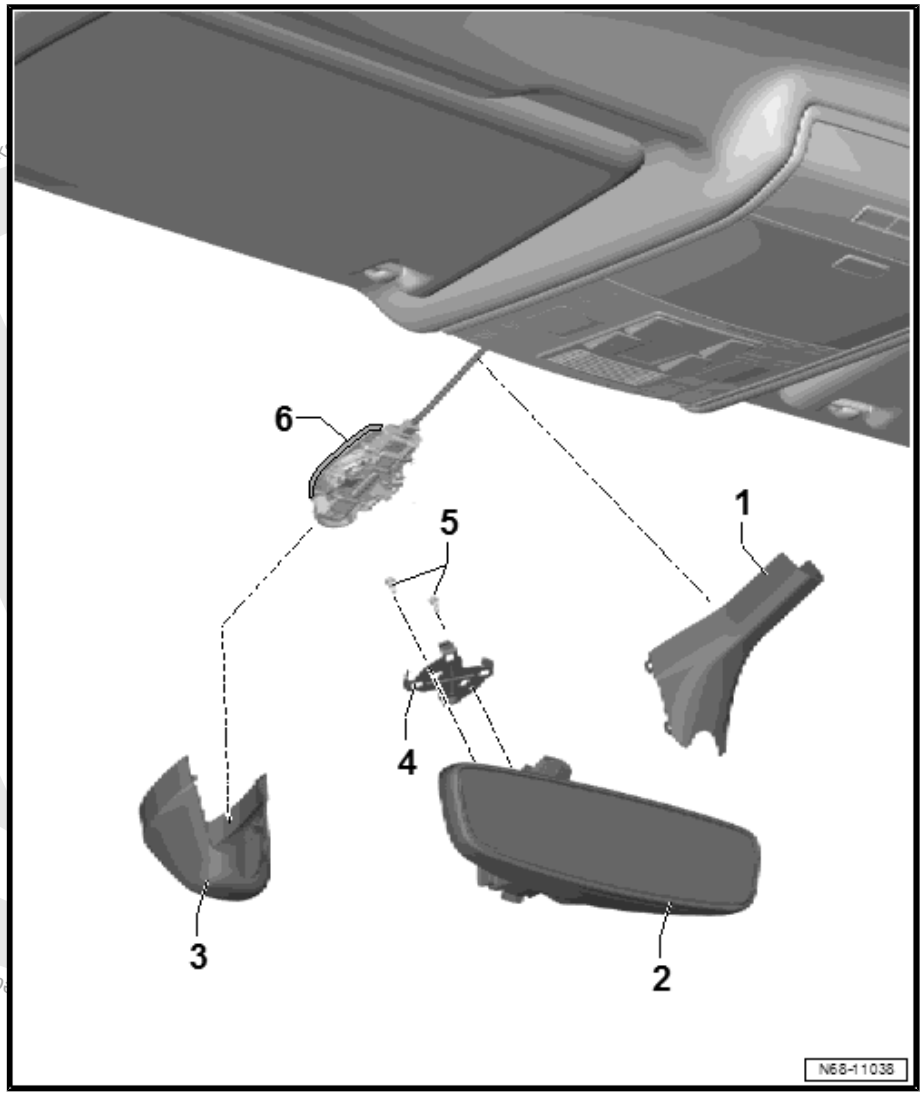
- ❑ Always renew spring clip after removal of interior mirror
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

5 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

6 - Support plate

- ❑ For interior mirror.
- ❑ Glued to windscreen
- ❑ Can be reattached to windscreen if detached
- ❑ Materials for attaching retaining plate: Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Distributed unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Reproduction in parts or whole is not permitted.

5.1.4 Assembly overview - interior mirror with front camera for driver assist systems - R242-

1 - Cover for front camera

2 - Cover at front right

- ❑ For mirror base

3 - Interior mirror with spring clip

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70

4 - Spring clip

- ❑ Always renew spring clip after removal of interior mirror
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

5 - Bolts

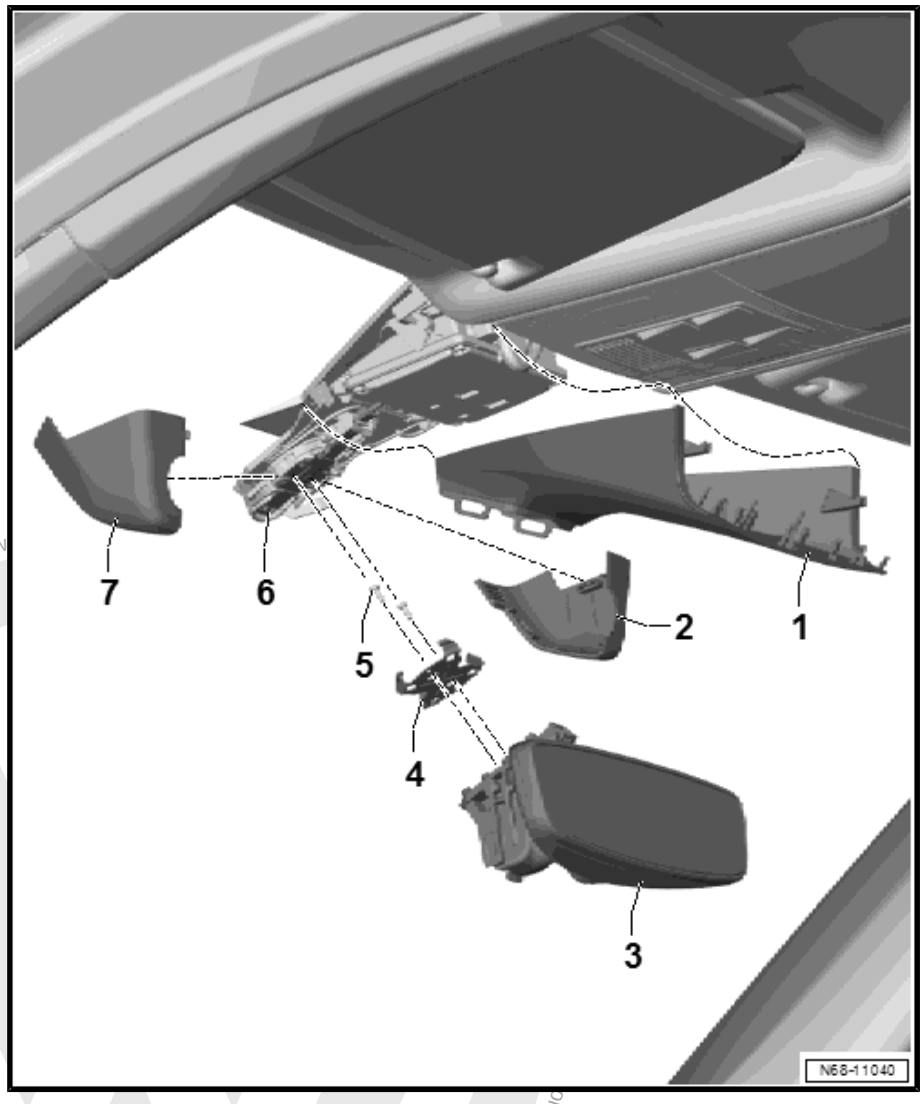
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

6 - Rain and light sensor - G397-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen wiper system; Removing and installing rain and light sensor .

7 - Cover at front left

- ❑ For mirror base



5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror

⇒ "5.2.1 Removing and installing manually operated anti-dazzle interior mirror", page 64

⇒ "5.2.2 Removing and installing manually operated anti-dazzle interior mirror with humidity sender G355 ", page 65

⇒ "5.2.3 Removing and installing automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror with rain and light sensor G397 ", page 68

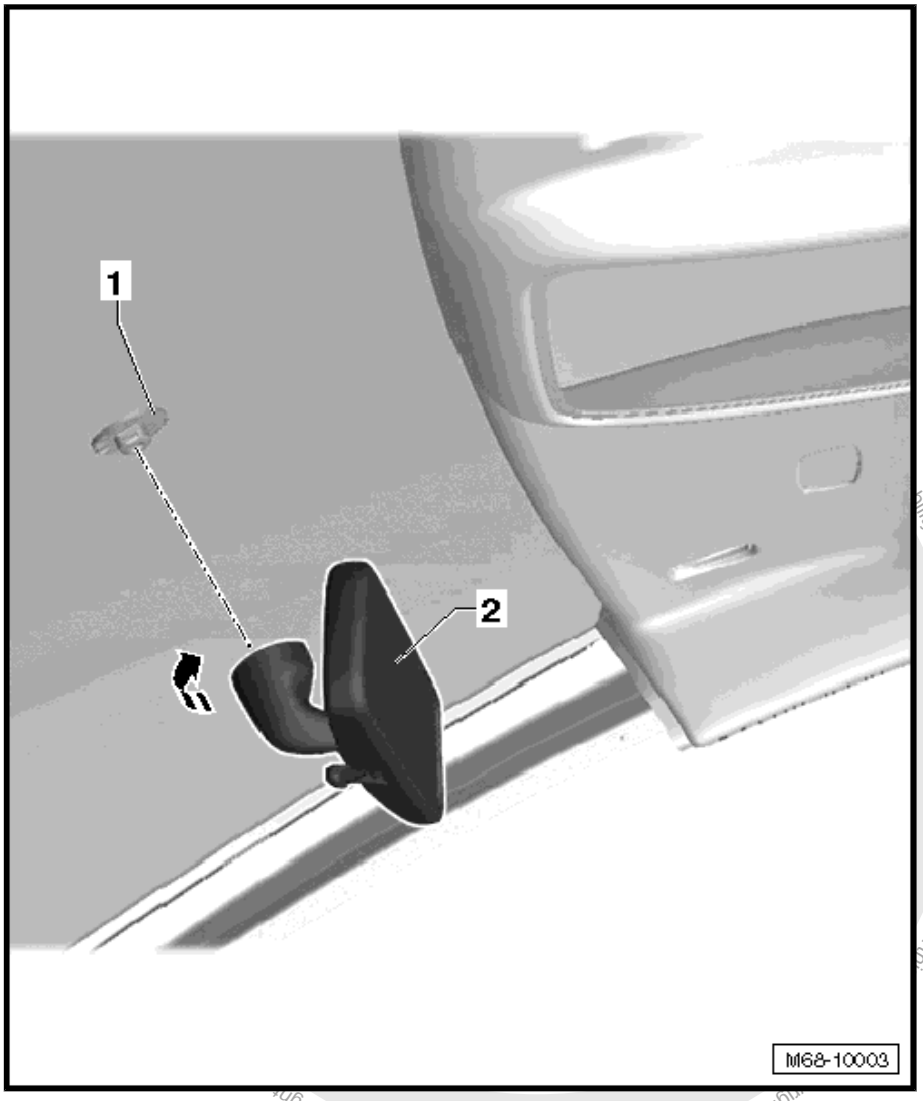
⇒ "5.2.4 Removing and installing interior mirror with front camera for driver assist systems R242 ", page 70

5.2.1 Removing and installing manually operated anti-dazzle interior mirror

Removing

– Turn interior mirror -2- anti-clockwise -arrow- by 90° ($^1/_4$ turn).

Printed by a licensed user authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is forbidden. No liability for information in this document.



– Remove interior mirror -2- from glued-on retaining plate -1-.

Installing

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.

5.2.2 Removing and installing manually operated anti-dazzle interior mirror with humidity sender - G355-

Note

- *Renew the spring clip each time the interior mirror has been removed ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*
- *Make sure that the components are from the same supplier.*

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ...ility with respect to the correctness of information in th...

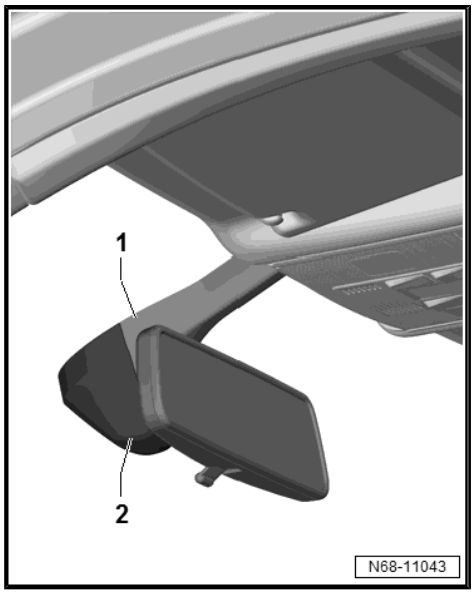
Removing

– Switch off ignition.

– Press the cover, cable conduit, -1- slightly inwards at the sides, in the transitional area leading to the cover -2- and carefully push in direction of moulded headliner.

– Remove cap, cable duct, -1-.

– Slightly bend cover -2- outwards at the sides and pull downwards off mirror.



– Insert screwdriver -1- or drift with a diameter of exactly 4.5 mm into gap -arrow-.

Caution

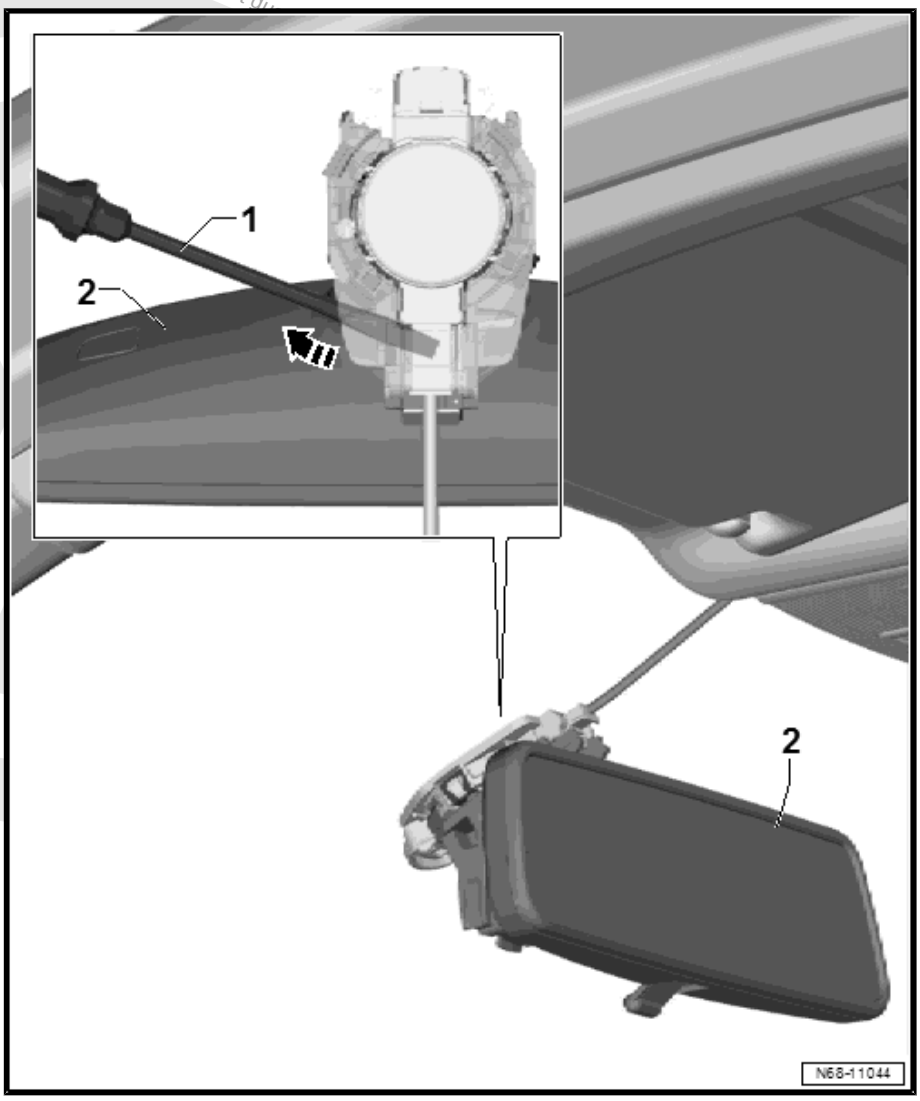
When performing the following step, ensure that the screwdriver/drift is inserted while turning but do not use as a lever.

– Turn interior mirror -2- at mirror base anti-clockwise by approx. 20° -arrow-.

– Pull off interior mirror -2- downwards.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not g

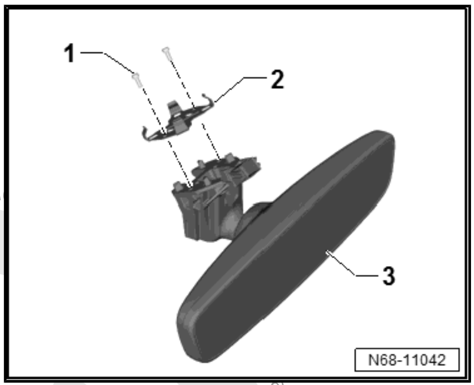


Installing

Note

- *Renew the spring clip each time the interior mirror has been removed ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*
- *Make sure that the components are from the same supplier.*

– Unscrew two bolts -1-.



– Replace spring clip -2- on interior mirror -3- by a new part.
– Fit interior mirror turned by 20° in anti-clockwise direction onto retaining plate.

Note

Make sure that the mirror is aligned parallel to the retaining plate.

– Turn mirror clockwise until it audibly engages in retaining plate.

Continue installation in reverse order of removal.

Installation tips: for example tightening torques, renewing components
⇒ “5.1.2 Assembly overview - manually operated anti-dazzle interior mirror, with humidity sender G355 ”, page 62

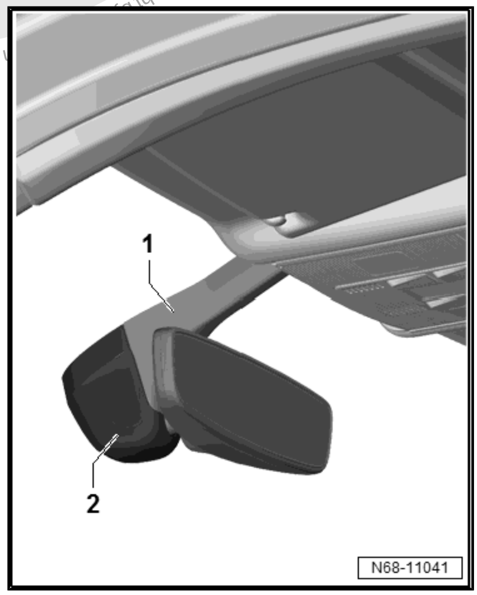
5.2.3 Removing and installing automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror with rain and light sensor -G397-

Note

- ♦ *Renew the spring clip each time the interior mirror has been removed ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*
- ♦ *Make sure that the components are from the same supplier.*

Removing

– Switch off ignition.
– Press the cover, cable conduit, -1- slightly inwards at the sides, in the transitional area leading to the cover -2- and carefully push in direction of moulded headliner.
– Remove cap, cable duct, -1-.
– Slightly bend cover -2- outwards at the sides and pull downwards off mirror.



– Release and disconnect connector -2- on interior mirror.
– Insert screwdriver -1- or drift with a diameter of exactly 4.5 mm into gap.

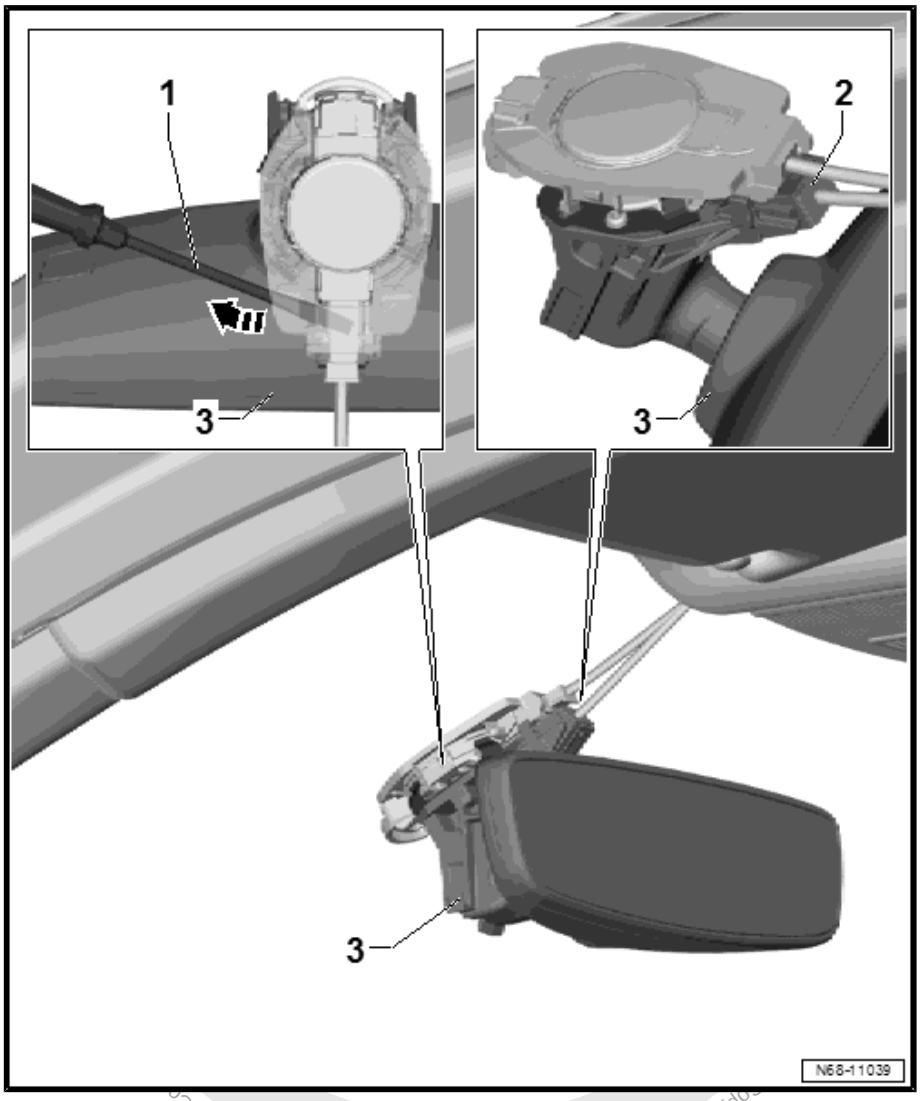
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Caution

When performing the following step, ensure that the screwdriver/drift is inserted while turning but do not use as a lever.

– Turn interior mirror -3- at mirror base anti-clockwise by approx. 20° -arrow-.

– Pull off interior mirror -3- downwards.



Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

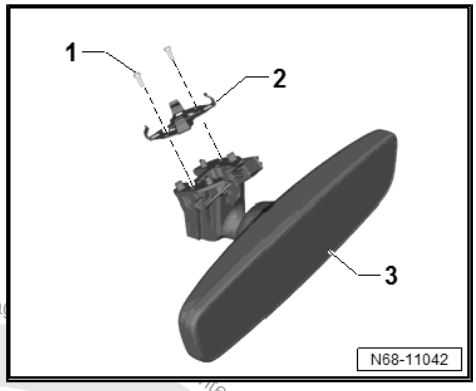
Installing

Note

- *Renew the spring clip each time the interior mirror has been removed ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*
- *Make sure that the components are from the same supplier.*

– Unscrew two bolts -1-.

– Replace spring clip -2- on interior mirror -3- by a new part.
– Fit interior mirror turned by 20° in anti-clockwise direction onto retaining plate.



Note

Make sure that the mirror is aligned parallel to the retaining plate.

– Turn mirror clockwise until it audibly engages in retaining plate.

Continue installation in reverse order of removal.

Installation tips: for example tightening torques, renewing components

⇒ "5.1.3 Assembly overview - automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror with rain and light sensor G397 ", page 62

5.2.4 Removing and installing interior mirror with front camera for driver assist systems - R242-

Note

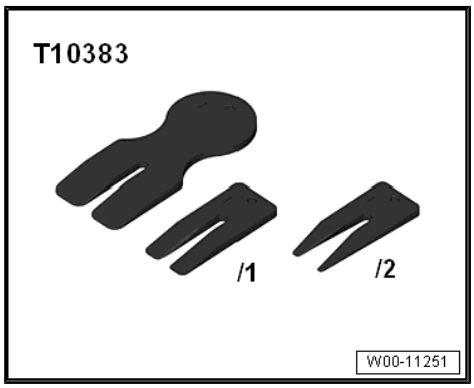
- *Renew the spring clip each time the interior mirror has been removed ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*
- *Make sure that the components are from the same supplier.*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



- Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Switch off ignition.

– Using wedge - T10383/1- -1-, unclip cover for front camera -2- from catches in front section of roof console.

– Carefully push cover for front camera -2- slightly downwards using wedge -1-.

– This action will result in a gap between installed mirror base covers -3- and -4-, -arrows A and B-.

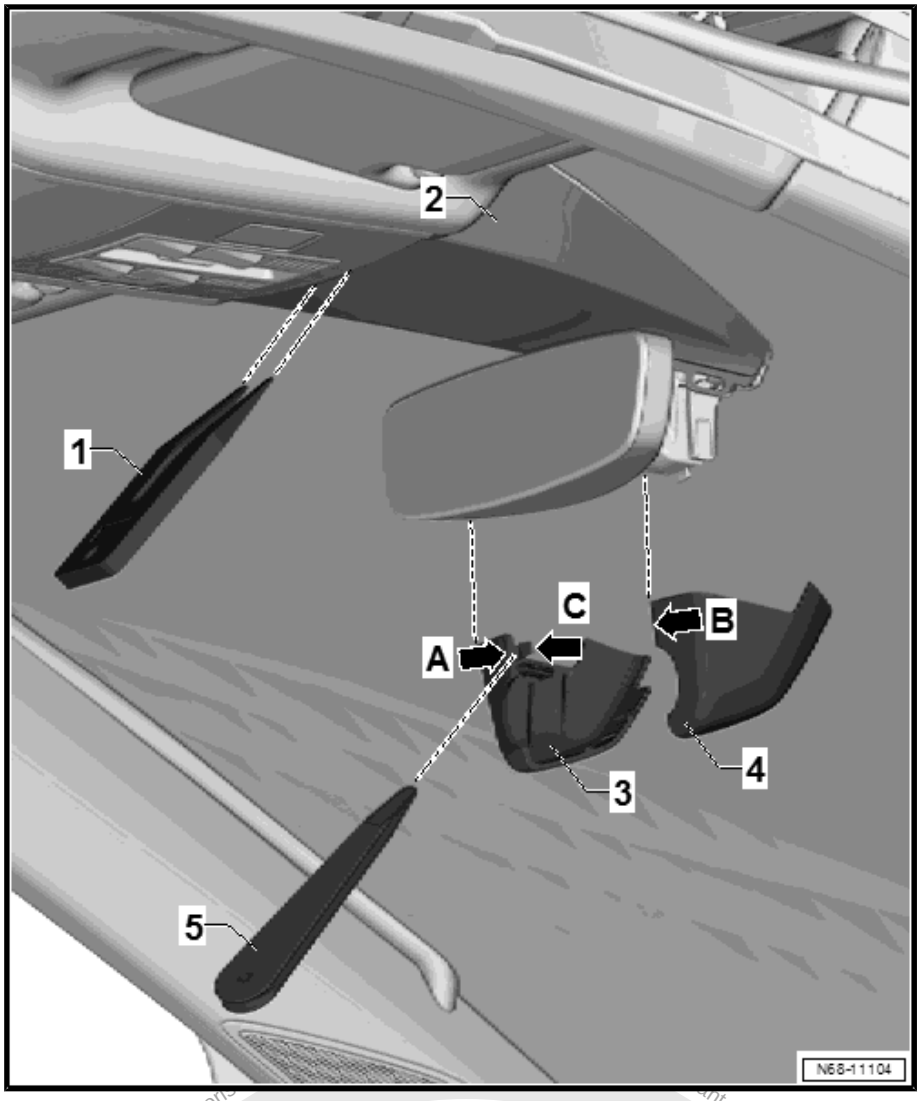
– Using removal wedge - 3409- , push locking tab -C- of left mirror base cover -3-.

– Remove right mirror base cover -4- first.

– Then remove left mirror base cover -3-.

– Remove cover for front camera -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



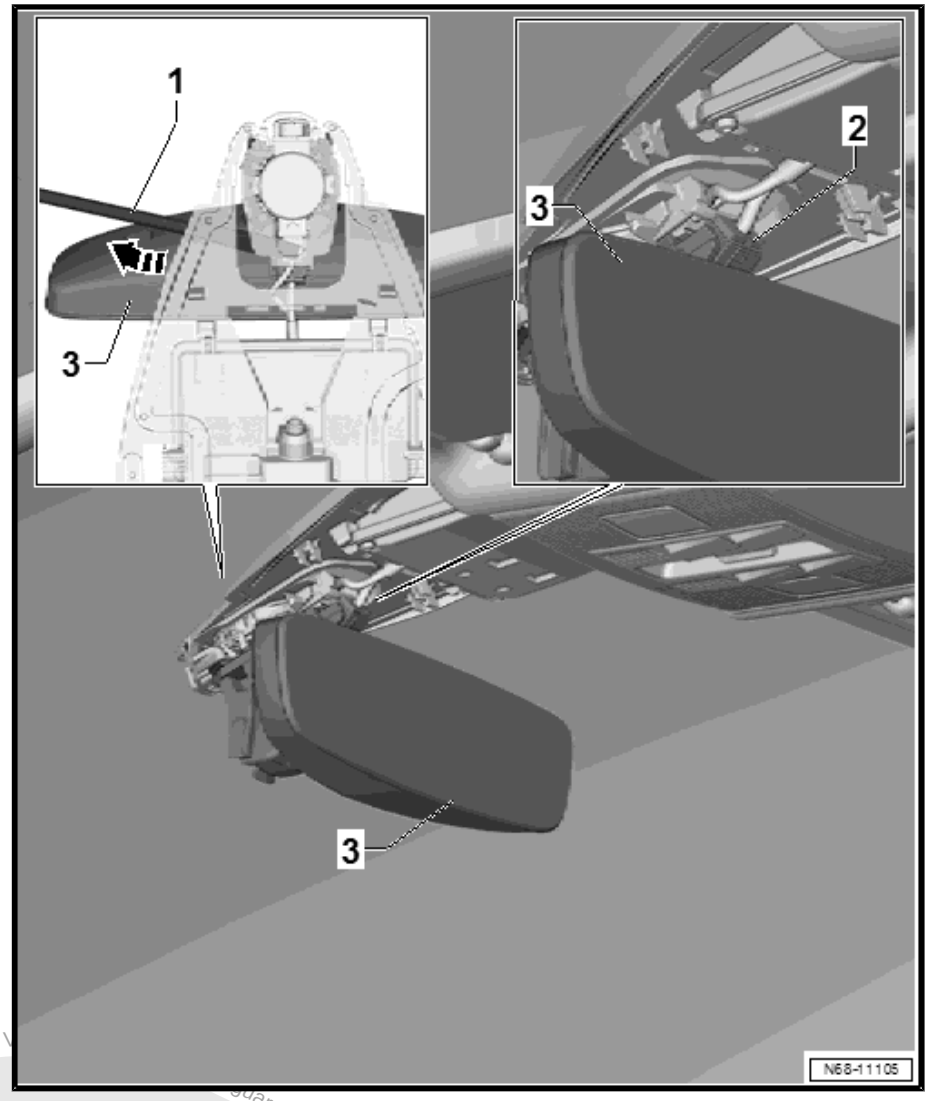
– Release and disconnect connector -2- on interior mirror.
– Insert screwdriver -1- or drift with a diameter of exactly 4.5 mm into gap.

Caution

When performing the following step, ensure that the screwdriver/drift is inserted while turning but do not use as a lever.

– Turn interior mirror -3- at mirror base anti-clockwise by approx. 20° -arrow-.
– Pull off interior mirror -3- downwards.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Installing

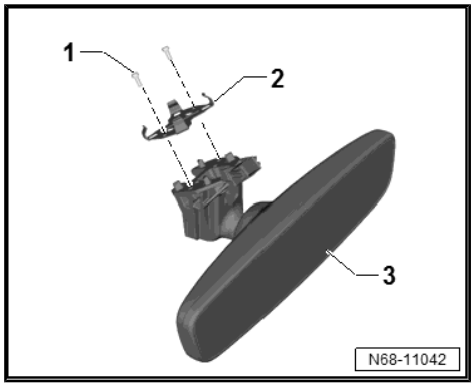
Note

- *Renew the spring clip each time the interior mirror has been removed ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*
- *Make sure that the components are from the same supplier.*

– Unscrew two bolts -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Replace spring clip -2- on interior mirror -3- by a new part.
– Fit interior mirror turned by 20° in anti-clockwise direction onto retaining plate.



Note

Make sure that the mirror is aligned parallel to the retaining plate.

– Turn mirror clockwise until it audibly engages in retaining plate.

Continue installation in reverse order of removal.

Installation tips: for example tightening torques, renewing components

⇒ “5.1.4 Assembly overview - interior mirror with front camera for driver assist systems R242 ”, page 64

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

69 – Passenger protection

1 Seat belts

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points”, page 75

⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt”, page 78

⇒ “1.3 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt”, page 79

⇒ “1.4 Assembly overview - rear centre three-point seat belt”, page 81

⇒ “1.5 Assembly overview - front belt buckle”, page 82

⇒ “1.6 Assembly overview - rear belt buckle”, page 83

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing front three-point seat belt”, page 83

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt”, page 86

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing front belt guide”, page 88

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing front belt end fitting”, page 89

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing rear outer belt end fitting”, page 89

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing rear centre belt end anchor”, page 90

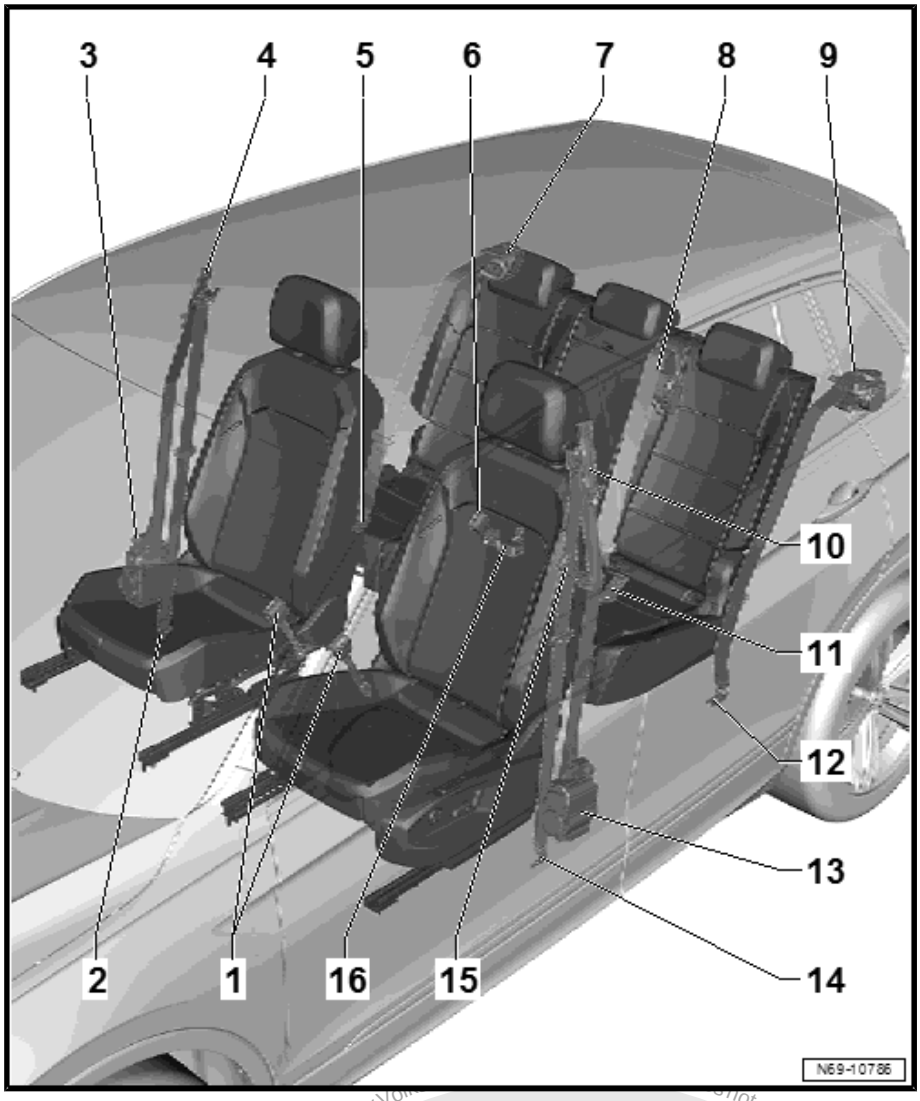
⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing belt height adjuster”, page 90

⇒ “1.14 Removing and installing front belt buckle”, page 92

⇒ “1.15 Removing and installing rear belt buckle”, page 93

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorized use, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Front belt buckles

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 82
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 92

2 - Front belt end anchor

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 78
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 89

3 - Belt inertia reel

- ❑ With front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- and control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855- .
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 78
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 83

4 - Belt height adjustment

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 78
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 90

5 - Rear outer belt end anchor

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 79
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 89

6 - Rear outer belt buckle

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 83
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 93

7 - Belt inertia reel

- ❑ For rear outer three-point seat belt.
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 79
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 86

8 - Belt inertia reel

- ❑ For rear centre three-point seat belt.
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 81
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 88

9 - Belt inertia reel

- ❑ For rear outer three-point seat belt.
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 79
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 86

10 - Belt height adjustment

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 78
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 90

11 - Rear centre belt end fitting

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 81
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 90

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

12 - Rear outer belt end anchor

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 79
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 89

13 - Belt inertia reel

- ❑ For front three-point seat belt
- ❑ With driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- and control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854- .
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 78
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 83

14 - Front belt end anchor

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 78
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 89

15 - Rear outer belt buckle

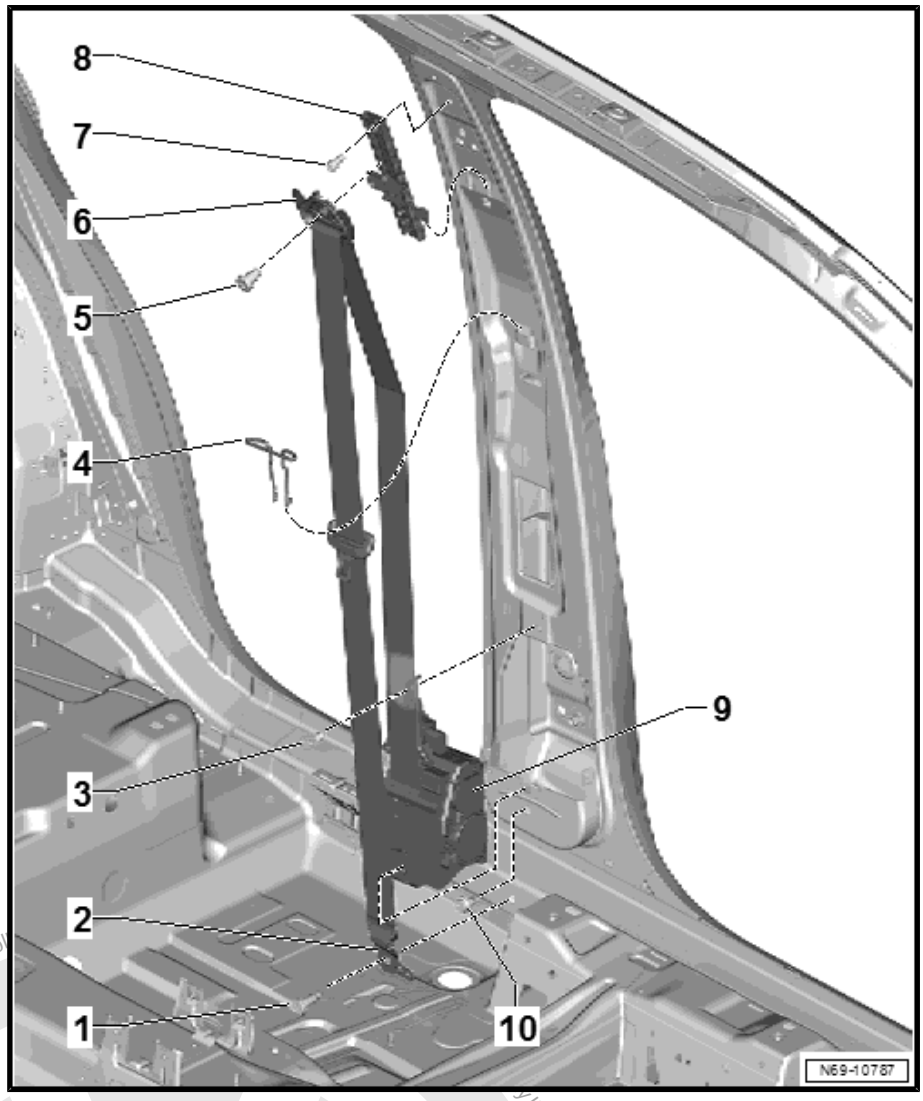
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 83
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 93

16 - Rear centre belt buckle

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 83
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 94

Protected by Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1.2 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt



1 - Bolt

- ❑ If removed due to an accident with seat belt fastened, renew bolt.
- ❑ 40 Nm

2 - Belt end fitting

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 89

3 - Clip

- ❑ Only fitted in vehicles with reversible belt tensioner

4 - Front belt guide

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 88
- ❑ Observe correct installation position when installing.

5 - Bolt

- ❑ If removed due to an accident with seat belt fastened, renew bolt.
- ❑ 40 Nm

6 - Belt anchor

- ❑ Must move to vertical position or operated position on its own after bolt has been tightened.

7 - Bolt

- ❑ If removed due to an accident with seat belt fastened, renew bolt.
- ❑ 20 Nm

8 - Belt height adjustment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 90
- ❑ Always renew after belt tensioner has deployed with seat belt fastened.

9 - Belt inertia reel

- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- and control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854- .
- ❑ Front passenger side: with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- and control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855- .
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 83
- ❑ On vehicles with reversible belt tensioner, a test procedure must be performed in ⇒ Guided Fault Finding after the seat belt has been renewed.

10 - Bolt

- ❑ If removed due to an accident with seat belt fastened, renew bolt.
- ❑ 40 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1.3 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt

⇒ “1.3.1 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt, without belt tensioner”, page 79

⇒ “1.3.2 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt, with belt tensioner”, page 80

1.3.1 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt, without belt tensioner

1 - Belt inertia reel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 86

2 - Bolt

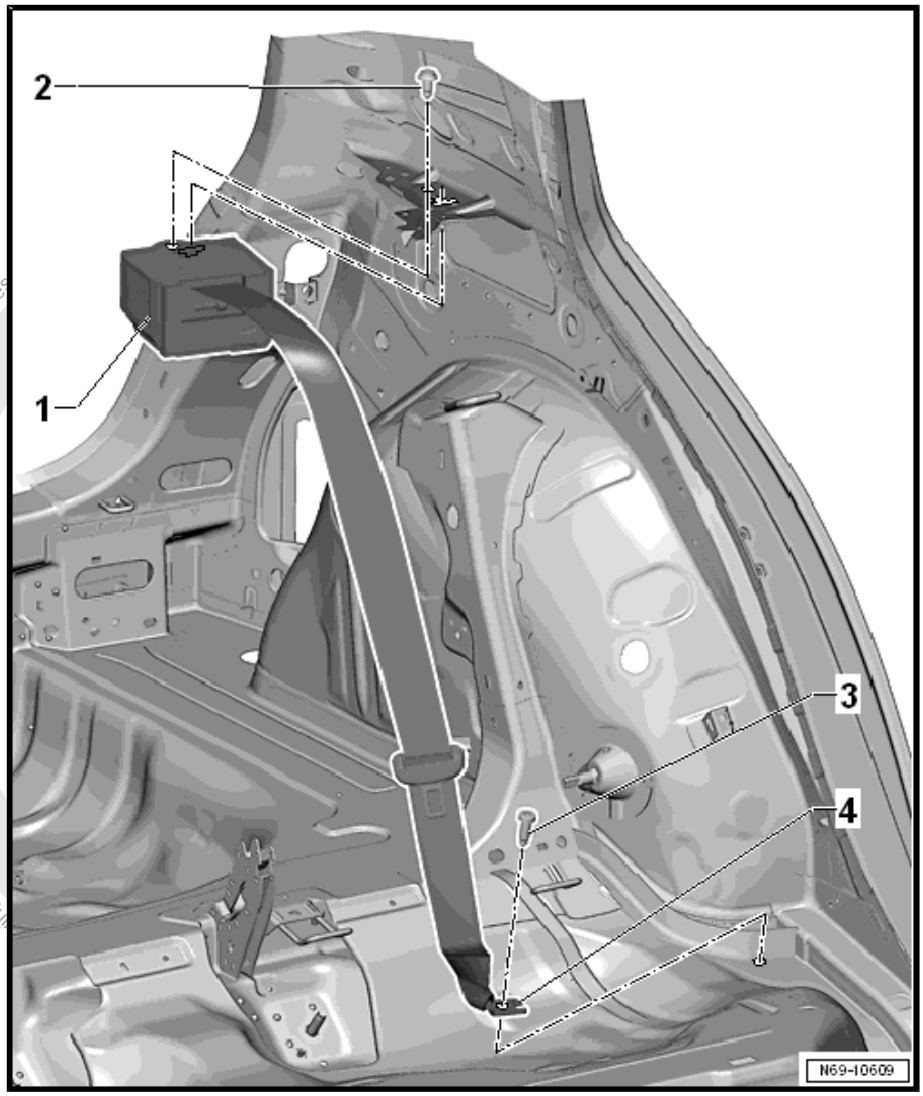
- ❑ If removed due to an accident with seat belt fastened, renew bolt.
- ❑ 40 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ If removed due to an accident with seat belt fastened, renew bolt.
- ❑ 40 Nm

4 - Rear outer belt end anchor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 89



...ing for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless

1.3.2 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt, with belt tensioner

1 - Belt inertia reel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 87

2 - Electrical wiring harness

3 - Bolt

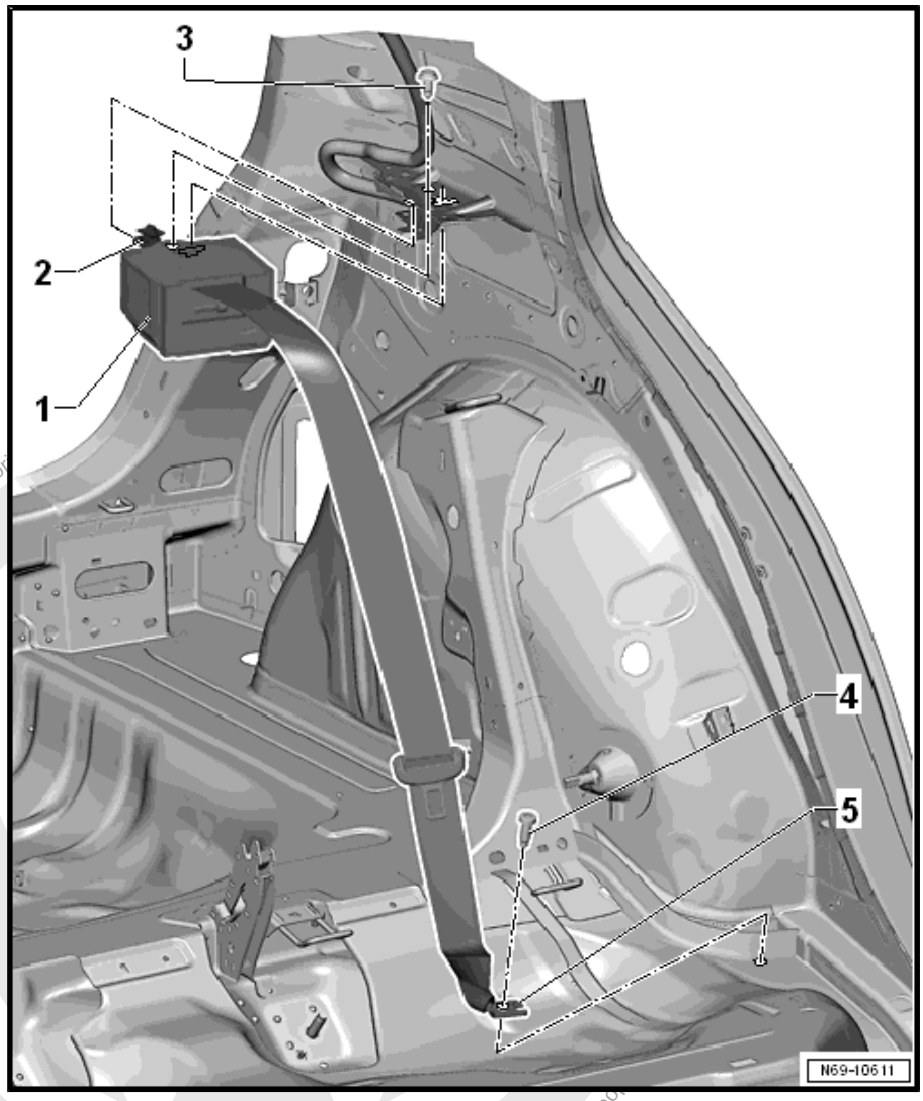
- ❑ If removed due to an accident with seat belt fastened, renew bolt.
- ❑ 40 Nm

4 - Bolt

- ❑ If removed due to an accident with seat belt fastened, renew bolt.
- ❑ 40 Nm

5 - Rear outer belt end anchor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 89



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liab

1.4 Assembly overview - rear centre three-point seat belt

1 - Rear centre belt end fitting

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 90

2 - Bolt

- ❑ If removed due to an accident with seat belt fastened, renew bolt.
- ❑ 40 Nm

3 - Nut

- ❑ Removed due to an accident with seat belt fastened, renew nut.
- ❑ 40 Nm

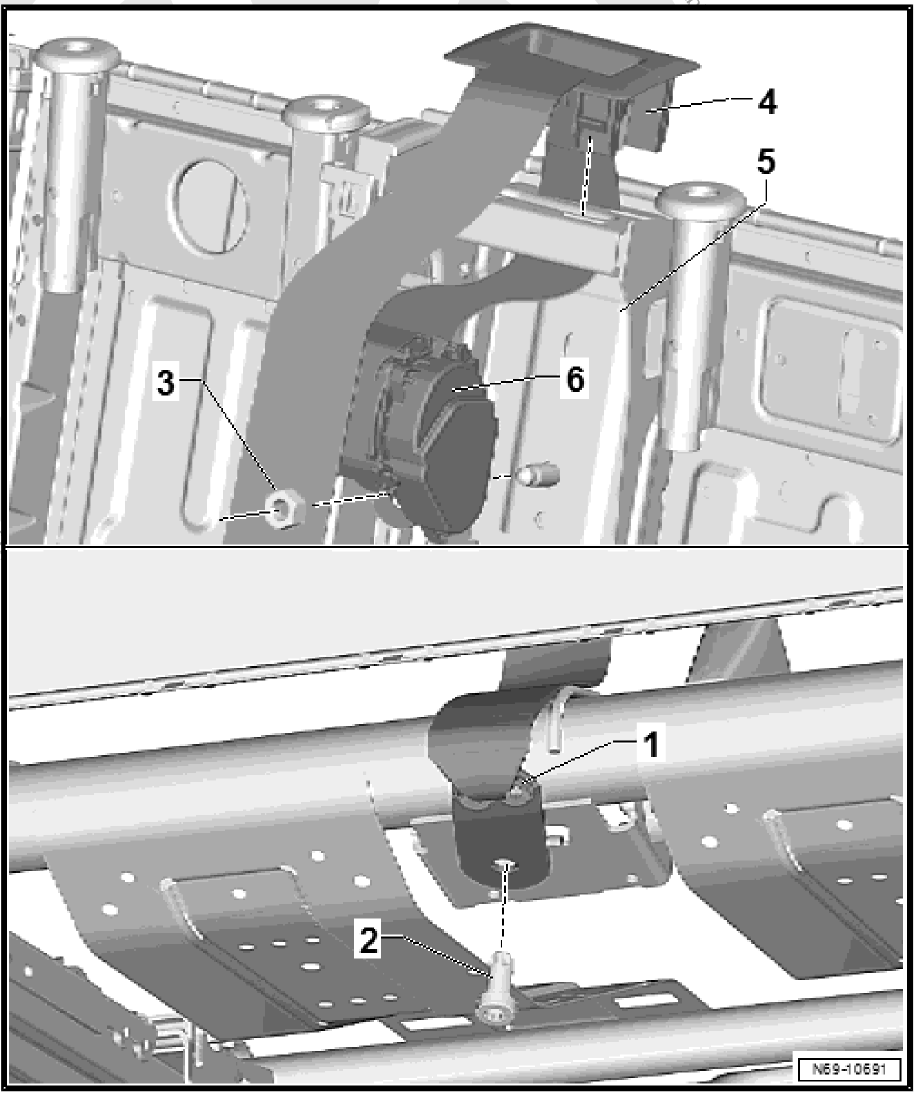
4 - Rear centre belt guide

- ❑ Renew complete belt guide if damaged.
- ❑ To remove, push locking lugs inwards on both sides and pull out belt guide.
- ❑ When installing, push in belt guide until it audibly engages.

5 - Rear left seat backrest (2/3)

6 - Belt inertia reel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 88



1.5 Assembly overview - front belt buckle

1 - Front seat

- ❑ Driver side: with driver side belt switch - E24- .
- ❑ Front passenger side: with front passenger side belt switch - E25- .
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 275
- ❑ Always renew after belt tensioner has deployed with seat belt fastened.

2 - Belt buckle

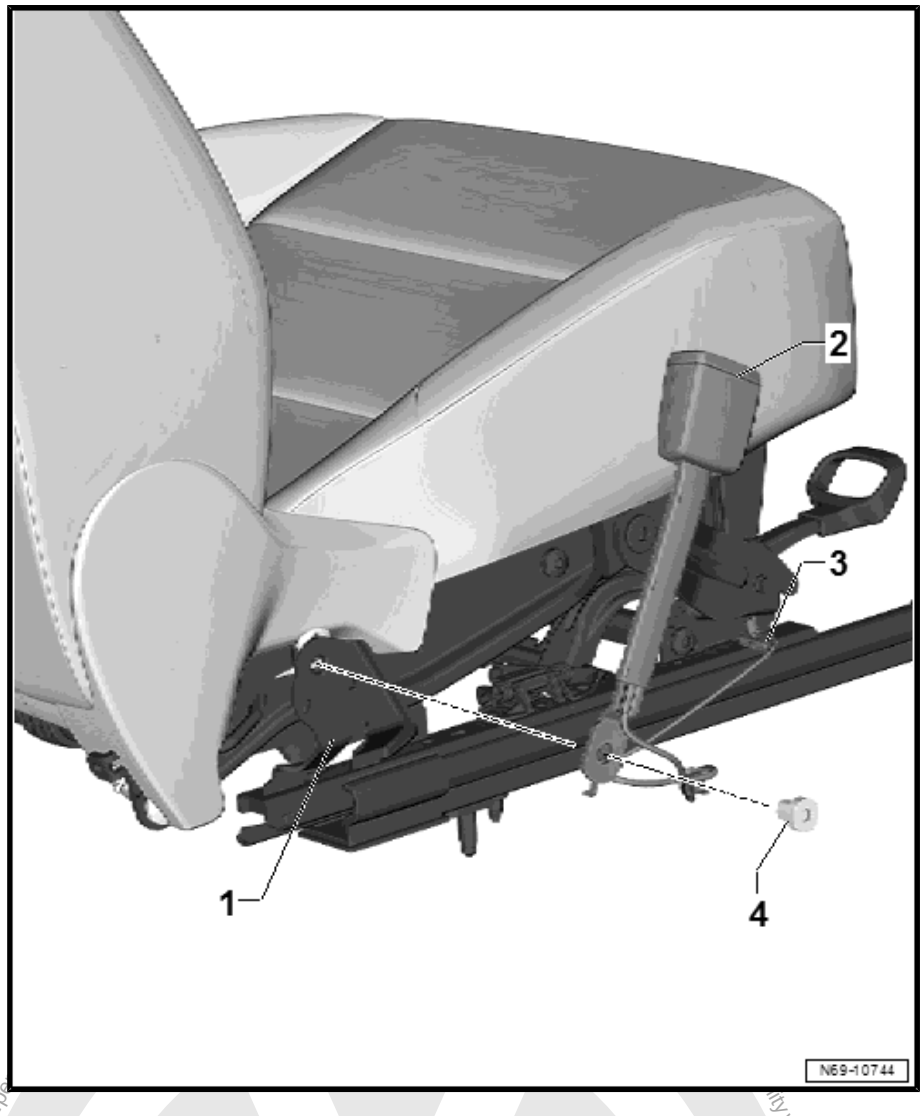
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 92

3 - Electrical wiring harness

- ❑ Only in conjunction with belt switch

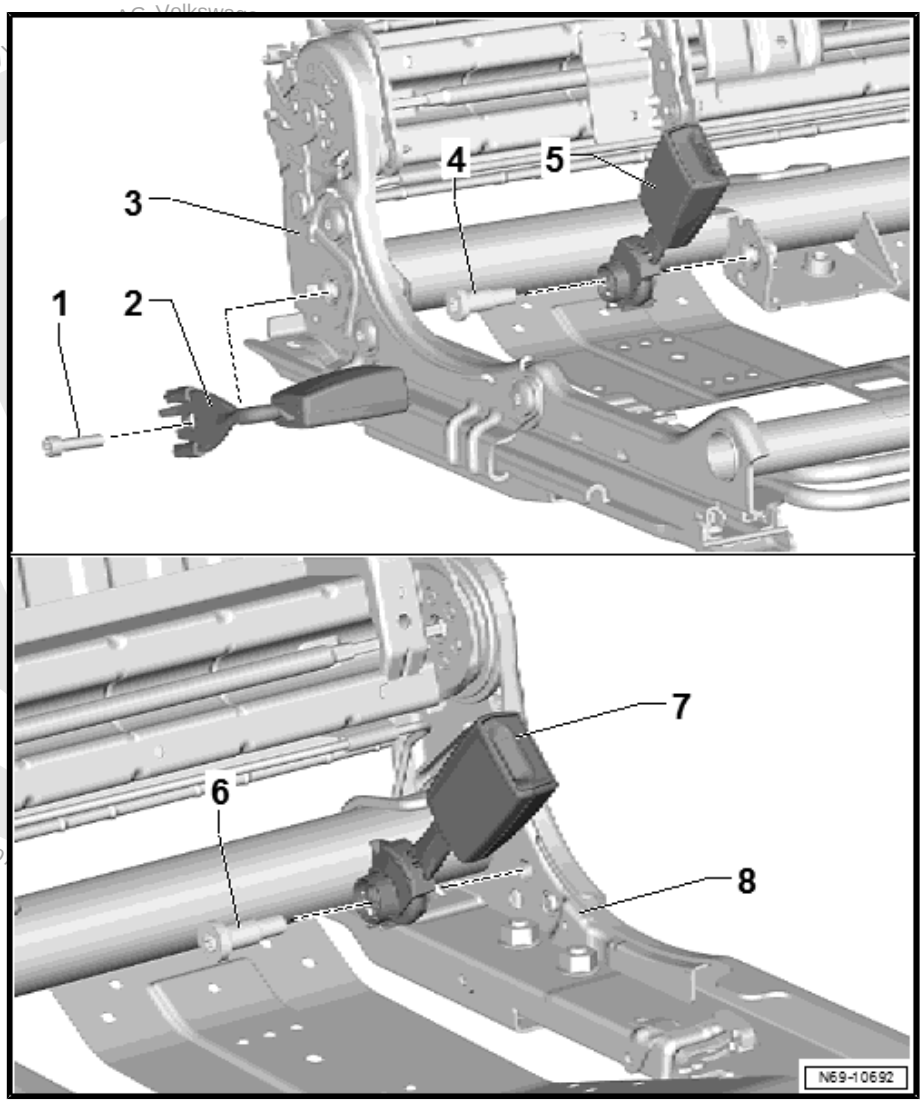
4 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew each time loosened
- ❑ 40 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1.6 Assembly overview - rear belt buckle



1 - Bolt

- ❑ If removed due to an accident with seat belt fastened, renew bolt.
- ❑ 40 Nm

2 - Centre belt buckle

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment, with rear centre belt switch - E609-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 94
- ❑ Always renew after belt tensioner has deployed with seat belt fastened.

3 - Seat frame for rear seat (2/3)

4 - Bolt

- ❑ If removed due to an accident with seat belt fastened, renew bolt.
- ❑ 40 Nm

5 - Outer belt buckle

- ❑ For left rear seat
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment, with rear belt switch, driver side - E258-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 93
- ❑ Always renew after belt tensioner has deployed with seat belt fastened.

6 - Bolt

- ❑ If removed due to an accident with seat belt fastened, renew bolt.
- ❑ 40 Nm

7 - Outer belt buckle

- ❑ For right rear seat
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment, with rear belt switch, front passenger side - E259-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 93
- ❑ Always renew after belt tensioner has deployed with seat belt fastened.

8 - Seat frame for rear seat (1/3)

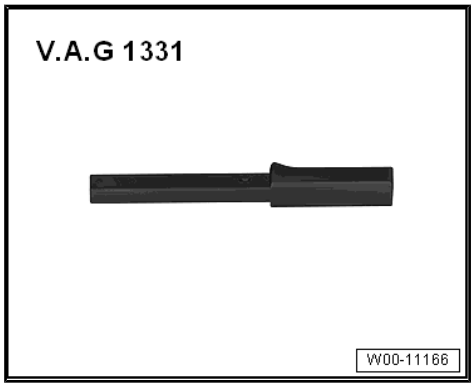
1.7 Removing and installing front three-point seat belt

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side.
Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

– Remove B-pillar trims ⇒ page 220 .

– Remove front belt end fitting ⇒ page 89 .

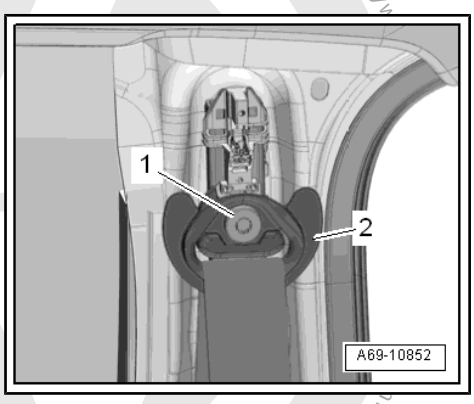
– Remove front belt guide ⇒ page 88 .

– Unscrew bolt -1-.

– Remove belt guide fitting -2- with belt webbing.

WARNING

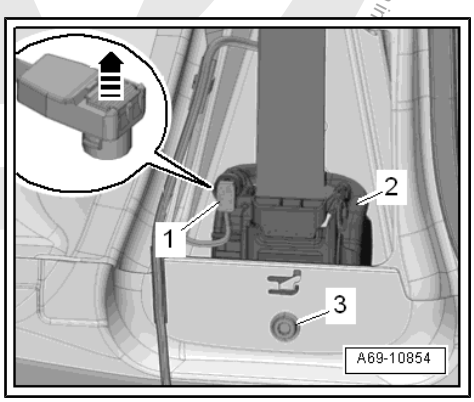
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.



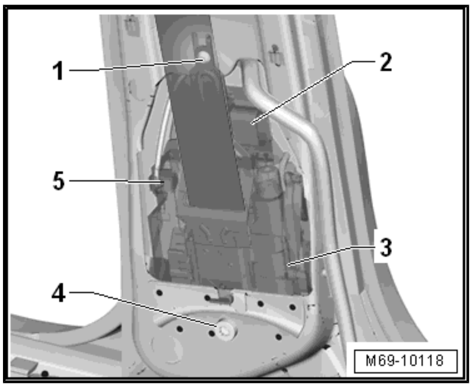
Vehicles without reversible belt tensioner

– Using a small screwdriver, release connector locking device -arrow-, and pull off connector for seat belt tensioner igniter 1 -1-.

– Unscrew bolt -3- and remove belt inertia reel -2- from mounting.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability w



Vehicles with reversible belt tensioner

– Release and pull off connectors -2- and -5-.
– Remove spreader rivet -1-.
– Unscrew bolt -4- and remove belt inertia reel -3- from mounting.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components* *⇒ page 3* *.*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. connecting the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is “electrically discharged”. To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.*

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– If parts of the belt system are removed because of an accident, the belt system bolts must be renewed.

Note

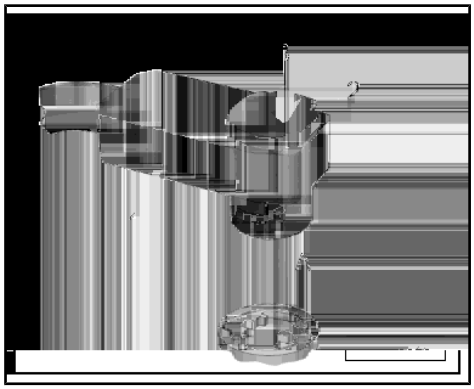
Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.

– Fit belt inertia reel ensuring that anti-rotation tab -1- engages in mounting -2- -arrow- and tighten bolt.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Connect connector -1- to igniter -arrow A-.

– Press in connector lock -2- -arrow B-. Doing so, the connector will be fully inserted into igniter and locked at the same time.



WARNING

Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.

– Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

WARNING

If the ignition has not yet been switched on after the battery has been reconnected "warning lamps in dash panel insert are off", the ignition (key or button) must only be switched on while sitting on the driver seat and with the seat set to rearmost position.

Torque settings

◆ ⇒ "1.2 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt", page 78

On vehicles with reversible belt tensioner, a test procedure must be performed in ⇒ Guided Fault Finding after the seat belt has been renewed.

1.8 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt

⇒ "1.8.1 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt, without belt tensioner", page 86

⇒ "1.8.2 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt, with belt tensioner", page 87

⇒ "1.8.3 Removing and installing rear centre three-point seat belt", page 88

1.8.1 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt, without belt tensioner

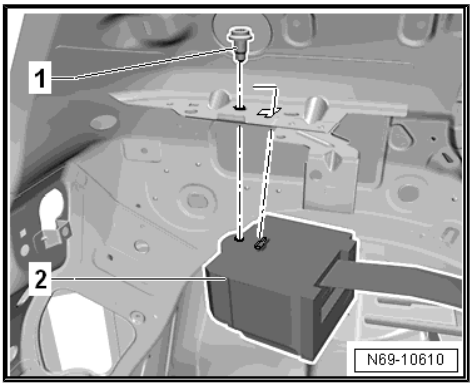
Removing

– Remove outer rear seat belt guide anchor ⇒ page 89 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Unscrew bolt -1-.

– Remove belt inertia reel -2- from mounting.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– If parts of the belt system are removed because of an accident, the belt system bolts must be renewed.

Torque settings

◆ ⇒ “1.3.1 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt, without belt tensioner”, page 79

1.8.2 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt, with belt tensioner

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

– Remove outer rear seat belt guide anchor ⇒ page 89 .

WARNING

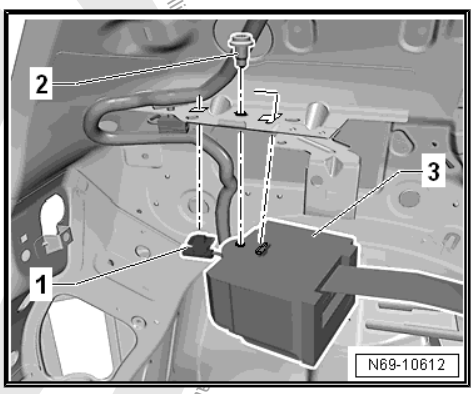
Risk of injury due to unintentional triggering!

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is “electrically discharged”. To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.*

– Disconnect wiring harness, and unclip connector -1-.

– Unscrew bolt -2-.

– Remove belt inertia reel -3- from mounting.



Installing

WARNING

- *Risk of injury due to unintentional triggering!*
- *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. connecting the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is “electrically discharged”. To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.*

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability in relation to this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Fit belt inertia reel ensuring that anti-rotation tab -1- engages in mounting -2- -arrow- and tighten bolt.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to accidental triggering of pyrotechnical components after incorrect repair (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) when battery is connected.

- ***Battery must be connected with ignition switched on.***
- ***Ensure, at the time of connecting the battery, that no other persons are inside the vehicle.***

– Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

WARNING

If the ignition has not yet been switched on after the battery has been reconnected "warning lamps in dash panel insert are off", the ignition (key or button) must only be switched on while sitting on the driver seat and with the seat set to rearmost position.

Torque settings

- ⇒ "1.3.2 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt, with belt tensioner", page 80

1.8.3 Removing and installing rear centre three-point seat belt

Removing

– Remove backrest cover with backrest padding from wide rear seat backrest (2/3) ⇒ page 366 .

– Remove rear centre belt end anchor ⇒ page 90 .

– Remove nuts -1-.

– Detach three-point seat belt -2- and remove it.

– Guide out belt webbing -3-.



Installing

– If parts of the belt system are removed because of an accident, the belt system securing bolts must be renewed.

– Fit three-point seat belt ensuring that anti-rotation tab engages in mounting and tighten nut.

Continue installation in reverse order of removal.

Torque settings

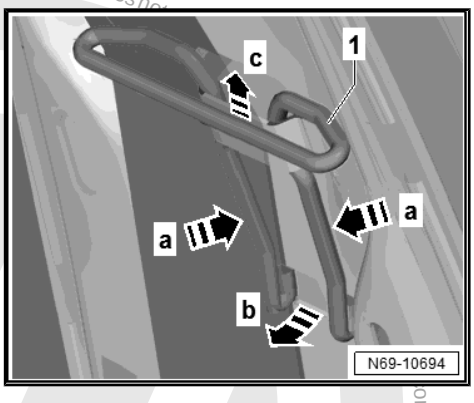
- ⇒ "1.4 Assembly overview - rear centre three-point seat belt", page 81

1.9 Removing and installing front belt guide

Removing

– Remove upper B-pillar trim ⇒ page 220 .

– Press together clip on belt guide -1- -arrows a-.
– At the same time detach belt guide -1- downwards from body -arrow b-.
– With clip pressed together, pull out belt guide -1- upwards -arrow c-.
– Thread out belt webbing, and remove belt guide -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

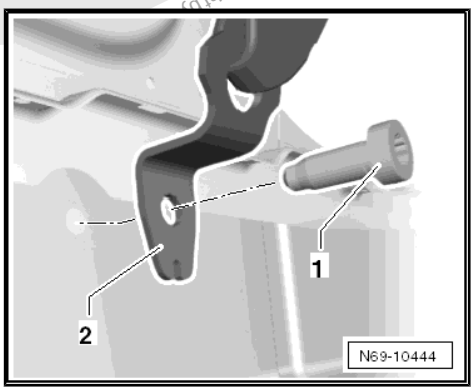
Note

Observe correct installation position of the belt guide when installing.

1.10 Removing and installing front belt end fitting

Removing

• Front seat must be positioned in foremost and highest position.
– Remove sill panel moulding at front ⇒ page 210 .
– Unscrew bolt -1- and release belt end fitting -2- from body.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

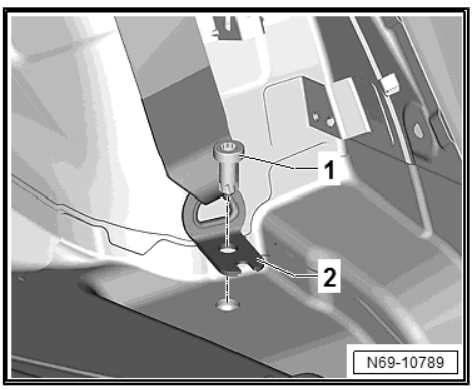
Torque settings

◆ ⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt”, page 78

1.11 Removing and installing rear outer belt end fitting

Removing

– Remove rear sill panel moulding ⇒ page 210 .
– Unscrew bolt -1- and release belt end fitting -2- from body.



Installing

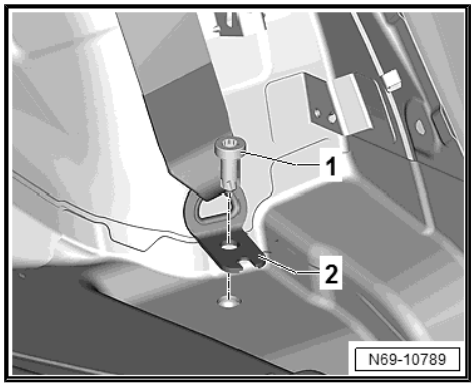
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Tighten bolt -1- on belt end fitting -2-.

– Install sill panel moulding at rear ⇒ page 210 .

Torque settings

◆ ⇒ “1.3 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt”, page 79



1.12 Removing and installing rear centre belt end anchor

Removing

– Remove rear seat (2/3) ⇒ page 325 .

– Unscrew bolt -2- on belt end fitting -1-.

– Thread belt webbing with belt end anchor out of rear seat frame -arrow-.

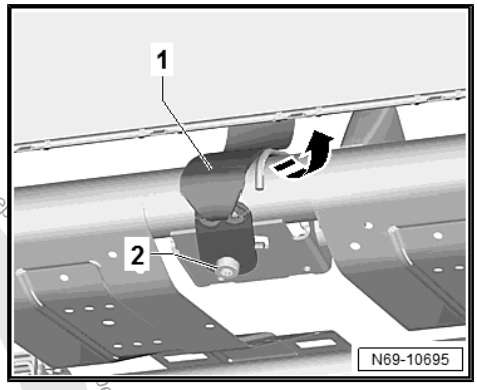
Installing

• The belt end anchor -1- must rest against the locating element on the rear seat frame.

– Tighten bolt -2- on belt end fitting -1-.

Torque settings

◆ ⇒ “1.4 Assembly overview - rear centre three-point seat belt”, page 81



1.13 Removing and installing belt height adjuster

Removing

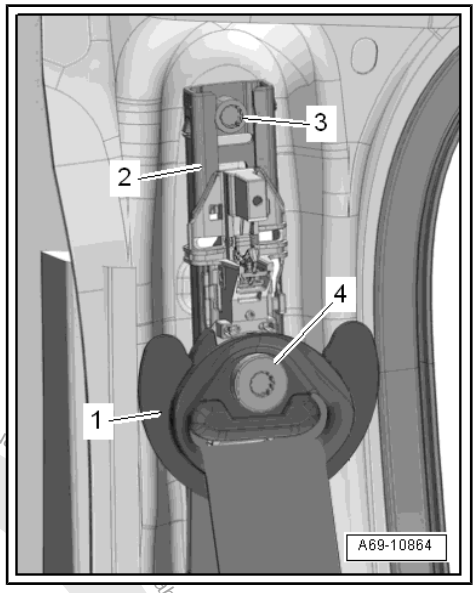
– Press belt height adjuster button and move slider of belt height adjuster to lowest position.

– Detach upper B-pillar trim ⇒ page 220 .

– Place B-pillar trim with belt webbing attached to one side.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Unscrew bolt -4-.
– Remove belt guide fitting -1- with belt webbing.
– Unscrew bolt -3-.
– Pull belt height adjuster -2- upwards off B-pillar.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– If parts of the belt system are removed because of an accident, the belt system bolts must be renewed.

Note

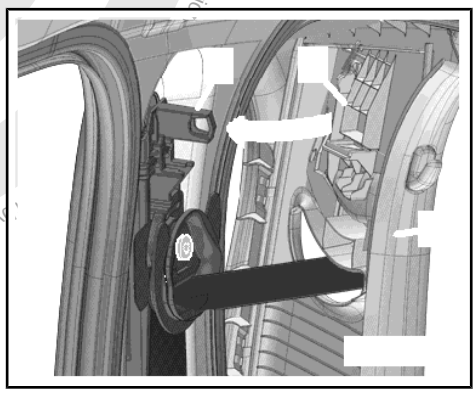
♦ *As a replacement part, belt height adjusters always come with slider for belt height adjuster set to lowest position (assembly position).*

♦ *If previously removed belt height adjusters are reinstalled, they must be moved to lowest position for installation (assembly position).*

– Attach belt height adjuster -2- on B-pillar.
– Tighten bolt -3-.
– Install belt guide fitting -1-, and tighten bolt -4-.

Note

The belt height adjuster button must not be pressed when installing the B-pillar trim.



– Initially, fit B-pillar trim -3- upwards into mounting in roof.
• Mounting -2- of sliding part on B-pillar trim must engage in retaining pin -1- on belt height adjuster -arrow-.
– If a new belt height adjuster is installed, firmly push sliding part upwards after B-pillar trim has been installed.
• This will release the installation guard of the belt height adjuster.
– Check the following functions:
• Belt height adjuster must engage audibly in each of the 3 possible positions (including top position).
• Belt height adjuster button must return to top position after any operation.
• Belt guide fitting must move to vertical position or operated position on its own.

If one of the requirements is not fulfilled, check belt height adjuster for correct installation and renew it if necessary.

Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt”, page 78

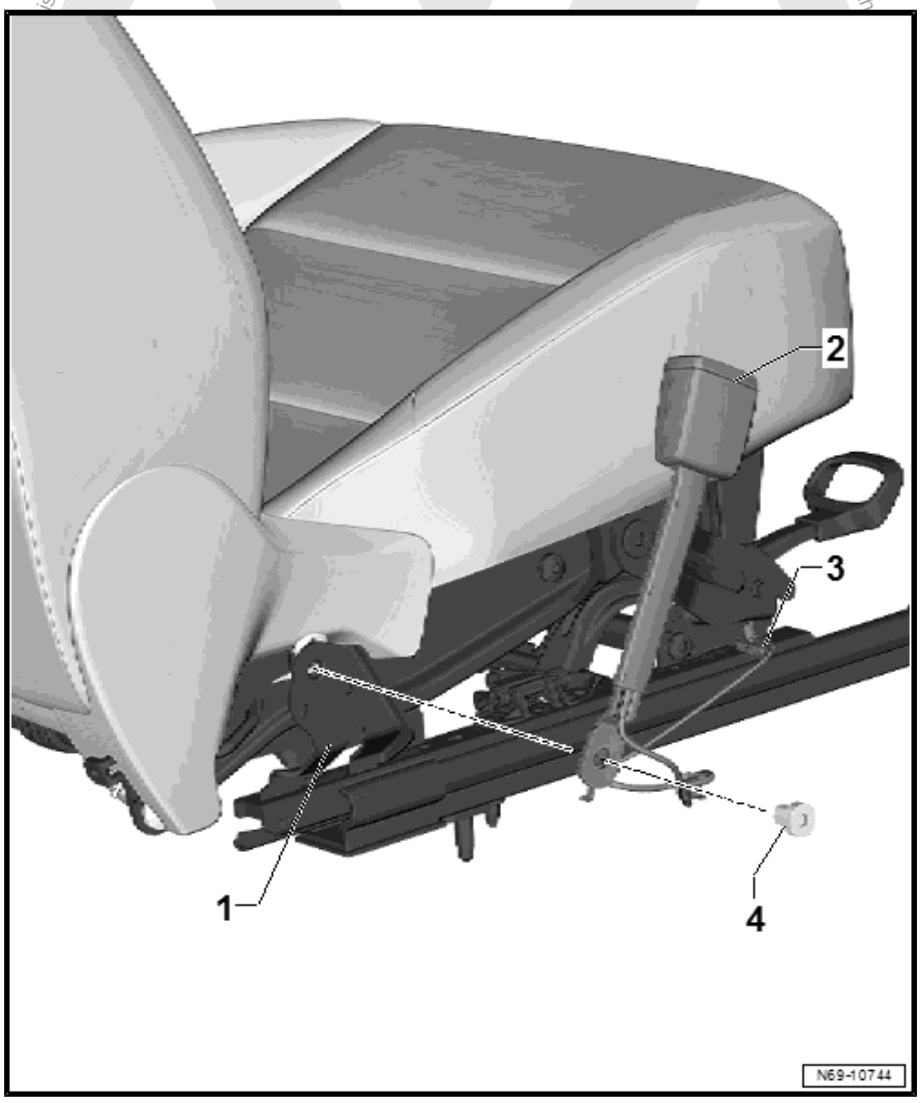
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with

1.14 Removing and installing front belt buckle

Removing

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 275 .



– Separate electrical connector of belt buckle -3- from coupling station on underside of seat frame.
– Detach wire from seat frame.
– Unscrew bolt -4-, and detach belt buckle -2- from seat -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Position belt buckle -2- in such a way that recess on seat pan -1- is flush with belt buckle lug.

Torque settings

◆ ⇒ “1.5 Assembly overview - front belt buckle”, page 82

1.15 Removing and installing rear belt buckle

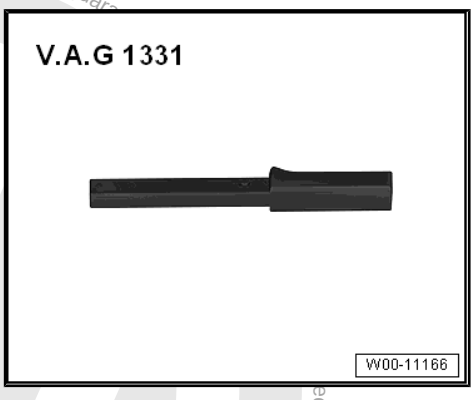
⇒ “1.15.1 Removing and installing rear belt buckle, outer belt buckle”, page 93

⇒ “1.15.2 Removing and installing rear belt buckle, centre belt buckle”, page 94

1.15.1 Removing and installing rear belt buckle, outer belt buckle

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Note

On vehicles with rear belt switch -E258- / -E258- , it is recommended to make sketches or take photographs of how the wires are routed. This guarantees that everything is re-installed in its original position.

Removing

Vehicles with rear belt switch -E258- / -E258-

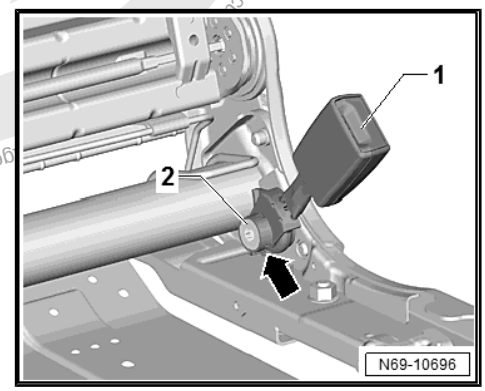
– Remove respective rear seat ⇒ page 325 .

Continued for all vehicles

– Remove respective bench seat ⇒ page 364 .

– If fitted, unclip wire for rear belt switch -E258- / -E258- from rear seat frame, and lay it to one side.

– Unscrew bolt -2-, and remove rear outer belt buckle -1- from rear seat frame.



Installing

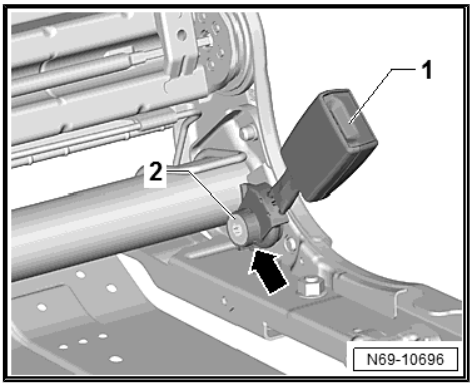
- The locating element -arrow- on the belt buckle must be seated in the respective recess on the rear seat frame.

– Tighten bolt -2- on rear outer belt buckle -1-.

Continue installation in reverse order of removal.

Torque settings

- ⇒ “1.6 Assembly overview - rear belt buckle”, page 83

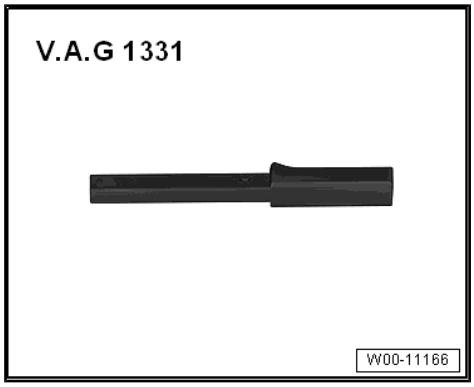


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.

1.15.2 Removing and installing rear belt buckle, centre belt buckle

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Note

On vehicles with rear centre belt switch - E609- , it is recommended to make sketches or take photographs of how the wires are routed. This guarantees that everything is re-installed in its original position.

Removing

Vehicles with rear centre belt switch - E609-

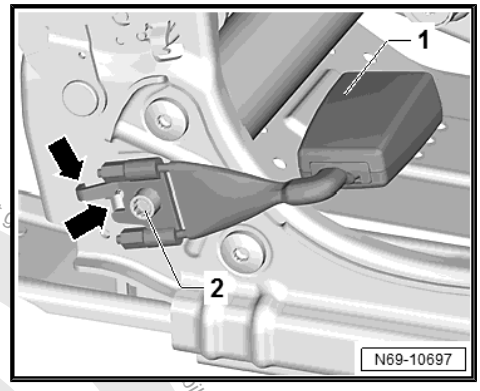
– Remove rear seat ⇒ page 364 .

Continued for all vehicles

– Remove clips for seat trim on tunnel side, but do not remove the seat trim on tunnel side completely ⇒ page 334 .

– If fitted, unclip wire for rear centre belt switch - E609- from rear seat frame, and lay it to one side.

– Unscrew bolt -2-, and remove rear centre belt buckle -1- from rear seat frame.

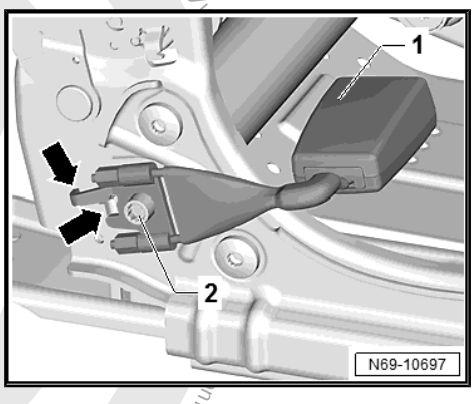


Installing

- The locating elements -arrows- on the belt buckle must be seated in the respective recess and on the lug on the rear seat frame.

– Tighten bolt -2- on rear centre belt buckle -1-.

Continue installation in reverse order of removal.



Torque settings

- ⇒ “1.6 Assembly overview - rear belt buckle”, page 83

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

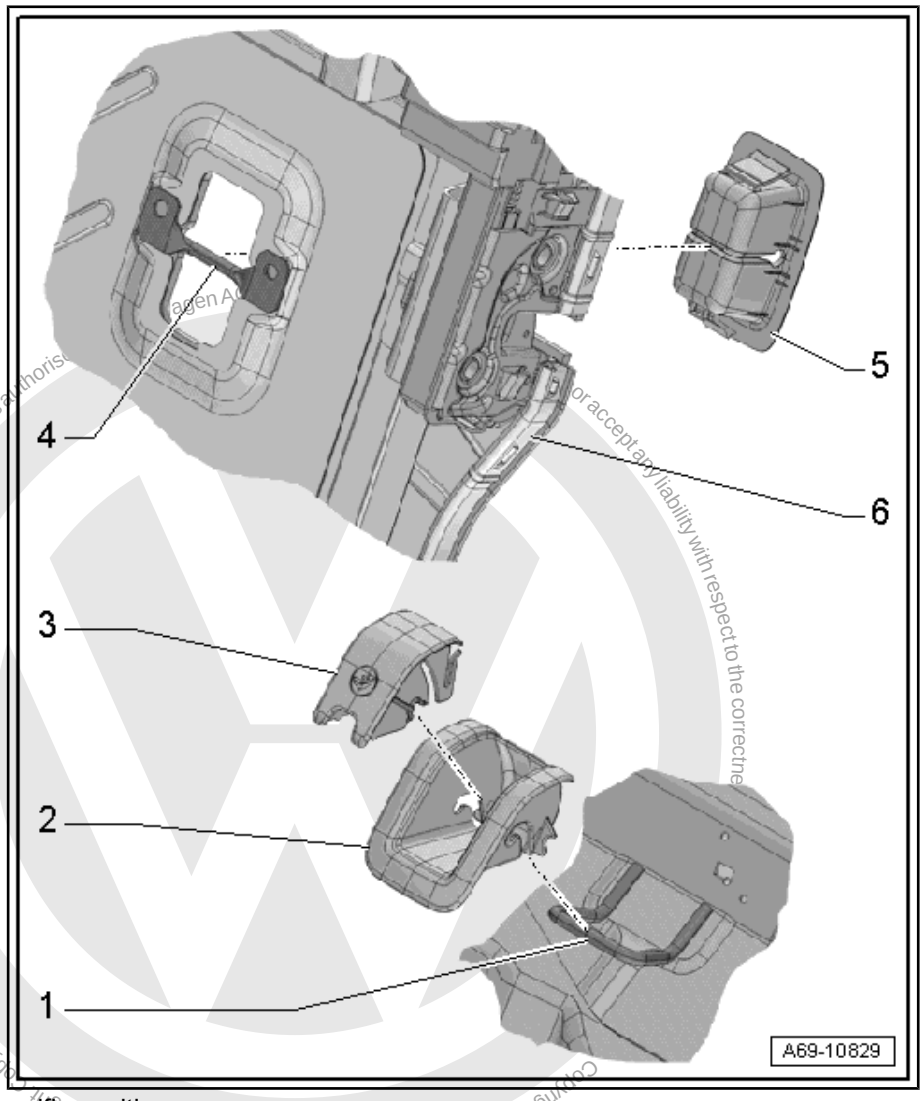
2 Child seat anchors

⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - rear child seat anchors”, page 95

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing guide for ISOFIX child seat anchor”, page 96

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing cover for Top Tether child seat anchor”, page 96

2.1 Assembly overview - rear child seat anchors



1 - ISOFIX child seat anchor, lower

- ❑ Qty. 2 per seat
- ❑ Welded to seat frame

2 - Guide

- ❑ For ISOFIX child seat anchor
- ❑ Qty. 2 per seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96
- ❑ Must be seated firmly on child seat anchor.

3 - Cover

- ❑ Qty. 2 per seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96
- ❑ Must be seated firmly on child seat anchor.

4 - Top Tether child seat anchor, upper

- ❑ Qty. 1 per seat
- ❑ Welded to backrest frame.

5 - Cover

- ❑ For upper child seat anchor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96
- ❑ Attach to child seat anchor and push it in until it audibly engages.
- ❑ Can only be fitted on rear seat backrest in a specific position.

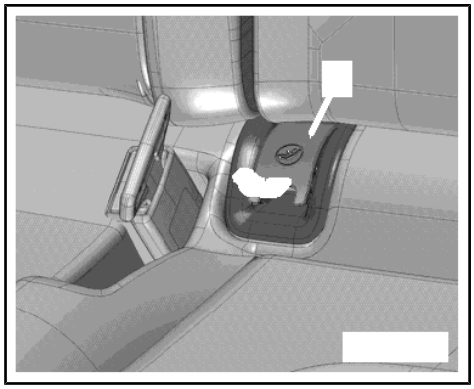
6 - Rear seat backrest

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.2 Removing and installing guide for ISO-FIX child seat anchor

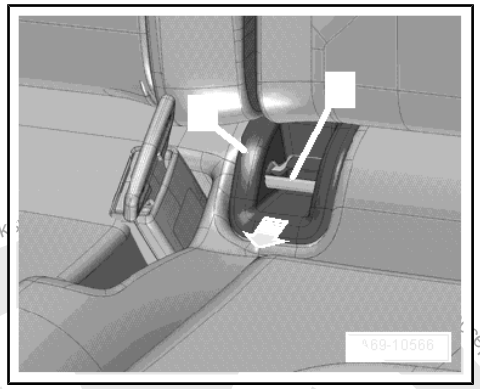
Removing

– Unclip cover -1- from ISOFIX child seat anchor -arrow- and remove it.



– Push guide -1- downwards out of recess and detach it from ISOFIX child seat anchor -2-.

– Remove guide -arrow- towards front.



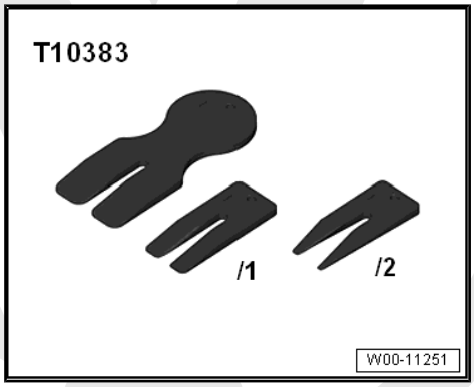
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.3 Removing and installing cover for Top Tether child seat anchor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



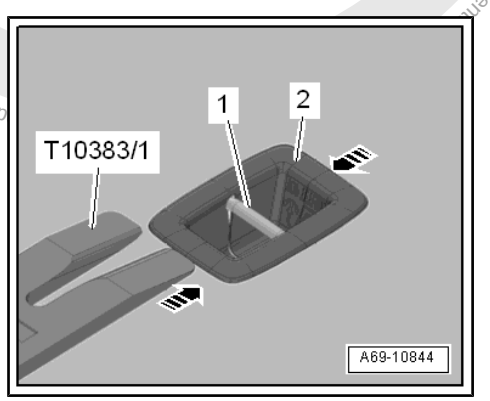
Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Release locking lugs using wedge -T10383/1- -arrows-.

– Lever cover -2- for Top Tether child seat anchor upwards off rear seat backrest.

– Carefully pull cover off Top Tether child seat anchor -1- and remove it.



Installing

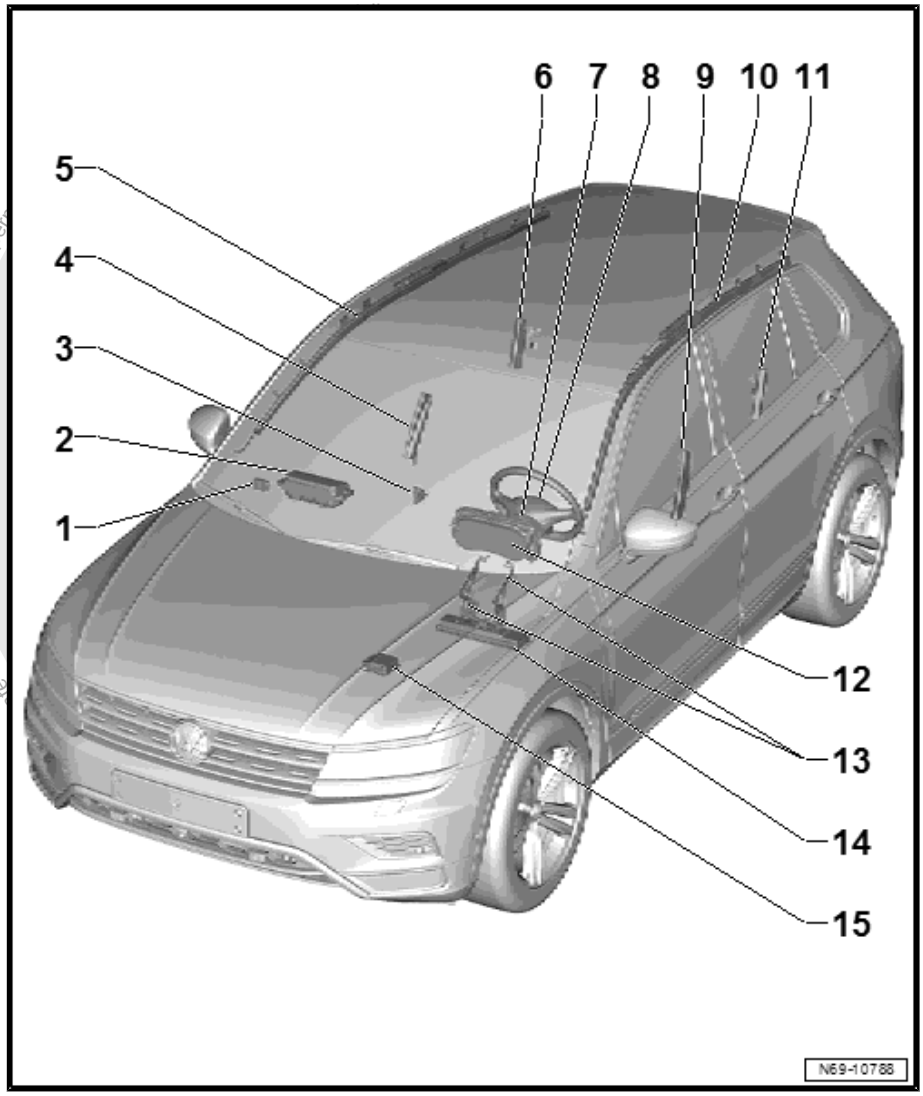
Install in reverse order of removal.

Copyright by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volk
ept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this docume

3 Airbag system

⇒ “3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system”, page 97

3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system



1 - Key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag - E224-

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 114

2 - Front passenger side airbag

- With front passenger side airbag igniter 1 - N131- .
- Can be locked and activated via key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag - E224- .
- Assembly overview ⇒ page 111

3 - Front passenger side airbag deactivated warning lamp - K145-

- Cannot be replaced individually
- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

4 - Front side airbag, front passenger side

- With side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200- .
- Assembly overview ⇒ page 116

5 - Head airbag, front passenger side

- With front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252- .
- Assembly overview ⇒ page 122

6 - Rear side airbag, front passenger side

- With rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N202- .
- Assembly overview ⇒ page 117

7 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- With airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring - F138-
- Assembly overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Assembly overview - steering column switch module

8 - Driver's airbag

- With driver side airbag igniter - N95- .
- Assembly overview ⇒ page 103

...te by commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not per...

9 - Front side airbag, driver side

- ❑ With side airbag igniter on driver side - N199- .
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 116

10 - Head airbag, driver side

- ❑ With driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251- .
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 122

11 - Rear side airbag, driver side

- ❑ With rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201- .
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 117

12 - Airbag warning lamp - K75-

- ❑ Integrated into dash panel insert
- ❑ Cannot be replaced individually
- ❑ Removing and installing dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Assembly overview - dash panel insert .

13 - Bracket for knee airbag on driver side

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column, Assembly overview - steering column

14 - Knee airbag, driver side

- ❑ With driver side knee airbag igniter - N295- .
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 128

15 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 99

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

4 Airbag control unit

⇒ “4.1 Assembly overview - airbag control unit”, page 99

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 ”, page 99

4.1 Assembly overview - airbag control unit

1 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 99
- ❑ The control unit is earthed via the housing with the body.

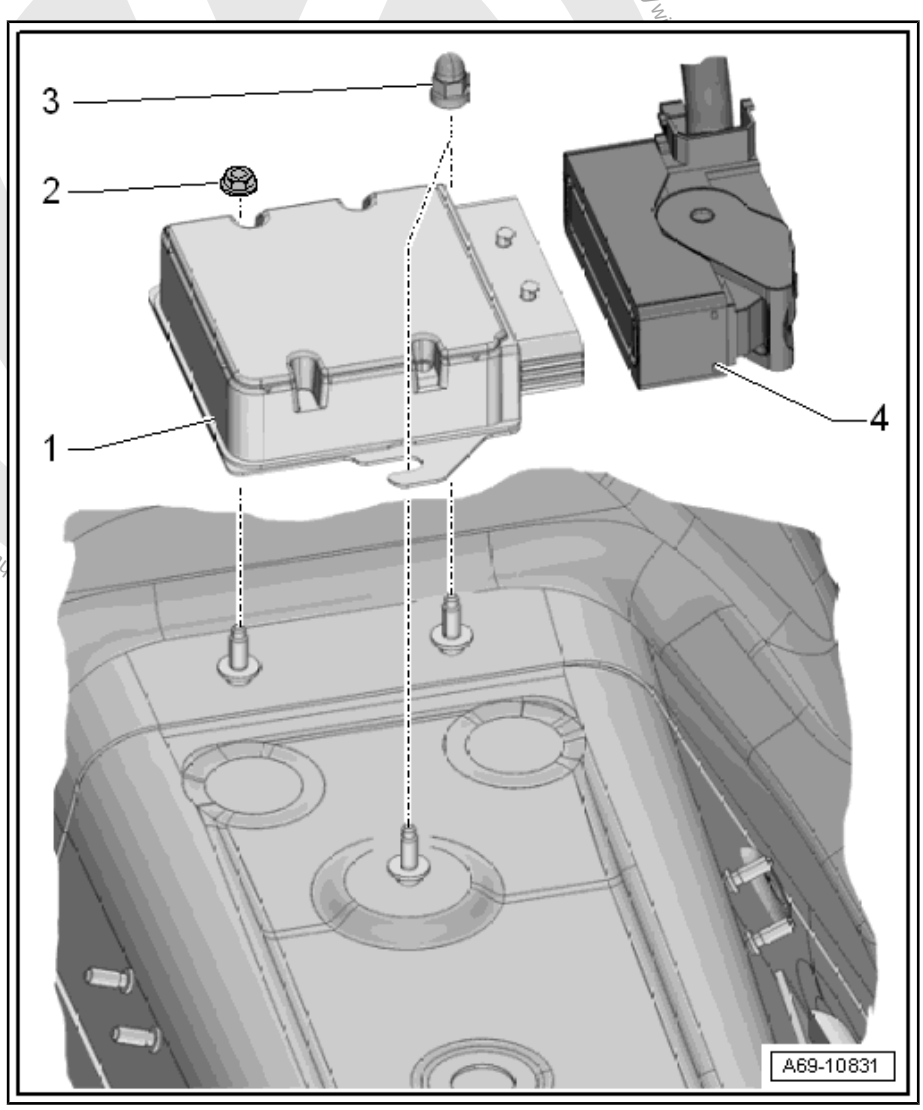
2 - Nut

- ❑ Nut and earth stud form the earth connection for the control unit.
- ❑ Threads must be free of paint and dirt.
- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Nut

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Nut and earth stud form the earth connection for the control unit.
- ❑ Threads must be free of paint and dirt.
- ❑ 9 Nm

4 - Electrical connector



4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit - J234-

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability w

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



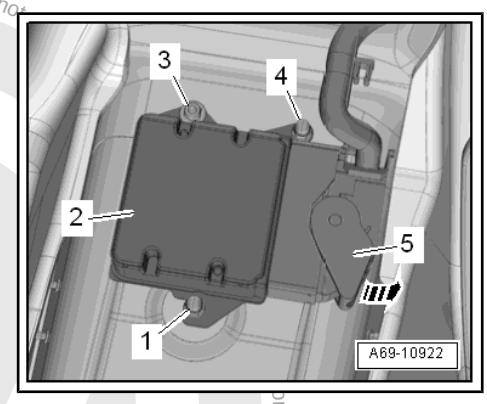
– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

– Remove centre console trim in footwell ⇒ page 50 .

– Remove centre console bracket on driver and front passenger sides ⇒ page 55 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ...bility with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Unscrew nut -3- in driver footwell.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.

– Disconnect connector in front passenger footwell. To do this, release connector catches and open locking bar -5- on connector -arrow-.
– Unscrew nuts -1, 4-.
– Lift airbag control unit -2- clear of studs and remove towards front passenger side.

Note

For reasons of clarity, the heater and air conditioning unit are not shown in illustration.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. connecting the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.***

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.

WARNING

Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.

– Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

WARNING

If the ignition has not yet been switched on after the battery has been reconnected "warning lamps in dash panel insert are off", the ignition (key or button) must only be switched on while sitting on the driver seat and with the seat set to rearmost position.

Note

- *If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and then read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *If a new airbag control unit -J234- is installed, the control unit must be encoded ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Torque settings

- ⇒ "4.1 Assembly overview - airbag control unit", page 99

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

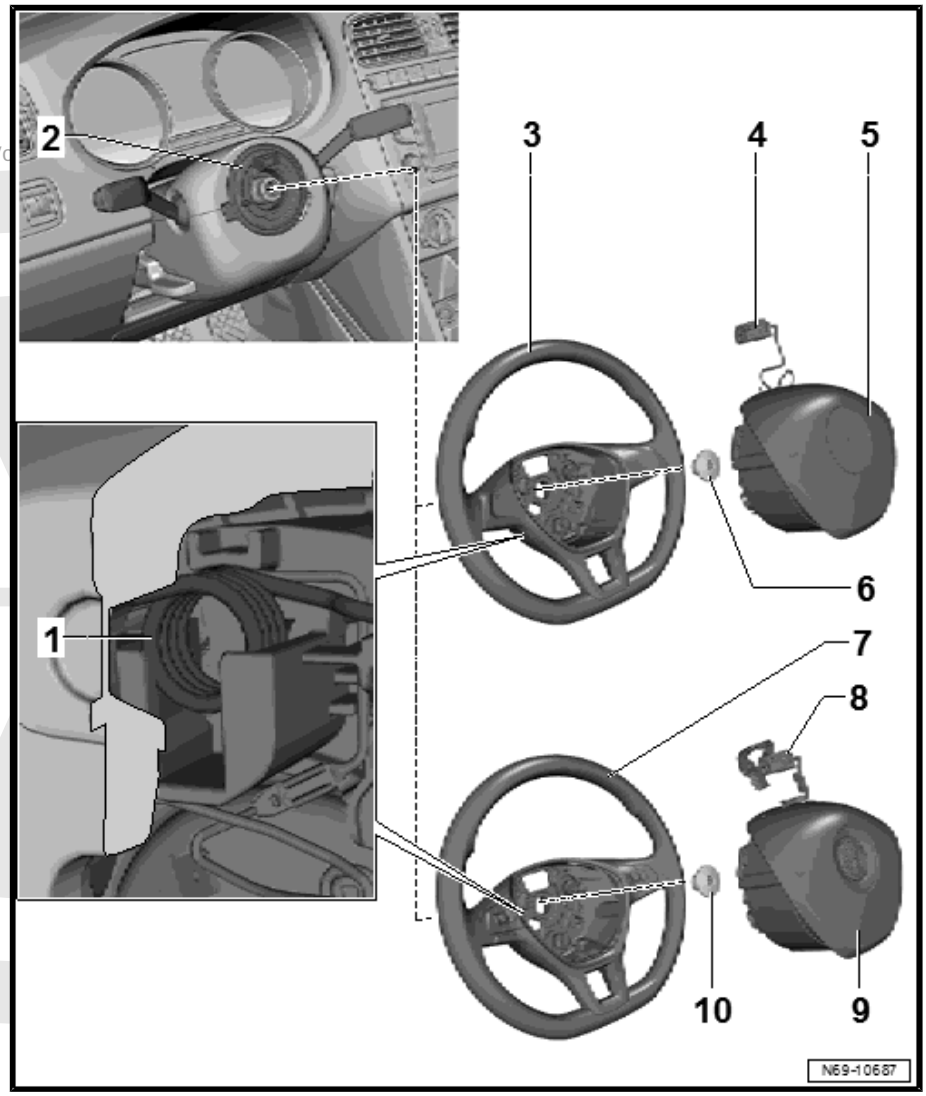
5 Driver's airbag

⇒ “5.1 Assembly overview - driver side airbag”, page 103

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniter”, page 104

⇒ “5.3 Renewing connector on airbag”, page 109

5.1 Assembly overview - driver side airbag



1 - Locking spring

- ❑ To release use a commercially available pin punch with a shaft diameter of 5 or 6 mm

2 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- ❑ With airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring - F138-
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Assembly overview - steering column switch module

3 - Steering wheel without multifunction button

- ❑ Equipment version
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel, Assembly overview - steering wheel .

4 - Wiring harness without wires for multifunction button

- ❑ For driver side airbag igniter - N95-
- ❑ Press into recesses in steering wheel to secure it.

5 - Driver's airbag

- ❑ With driver side airbag igniter - N95- .

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 104

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Assembly overview - steering wheel

7 - Steering wheel with multifunction button

- ❑ Equipment version

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel, Assembly overview - steering wheel .

8 - Wiring harness with wires for multifunction button

- ❑ For driver side airbag igniter - N95-
- ❑ Press into recesses in steering wheel to secure it.

9 - Driver's airbag

- ❑ With driver side airbag igniter - N95- .

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 104

10 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Assembly overview - steering wheel

5.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniter

> **WARNING**
> - *Observe general safety regulations when working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components).*
> - *Observe special instructions for driver and front passenger airbags.*

– Switch on ignition.

– Disconnect vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and reconnecting battery .

– Set steering wheel height to lowest position.

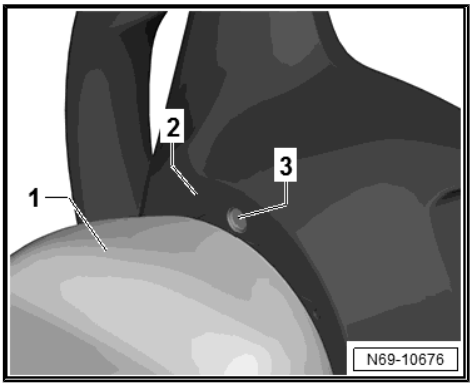
– Extend steering wheel as far as possible into passenger compartment.

• Steering wheel position: “straight ahead”

– Turn steering wheel by approx. 100° towards right.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Make sure that the round closed recess -3- in the base of the steering wheel -2- is in the highest position above steering column trim -1-.



Note

The closed recess in the base of the steering wheel is one of two breaking points for removing the driver side airbag.

For the steps below, a commercially available pin punch with a shaft diameter of 5 or 6 mm is required.

– Mask off the end of the pin punch handle with commercially available adhesive tape to prevent the dash panel insert and steering column switch trim from being scratched.

– Position pin punch parallel to steering column axis, and pierce breaking point at base of steering wheel.

– Insert pin punch into base of steering wheel as far as stop, and pull it back by 1 to 2 mm.

• The tip of the pin punch -2- is now inside the coil of spring -3-.

Caution

Never push the pin punch downwards. Risk of damage.

– Pull pin punch -2- upwards “with slight force”.

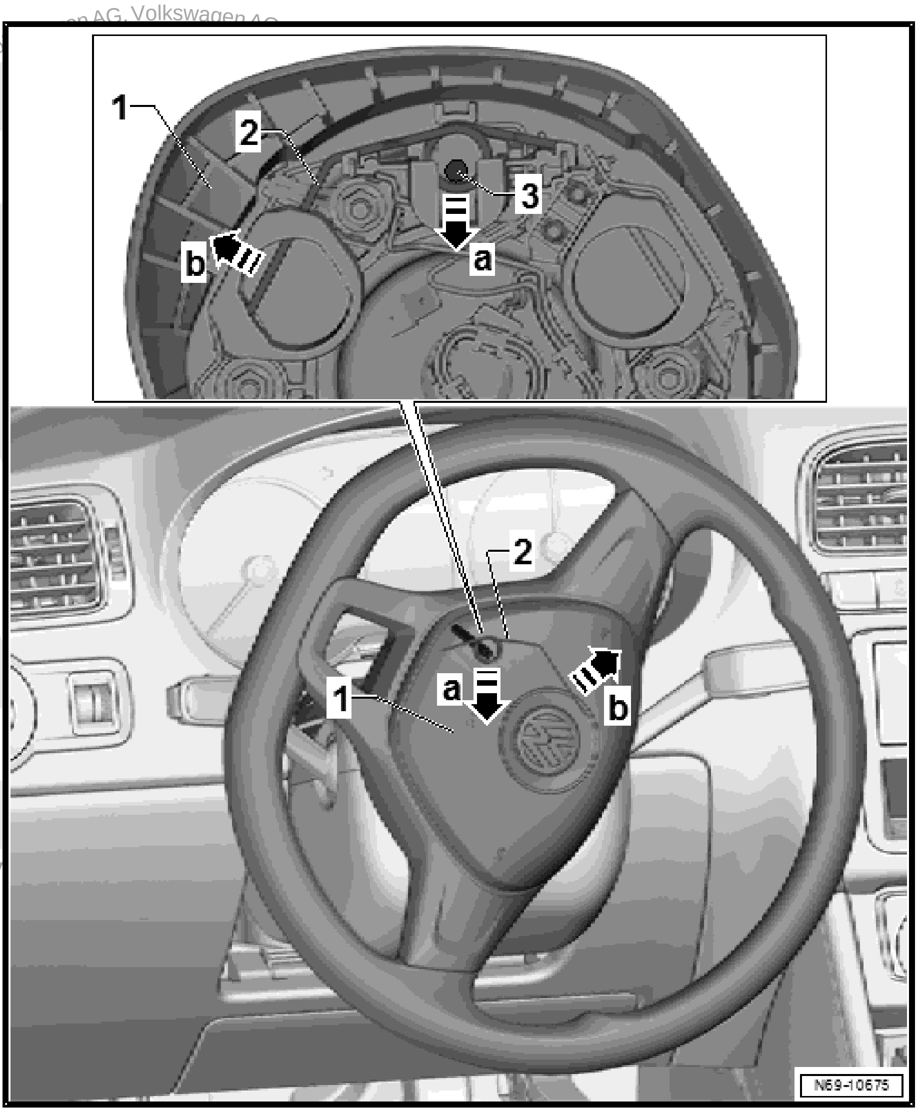
– This will move the coil of spring -3- towards the centre of the steering wheel -arrow A-.

– At the same time, the right arm of the spring moves outwards -arrow B-.

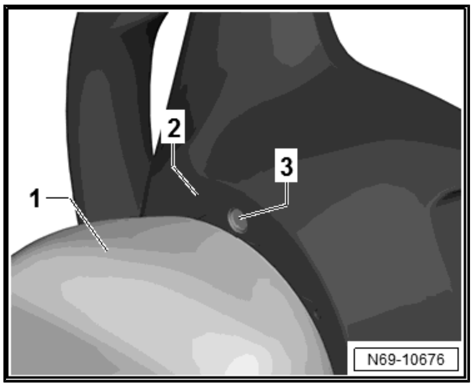
As a result, the driver airbag -1- is released from the catch on the left side of the steering wheel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG



– Turn steering wheel back to “straight ahead” position.
– Turn steering wheel by approx. 100° towards left.
– Make sure that the round closed recess -3- in the base of the steering wheel -2- is in the highest position above steering column trim -1-.
– Use pin punch to pierce breaking point as described, and insert it into base of steering wheel as far as stop.
– Pull pin punch back by 1 to 2 mm



• The tip of the pin punch -2- is now inside the coil of spring -3-.

Caution

Never push the pin punch downwards. Risk of damage.

– Lightly press with one hand on the horn symbol on the side of the steering wheel which has already been released.

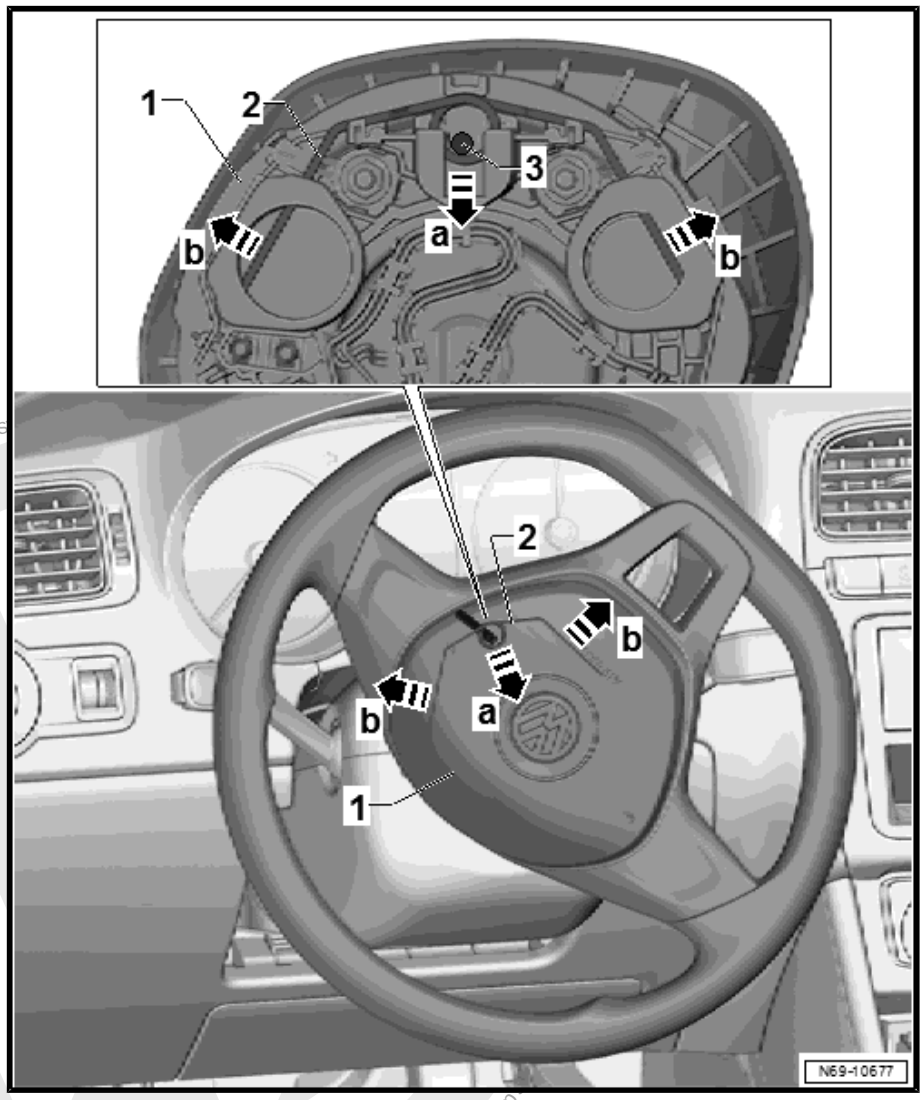
This is necessary to prevent the airbag from being jammed in the steering wheel.

– Pull pin punch -2- upwards “with slight force”.

– This will move the coil of spring -3- towards the centre of the steering wheel -arrow A-.

– At the same time, the outer arms of the spring move outwards -arrows B-.

This releases the driver airbag -1- from the catches in the steering wheel.



– Turn steering wheel back to “straight ahead” position.

– Remove airbag unit from steering wheel.

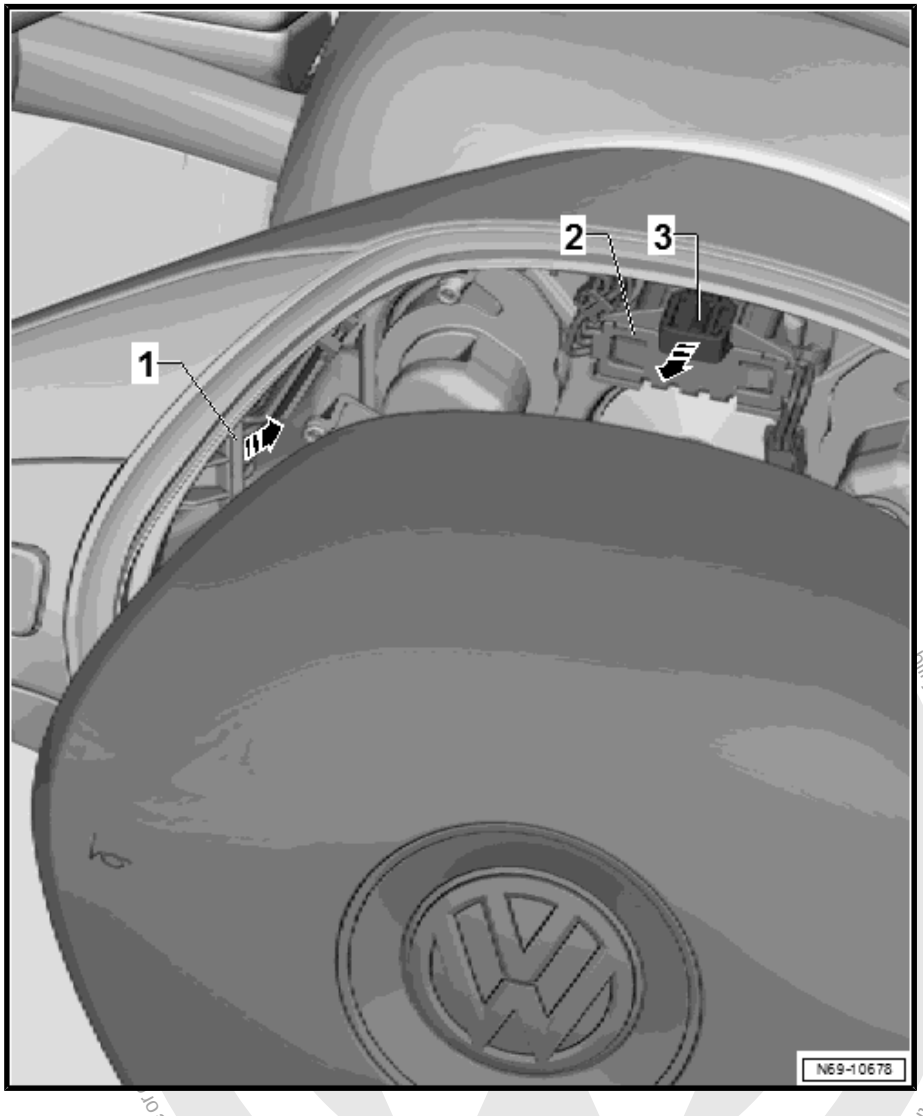
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

WARNING

Electrostatic discharges may result in unintentional triggering of airbag. Therefore, the mechanic must electrostatically discharge him/herself before disconnecting the igniter and earth wires. This can be done by briefly touching the body or striker plate of the door.

– Release connector lock -3- in -direction of arrow-, and pull off airbag connector -2-.

– On vehicles with multifunction steering wheel, pull off connector -1- in -direction of arrow-.



Installing

– On vehicles with multifunction steering wheel, push connector to plug-in connector.

– Connect airbag connector to plug-in connector, and press in connector lock.

The airbag connector must audibly engage.

– Press airbag unit into steering wheel.

Protected by Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Ensure that airbag unit is properly engaged in steering wheel.

– Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

WARNING

If the ignition has not yet been switched on after the battery has been reconnected "warning lamps in dash panel insert are off", the ignition (key or button) must only be switched on while sitting on the driver seat and with the seat set to rearmost position.

– Finally, read and clear event memory of airbag control unit since faults may be stored as a result of disconnecting electrical connectors ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

5.3 Renewing connector on airbag

Note

- *Illustration shows steering wheel with multifunction.*
- *For steering wheel without multifunction, adapt accordingly.*

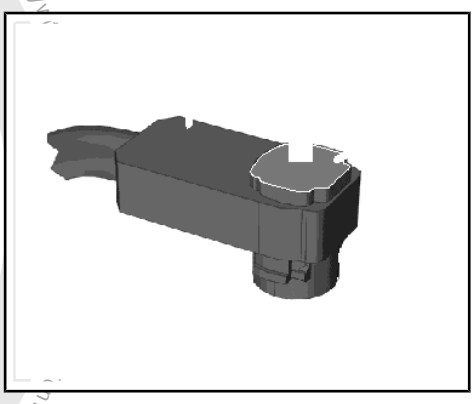
Removing

WARNING

Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

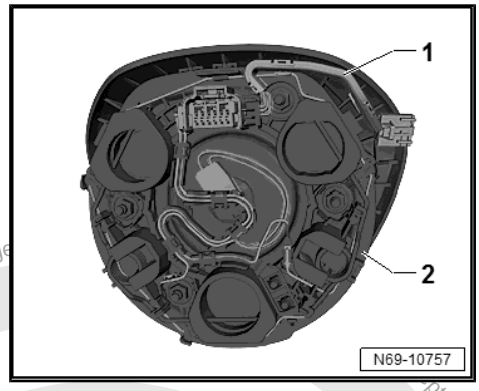
– Remove driver side airbag ⇒ page 104 .

– Release connector lock -2- using a small screwdriver -arrow- and pull connector -1- off driver side airbag igniter - N95- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

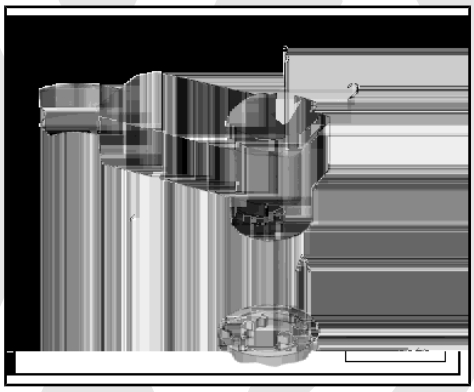
– Disconnect connectors from wiring harness -1-.
– Detach wiring harness from retainers and remove it from driver side airbag -2-.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. connecting the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.*



– Connect connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.
– Press in connector lock -2- -arrow B-. Doing so, the connector will be fully inserted into airbag igniter and locked at the same time.

Continue installation in reverse order of removal observing the following:

Note

- *Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.*
- *Ensure correct routing of wiring harness in retainers.*
- ⇒ "5.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniter", page 104

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Authorised by Volkswagen AG. Any use or distribution is not permitted for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, without prior written consent. We accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

6 Front passenger side airbag

⇒ “6.1 Assembly overview - front passenger side airbag”, page 111

⇒ “6.2 Removing and installing front passenger side airbag unit with igniter”, page 111

⇒ “6.3 Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag”, page 114

⇒ “6.4 Removing and installing front passenger side airbag deactivated warning lamp K145 ”, page 115

6.1 Assembly overview - front passenger side airbag

1 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For front passenger side airbag igniter 1 - N131-

2 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Clean prior to reinstalling.
- ❑ Insert with locking fluid
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Dash panel

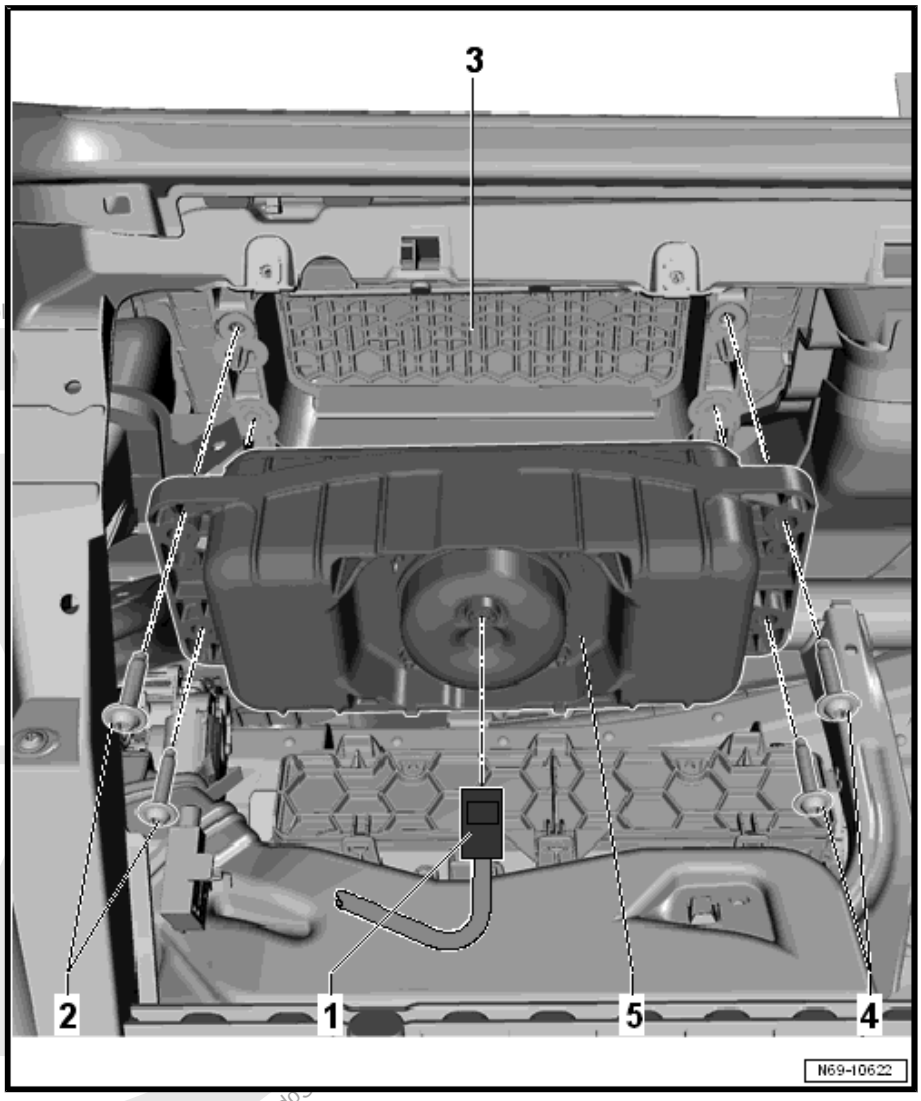
- ❑ Renew dash panel after airbag has deployed

4 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Clean prior to reinstalling.
- ❑ Insert with locking fluid
- ❑ 8 Nm

5 - Front passenger side airbag

- ❑ With front passenger side airbag igniter 1 - N131- .



WARNING

Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

Note allocation of airbag unit to dash panel ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

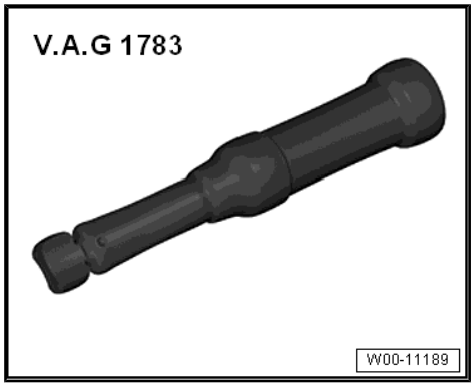
- ❑ Can be locked and activated via key-operated switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 111

6.2 Removing and installing front passenger side airbag unit with igniter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Vol... Private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Note allocation of airbag unit to dash panel ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

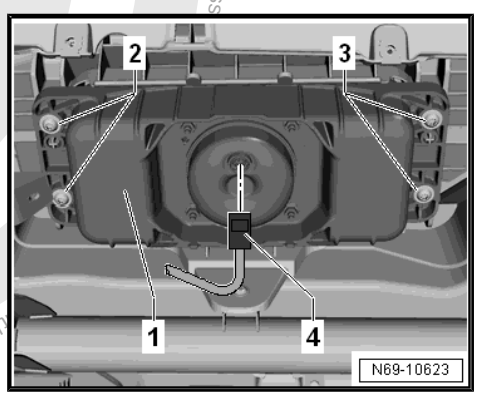
– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

– Remove glove compartment ⇒ page 30 .

WARNING

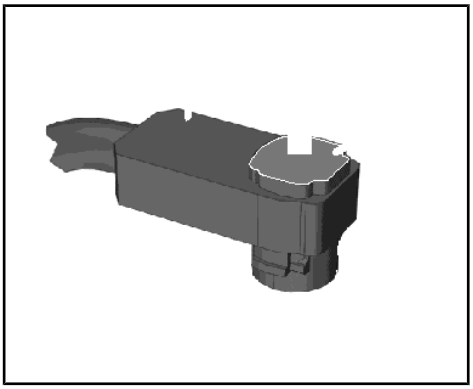
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.

– Disconnect connector -4- on front passenger side airbag igniter 1 - N131- .

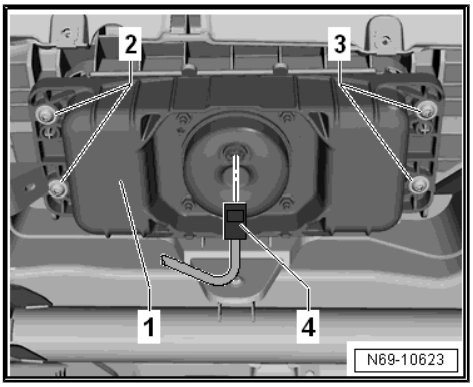


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness

– To do this release connector lock -2- using a small screwdriver -arrow- and pull off connector -1-.



– Unscrew bolts -2- and -3-.
– Remove front passenger side airbag -1- downwards.



WARNING

Place airbag aside in such a way that the impact padding points upwards.

Installing

Note

Before the bolts are installed, the threads of the bolts and nuts in the dash panel must be cleaned.

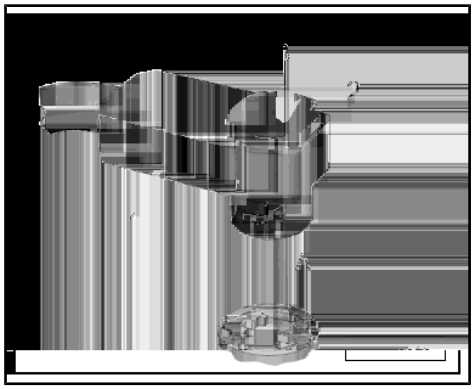
WARNING

- ***Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. connecting the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.***
- ***Note allocation of airbags to dash panel ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Connect connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.

– Press in connector lock -2- -arrow B-. Doing so, the connector will be fully inserted into airbag igniter and locked at the same time.



Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

- *Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.*
- *Ensure that no wires are trapped.*

WARNING

Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.

– Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

WARNING

If the ignition has not yet been switched on after the battery has been reconnected "warning lamps in dash panel insert are off", the ignition (key or button) must only be switched on while sitting on the driver seat and with the seat set to rearmost position.

Note

If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and then read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Torque settings

- ⇒ "6.1 Assembly overview - front passenger side airbag", page 111

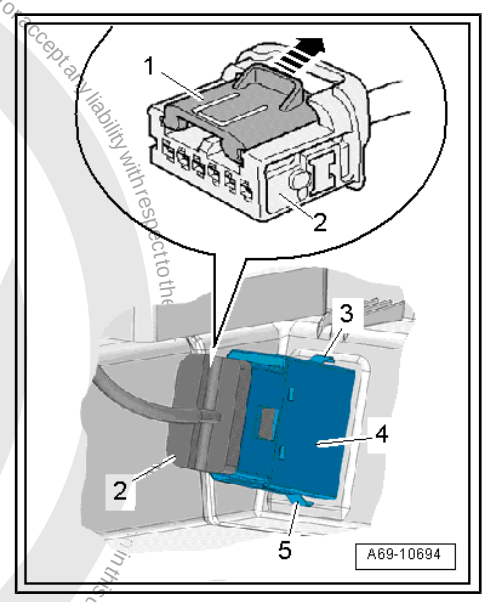
6.3 Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag

Removing

– Switch off ignition.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove side dash panel cover ⇒ page 172 .
– Press locking detent -1- in -direction of arrow- until connector disengages.
– Pull off electrical connector -2-.
– Release retaining springs -3- and -5-.
– Push key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag - E224- -item 4- out of housing for key operated switch.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

- *Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.*
- *Ensure that no wires are trapped.*

– Ensure that key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag - E224- audibly engages in housing.

6.4 Removing and installing front passenger side airbag deactivated warning lamp - K145-

Note

The front passenger side airbag deactivated warning lamp - K145- is integrated into the centre switch module in dash panel - EX22- and cannot be renewed individually when defective.

– Removing and installing centre switch module in dash panel - EX22- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel .

Printed by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use, duplication or disclosure is prohibited. This document is not to be used for commercial purposes.

7 Side airbags

⇒ “7.1 Assembly overview - front side airbag”, page 116

⇒ “7.2 Assembly overview - rear side airbag”, page 117

⇒ “7.3 Removing and installing front side airbag with igniter”, page 117

⇒ “7.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag with igniter”, page 119

7.1 Assembly overview - front side airbag



1 - Front side airbag

- ❑ With:

- ♦ Side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ♦ Side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 117

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removal
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Wire

- ❑ Continuous from side airbag igniter on driver side - N199- / side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200- to coupling station

4 - Backrest frame

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

7.2 Assembly overview - rear side airbag

1 - Rear side airbag

- ❑ Driver side: with rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201- .
- ❑ Front passenger side: with rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N202- .

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 119

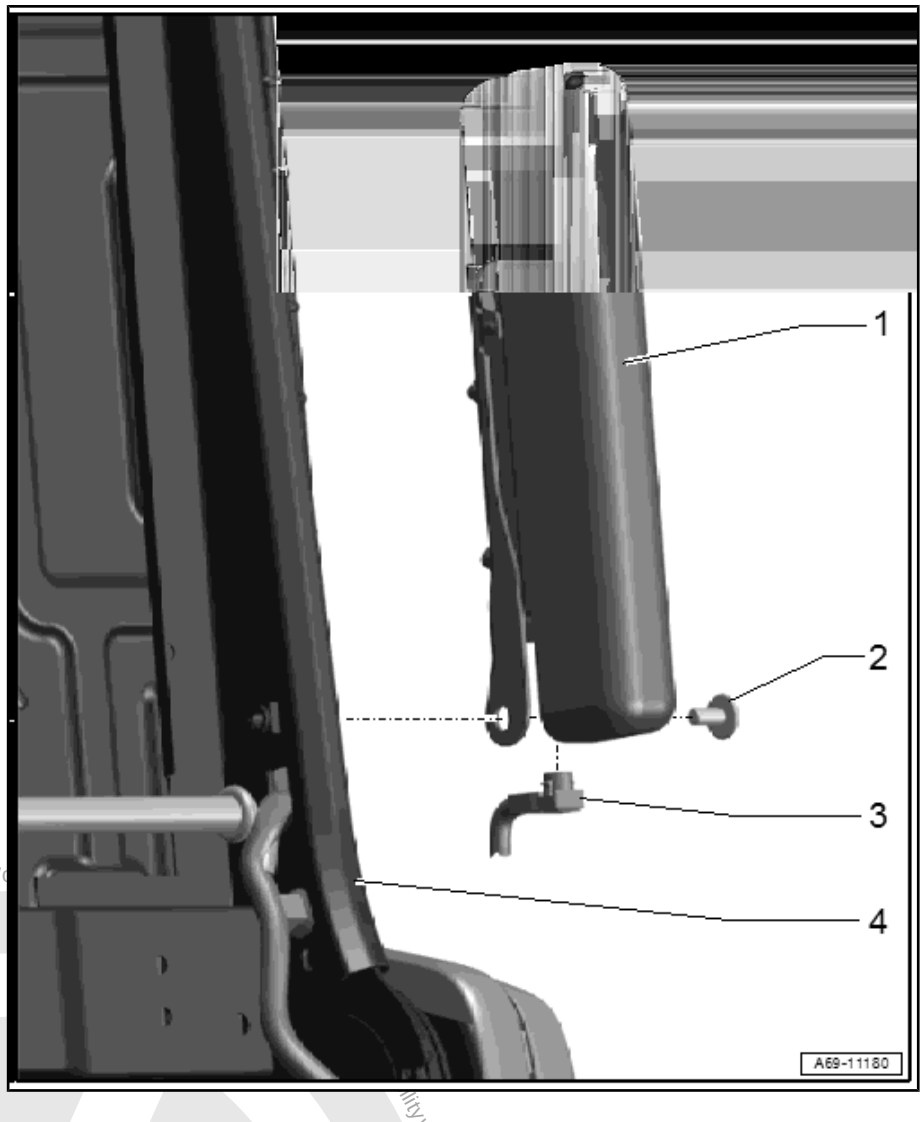
2 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removal
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt with, for example, a thread tap.
- ❑ Insert with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Wire

- ❑ From rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201- / rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N202- to coupling station

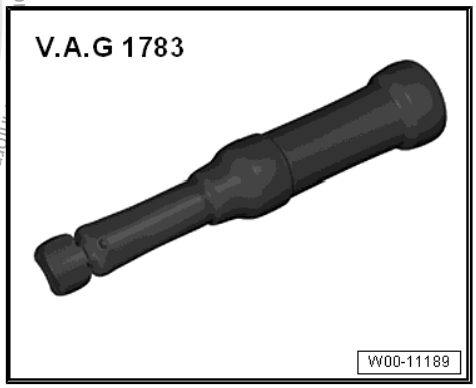
4 - Backrest frame



7.3 Removing and installing front side airbag with igniter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe the additional safety regulations for the side airbag ⇒ page 5 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

Note

The front side airbag with igniter can be removed and installed with seat and backrest installed.

– Detach cover and backrest padding and fold back until front side airbag with igniter can be removed ⇒ page 348 .

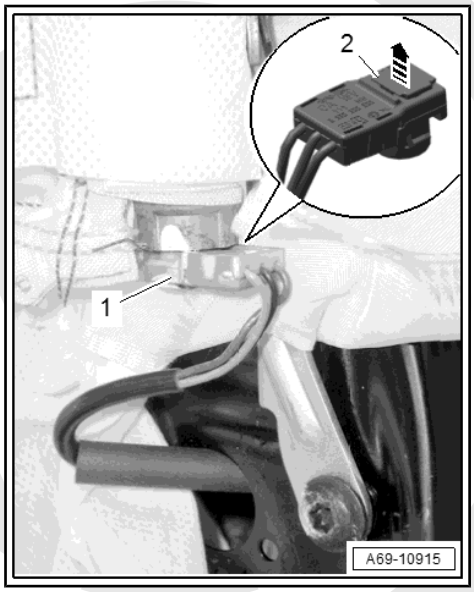
WARNING

Risk of injury due to unintentional triggering!

- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.***

– Release connector lock -2- using small screwdriver -arrow-.

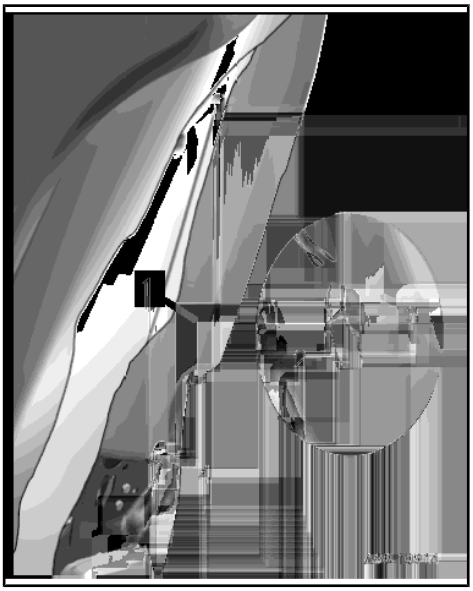
– Separate electrical connector -1- on igniter for side airbag.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Unscrew bolt -4-.

– Unhook side airbag -1- with hook -2- from backrest frame -3-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

If the backrest of the front passenger seat can be folded completely, use “closer for zip fastener” allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

WARNING

Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.

– Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

WARNING

If the ignition has not yet been switched on after the battery has been reconnected “warning lamps in dash panel insert are off”, the ignition (key or button) must only be switched on while sitting on the driver seat and with the seat set to rearmost position.

Note

If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and then read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

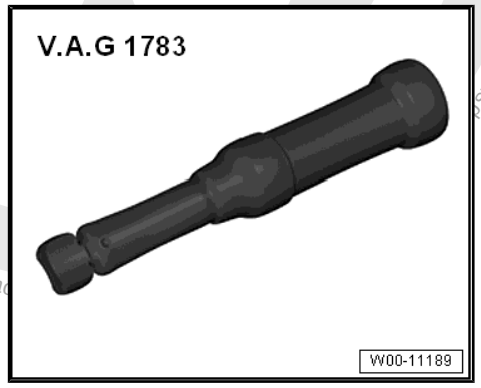
Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “7.1 Assembly overview - front side airbag”, page 116

7.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag with igniter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe the additional safety regulations for the side airbag ⇒ page 5 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

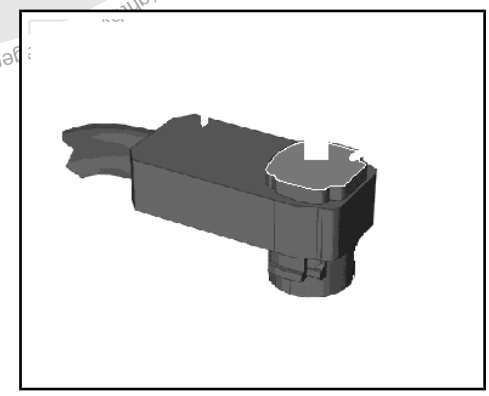
– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

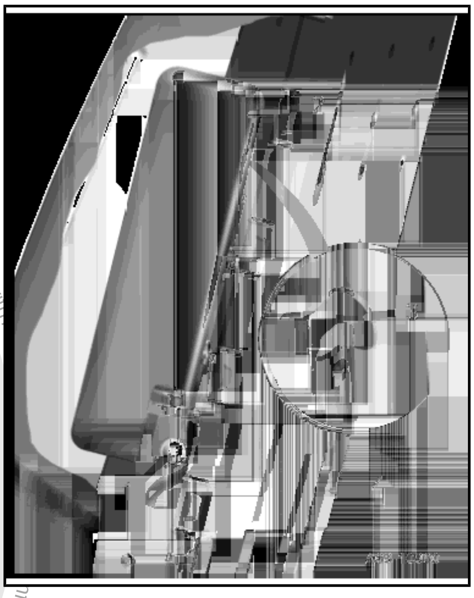
– Remove rear seat ⇒ page 325 .

– Remove cover and padding from rear seat backrest ⇒ page 366 .

– Release connector lock -2- using small screwdriver -arrow-.

– Separate electrical connector -1- on igniter for side airbag.





– Unscrew bolt -1-.

– Push side airbag -2- upwards and remove it from backrest frame -4-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

> **WARNING**
>
> *Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.*

– Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

> **WARNING**
>
> *If the ignition has not yet been switched on after the battery has been reconnected “warning lamps in dash panel insert are off”, the ignition (key or button) must only be switched on while sitting on the driver seat and with the seat set to rearmost position.*

Note

If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and then read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “7.2 Assembly overview - rear side airbag”, page 117

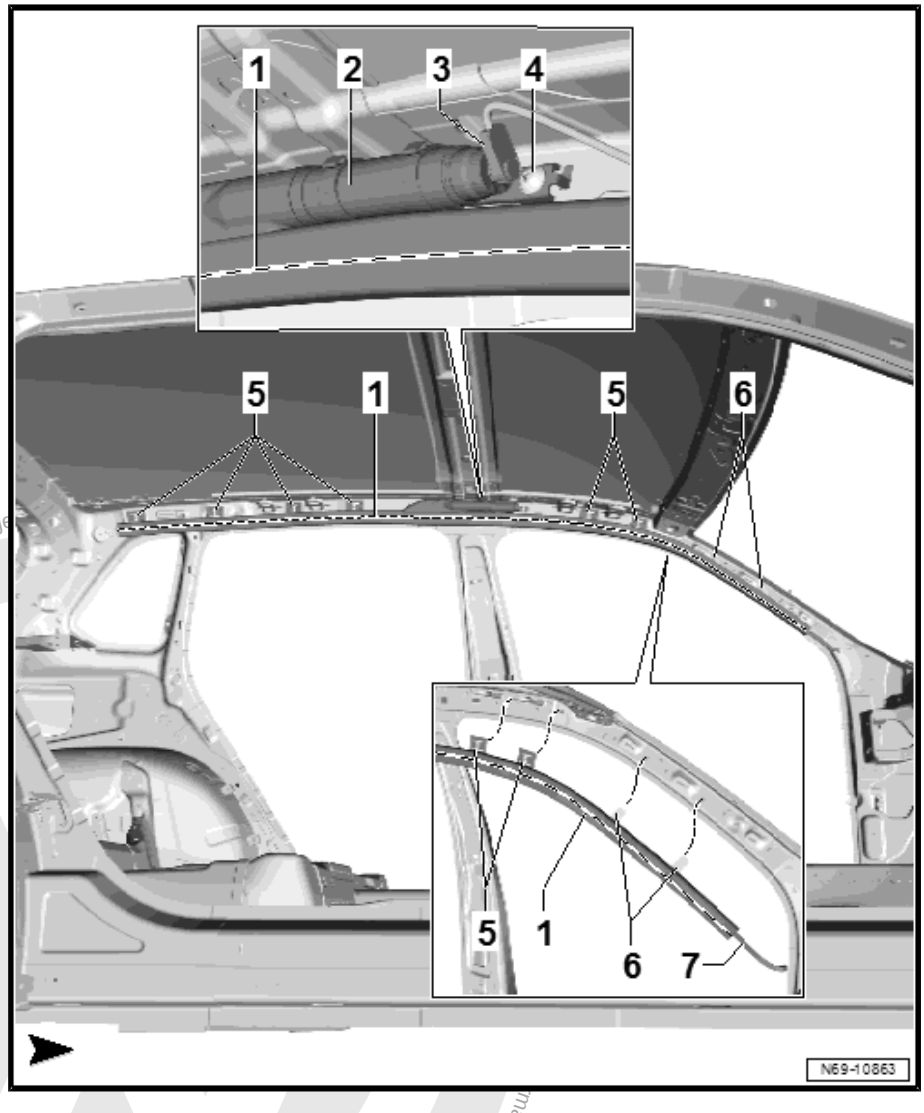
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

8 Curtain airbags

⇒ “8.1 Assembly overview - curtain airbag”, page 122

⇒ “8.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with igniter”, page 122

8.1 Assembly overview - curtain airbag



1 - Line to prevent twisting

- ❑ Is used to ensure that curtain airbag is not twisted.
- ❑ Must be entirely visible after installation.

2 - Curtain airbag

- ❑ Driver side: with driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251- .
- ❑ Front passenger side: with front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252- .

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 122

3 - Wire

- ❑ For driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251- / front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removal
- ❑ 8 Nm ≥ 0.7 Nm

5 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Qty. 6

6 - Clip

- ❑ Qty. 2

7 - Retaining strap

- ❑ When installing, thread the tether into rectangular aperture in body
- ❑ After tether has been attached, pull on it to ensure proper seating

8.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with igniter

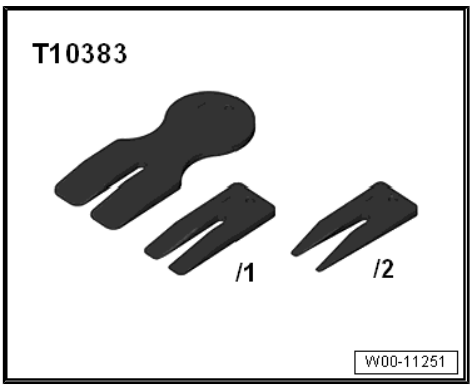
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Copyright by Volkswagen. Commercial use or distribution of data and information in this document, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen.

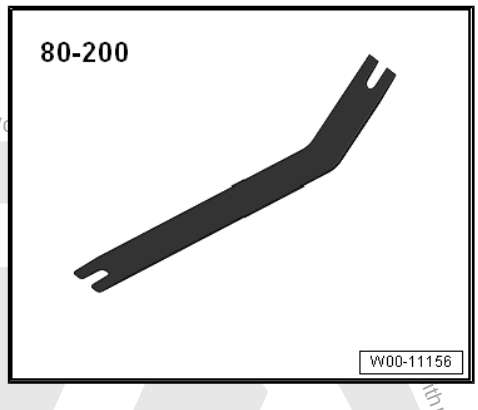
- Release tool - VAS 1978/17- from release tool case - VAS 1978/35-



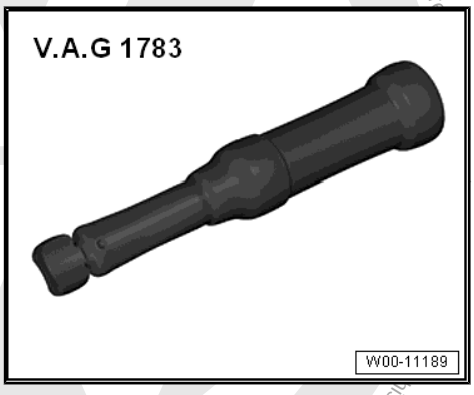
- Wedges - T10383-



- Removal lever - 80 - 200-



- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

WARNING

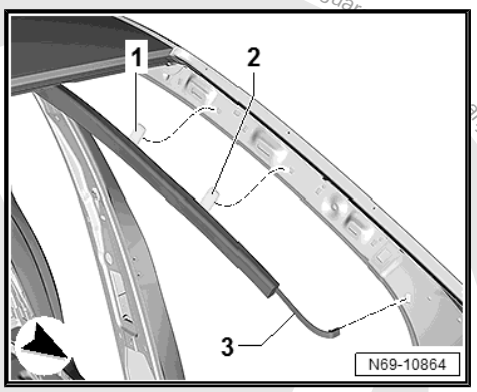
- *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe the additional safety instructions for the curtain airbag ⇒ page 5 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 248 .

– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

– Thread tether -3- out of rectangular aperture in A-pillar.

– Unclip clips -1- and -2-.



– Detach retaining clips -1- to -6- in retaining tabs for curtain airbag from body.

– To do this, carefully push »tip« -arrow- of release tool - VAS 1978/17- -7- in a straight line into recess -A- as far as stop, as shown in illustration.

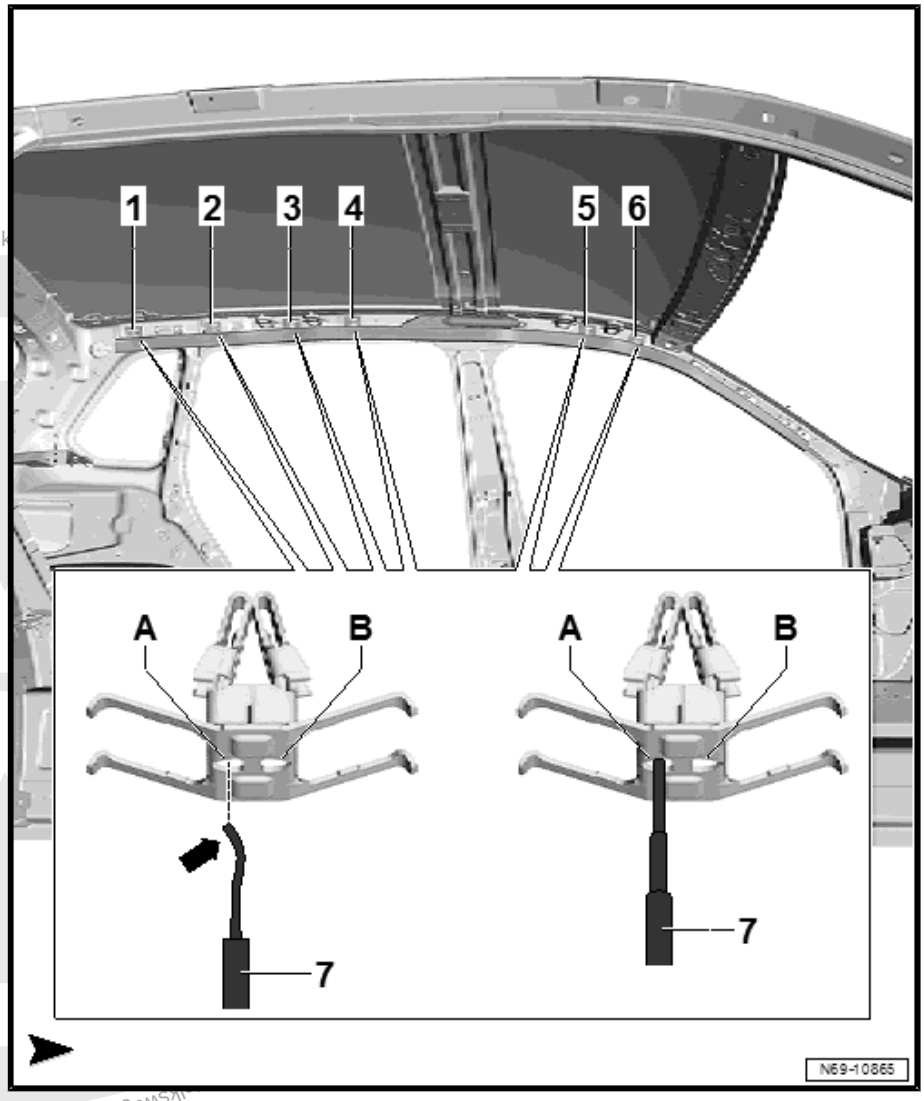
– Pull left side of retaining clip out of body.

– Pull out release tool - VAS 1978/17- -7- ensuring that released side of retaining clip does not engage again.

– Turn release tool - VAS 1978/17- -7- by 180°.

– Repeat procedure on recess -B-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

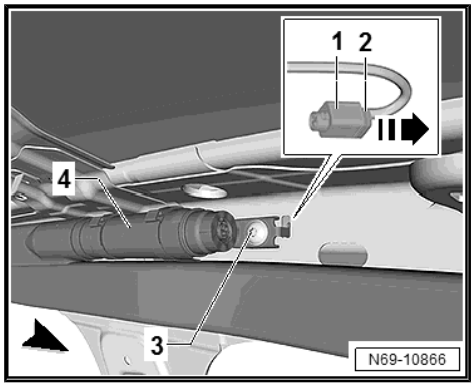


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG.

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.

– Pull out connector lock -2-, and pull off electrical connector -1- for curtain airbag -4- -arrow-.
– Unscrew bolt -3- on curtain airbag.
– First, detach curtain airbag -4- at front from mounting on body, and push it towards rear.
– Then, detach curtain airbag at rear from body mounting, and remove it.

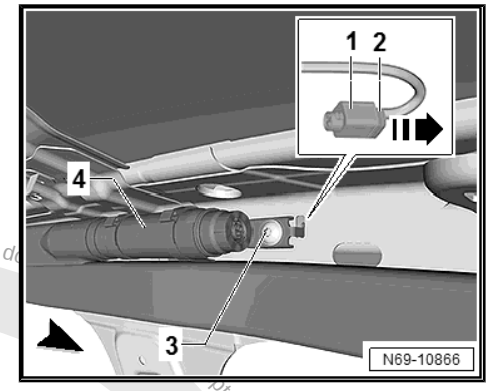


Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Always follow steps of procedure for installing curtain air-bag in the given order.*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. connecting the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



- First, attach curtain airbag -4- to body mounting at rear, and push it towards front.
- Then, attach curtain airbag to body mounting at front.
- Secure curtain airbag using bolt -3-.
- Clip in retaining clips for curtain airbag ensuring they engage audibly. Start at gas generator and continue towards front and rear.
- Pull on retaining clips to ensure they are properly engaged.
- Fit connector -1- onto igniter for curtain airbag.
- Press in connector lock -2-. Doing so, the connector will be fully inserted into curtain airbag igniter and locked at the same time.
- Ensure that the line to prevent twisting is visible over the entire length and that it is straight. This will ensure that the curtain airbag is NOT twisted.

Continue installation in reverse order of removal.

WARNING

Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

WARNING

If the ignition has not yet been switched on after the battery has been reconnected "warning lamps in dash panel insert are off", the ignition (key or button) must only be switched on while sitting on the driver seat and with the seat set to rearmost position.

Note

If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Torque settings

- ⇒ "8.1 Assembly overview - curtain airbag", page 122

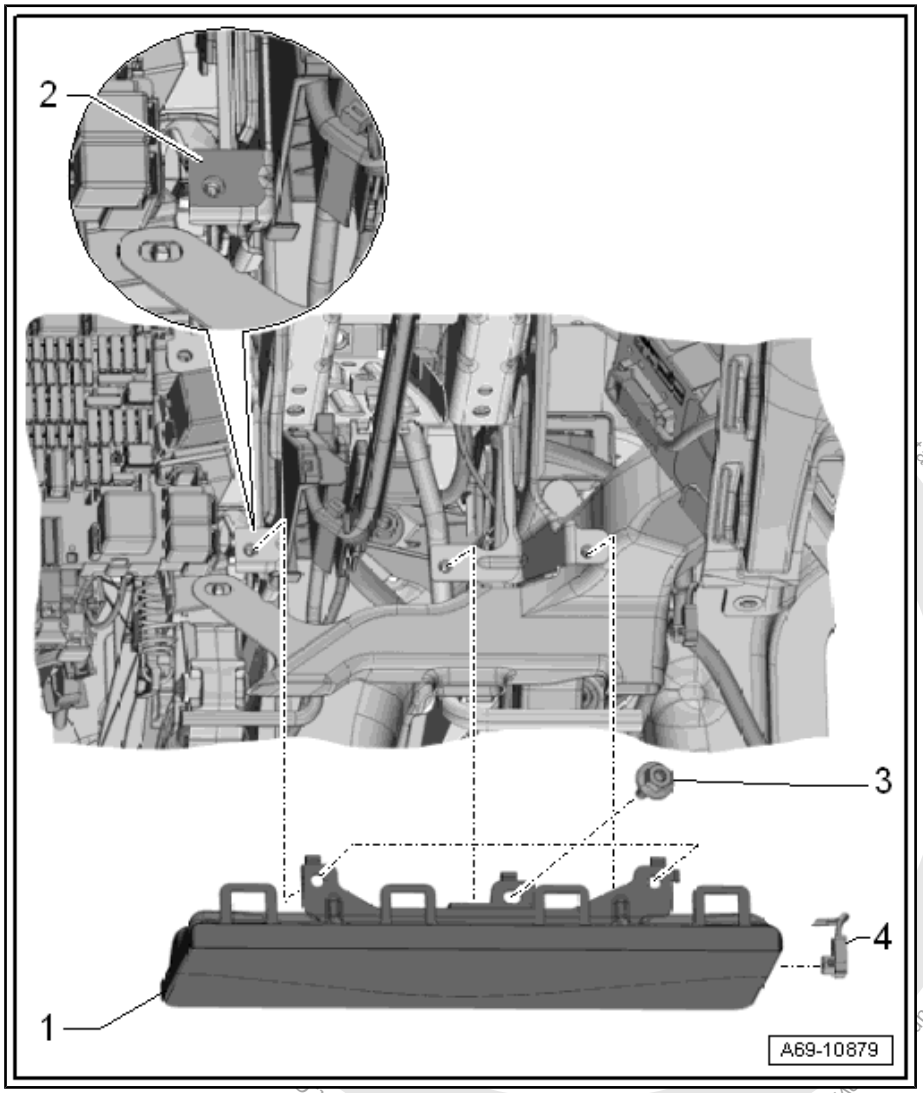
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any use or distribution of this document in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

9 Knee airbags

⇒ “9.1 Assembly overview - knee airbag”, page 128

⇒ “9.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with igniter”, page 129

9.1 Assembly overview - knee airbag



1 - Knee airbag with driver side knee airbag igniter - N295- .

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 129

> **Caution**
>
> *Any risk of damage to the knee airbag surface due to mechanical stress must be eliminated.*
>
> *After completion of work, perform a visual check to ensure that the surface of the knee airbag (particularly in the area of the perforation) is undamaged.*

2 - Contact point

- ❑ For knee airbag

> **Caution**
>
> *Eliminate any risk of failure due to a faulty earth connection.*
>
> *Thread and contact surface must be free of paint, coatings and corrosion.*
>
> *The bolted connection is used as earth connection for the knee airbag.*

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For driver side knee airbag igniter - N295- .

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. For any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document

9.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with igniter

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *Note allocation of airbag unit to dash panel ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

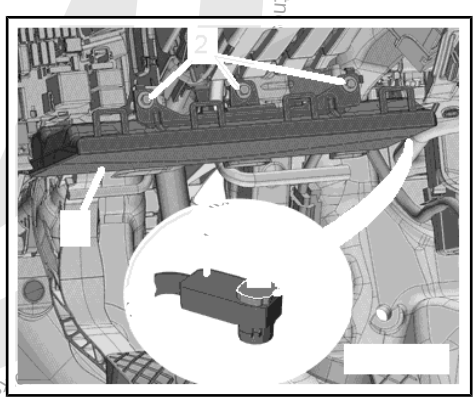
– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

– Release locking lever of steering wheel positioner.

– Pull out steering wheel completely, push it upwards, and fix it in place.

– Unscrew 3 bolts -2- for steering column through opening in dash panel.

– Remove driver side knee airbag -1- towards rear.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.

– Disconnect connector -3- on driver side knee airbag igniter - N295- .

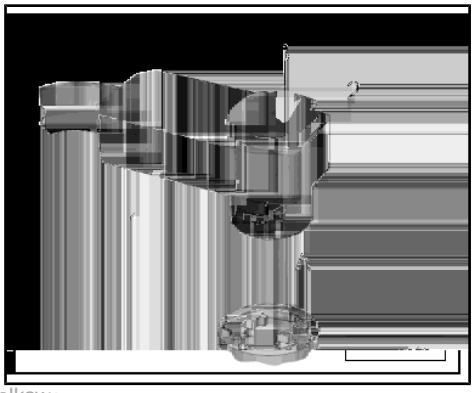
– To do this, release connector lock -4- using a small screwdriver -arrow- and pull off connector.

WARNING

Place airbag aside in such a way that the impact padding points upwards.

Printed by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness, quality or completeness of the material printed. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Installing



WARNING

- *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. connecting the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.*
- *Note allocation of airbags to dash panel ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– Connect connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.

– Press in connector lock -2- -arrow B-. Doing so, the connector will be fully inserted into airbag igniter and locked at the same time.

Continue installation in reverse order of removal observing the following:

Note

- *Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.*
- *Ensure that no wires are trapped.*

Caution

Any risk of damage to the knee airbag surface due to mechanical stress must be eliminated.

- *After completion of the repair work perform a visual check to ensure that the knee airbag surface is not damaged.*

WARNING

Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.

– Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

WARNING

If the ignition has not yet been switched on after the battery has been reconnected "warning lamps in dash panel insert are off", the ignition (key or button) must only be switched on while sitting on the driver seat and with the seat set to rearmost position.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and then read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Torque settings

- ⇒ “9.1 Assembly overview - knee airbag”, page 128

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Copies, in any form or in any whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

10 Airbag crash sensors

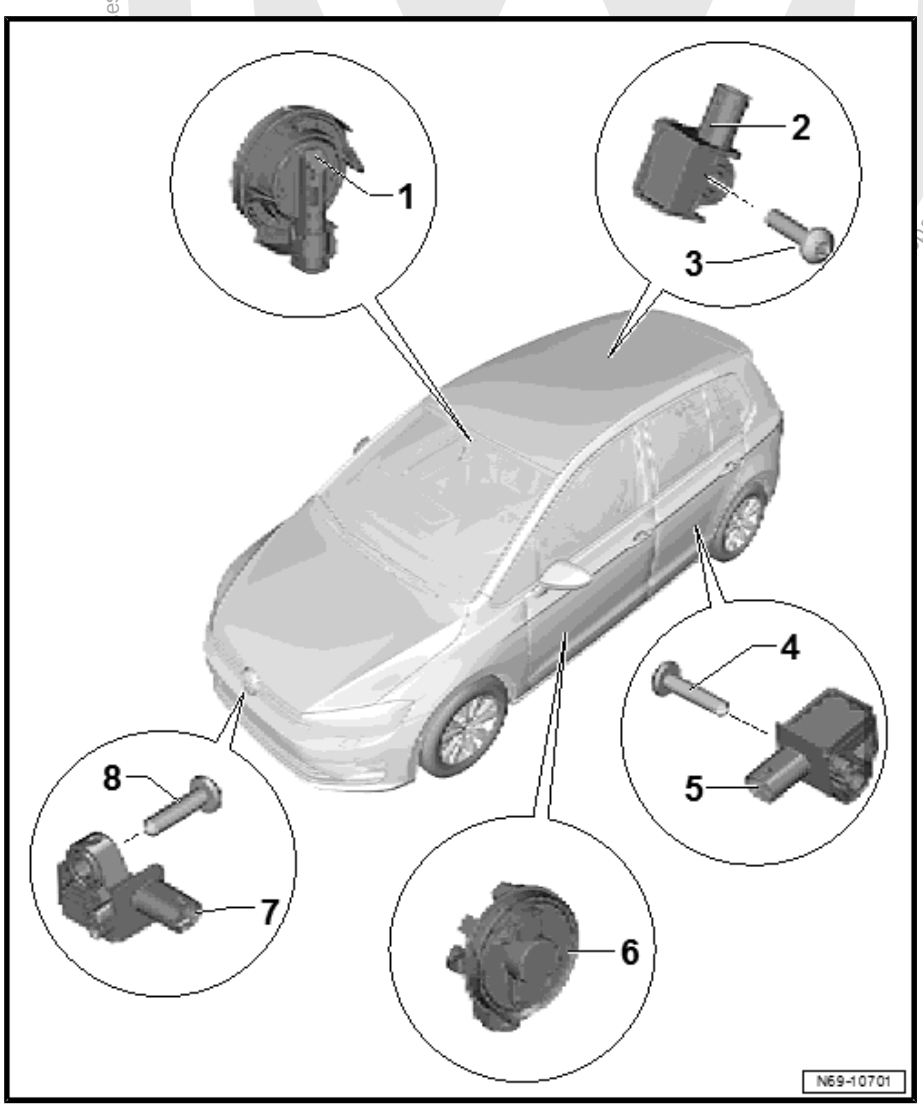
⇒ “10.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag crash sensors”, page 132

⇒ “10.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor, driver side G190 ”, page 133

⇒ “10.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180 ”, page 135

⇒ “10.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor G256 / G257 ”, page 138

10.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag crash sensors



1 - Side airbag crash sensor, front passenger side - G180-

- ❑ Location: in door
- ❑ Safety precautions when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbags
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 135

2 - Rear side airbag crash sensor, front passenger side - G257-

- ❑ Fitting location: beneath wheel housing trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 138

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

5 - Rear side airbag crash sensor, driver side - G256-

- ❑ Fitting location: beneath wheel housing trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 138

6 - Side airbag crash sensor, driver side - G179-

- ❑ Location: in door
- ❑ Safety precautions when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbags
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 135

7 - Crash sensor for front airbag - G190-

- ❑ Fitting location: on lock carrier in centre of vehicle.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 133

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

10.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor, driver side - G190-

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

Risk of injury due to automatic engine starting in vehicles with a start/stop system.

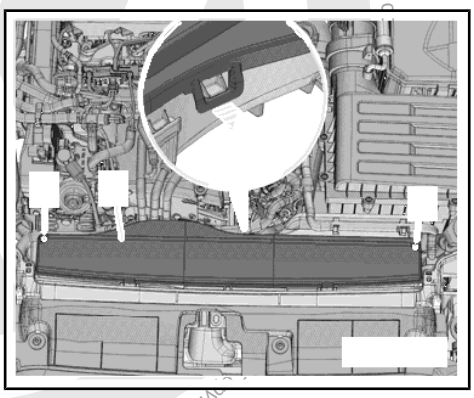
- *In vehicles with an activated start/stop system (indicated by a message in the dash panel insert), the engine may start automatically.*
- *When working on the vehicle, make sure that the start/stop system is deactivated (switch off the ignition; switch the ignition on again if necessary).*

– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

– Open bonnet.

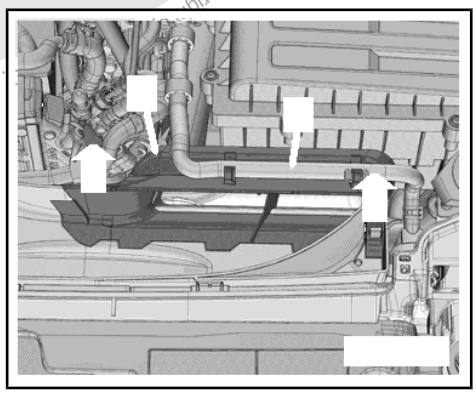
– Unscrew bolts -1, 3-.

– Release fastener -arrow-, and detach cover -2-.



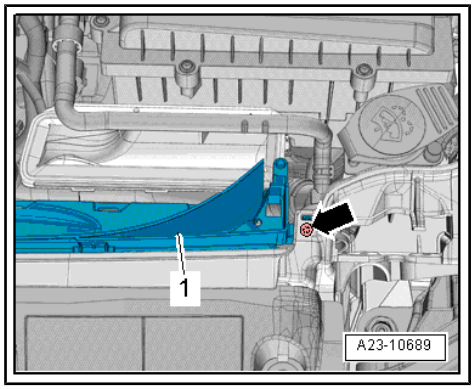
– If fitted, lay coolant hose -2- to one side.

– Release fasteners -arrows-, and detach top section of air duct -1-.



Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the c
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

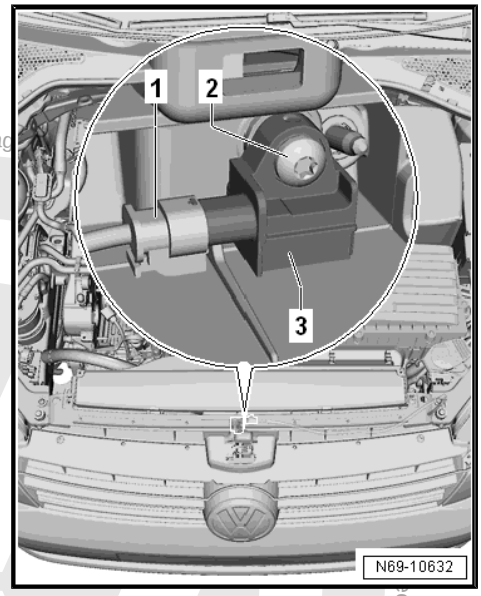
– Unscrew bolt -arrow- on left and right.
– Unclip and detach lower section of air duct -1-.



– Unscrew bolts -2- and remove crash sensor -3- for front airbag from lock carrier.

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.



– Disconnect electrical connector -1-.

– Pull out connector lock -2-, press it down -arrow- and disconnect connector -1- on crash sensor.



Installing

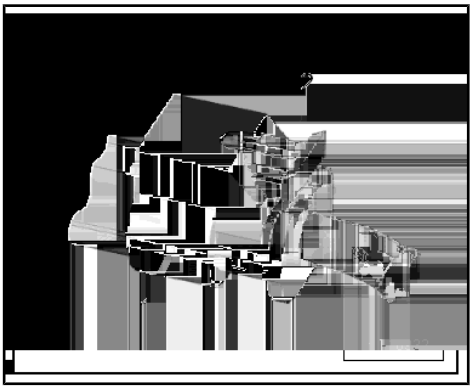
WARNING

- ***Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components*** ***⇒ page 3*** ***.***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. connecting the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG.

– Push connector -1- onto crash sensor until it engages audibly -arrow-.

– Press in connector lock -2- to lock the connector.



Continue installation in reverse order of removal observing the following:

Note

- *Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.*
- *Ensure that no wires are trapped.*

WARNING

Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.

– Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

WARNING

If the ignition has not yet been switched on after the battery has been reconnected "warning lamps in dash panel insert are off", the ignition (key or button) must only be switched on while sitting on the driver seat and with the seat set to rearmost position.

Note

If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Torque settings

- ⇒ "10.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag crash sensors", page 132

10.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor -G179- / -G180-

Removing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Observe safety precautions for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbags ⇒ page 6 .***

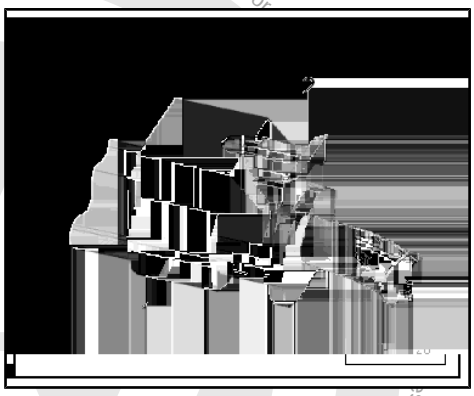
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by VW. VW does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

– Remove front door trim ⇒ page 153 .

WARNING

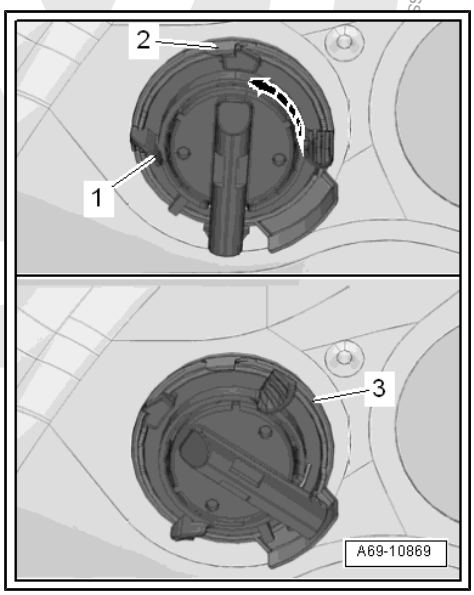
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.



– Pull out connector lock -2-, press it down -arrow- and disconnect connector -1- on crash sensor.

– Release catch -2- and turn locking element -1- for crash sensor anti-clockwise by approx. 45° -arrow-.

– Detach side airbag crash sensor -3- from door and remove it.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or

Installing

WARNING

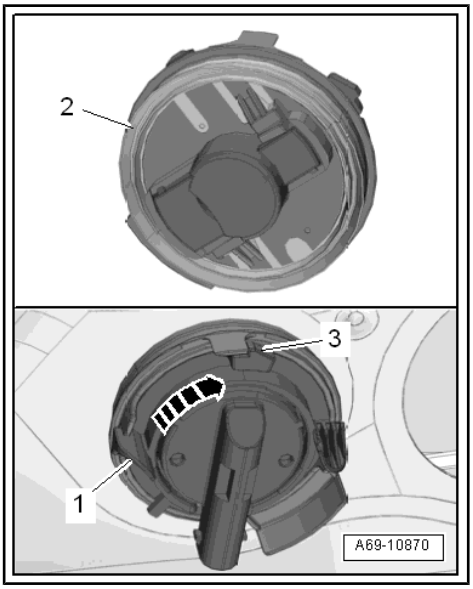
For the crash sensor (pressure sensor) to function properly, it is vital to ensure that the door forms an effective seal.

– Ensure proper seating of seal -2-. Renew crash sensor if damaged or deformed.

– Attach side airbag crash sensor in door.

– Turn locking element -1- for crash sensor clockwise -arrow-.

• Locking lug -3- must engage audibly.



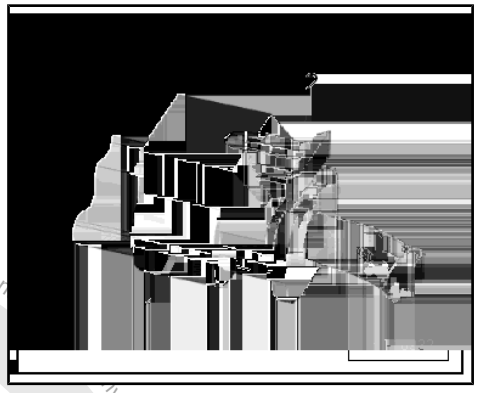
WARNING

- *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe safety precautions for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbags ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. connecting the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Push connector -1- onto crash sensor until it engages audibly -arrow-.

– Press in connector lock -2- to lock the connector.



Continue installation in reverse order of removal observing the following:

Note

- *Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.*
- *Ensure that no wires are trapped.*

WARNING

Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.

– Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

WARNING

If the ignition has not yet been switched on after the battery has been reconnected "warning lamps in dash panel insert are off", the ignition (key or button) must only be switched on while sitting on the driver seat and with the seat set to rearmost position.

Note

If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

10.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor -G256- / -G257-

Removing

WARNING

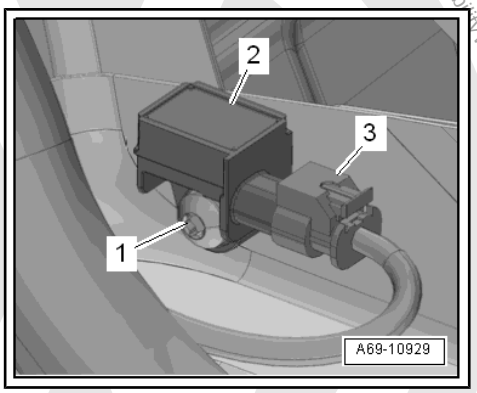
- ***Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.***

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any use of this document, in whole, in part or in excerpts, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

– Removing wheel housing trim ⇒ page 226 .

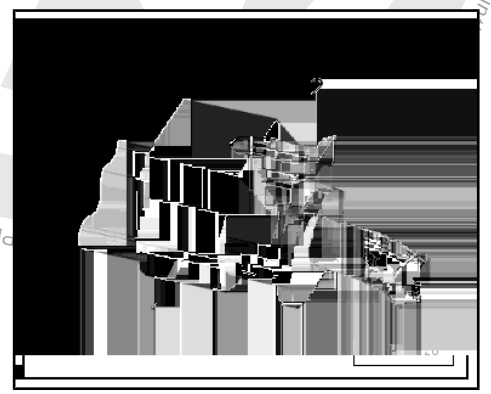
– Unscrew bolt -1- and remove crash sensor -2- for side airbag from body.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.

– Disconnect electrical connector -3-.



– Pull out connector lock -2-, press it down -arrow- and disconnect connector -1- on crash sensor.

Installing

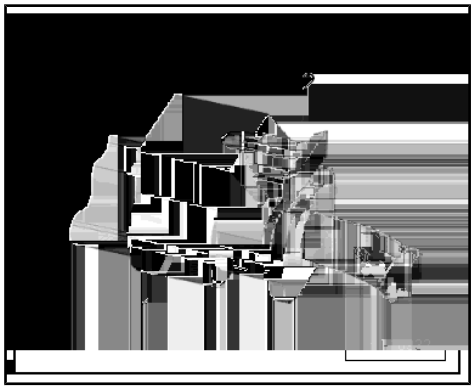
WARNING

- *Observe safety instructions for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. connecting the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Push connector -1- onto crash sensor until it engages audibly -arrow-.

– Press in connector lock -2- to lock the connector.



Continue installation in reverse order of removal observing the following:

Note

- *Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.*
- *Ensure that no wires are trapped.*

WARNING

Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.

– Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

WARNING

If the ignition has not yet been switched on after the battery has been reconnected "warning lamps in dash panel insert are off", the ignition (key or button) must only be switched on while sitting on the driver seat and with the seat set to rearmost position.

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Torque settings

- ⇒ "10.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag crash sensors", page 132

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

11 Seat belt verification

⇒ “11.1 Removing and installing Seat occupied sensor, front passenger side G128 ”, page 141

11.1 Removing and installing Seat occupied sensor, front passenger side - G128-

Note

The seat occupied sensor is only installed in the front passenger seat.

Removing

- Front passenger seat must be in rearmost and highest position

– If fitted, remove storage compartment from under seat ⇒ page 310 .

– Disconnect electrical connector -2- for seat occupied sensor.

– Unclip mounting -1- from seat pan -arrows-, and detach seat occupied sensor -3-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

- *Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.*
- *If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and then read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

12 Pedestrian protection

⇒ “12.1 Assembly overview - pedestrian protection”, page 142

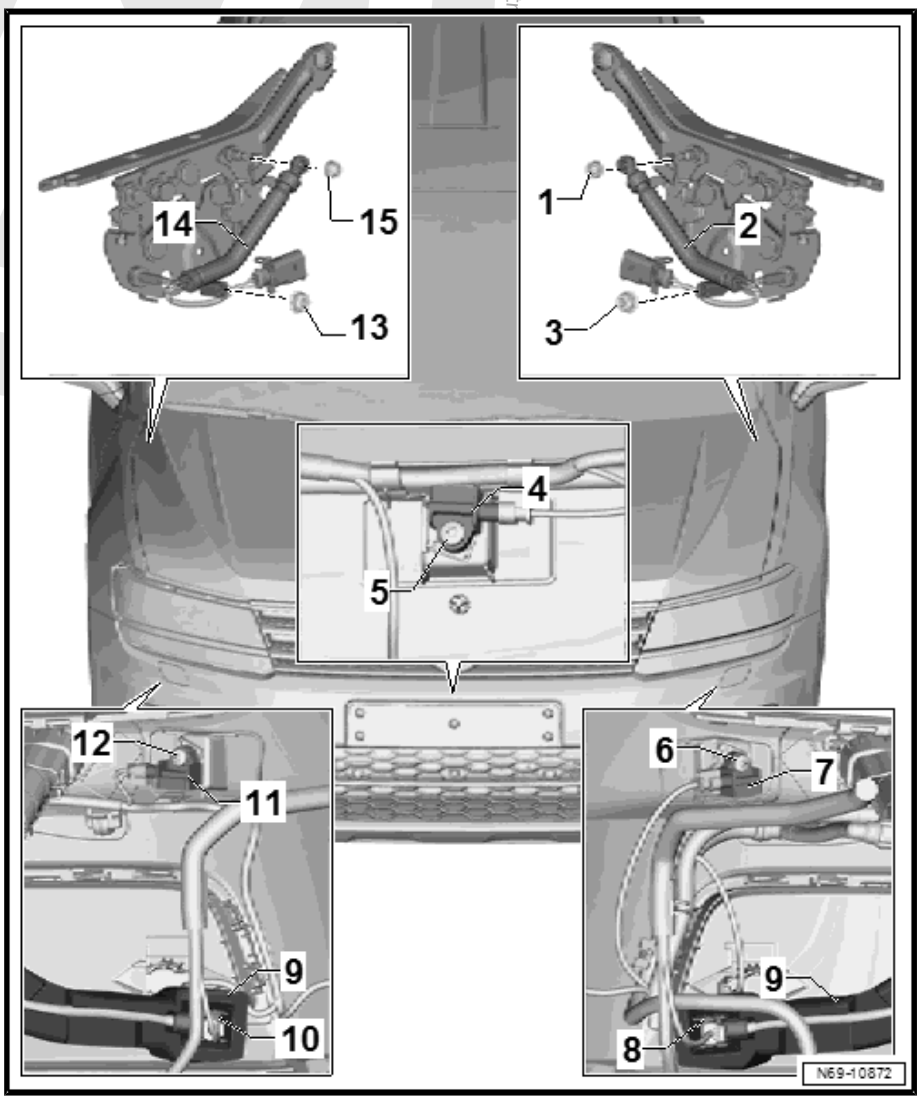
⇒ “12.2 Removing and installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection G693 ”, page 143

⇒ “12.3 Removing and installing crash sensor for pedestrian protection”, page 145

⇒ “12.4 Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection G598 / G599 ”, page 146

⇒ “12.5 Remove and installing front pressure hose sensor for pedestrian protection G579 ”, page 150

12.1 Assembly overview - pedestrian protection



1 - Clip

2 - Trigger 1 for pedestrian protection - G598-

- ❑ Resetting triggered pedestrian protection ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Assembly overview - bonnet
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 146

3 - Nut

- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G693-

- ❑ Fitting location: on bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 143
- ❑ Must always be renewed if:

- ♦ Moulded foam insert visibly damaged
- ♦ Impact bar visibly deformed
- ♦ Bumper cover deformed

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

7 - Driver side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G570-

- ❑ Fitting location: on bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 145
- ❑ Must always be renewed if:

- ♦ Foam visibly damaged
- ♦ Impact bar visibly deformed
- ♦ Bumper cover deformed

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

8 - Driver side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection - G851-

- ❑ Part of front pressure hose sensor for pedestrian protection - G579-

9 - Front pressure hose sensor for pedestrian protection - G579-

- ❑ Fitting location: in moulded foam element on impact bar
- ❑ Must always be renewed if:

- ♦ Moulded foam element is visibly damaged
- ♦ Impact bar visibly deformed
- ♦ Bumper cover deformed
- ♦ Pressure hose damaged

- ❑ Insert pressure hose in groove of moulded foam element
- ❑ Insert pressure hose in moulded foam element, excessive should be routed in compensation zones without kinks
- ❑ Do not kink or crimp pressure hose
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 150

10 - Front passenger side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection - G852-

- ❑ Part of front pressure hose sensor for pedestrian protection - G579-

11 - Front passenger side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G571-

- ❑ Fitting location: on bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 145
- ❑ Must always be renewed if:

- ♦ Foam visibly damaged
- ♦ Impact bar visibly deformed
- ♦ Bumper cover deformed

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

13 - Nut

- ❑ 8 Nm

14 - Trigger 2 for pedestrian protection - G599-

- ❑ Resetting triggered pedestrian protection ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Assembly overview - bonnet
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 146

15 - Clip

12.2 Removing and installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G693-

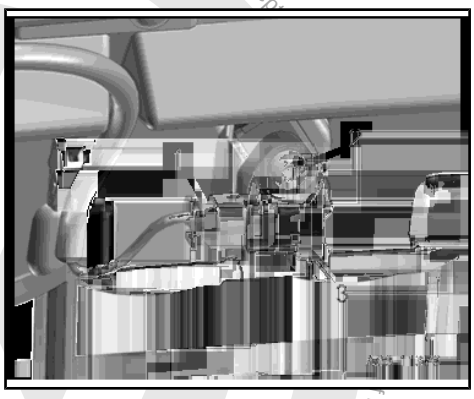
Removing

– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Front bumper; Removing and installing bumper cover .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Unscrew bolt -2- and remove centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G693- -item 3- from bumper.



WARNING

Risk of injury due to unintentional triggering!

- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.***

– Separate electrical connector -1- while holding down connector locking mechanism.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. connecting the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.***

– Fit connector to crash sensor until it engages audibly.

Continue installation in reverse order of removal observing the following:

Note

- *Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.*
- *Ensure that no wires are trapped.*

WARNING

Risk of accidental triggering after incorrect repair of pyrotechnical components (for example airbag, belt tensioner) when battery is connected.

- ***Battery must be connected with ignition switched on.***
- ***For your own safety, stay out of the airbag deployment areas when connecting the battery and keep a safe distance away from the belt tensioners/belts.***
- ***Ensure, at the time of connecting the battery, that no other persons are inside the vehicle.***

– Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

Printed by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use, in whole or in part, for commercial purposes is prohibited. Not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

Note

If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Installation tips: for example tightening torques, renewing components
⇒ "12.1 Assembly overview - pedestrian protection", page 142

12.3 Removing and installing crash sensor for pedestrian protection

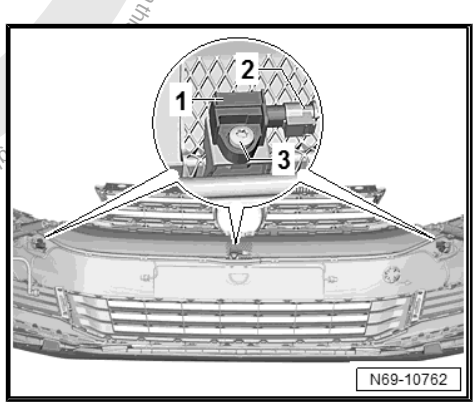
Removing

– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Front bumper; Removing and installing bumper cover .

– Unscrew bolt -3- and remove driver side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G570- / front passenger side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G571- -1- from bumper.

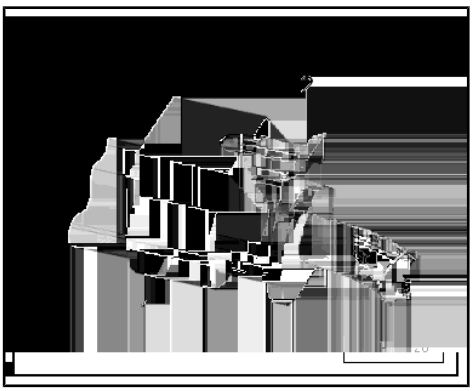
– Disconnect electrical connector -2-.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.

– Pull out connector lock -2-, press it down -arrow- and disconnect connector -1- on crash sensor.



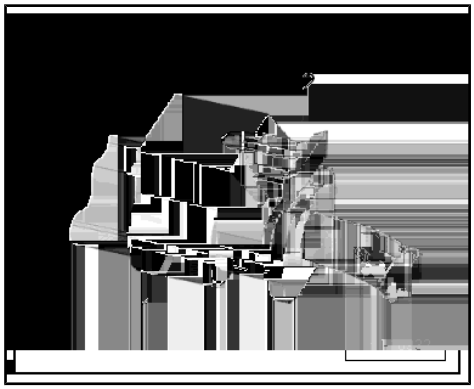
Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. connecting the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.***

– Push connector -1- onto crash sensor until it engages audibly -arrow-.

– Press in connector lock -2- to lock the connector.



Continue installation in reverse order of removal observing the following:

Note

- *Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.*
- *Ensure that no wires are trapped.*

WARNING

Risk of accidental triggering after incorrect repair of pyrotechnical components (for example airbag, belt tensioner) when battery is connected.

- ***Battery must be connected with ignition switched on.***
- ***For your own safety, stay out of the airbag deployment areas when connecting the battery and keep a safe distance away from the belt tensioners/belts.***
- ***Ensure, at the time of connecting the battery, that no other persons are inside the vehicle.***

– Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

Note

If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Installation tips: for example tightening torques, renewing components

⇒ “12.1 Assembly overview - pedestrian protection”, page 142

12.4 Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection -G598- / -G599-

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

– Remove plenum chamber cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50 ; Bulkhead; Removing and installing plenum chamber cover .

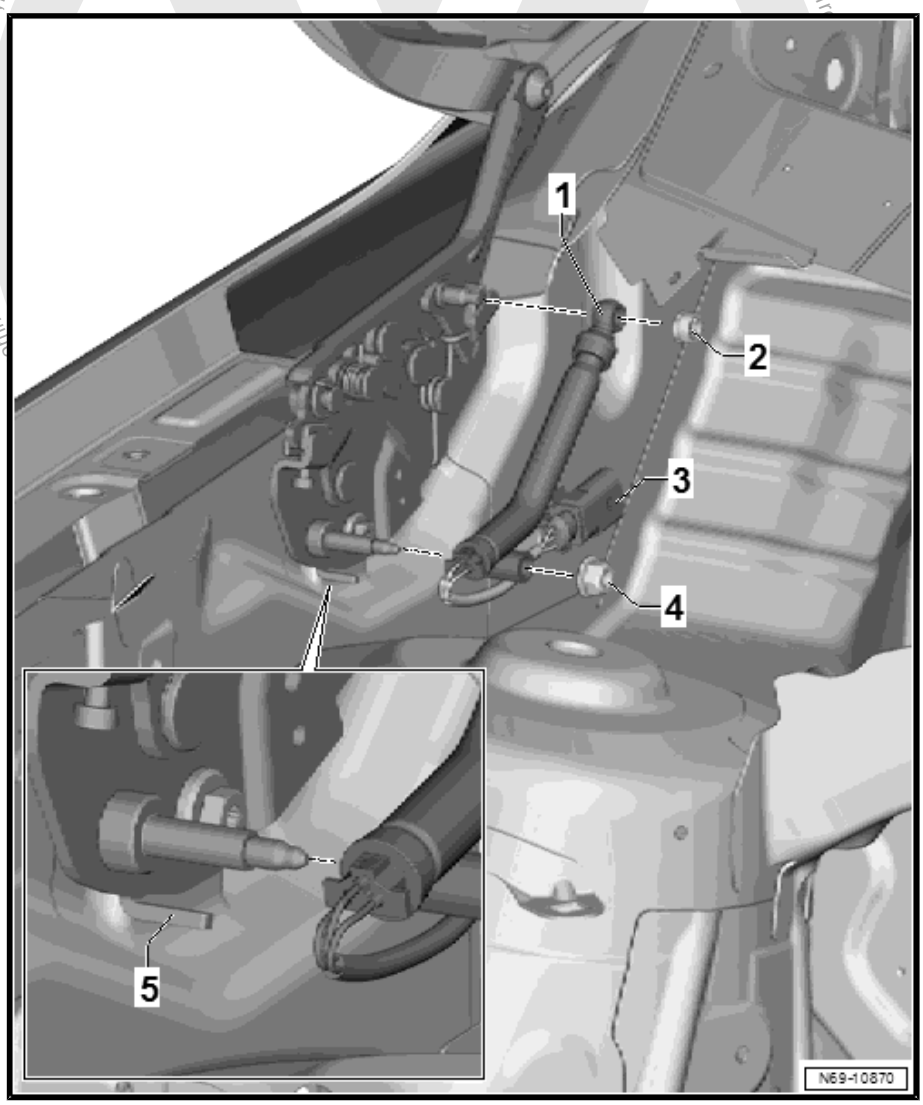
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use, disclosure or commercial exploitation is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.

Commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with r

– Move clear and disconnect electrical connector -3- for pedestrian protection trigger, pressing release mechanism to do so.
– Remove clip -2- using a screwdriver.
– Unscrew nut -4-.
– Detach pedestrian protection trigger -1- from hinge pin.



Installing

– Push trigger for pedestrian protection -1- completely onto hinge pin.

WARNING

Observe correct installation position. A collision with the locating element -5- is not permissible.

– Push trigger for pedestrian protection -1- completely onto hinge pin.

– Secure trigger for pedestrian protection -1- with nut -4- and clip -2-.

WARNING

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. connecting the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.*

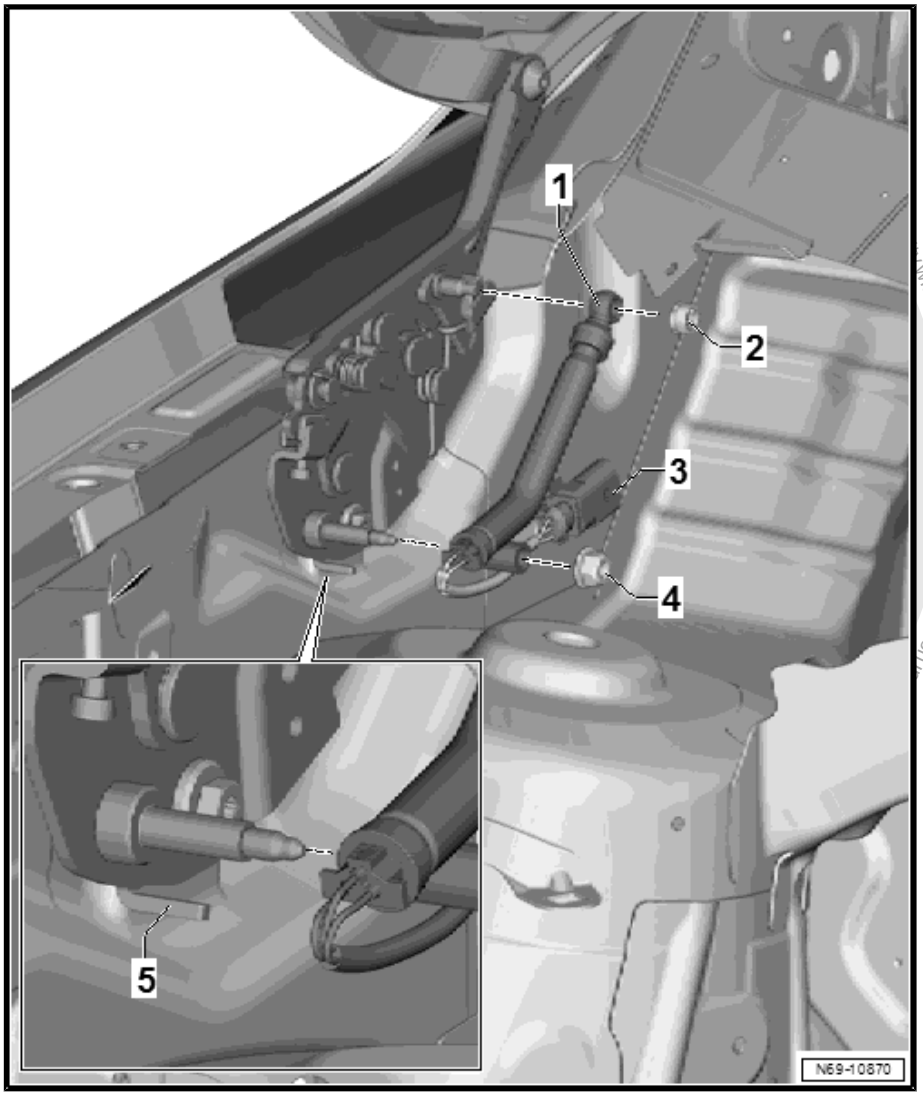
– Connect electrical connector -3- for pedestrian protection trigger -1- to wiring harness.

Note

- *Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.*
- *Ensure that no wires are trapped.*

– Clip electrical connector -3- into hinge.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Continue installation in reverse order of removal.

WARNING

Risk of accidental triggering after incorrect repair of pyrotechnical components (for example airbag, belt tensioner) when battery is connected.

- ***Battery must be connected with ignition switched on.***
- ***For your own safety, stay out of the airbag deployment areas when connecting the battery and keep a safe distance away from the belt tensioners/belts.***
- ***Ensure, at the time of connecting the battery, that no other persons are inside the vehicle.***

– Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Torque settings

- ⇒ “12.1 Assembly overview - pedestrian protection”, page 142

12.5 Remove and installing front pressure hose sensor for pedestrian protection - G579-

WARNING

If the foam element is damaged, the front pressure hose sensor for pedestrian protection - G579- must be renewed.

Removing

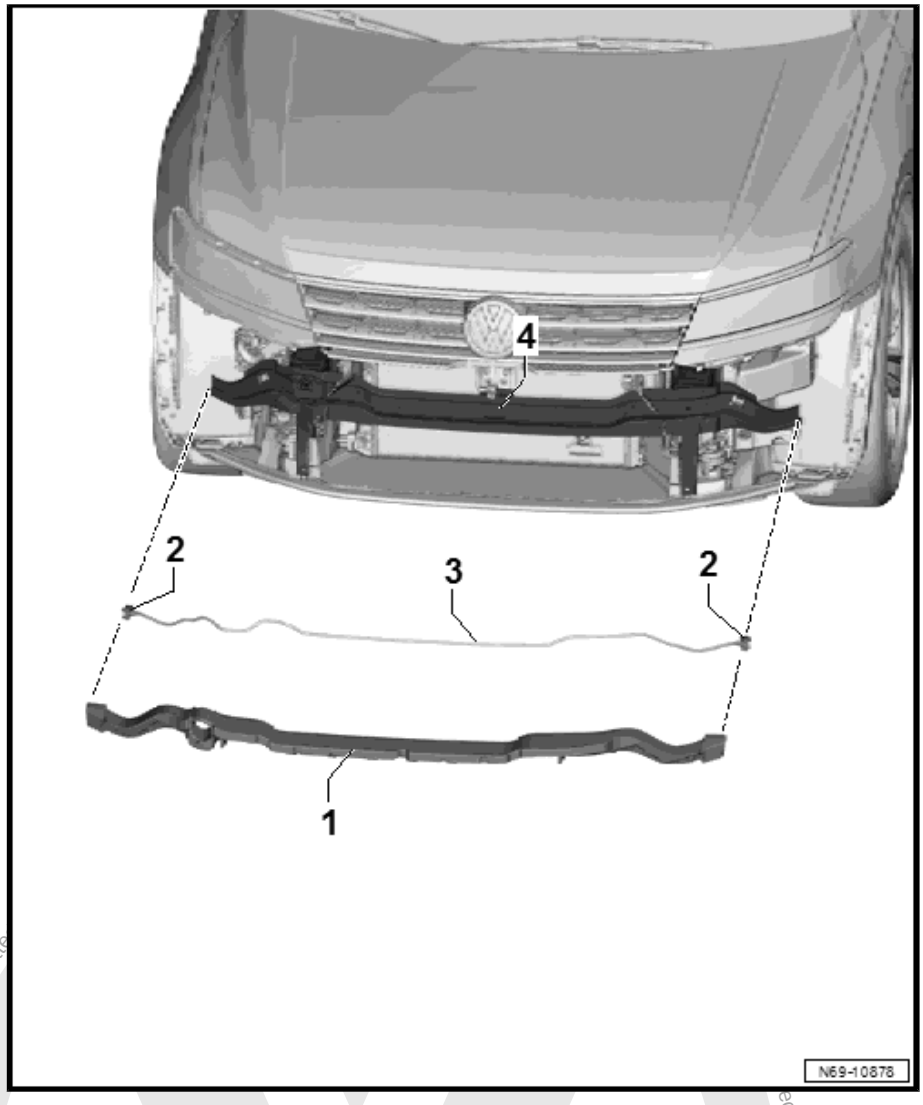
– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Front bumper; Removing and installing bumper cover .

– Unclip foam section -1- from impact bar -4-.

– Separate electrical connectors from pressure sensors -2-.

– Unclip pressure hose -3- including 2 pressure sensors -2- from foam section -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

– Connect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .

Note

If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Subject to the correctness of information in this document.

70 – Trim, insulation

1 Front door trims

⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - front door trim”, page 152

⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing front door trim”, page 153

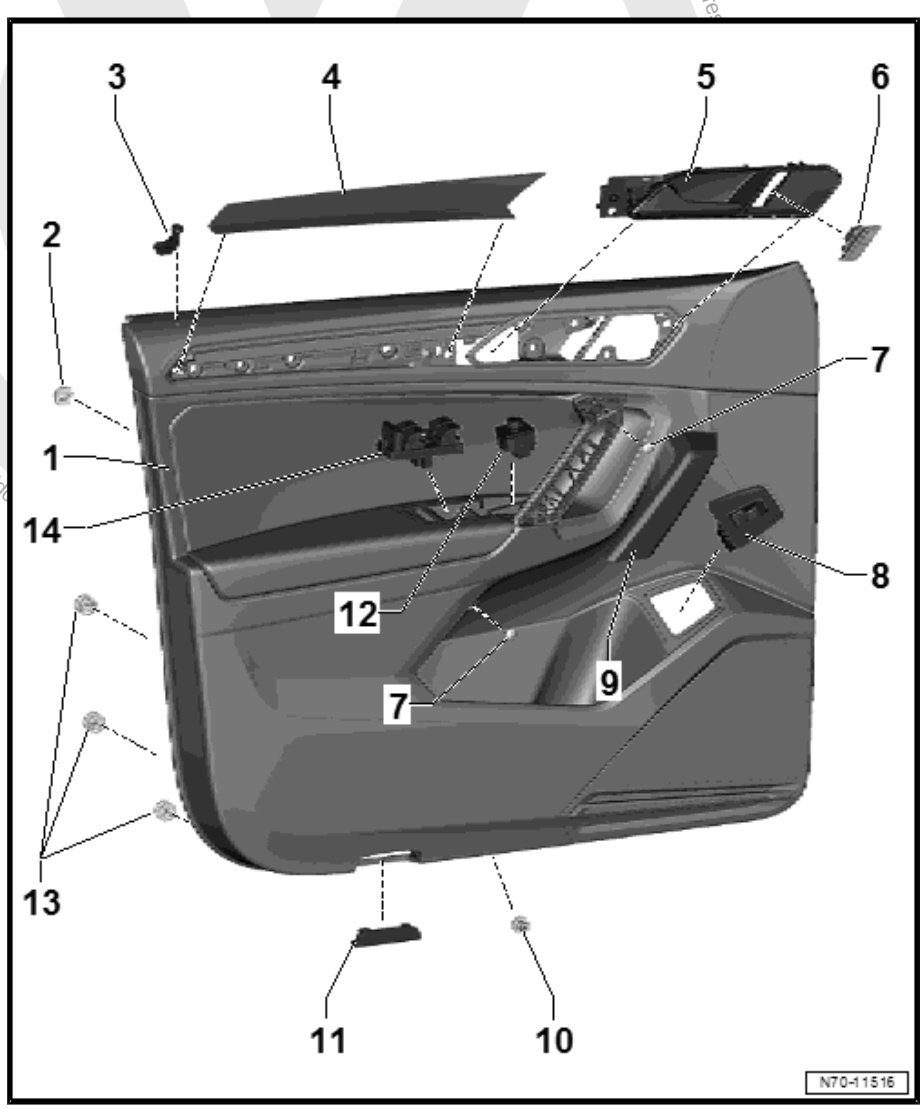
⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing interior door handle”, page 158

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing trim”, page 159

1.1 Assembly overview - front door trim

Note

The assembly overview is shown for the front door trim on driver side. The assembly overview for the front passenger side is analogous.



1 - Front door trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 153

2 - Crash clip

- ❑ Qty. 1

3 - Central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133-

- ❑ Driver door only
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors .

4 - Trim panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 159

5 - Interior door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 158

6 - Driver side interior locking button for central locking system - E308-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors .

7 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

8 - Rear lid remote release button - E233-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors .

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with re

9 - Upper part of handle recess

10 - Rotary clip

- ❑ Qty. 1
- ❑ Turn/release 90° ($^1/_4$ turn)

11 - Reflector

- ❑ Equipment version
- ❑ Door warning lamp

12 - Exterior mirror adjuster - EX11-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors .

13 - Clip

- ❑ Qty. 7
- ❑ Insert into trim
- ❑ Renew any damaged or deformed clips.

14 - Operating unit for window regulator in driver door - E512-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors .

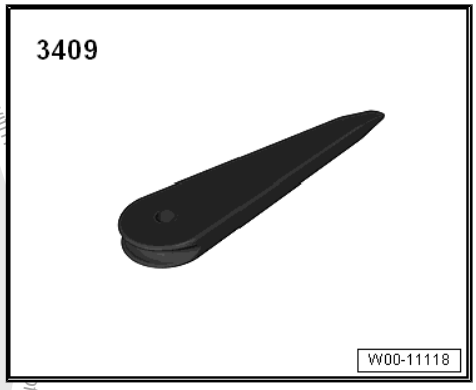
1.2 Removing and installing front door trim

Note

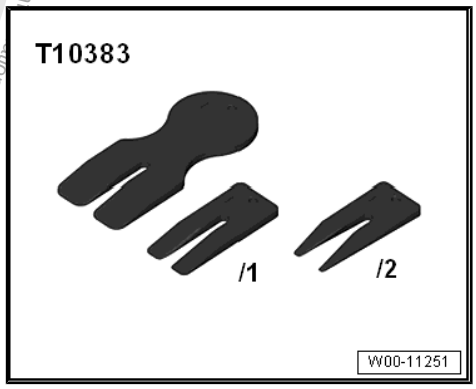
Removal and installation are described for the front door trim on driver side. Follow same instructions for the front passenger side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



- ♦ Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by the manufacturer. No liability is accepted for the accuracy or guarantee or accept any liability with... in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

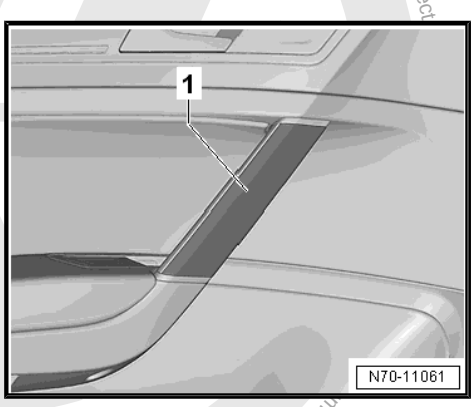
♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



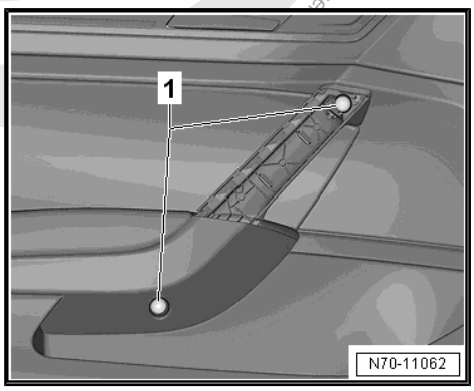
Removing

– Switch off ignition and all electrical consumers.

– Lever upper part of handle recess -1- out of mountings in door trim, using removal wedge -3409- .

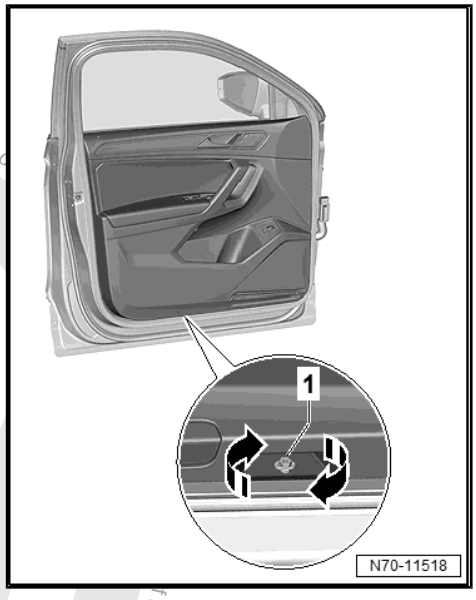


– Unscrew bolts -1-.

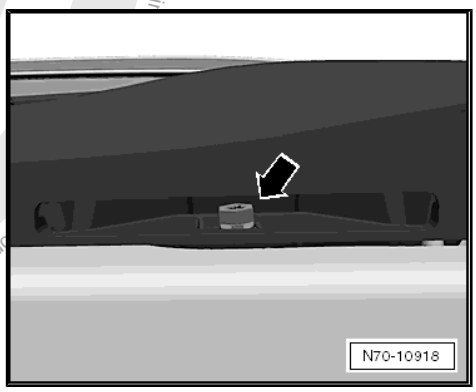


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volks

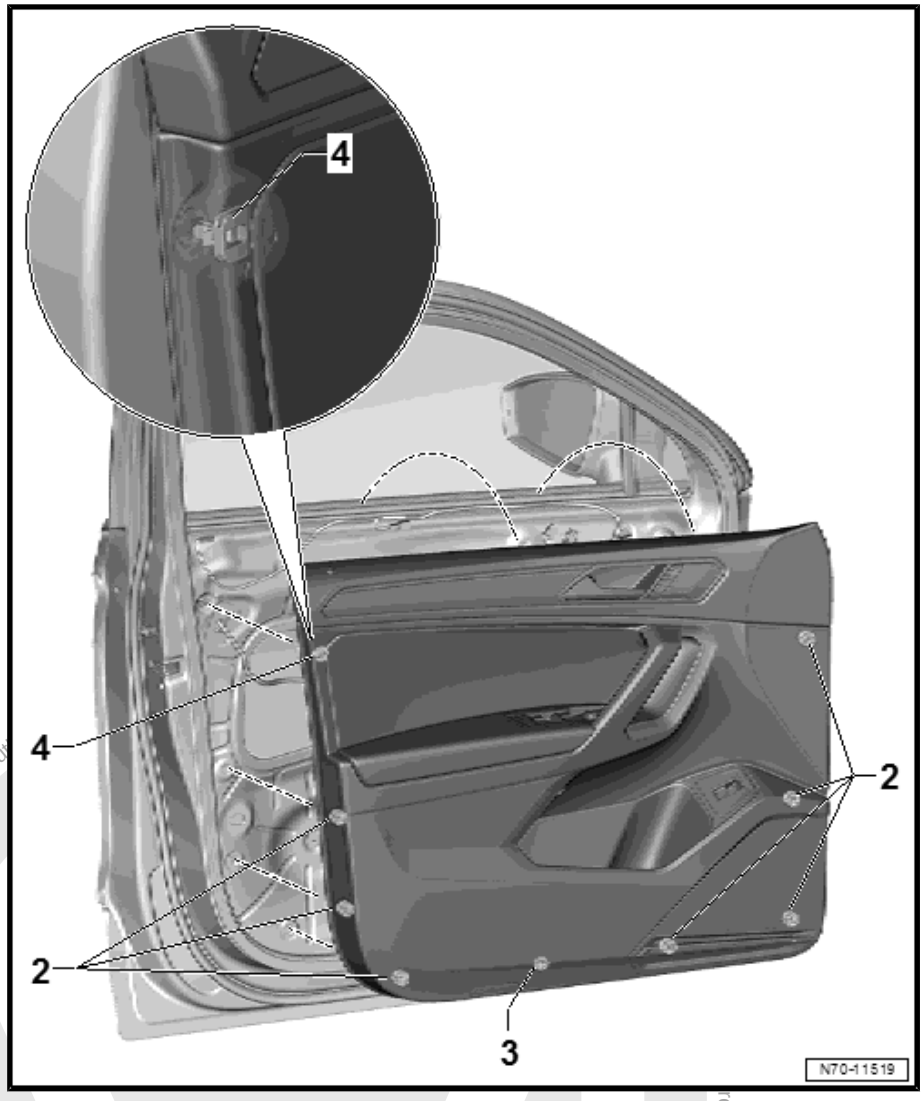
– Release rotary clip -1- using a 10 mm open-end spanner or a Torx screwdriver T30 by turning it 90° (1/4 turn) in -direction of arrow-.



• Rotary clip -arrow- is released.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee



– Detach retaining clips -2- of door trim -1- from mountings using wedges - T10383- . Rotary clip -3- has already been released.

Note

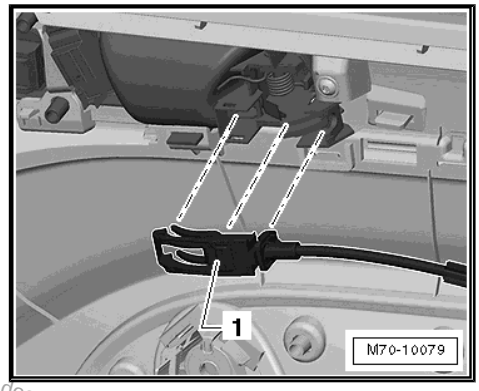
Clip -4- is a crash clip. The crash clip is released automatically when the door trim is detached from the window slot seal.

– Pull door trim vertically upwards out of window slot seal. This will automatically release the crash clip -4-.

– Disconnect electrical connectors from door trim in accordance with vehicle equipment.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Correctness of information in this document.

– Unhook Bowden cable -1- from inner door handle.



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

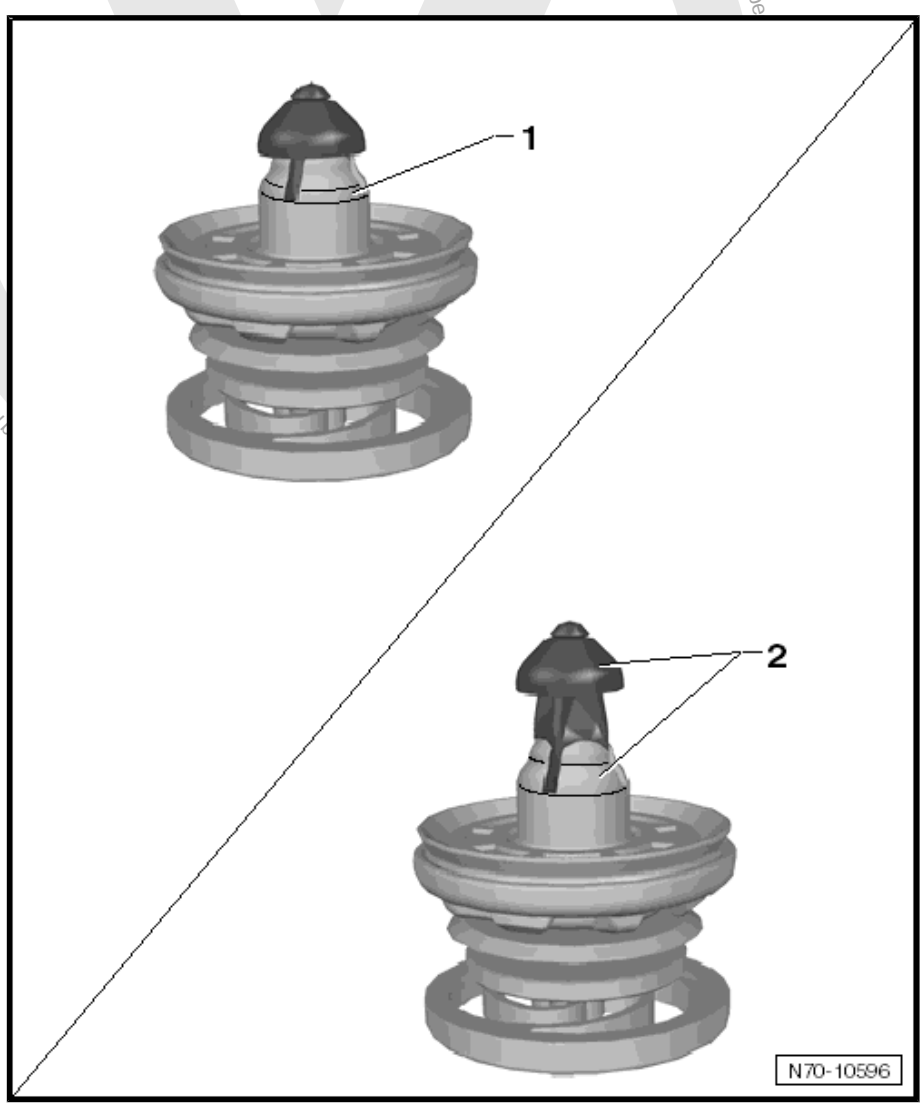
Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Caution

Before installing door trim, ensure that the locking mechanisms of all clips are in -position 1-.

It is not possible to install the door trim without problem if clips are in -position 2-!

for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respe



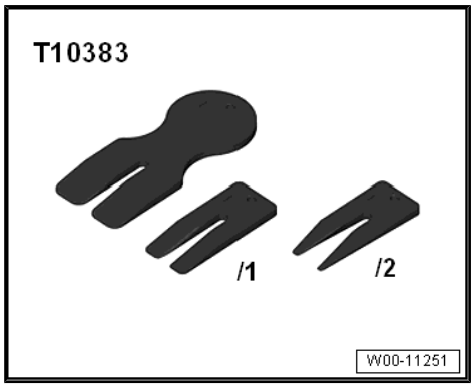
Torque settings

- ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - front door trim”, page 152

1.3 Removing and installing interior door handle

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-



Note

- *The removal and installation procedure is described for the interior door handle on the driver side. Follow same instructions for the front passenger side as appropriate.*
- *The trim panel has to be renewed.*

Removing

– Remove front door trim ⇒ page 153 .

– Remove driver side interior locking button for central locking system - E308- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors .

– Remove trim panel ⇒ page 159 .

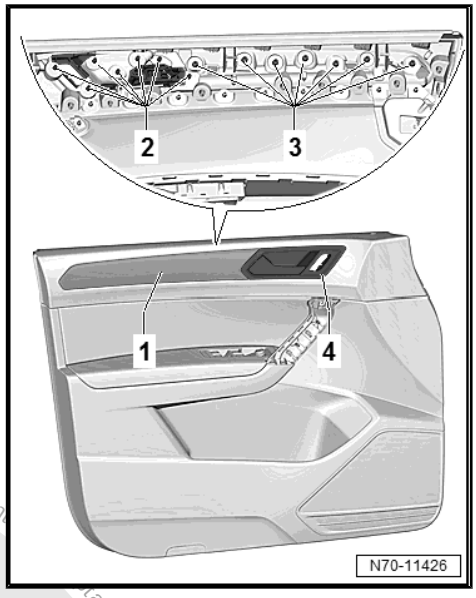
Caution

The door trim must not be damaged when drilling.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Using a suitable drill bit, drill through mounting points -2- of interior door handle -4- in door trim panel until interior door handle starts to become detached from door trim panel.

– Carefully release interior door handle -4- from door trim panel.



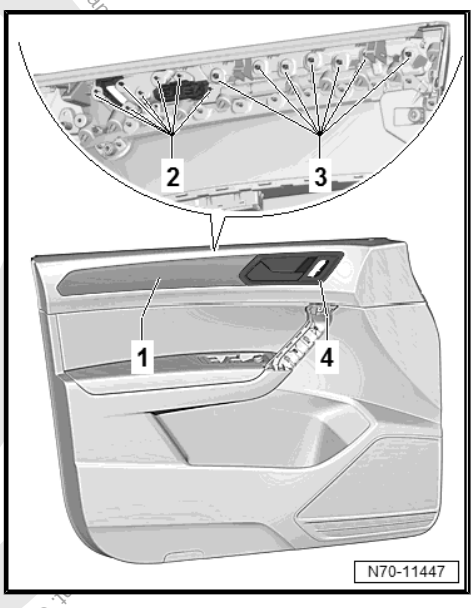
Installing

Clamping washers near interior door handle: qty. 6,
12.8 mm × 7.85 mm. Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

– Insert new interior door handle -4- in door trim panel.

– Press clamping washers onto pins of interior door handle as far as they will go.

– Cut off pins -3- at 2 to 3 mm above clamping washers -2-.



This will prevent the pins from making contact with the inner door panel.

– Install new trim panel ⇒ page 159 .

– Install driver side interior locking button for central locking system - E308- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors .

– Install new trim panel ⇒ page 159 .

– Install front door trim ⇒ page 153 .

1.4 Removing and installing trim

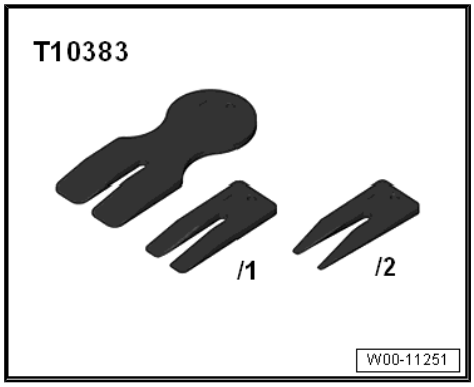
Note

Removal and installation is described for the trim panel on driver side. Follow same instructions for the front passenger side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guaran
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

♦ Wedges - T10383-



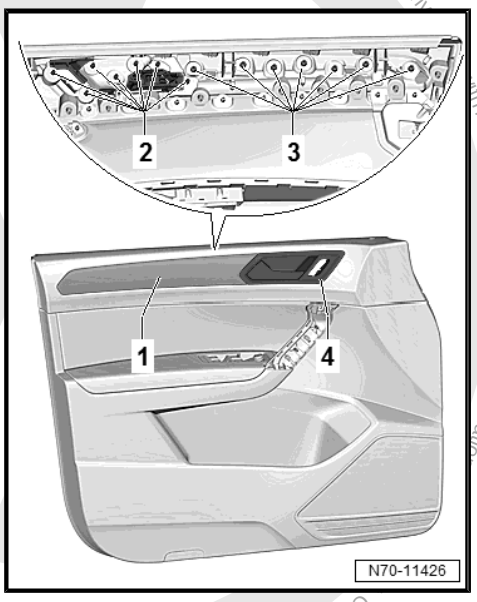
Removing

– Remove front door trim ⇒ page 153 .

Caution

The door trim must not be damaged when drilling.

– Using an appropriate drill bit, drill mounting points -3- of trim panel -1- off door trim just enough for the trim panel starting to detach from door trim.



Note

Disregard items -2- and -4-.

– Carefully release mounting points -3- one after the other, and detach trim panel -1- from door trim.

Installing

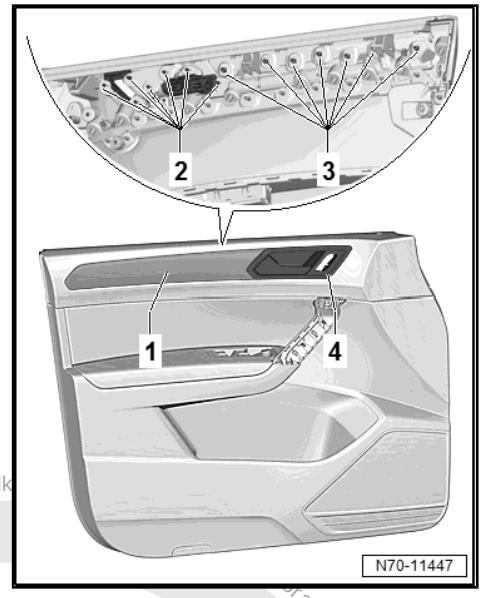
Clamping washers near trim strip: qty. 6, e.g. 12.8 mm × 7.85 mm.
Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Note

Disregard items -2- and -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Insert new trim panel -1- into door trim.
– Press clamping washers -3- onto pins of trim panel as far as they will go.
– Cut back pins -3- of trim panel above clamping washers to max. 2 mm projection.
– Install front door trim ⇒ page 153 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volk
of accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2 Rear door trims

⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - rear door trim”, page 162

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing interior door handle”, page 162

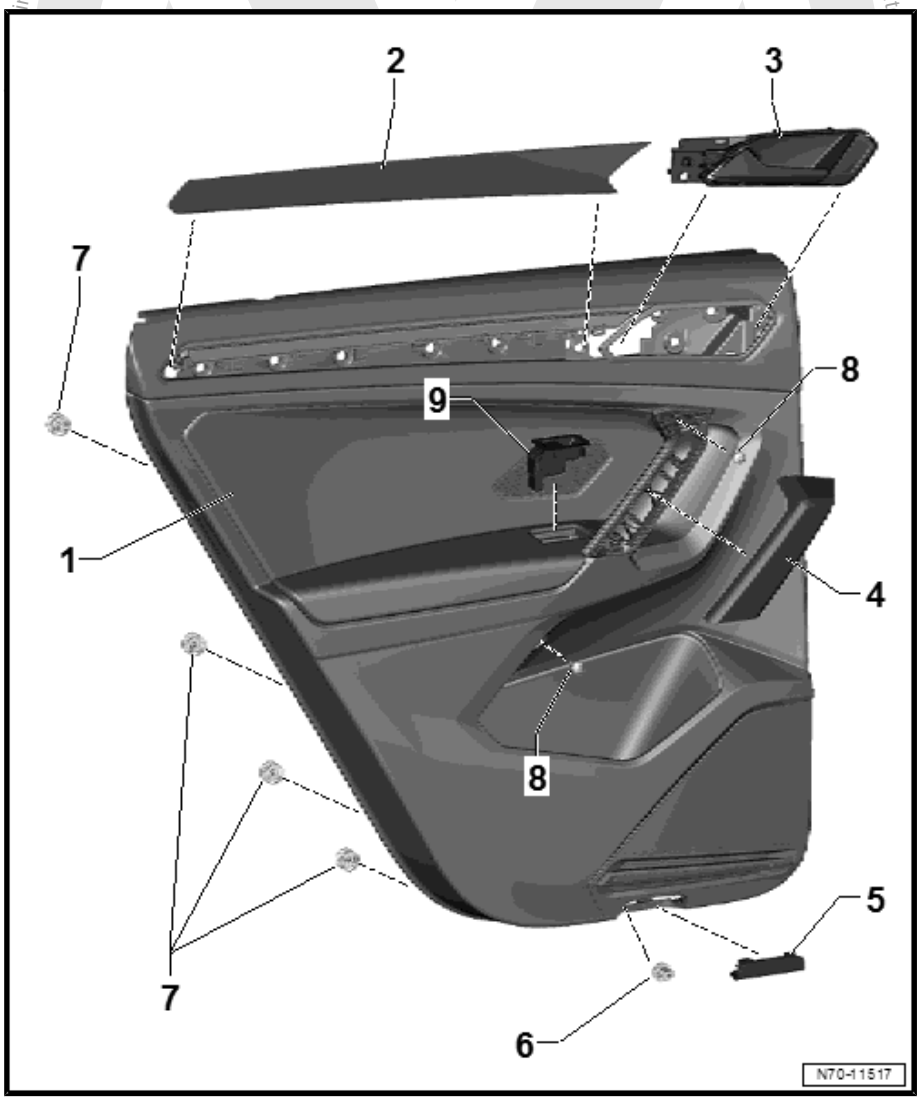
⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing rear door trim”, page 164

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing trim”, page 168

2.1 Assembly overview - rear door trim

Note

The assembly overview is shown for the rear door trim on driver side. The assembly overview for the front passenger side is analogous.



1 - Rear door trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 164

2 - Trim panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 168

3 - Interior door handle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 162

4 - Upper part of handle recess

5 - Reflector
- ❑ Equipment version
- ❑ Door warning lamp

6 - Rotary clip
- ❑ Qty. 1
- ❑ Turn/release 90° ($^1/_4$ turn)

7 - Clip
- ❑ Qty. 7
- ❑ Insert into trim
- ❑ Renew any damaged or deformed clips.

8 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

9 - Rear driver side window regulator button - E711-
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in rear doors .

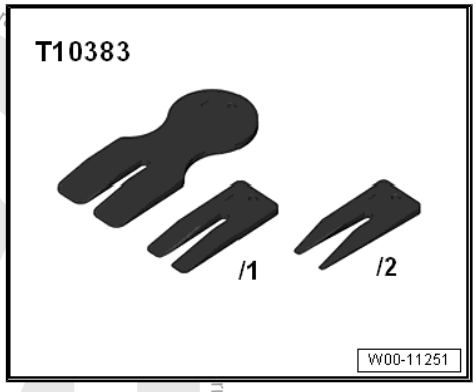
2.2 Removing and installing interior door handle

Special tools and workshop equipment required

...n whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect t...

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Wedges - T10383-



Note

- *The removal and installation procedure is described for the interior door handle on the driver side. Follow same instructions for the front passenger side as appropriate.*
- *The trim panel has to be renewed.*

Removing

– Remove rear door trim ⇒ page 164 .

– Remove trim panel ⇒ page 159 .

Caution

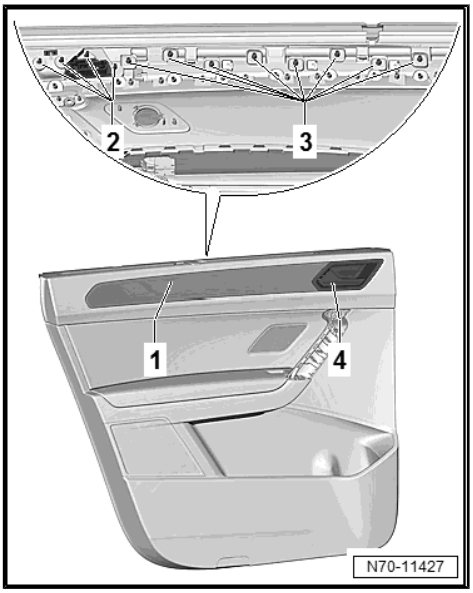
The door trim must not be damaged when drilling.

– Using a suitable drill bit, drill through mounting points -2- of interior door handle -4- in door trim panel until interior door handle starts to become detached from door trim panel.

– Carefully release interior door handle -4- from door trim panel.

Installing

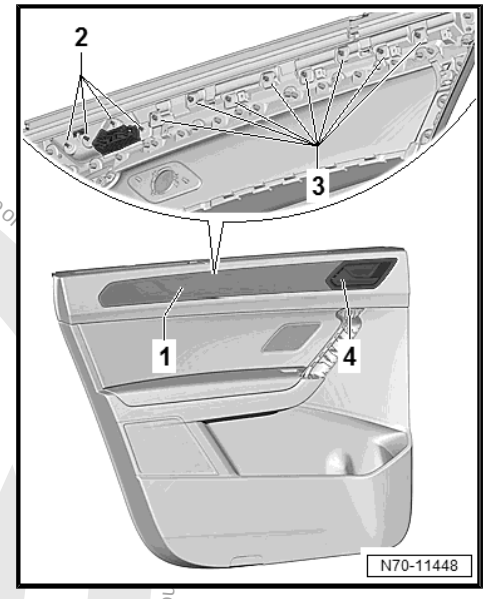
Clamping washers near interior door handle: qty. 4,
12.8 mm × 7.85 mm. Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



– Insert new interior door handle -4- in door trim panel.
– Press clamping washers onto pins of interior door handle as far as they will go.
– Cut down pins above clamping washers -2- to a projection of 2 to 3 mm.

This will prevent the pins from making contact with the inner door panel.

– Install new trim panel ⇒ page 159 .
– Install front door trim ⇒ page 164 .



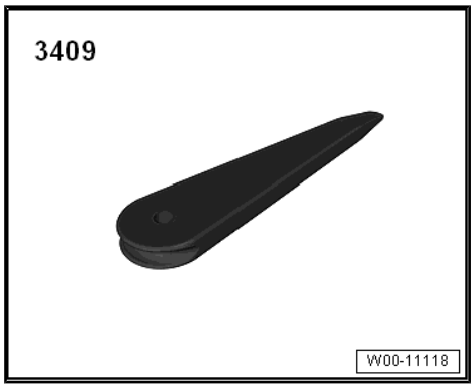
2.3 Removing and installing rear door trim

Note

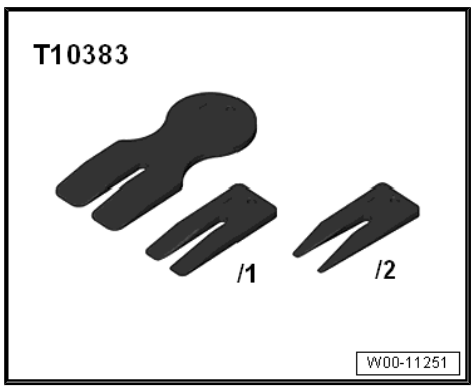
Removal and installation is described for the rear door trim on driver side. Follow same instructions for the front passenger side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

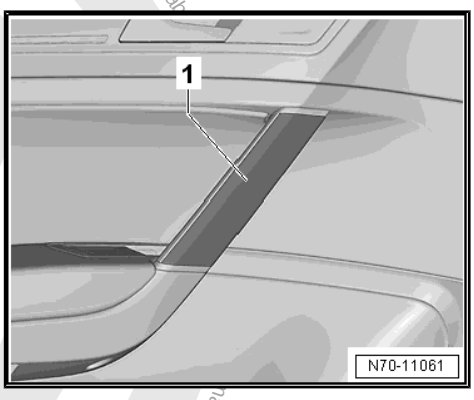
♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



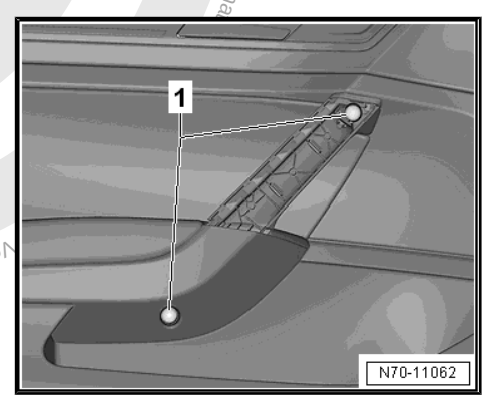
Removing

– Switch off ignition and all electrical consumers, and withdraw ignition key.

– Lever upper part of handle recess -1- out of mountings in door trim, using removal wedge - 3409- .

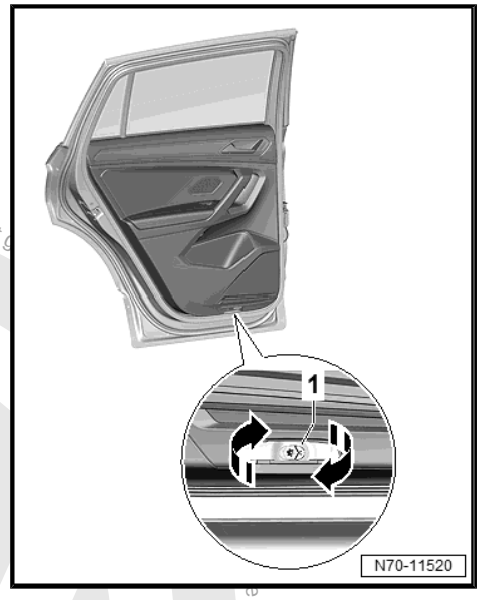


– Unscrew bolts -1-.

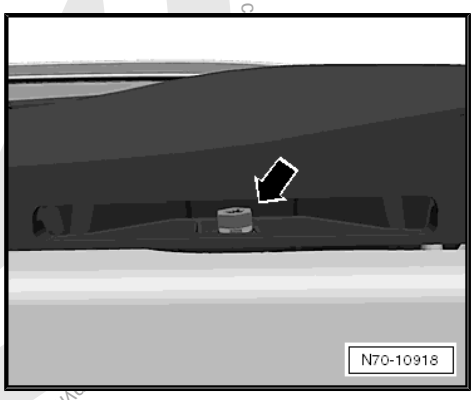


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

– Release rotary clip -1- using a 10 mm open-end spanner or a Torx screwdriver T30 by turning it 90° ($^1/_4$ turn) in -direction of arrow-.



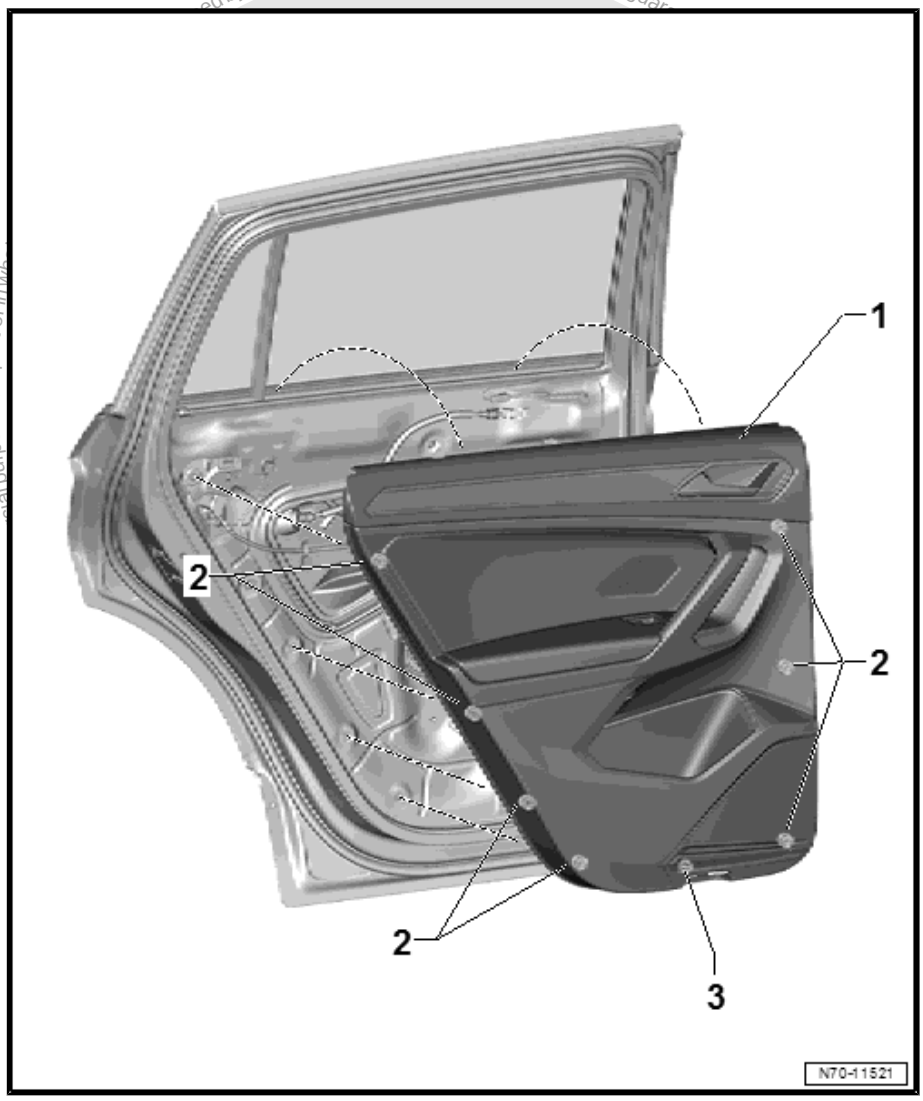
• Rotary clip -arrow- is released.



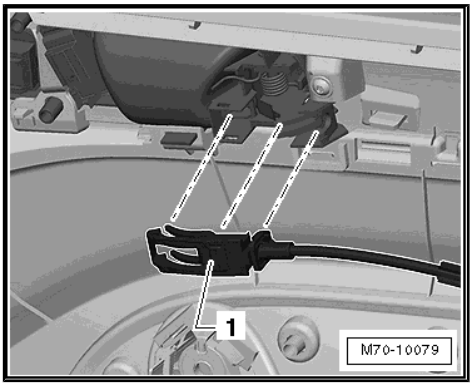
– Detach retaining clips -2- of door trim -1- from mountings using wedges - T10383- . Clip -3- has already been released.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee the accuracy of data after downloading.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Printed by Volkswagen AG, Volkswagen AG does not guarantee
for commercial purposes, in part or in whole



– Pull door trim -1- upwards vertically out of window slot seal.
– Disconnect the electrical plug-in connections from the door trim -1- in accordance with the vehicle's equipment.
– Unhook Bowden cable -1- from inner door handle.



Installing

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

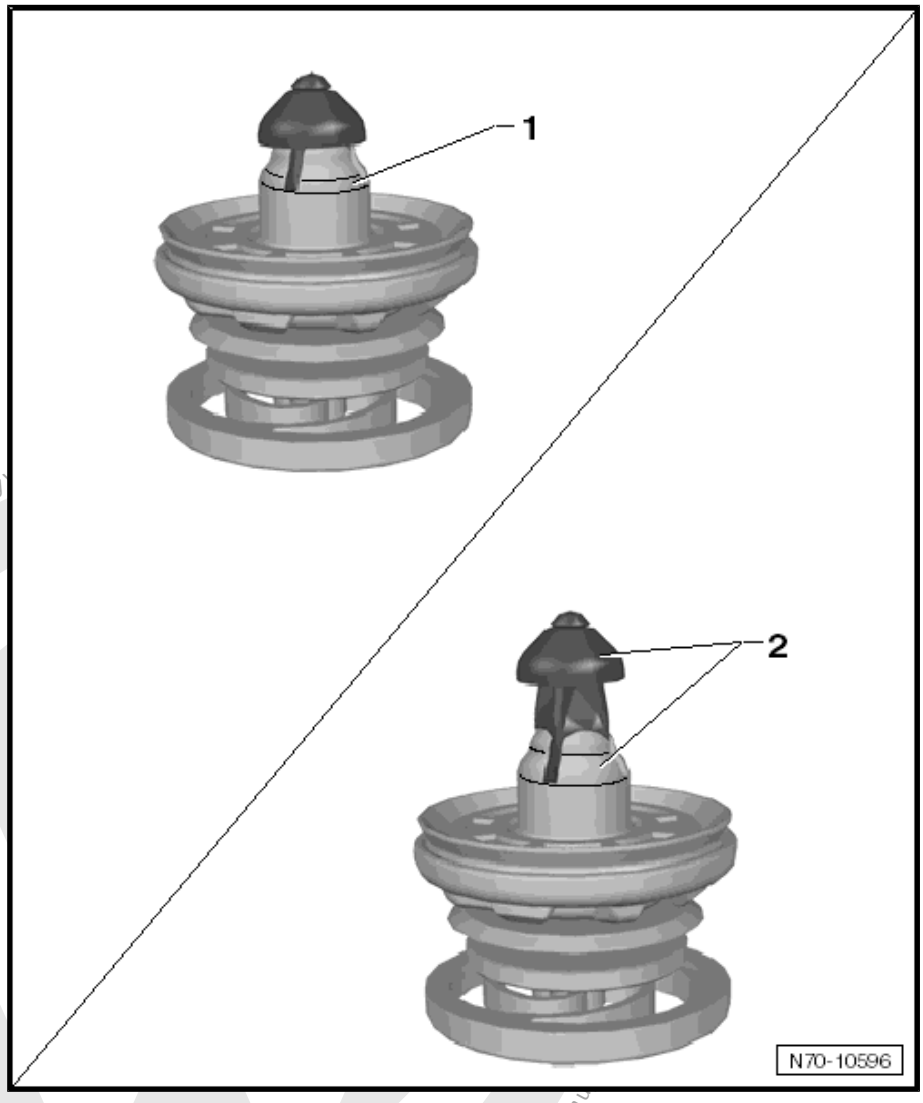
Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Insert retaining clips into rear door trim.

Caution

Before installing door trim, ensure that the locking mechanisms of all clips are in -position 1-.

It is not possible to install the door trim without problem if clips are in -position 2-!



Torque settings

- ⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - rear door trim”, page 162

2.4 Removing and installing trim

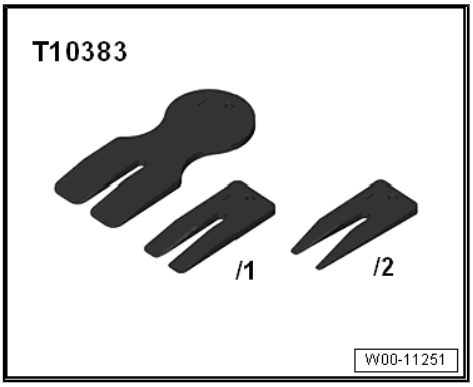
Note

Removal and installation is described for the trim panel on driver side. Follow same instructions for the front passenger side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

♦ Wedges - T10383-



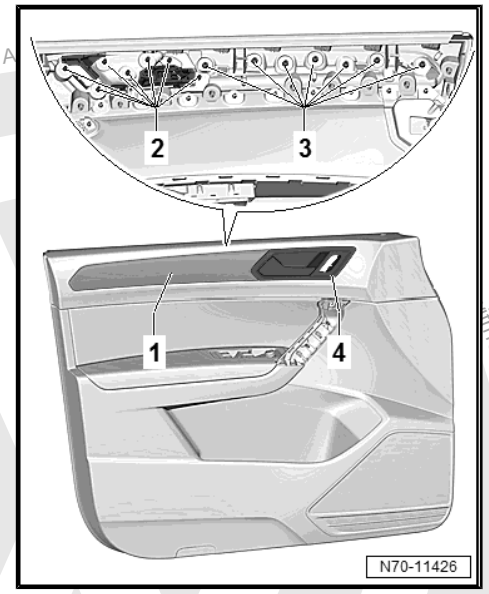
Removing

– Remove rear door trim ⇒ page 164 .

– Using an appropriate drill bit, drill mounting points -3- of trim panel -1- off door trim just enough for the trim panel starting to detach from door trim.

Caution

The door trim must not be damaged when drilling.



– Carefully release mounting points -3- one after the other, and detach trim panel -1- from door trim.

Installing

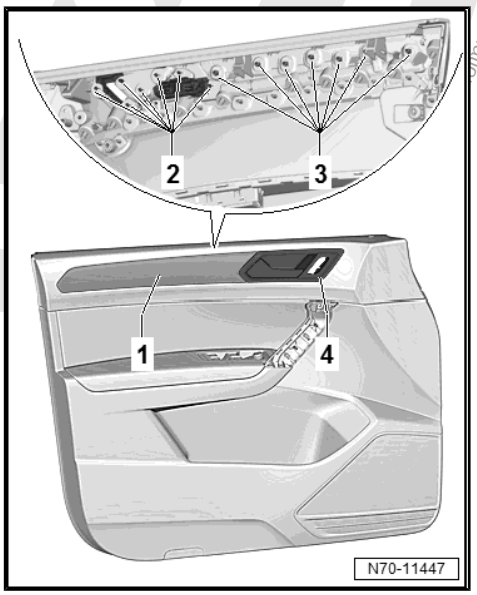
Clamping washers near trim strip: qty. 7, 12.8 mm × 7.85 mm.
Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

– Insert new trim panel -1- into door trim.

– Press clamping washers -3- onto pins of trim panel as far as they will go.

– Cut back pins -3- of trim panel above clamping washers to max. 2 mm projection.

– Install front door trim ⇒ page 164 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. With respect to the correctness of information

3 Dash panel

⇒ “3.1 Assembly overview - dash panel”, page 170

⇒ “3.2 Assembly overview - cover and trim for Head-up Display”, page 172

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing dash panel end cover”, page 172

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing dash panel trim”, page 173

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing light switch trim”, page 174

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing radio/navigation system blanking plate”, page 175

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing dash panel”, page 175

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing trim for Head-up Display”, page 185

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing cover for Head-up Display”, page 186

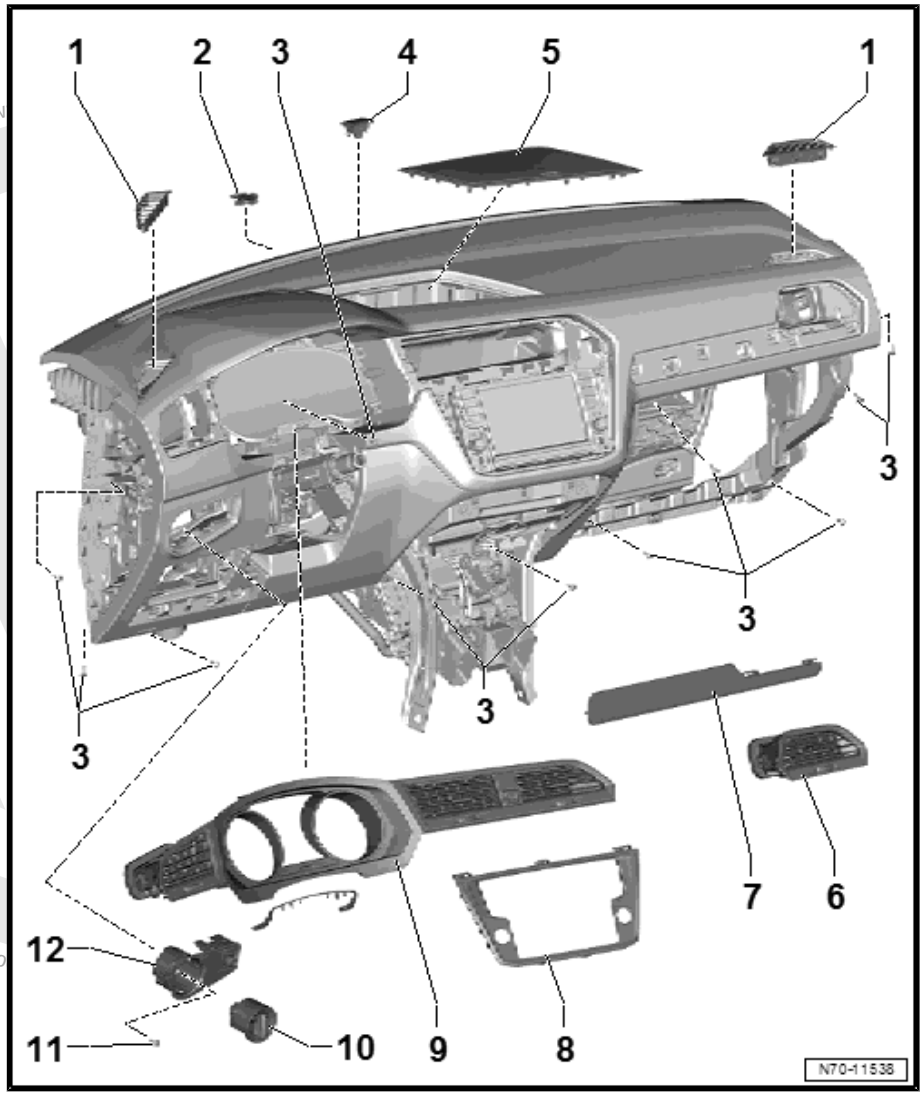
⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing dash panel vents”, page 188

⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing side defroster vent”, page 188

⇒ “3.12 Removing and installing dash panel insert trim”, page 189

3.1 Assembly overview - dash panel

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Side defroster vent

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 188

2 - Rubber buffer

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Slide onto dash panel mountings on lower windscreen frame.

3 - Bolts

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

4 - Sunlight penetration photosensor - G107-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Other control components; Removing and installing sunlight penetration photosensor - G107-

5 - Loudspeaker cover

- ❑ Equipment version with sound system
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Removing and installing centre loudspeaker

6 - Dash panel vent

- ❑ right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 188

7 - Trim panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 188

8 - Dash panel centre trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 175

9 - Dash panel insert trim with left and centre dash panel vents

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 189

10 - Rotary light switch - EX1-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

12 - Light switch trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 174

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volksw

3.2 Assembly overview - cover and trim for Head-up Display

1 - Trim for Head-up Display

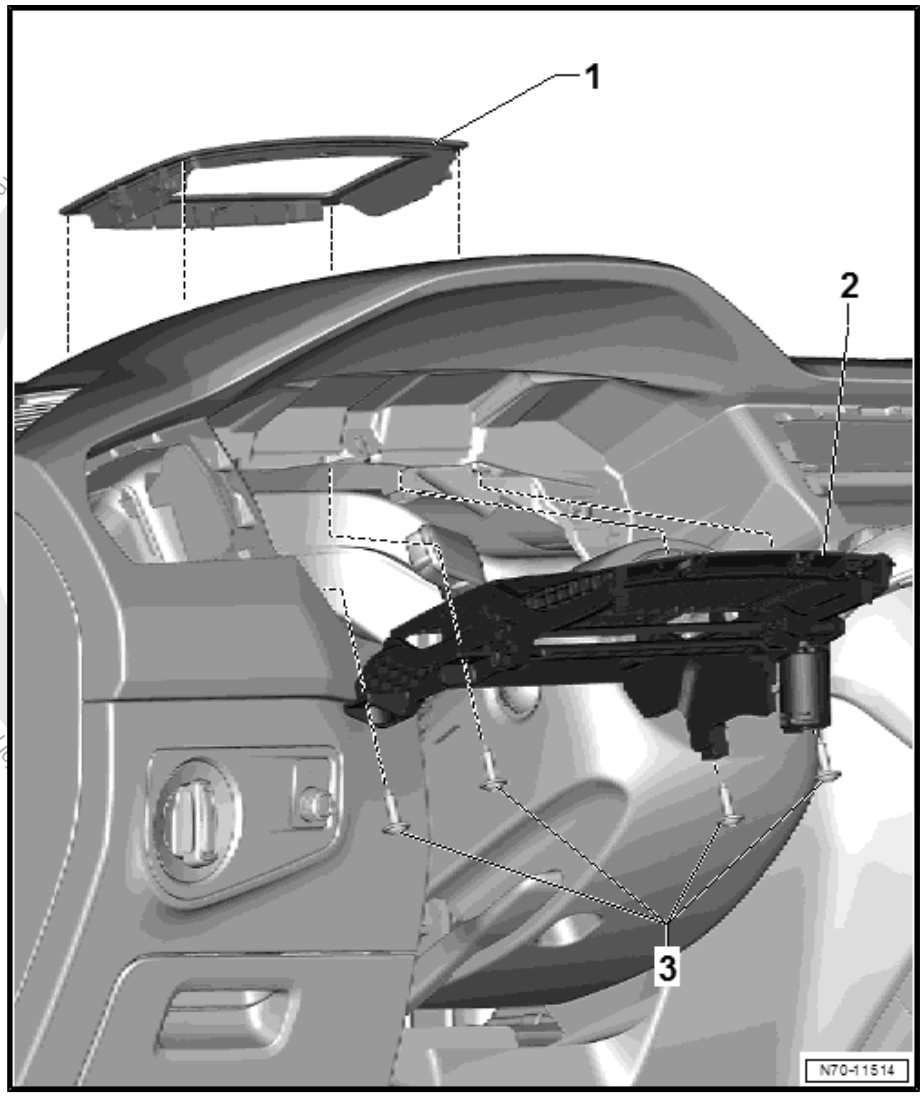
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 185

2 - Cover for Head-up Display

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 186

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ 2.5 Nm



...or private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted...

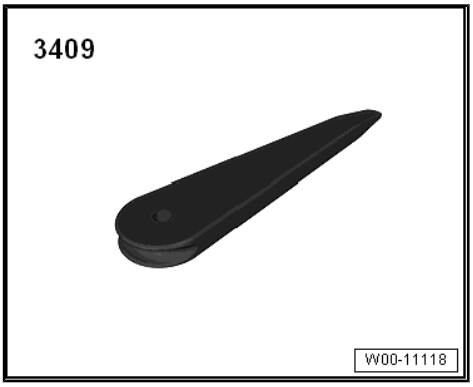
3.3 Removing and installing dash panel end cover

Note

Removal and installation is described for the dash panel end cover on driver side. Follow same instructions for the front passenger side as appropriate.

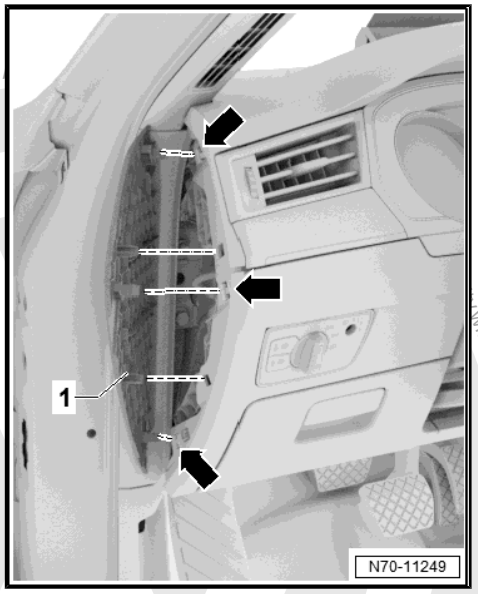
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Using removal wedge - 3409- , release dash panel end cover -1- in area of fasteners -arrows-.
– If fitted, disconnect connector on key operated switch to de-activate front passenger side airbag - E224- .
– Pull cover towards rear out of A-pillar gap cover and remove it.



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

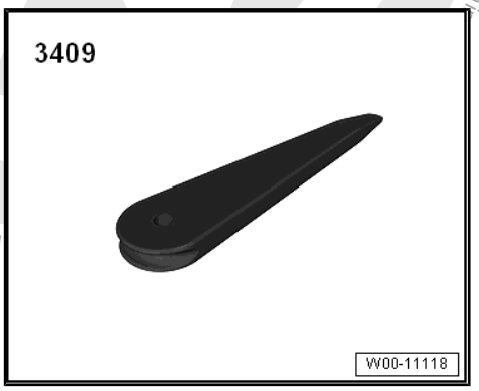
Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

3.4 Removing and installing dash panel trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



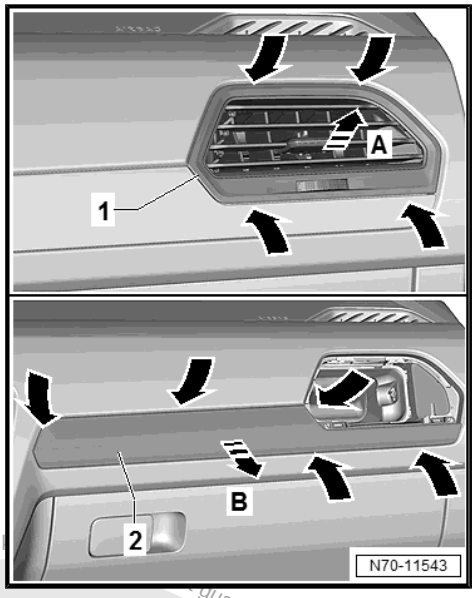
Removing

Remove right dash panel vent ⇒ page 188 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information.

– Release trim panel clip -2- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows-.

– Detach trim panel from dash panel -arrow B-.



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

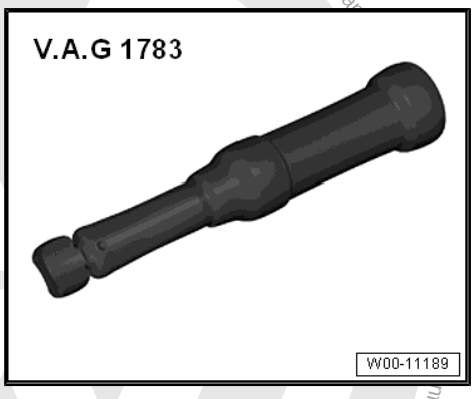
Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

3.5 Removing and installing light switch trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



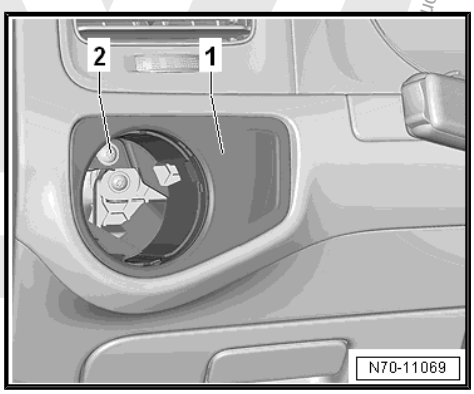
Removing

– Remove rotary light switch - EX1- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel .

– Unscrew bolt -2-.

– Carefully remove light switch trim -1- towards rear from dash panel.

– If fitted, disconnect connector from headlight range control regulator - E102- .



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Torque settings

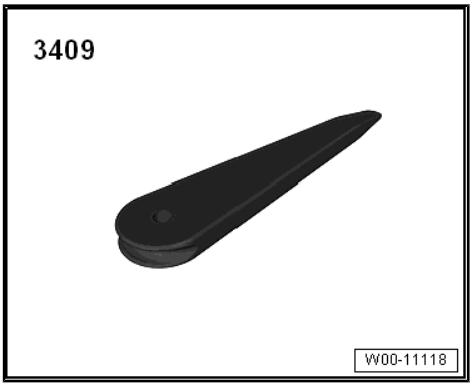
♦ ⇒ “3.1 Assembly overview - dash panel”, page 170

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3.6 Removing and installing radio/navigation system blanking plate

Special tools and workshop equipment required

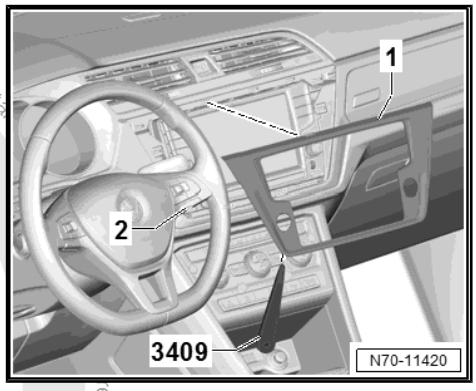
- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Remove trim of dash panel insert ⇒ page 189 .

– Carefully unclip mounting frame -1- from catches -2- in dash panel using removal wedge - 3409- .



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

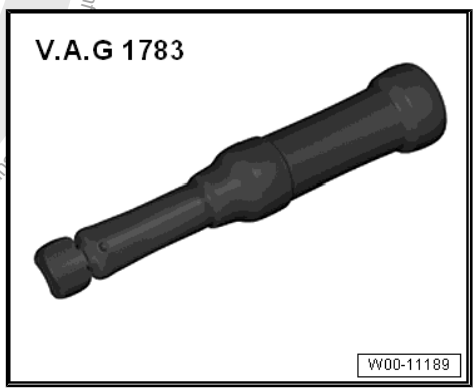
Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

3.7 Removing and installing dash panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 50 .

– Move front seats as far back as possible.

– Disconnect battery earth cable ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

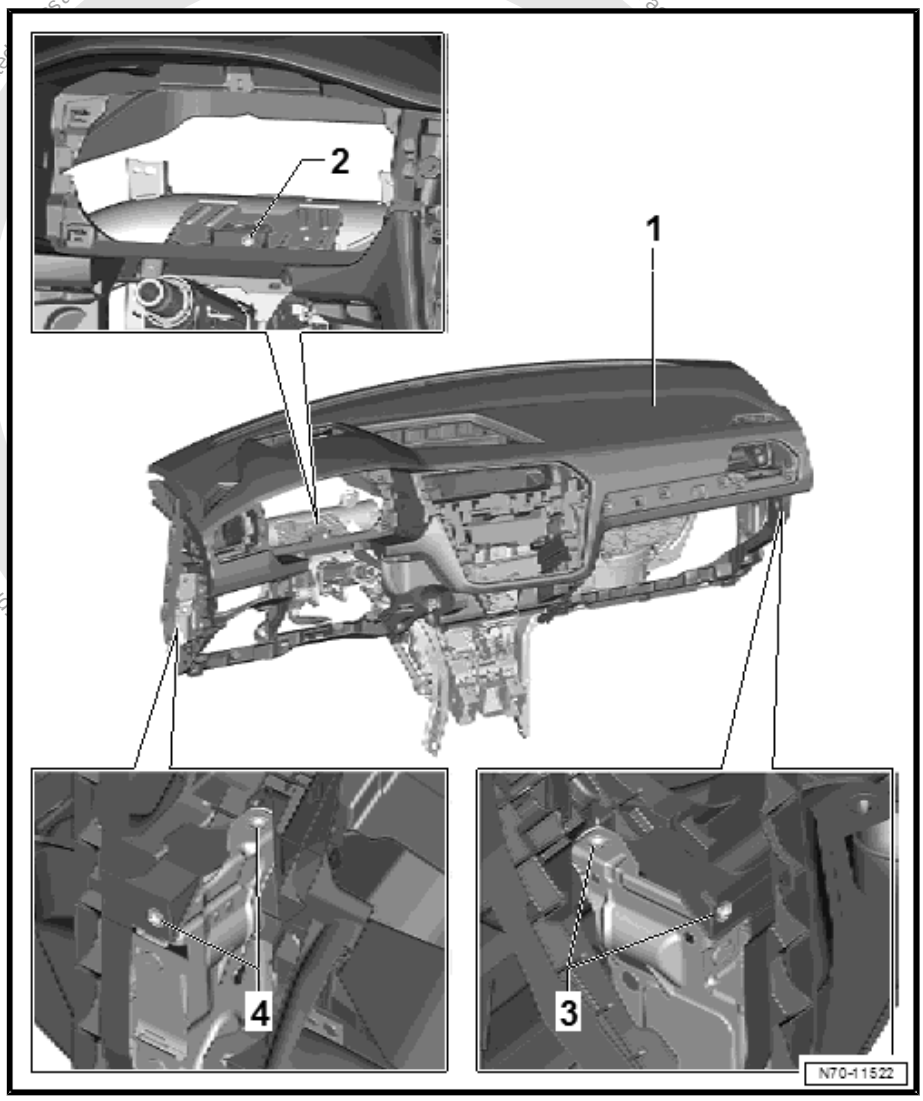
– Remove airbag unit with igniter ⇒ page 104 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

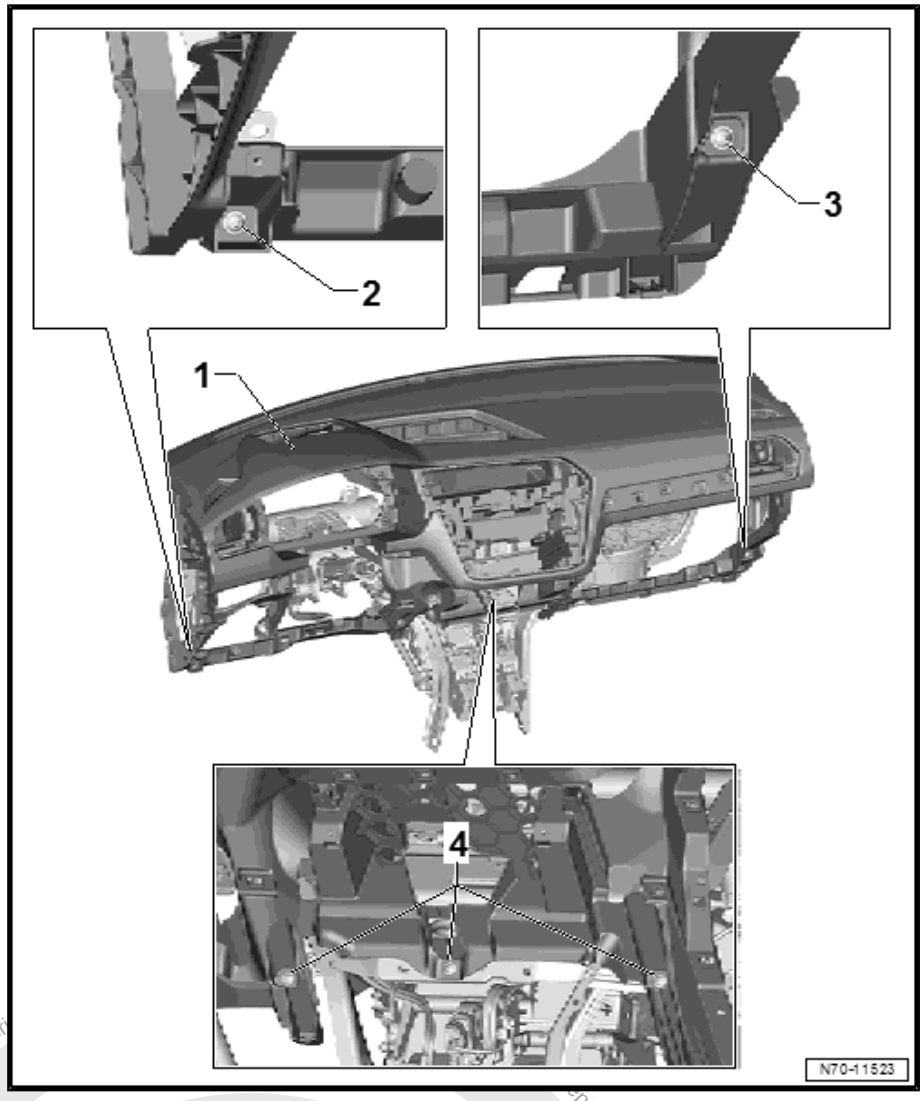
- Remove steering wheel ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel .
- Remove steering column switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column switch module .
- Remove trim for dash panel insert ⇒ page 189 .
- Remove dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Removing and installing dash panel insert - KX2- .
- Remove trim for display unit for front information display and operating unit control unit - J685- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - Infotainment system .
- Remove light switch trim ⇒ page 174 .
- Remove driver side footwell cover ⇒ page 24 .
- Remove dash panel cover on driver side ⇒ page 27 .
- Remove front passenger side footwell cover ⇒ page 30 .
- Remove glove compartment ⇒ page 30 .
- Remove A-pillar gap covers ⇒ page 220 .
- Remove A-pillar trims ⇒ page 212 .
- If present, remove sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Other control components; Removing and installing sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- .
- Disconnect connector for front passenger side airbag and, if fitted, for temperature sensor on left and right.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copying or making available to the public or other forms of use is not permitted without the express authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copying or making available to the public or other forms of use is not permitted without the express authorisation of Volkswagen AG, in whole or in part, for private or commercial purposes.



– Unscrew bolt -2- securing dash panel -1- to central tube.
– Unscrew bolts -4- on left side for securing dash panel -1-.
– Unscrew bolts -3- on right side for securing dash panel -1-.



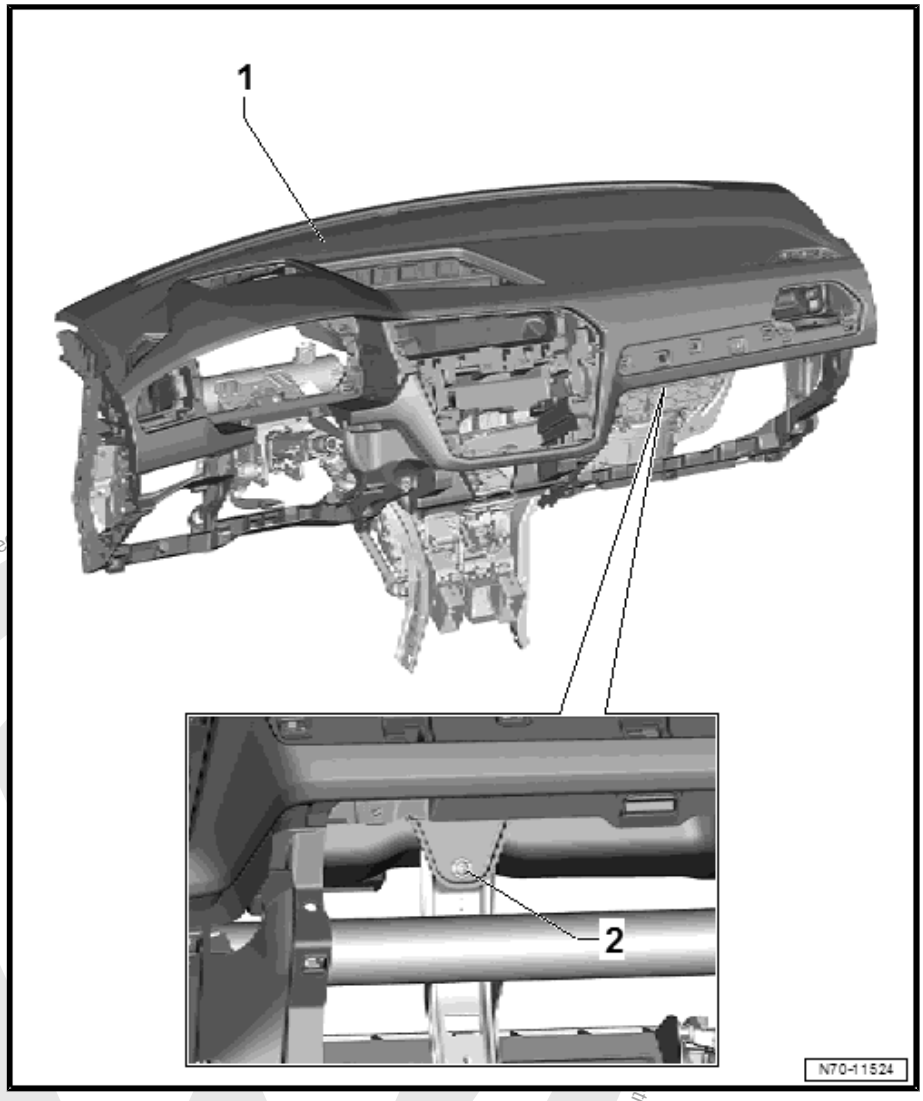
– Unscrew bolt -2- securing dash panel -1-.
– For LHD vehicles, unscrew bolt -3- securing dash panel -1-.

Note

On RHD vehicles, the bolt -3- for securing the dash panel -1- is not fitted.

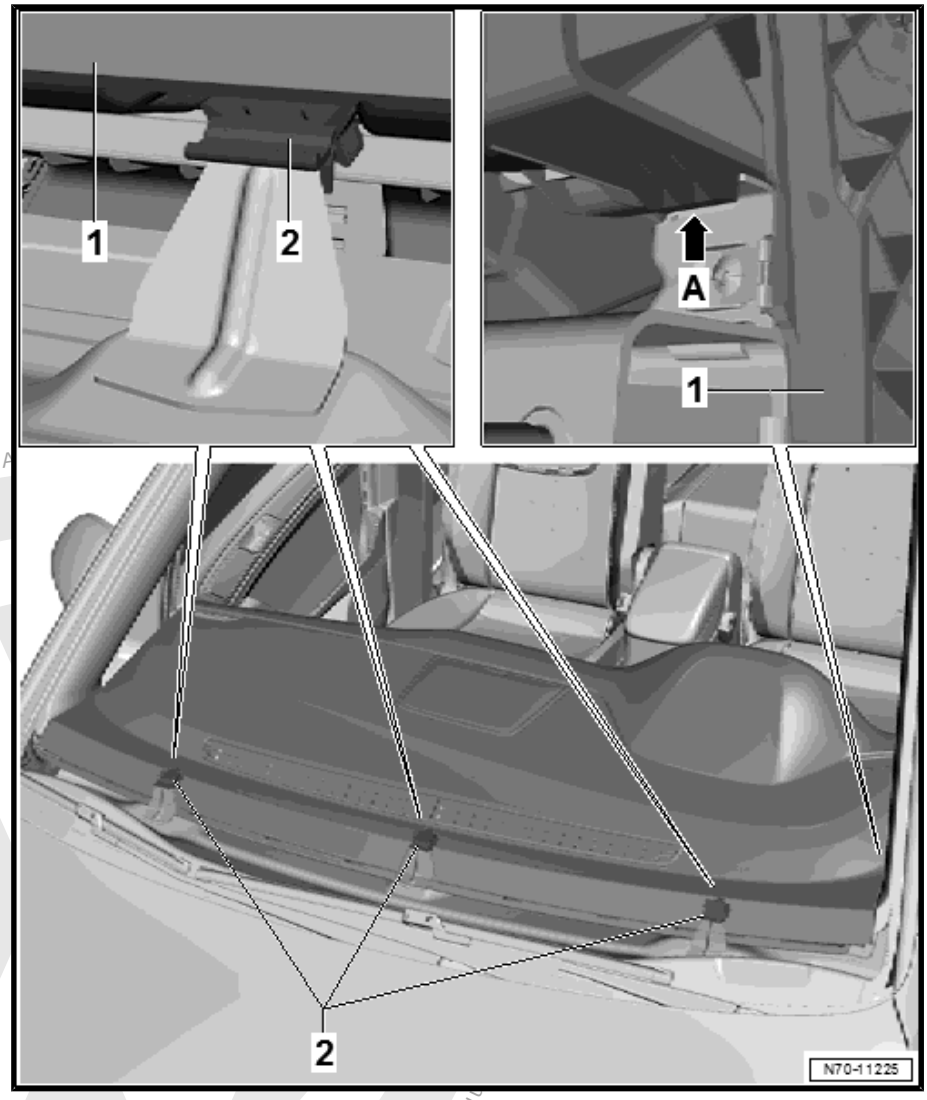
– Unscrew the three bolts -4- securing dash panel -1- to central tube in middle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Unscrew bolt -2- securing dash panel -1-.

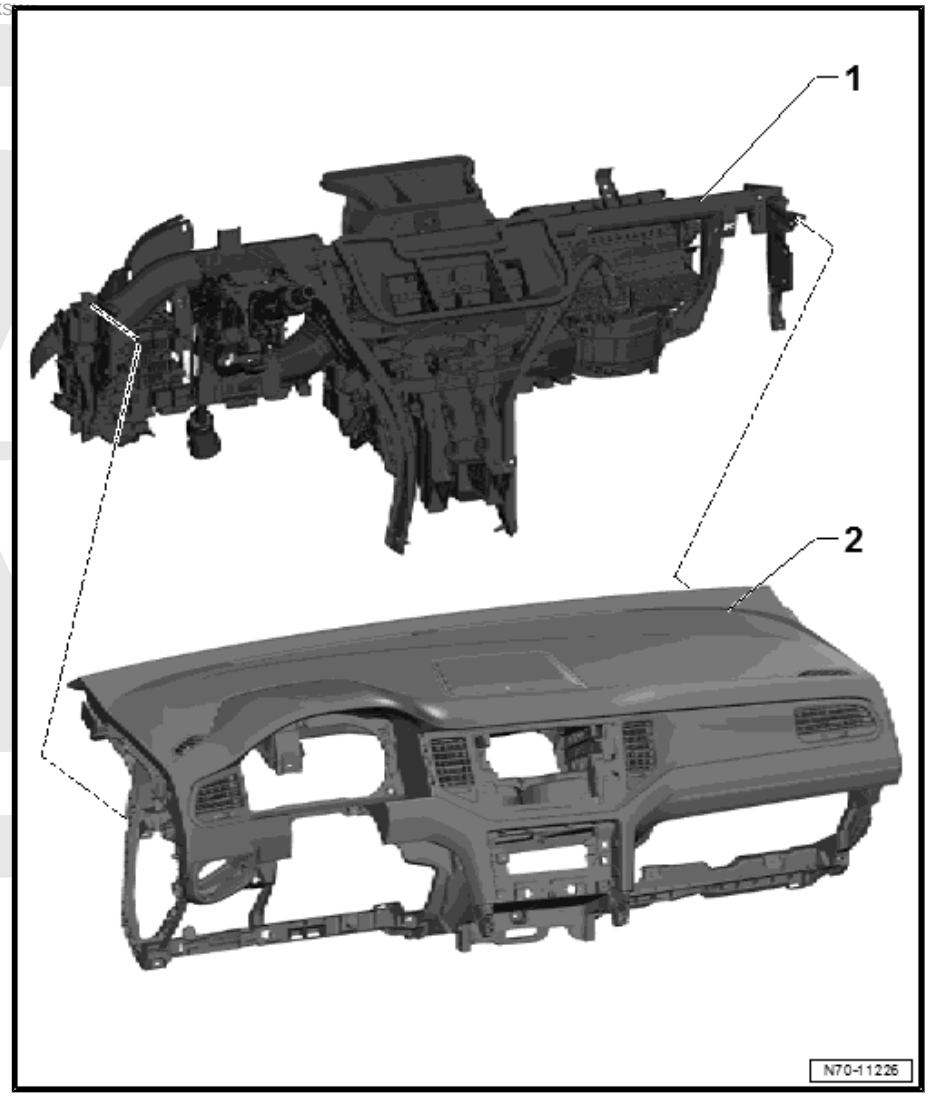
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Lift up dash panel -1- until locating lugs on left and right -arrow A- are released from mountings.
– Pull dash panel -1- out of the three mountings -2- at transition to windscreen.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volks



Note

The help of a second mechanic is required to remove the dash panel.

– Remove dash panel -1- from dash panel central tube -2-.
– Disconnect connectors and lay wiring harnesses on dash panel to one side.
– Carefully remove dash panel from vehicle interior and place it on a soft surface.

Installing

Note

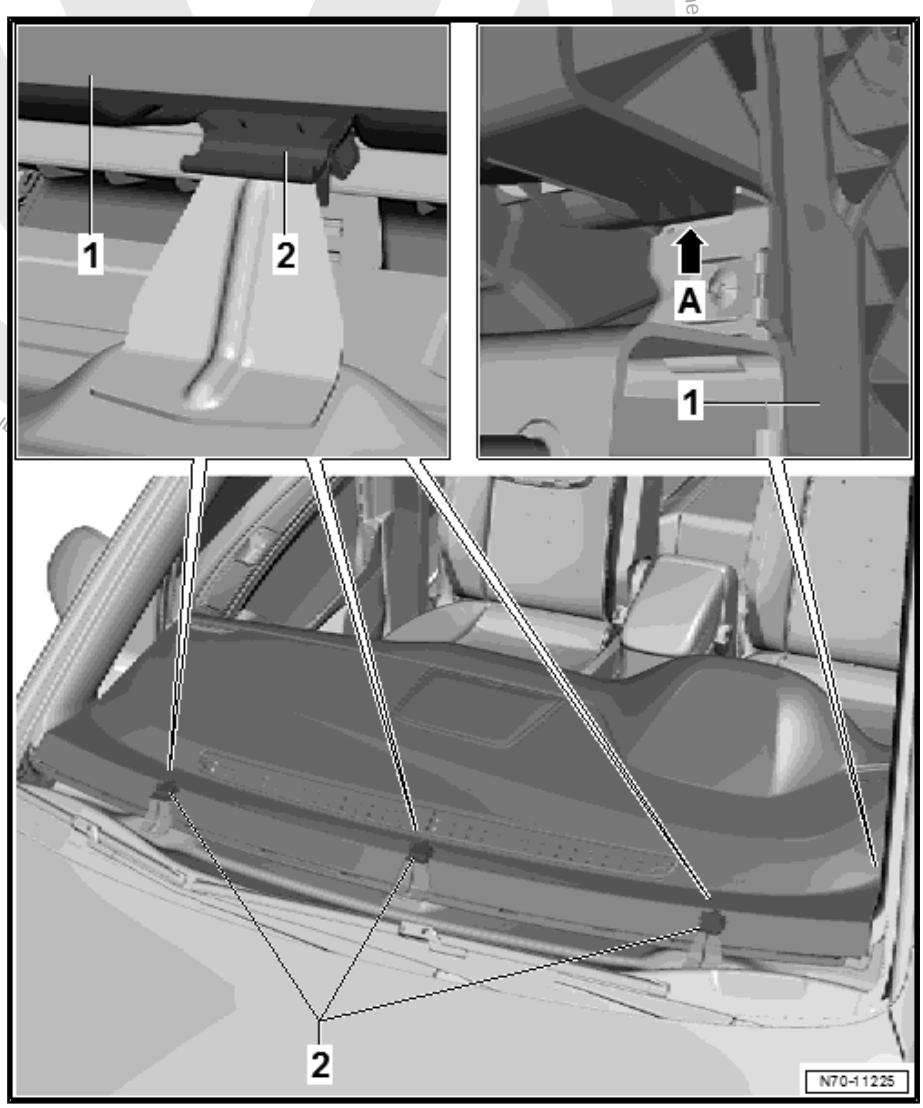
Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Caution

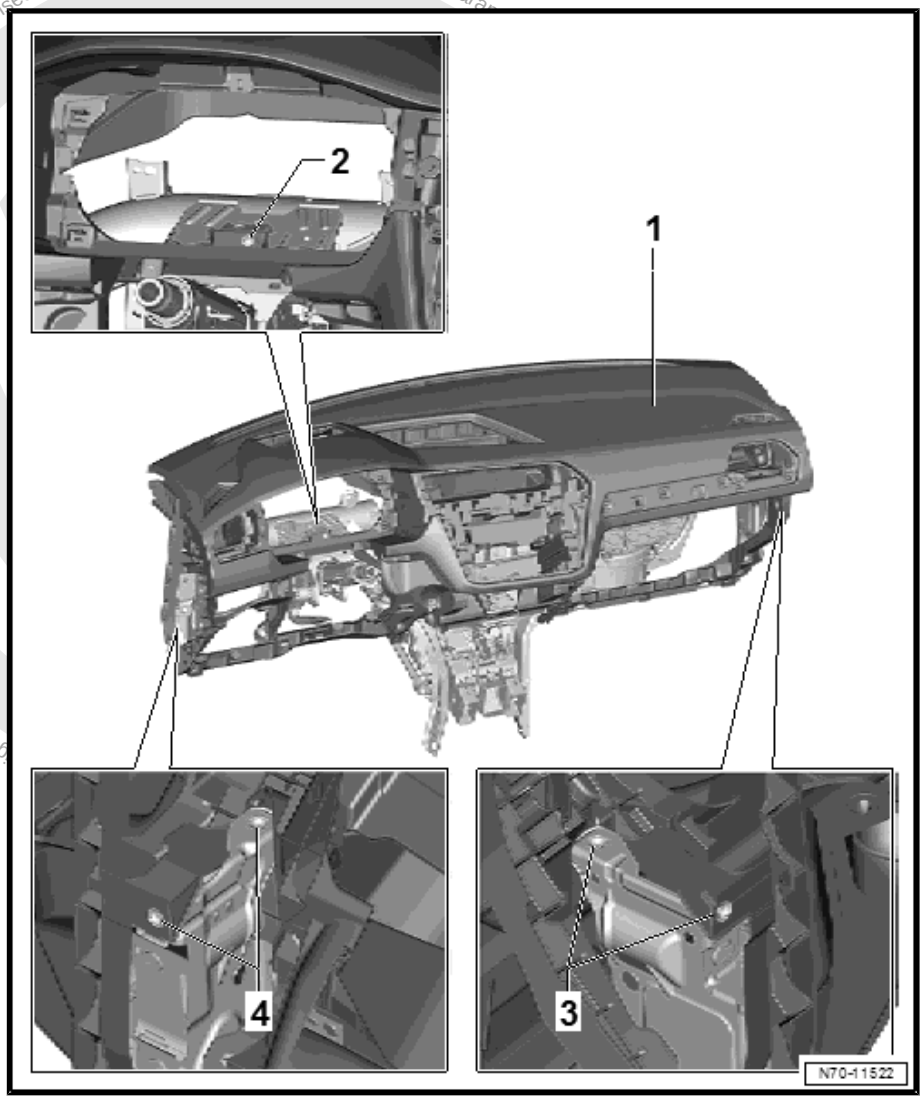
To prevent damage to the air duct, the brackets of the "head-up display" on the central tube for dash panel should be masked off.

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the

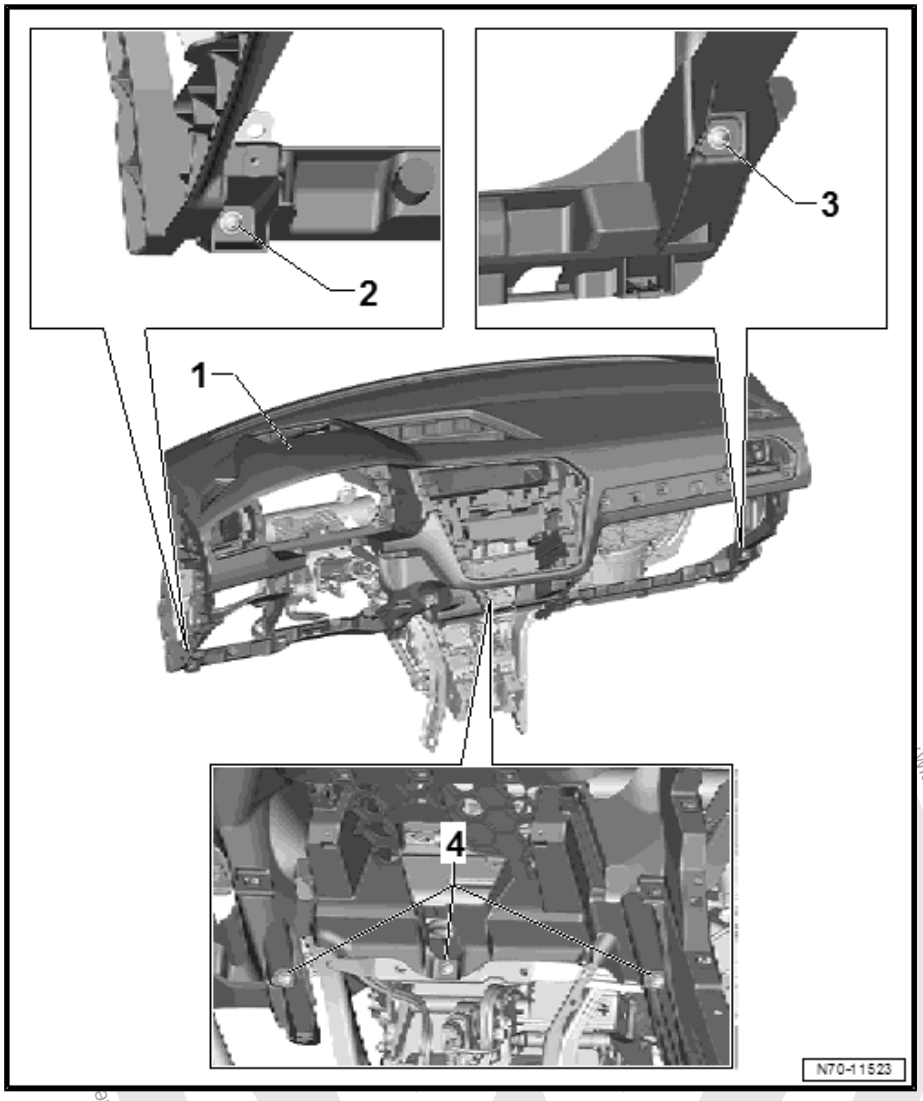
– Before installing dash panel -1-, check whether mountings -2- are firmly engaged in body.
– With the aid of a 2nd mechanic push dash panel -1- into the three mountings -2- at transition to windscreen.
– Insert dash panel with locating lugs on left and right -arrow A- exactly into the corresponding holes.



Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



– Secure dash panel -1- to central tube using bolt -2-.
– On left side, secure dash panel -1- to central tube using two bolts -4-.
– On right side, secure dash panel -1- to central tube using two bolts -3-.



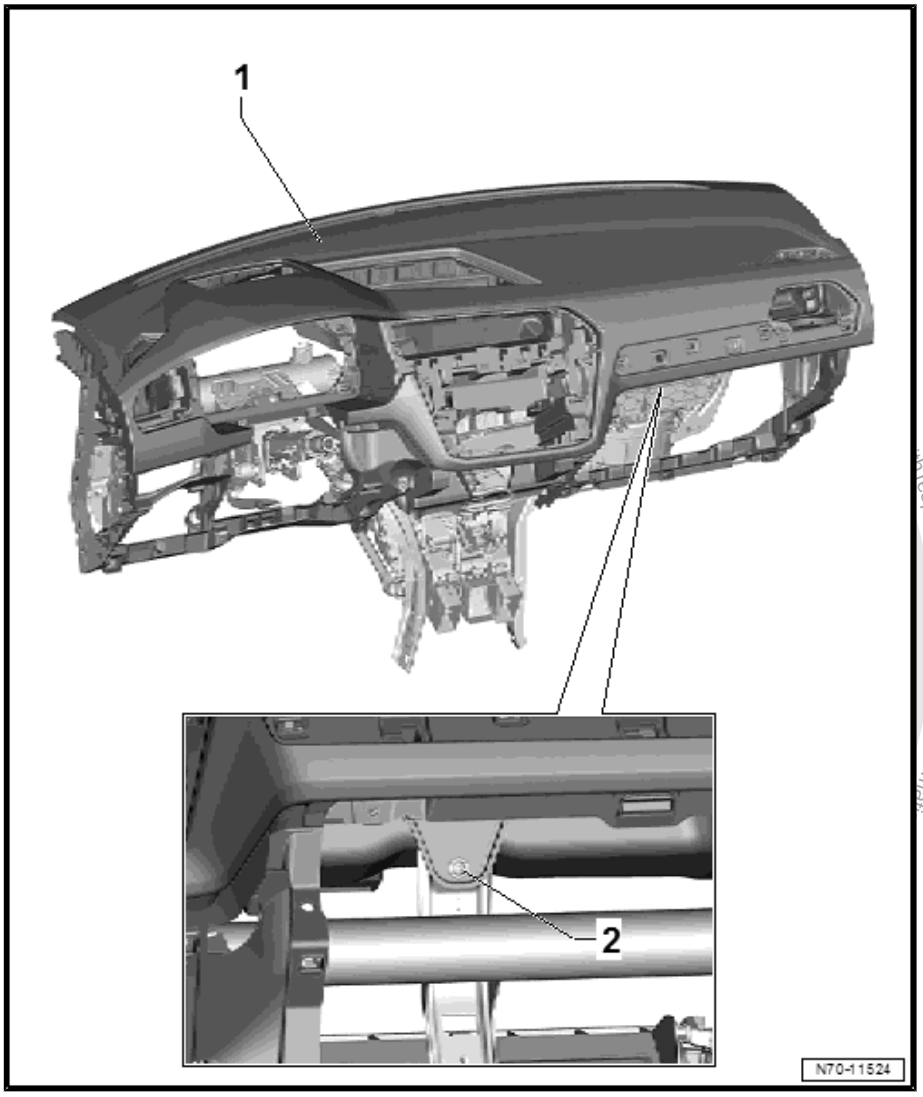
– On left side, secure dash panel -1- to central tube with bolt -2-.
– On LHD vehicles, secure dash panel -1- to central tube on right side using bolt -3-.

Note

On RHD vehicles, the bolt -3- for securing the dash panel -1- is not fitted.

– At centre, secure dash panel -1- to central tube using three bolts -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Secure dash panel -1- to central tube using bolt -2-.

Continue installation in reverse order of removal:

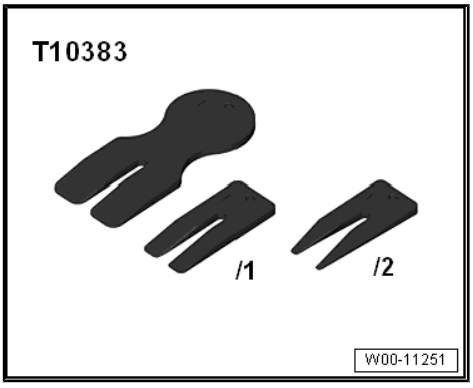
Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “3.1 Assembly overview - dash panel”, page 170

3.8 Removing and installing trim for Head-up Display

Special tools and workshop equipment required

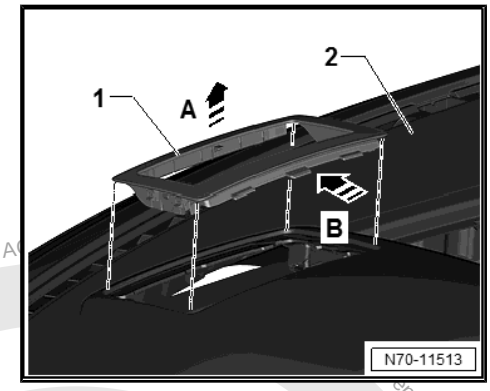
♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

– Release trim for Head-up-Display -1- in front area using wedges - T10383- , and lift it -arrow A-.

– Pull trim for Head-up Display -1- out of dash panel -2- -arrow B-, and remove it upwards.



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

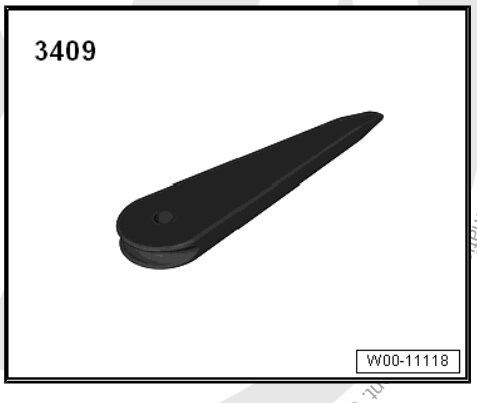
Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

3.9 Removing and installing cover for Head-up Display

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing

– Release locking lever of steering wheel positioner.

– Pull out steering wheel completely, push it down and fix it in place.

– Remove trim for dash panel insert ⇒ page 189 .

– Release upper steering column trim ⇒ page 28 .

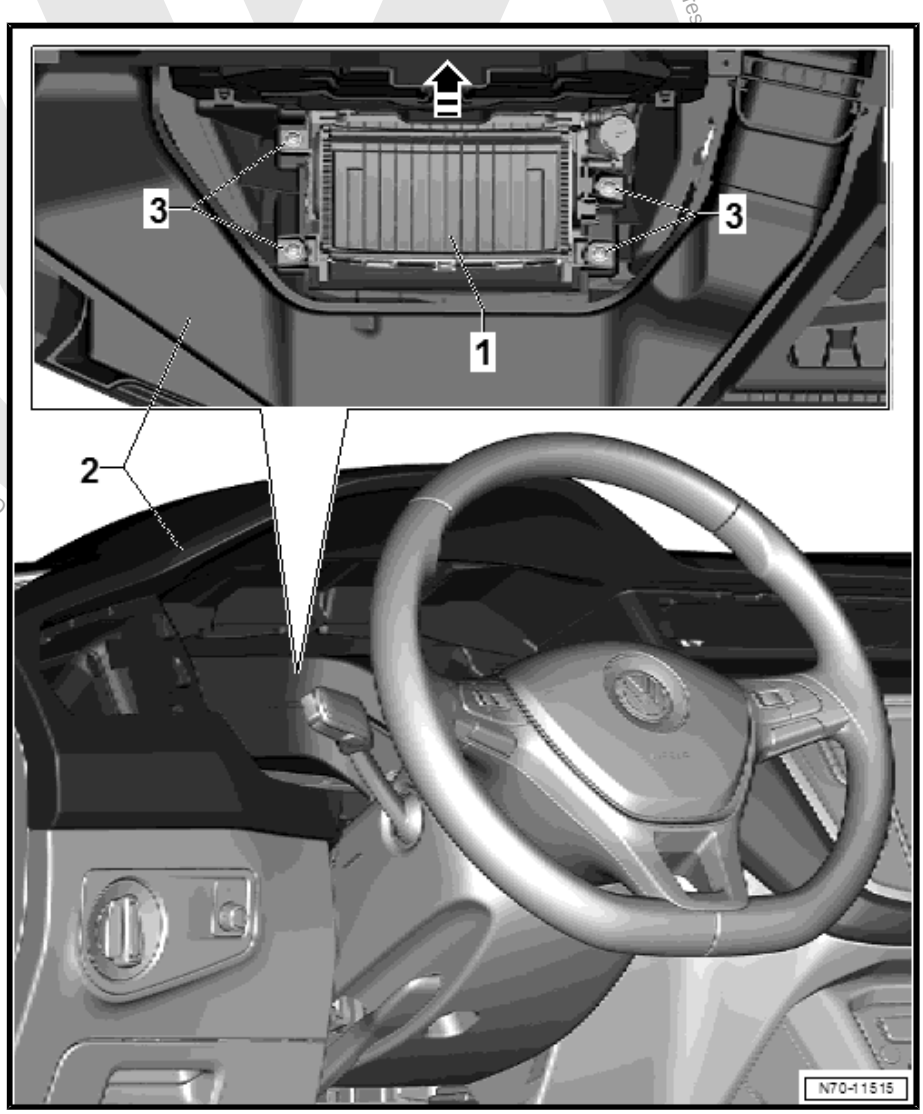
– Remove dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Removing and installing dash panel insert - KX2- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information.

– Removing and installing control unit for Head-up-Display ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Removing and installing control unit for Head-up-Display .

Note

Before removing the cover for the Head-up Display, make absolutely sure that the area underneath is covered (e.g. with cloths) so that no bolts can fall through.



– Unscrew bolts -3-, and release cover for Head-up-Display -1-.

– Disconnect electrical connector, and remove cover from dash panel -arrow-.

Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

- *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- *Before installing the cover for the Head-up Display, make absolutely sure that the area underneath is covered (e.g. with cloths) so that no bolts can fall through.*

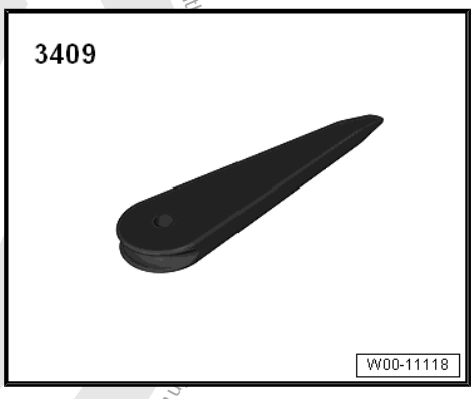
Torque settings

- ⇒ “3.2 Assembly overview - cover and trim for Head-up Display”, page 172

3.10 Removing and installing dash panel vents

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-

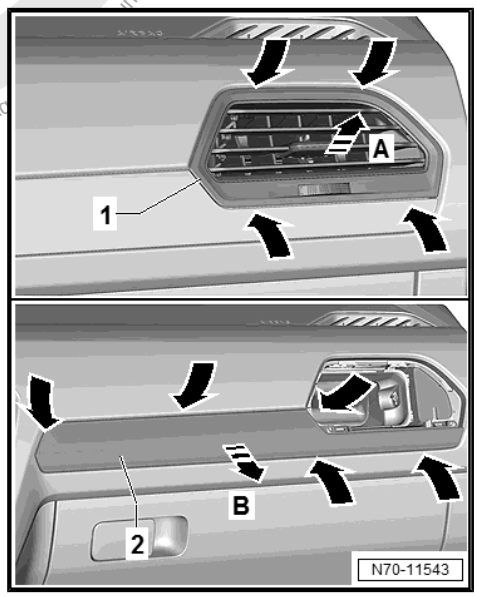


Removing

– Set side vent -1- to fully open position using thumbwheel.

– Release clip of right vent -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows-.

– Pull vent out of dash panel -arrow A-.



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

3.11 Removing and installing side defroster vent

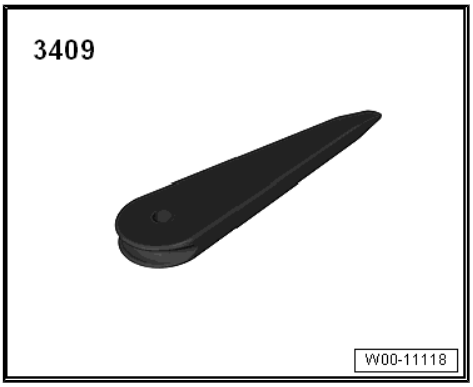
Note

Removal and installation is described for the side defroster vent on driver side. Follow same instructions for the front passenger side as appropriate.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to this document.

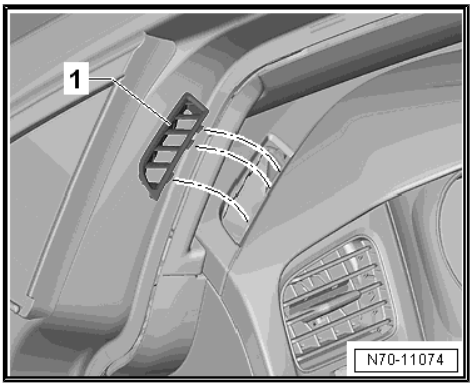
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Lever defroster vent -1- upwards out of assembly aperture in dash panel using removal wedge - 3409- and remove it.



Installing

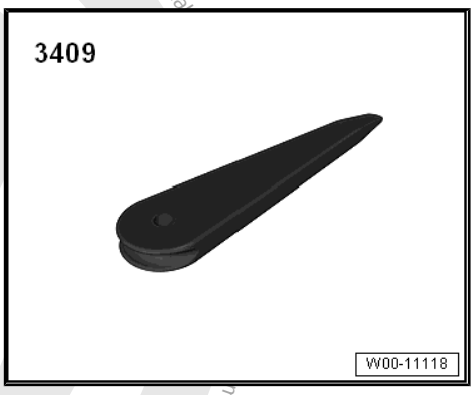
Install in reverse order of removal.

3.12 Removing and installing dash panel insert trim

With left and centre dash panel vents

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

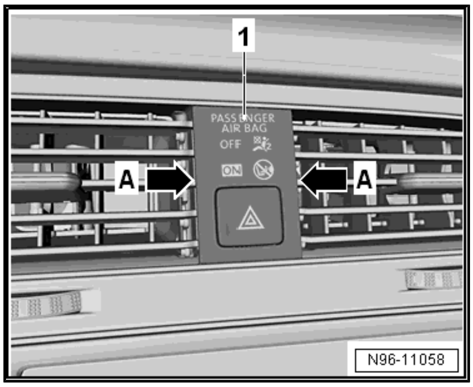
Removing

– Grasp front passenger side airbag deactivated warning lamp - K145- -1- at sides -arrows A-, and pull it out of dash panel.

– Disconnect electrical connector.

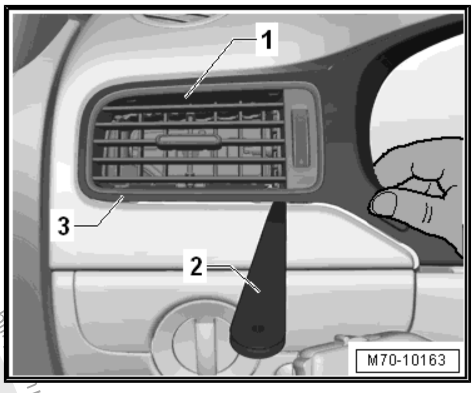
– Release locking lever of steering wheel positioner.

– Pull out steering wheel completely, push it down and fix it in place.



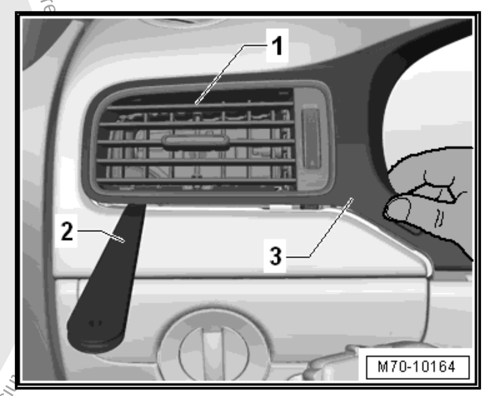
– Using removal wedge - 3409- -2-, release clip below left vent -1- on the right side.

– Pull dash panel insert trim -3- with your right hand slightly off dash panel, and keep it in this position.



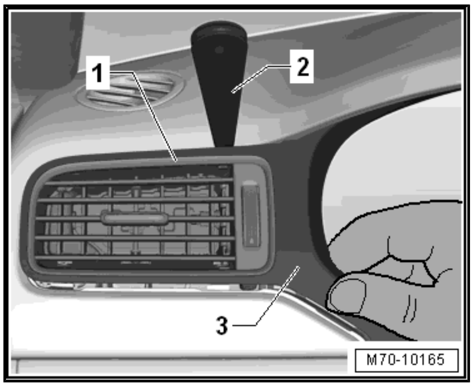
– Using removal wedge - 3409- -2-, release clip below left vent -1- on the left side.

– Pull dash panel insert trim -3- with your right hand slightly off dash panel, and keep it in this position.



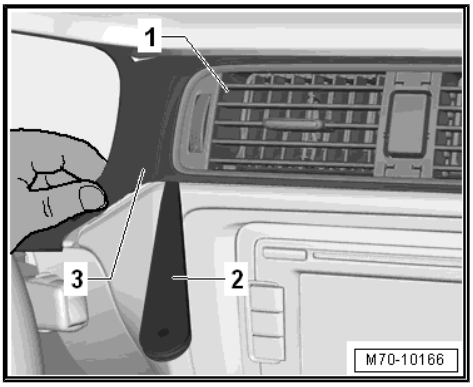
– Using removal wedge - 3409- -2-, release clip above left vent -1- on the right side.

– Pull dash panel insert trim -3- with your right hand slightly off dash panel.

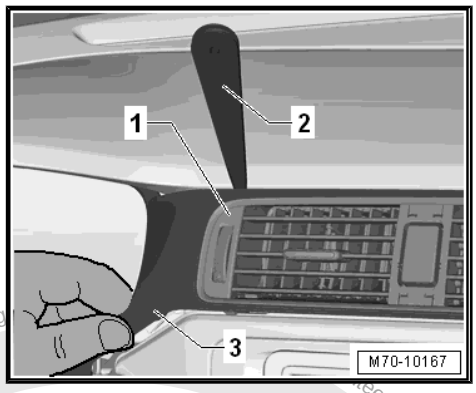


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

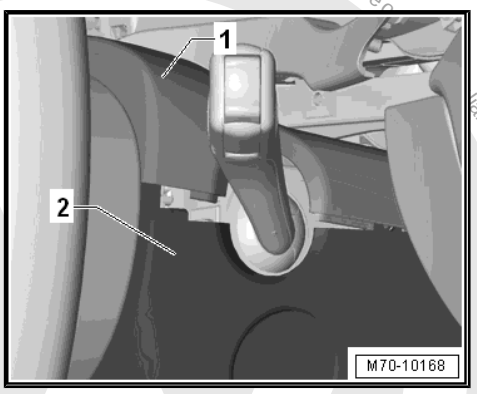
– Using removal wedge - 3409- -2-, release clip below left centre vent -1- on the left side.
– Pull dash panel insert trim -3- with your left hand slightly off dash panel, and keep it in this position.



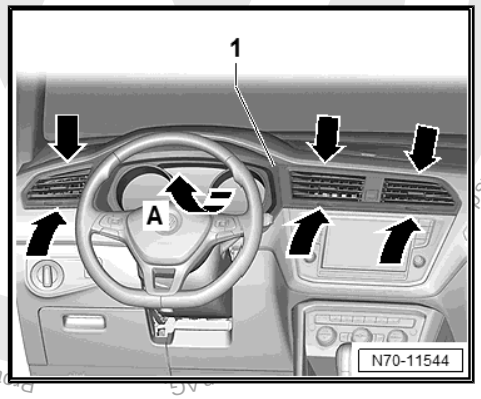
– Using removal wedge - 3409- -2-, release clip above left centre vent -1- on the left side.
– Pull dash panel insert trim -3- with your left hand slightly off dash panel, and keep it in this position.



– Release upper steering column trim -1- from mountings of lower steering column trim -2-, using removal wedge - 3409- .



– Pull released trim for dash panel insert -1- out of dash panel -arrows- completely.
– Swing out trim for dash panel insert upwards, and remove it together with upper steering column trim -arrow A-.



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen. No liability with respect to the correctness of information in this

4 Central tube for dash panel

⇒ “4.1 Assembly overview - central tube for dash panel”, page 192

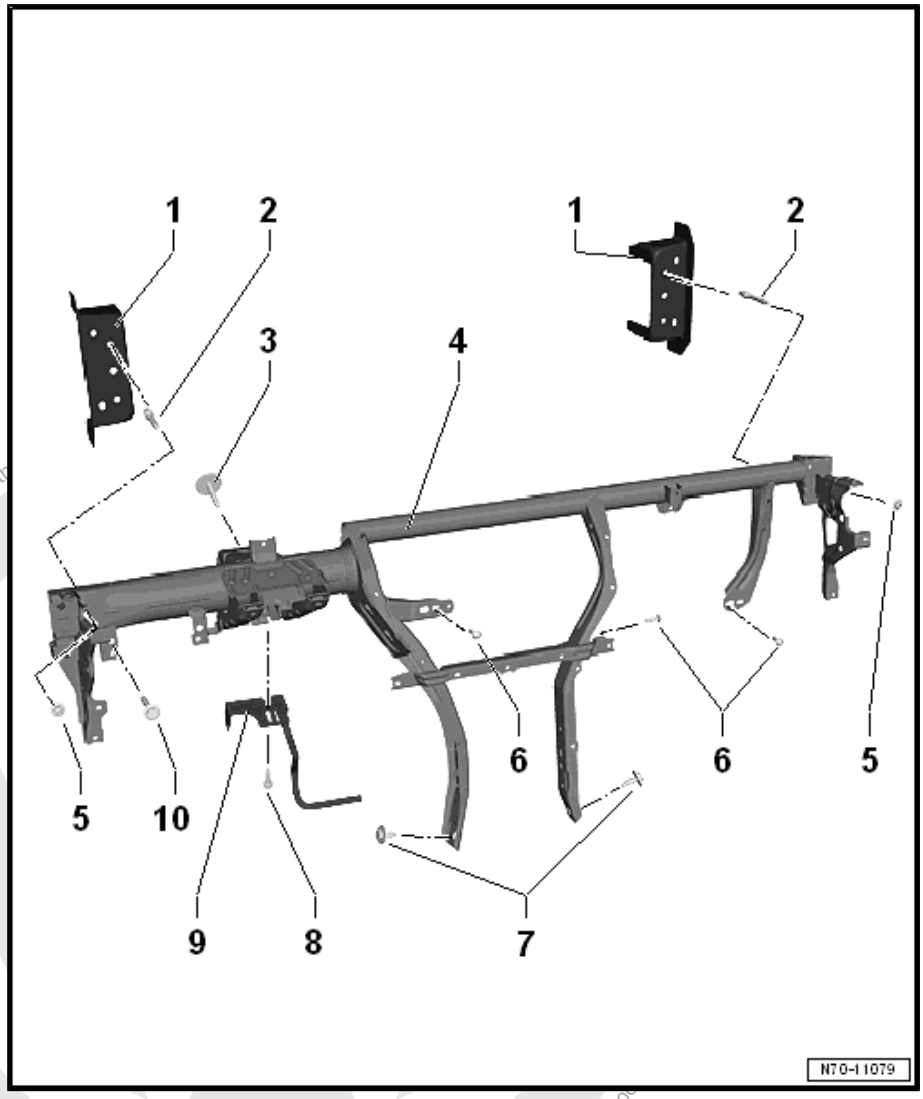
⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel”, page 193

⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing crash bar”, page 198

4.1 Assembly overview - central tube for dash panel

Note

If electrical wires are disconnected or removed and installed, it is useful to make corresponding drawings or photos. This guarantees that everything is re-installed in its original position.



1 - Securing bracket
- ❑ Welded to body

2 - Threaded pin
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 20 Nm

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 20 Nm

4 - Cross member
- ❑ For dash panel.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 193

Caution

If the centre tube is renewed, malfunctions due to poor earthing may occur.
The earth points must be free of paint, coatings and corrosion in order to ensure flawless earth connections.

Threads and contact surfaces between the central tube and the securing brackets must be free of paint, coatings and corrosion. Threaded connections are used as an earth connection for the knee airbag.

The contact surfaces between the left and right tunnel supports and the tunnel must be paint-free on both sides. They serve as primary earthing paths.

5 - Nut
- ❑ Qty. 2

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

❑ 20 Nm

Caution

Risk of failure due to a faulty earth connection. The contact surface must be free of paint, coatings and corrosion. The bolted connection is used as an earth connection for the knee airbag.

6 - Bolt

❑ Qty. 3

❑ 4 Nm

❑ If one of the bolts is over-tightened when installing the heater and air conditioning unit, use bolt “N. 911.981.01” as a replacement part.

7 - Bolt

❑ Qty. 2

❑ 20 Nm

8 - Bolt

❑ 20 Nm

9 - Crash bar

❑ Removing and installing ⇨ page 198

10 - Bolt

❑ Driver side only

❑ 20 Nm

Caution

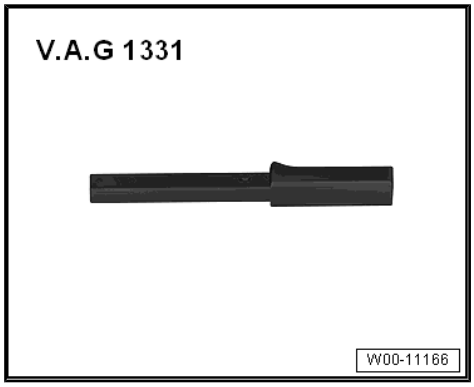
Risk of failure due to a faulty earth connection. Thread and contact surface must be free of paint, coatings and corrosion. The bolted connection is used as an earth connection for the knee airbag.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

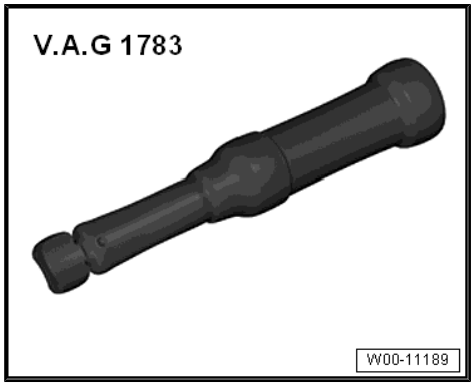
4.2 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



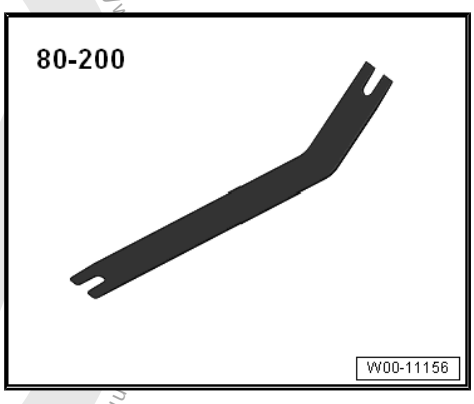
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



- Release tool - T10236-



- Removal lever - 80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

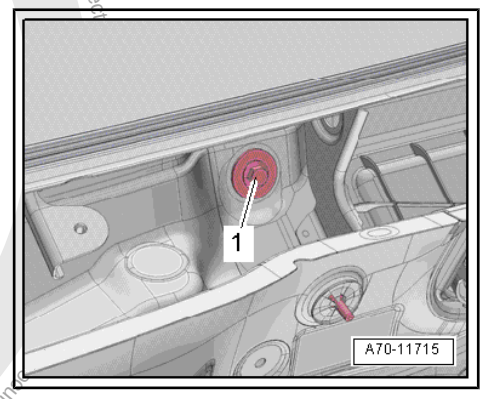
Note

- *If electrical wires are disconnected or removed and installed, it is useful to make corresponding drawings or photos. This guarantees that everything is re-installed in its original position.*
- *When using release tool - T10236- or removal lever - 80 - 200- the wires can be removed more easily.*

Removing

– Remove left plenum chamber cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50 ; Plenum chamber bulkhead; Assembly overview - plenum chamber cover .

– Unscrew bolt -1- for crash bar and central tube on plenum chamber bulkhead.

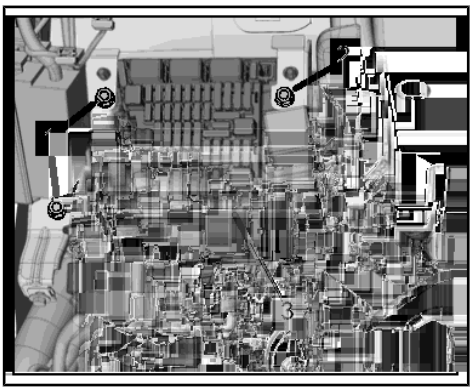


– Remove dash panel ⇒ page 175 .

– Remove knee airbag with igniter ⇒ page 129 .

– Remove footwell vent on driver side ⇒ Heating, air conditioning system; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Assembly overview - air duct system and air distribution in passenger compartment .

– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2-.



– Unhook load distributor -3- on central tube for dash panel.

– Unbolt steering column from central tube for dash panel, and place it on vehicle floor ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Removing and installing steering column .

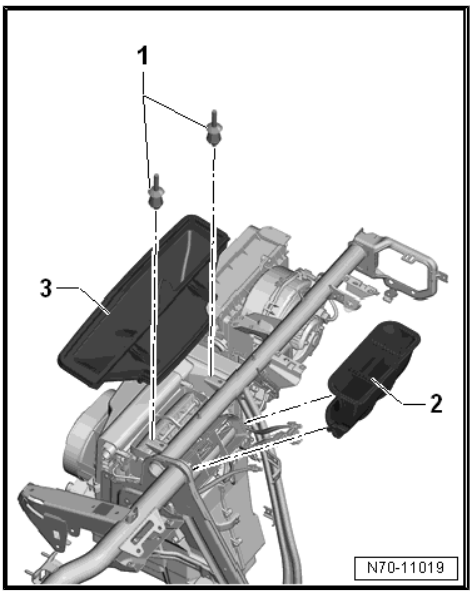
– Remove crash bar ⇒ page 198 .

– If fitted, remove interface for entry and start authorisation - J965- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Control units; Overview of fitting locations - control units .

– Release expanding rivet -1- and remove upwards.

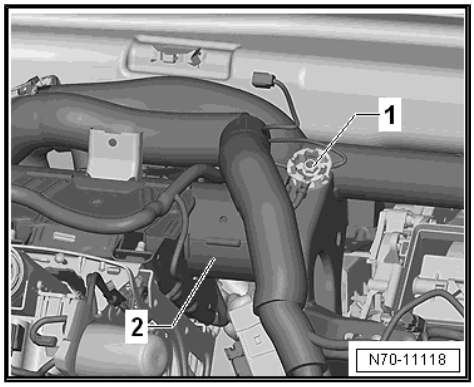
– Detach intermediate piece for defroster vent -3- from central tube for dash panel.

– Unclip intermediate piece for centre vent -2- from heater and air conditioning unit, and remove it.

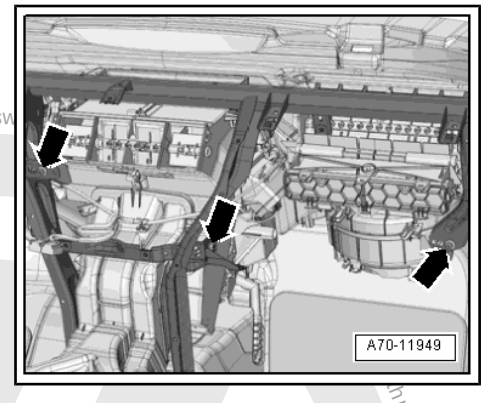


– Unscrew nut -1- on earth point of central tube -2-, and lay electrical wires to one side.

– Remove footwell vent on front passenger side ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct; Assembly overview - air routing and air distribution in passenger compartment .



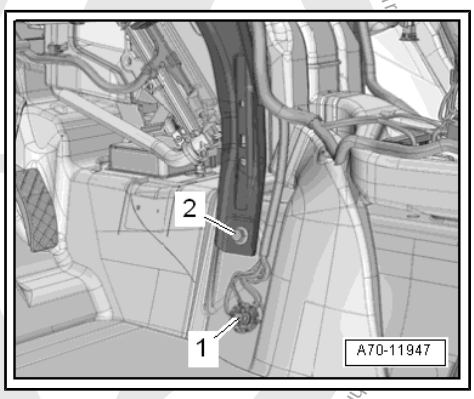
– Unscrew the 3 bolts -arrows- for heater and air conditioning unit.



– Push aside floor covering in area of bolted connection, and unscrew bolt -2- for dash panel central tube support on left and right.

Note

Mark vertical and horizontal position of dash panel central tube for reinstallation.



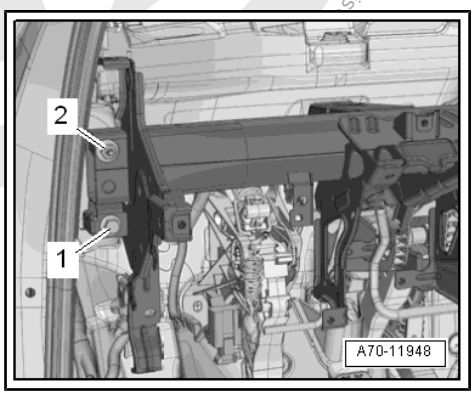
Note

In area of nuts -1- on left and right and in area of bolt -2-, use a scriber to mark vertical and horizontal position of central dash panel tube in vehicle.

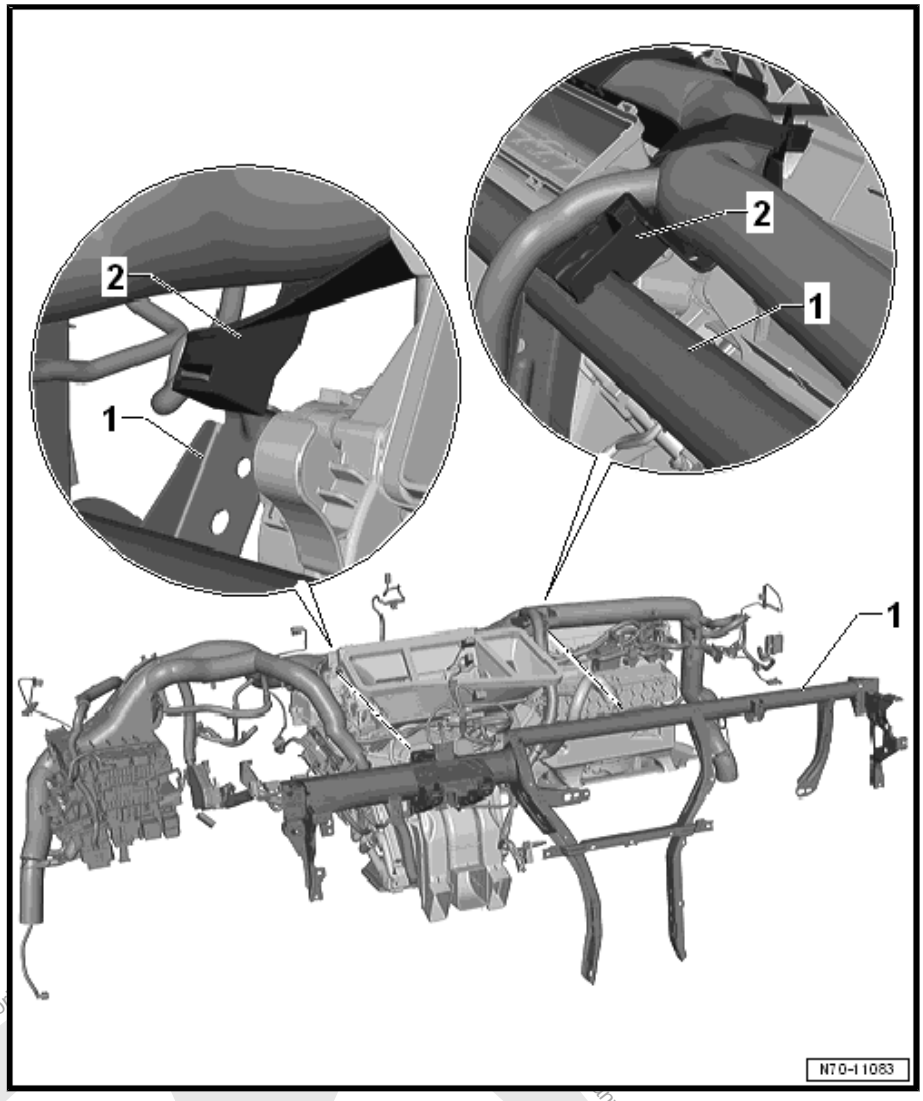
Unscrew bolt -1- for dash panel central tube.

– Unscrew nut -2- for dash panel central tube on A-pillar on left and right.

– Unclip wires on dash panel central tube, detach them, and lay them to one side.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volksw



– Remove wiring harness retainer -2- from dash panel central tube -1-.
– Detach dash panel central tube -1- and pull it slightly towards the rear.
– With aid of second mechanic, carefully lift dash panel central tube -1- out of vehicle. Mind the wiring harnesses while doing so.

Installing

Note

- *Before bolting central tube for dash panel in place, align it using marks made during removal.*
- *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Caution

If the centre tube is renewed, malfunctions due to poor earthing may occur.

- *The earth points must be free of paint, coatings and corrosion in order to ensure flawless earth connections.*
- *Threads and contact surfaces between the central tube and the securing brackets must be free of paint, coatings and corrosion. Threaded connections are used as an earth connection for the knee airbag.*
- *The contact surfaces between the left and right tunnel supports and the tunnel must be paint-free on both sides. They serve as primary earthing paths.*

Torque settings

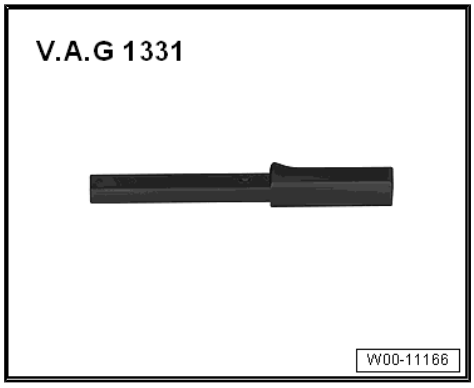
- ⇒ “4.1 Assembly overview - central tube for dash panel”, page 192

Component	Specified torque
Nut for earth point on central tube	9 Nm
3 bolts for load distributor on central tube	4.5 Nm

4.3 Removing and installing crash bar

Special tools and workshop equipment required

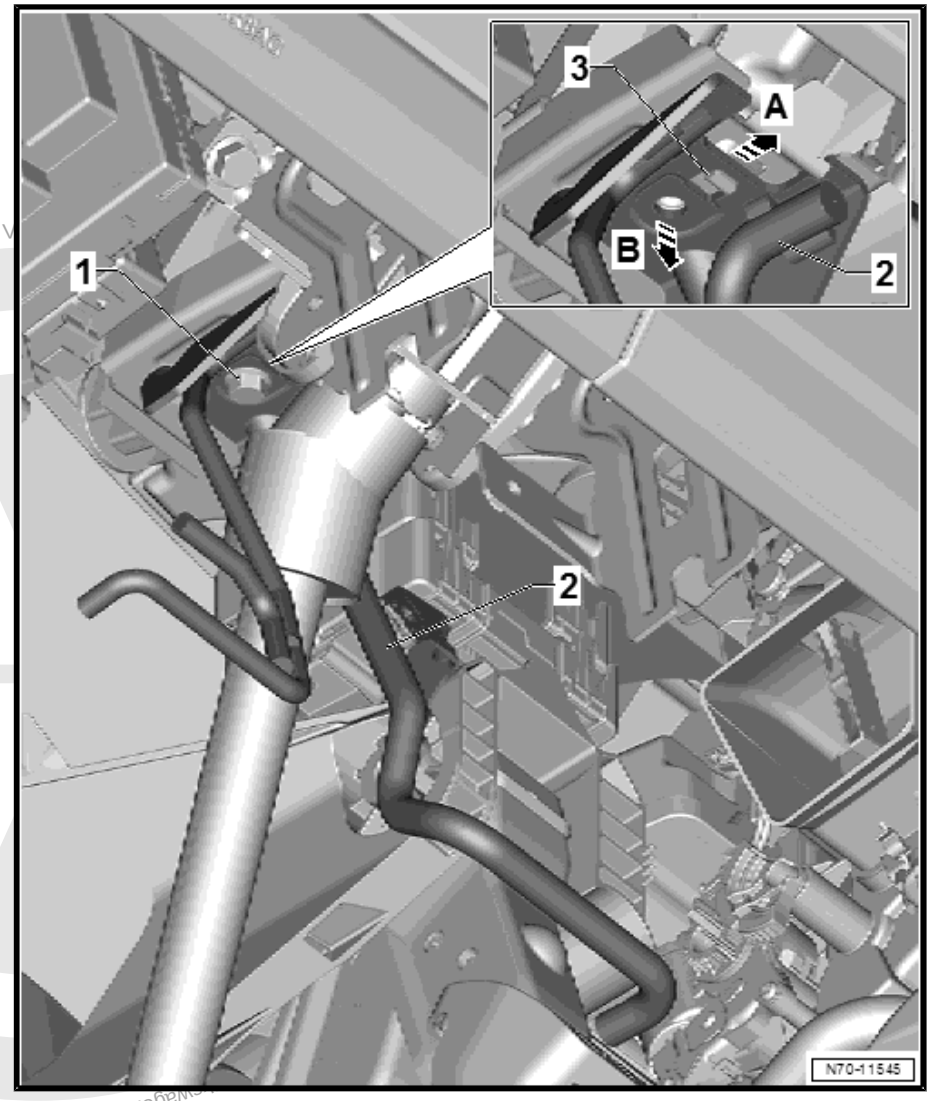
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Removing

– Remove knee airbag with igniter ⇒ page 129 .

– Remove footwell vent on driver side ⇒ Heating, air conditioning system; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Assembly overview - air duct system and air distribution in passenger compartment .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Unscrew bolt -1-.
– Release crash bar -2- from retaining tab -3- of central tube -arrow A-.
– Release crash bar -2- downwards, and detach it -arrow B-.

Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal.

◆ ⇒ “4.1 Assembly overview - central tube for dash panel”, page 192

5 Interior trims

⇒ “5.1 Overview of fitting locations - interior trims”, page 200

⇒ “5.2 Assembly overview - sill panel moulding”, page 202

⇒ “5.3 Assembly overview - A-pillar trim”, page 203

⇒ “5.4 Assembly overview - B-pillar trim”, page 205

⇒ “5.5 Assembly overview - C-pillar trim”, page 207

⇒ “5.6 Assembly overview - wheel housing trim”, page 208

⇒ “5.7 Assembly overview - foot rest and floor covering”, page 209

⇒ “5.8 Removing and installing sill panel moulding”, page 210

⇒ “5.9 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 212

⇒ “5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar gap cover”, page 220

⇒ “5.11 Removing and installing B-pillar trim”, page 220

⇒ “5.12 Removing and installing C-pillar trim”, page 224

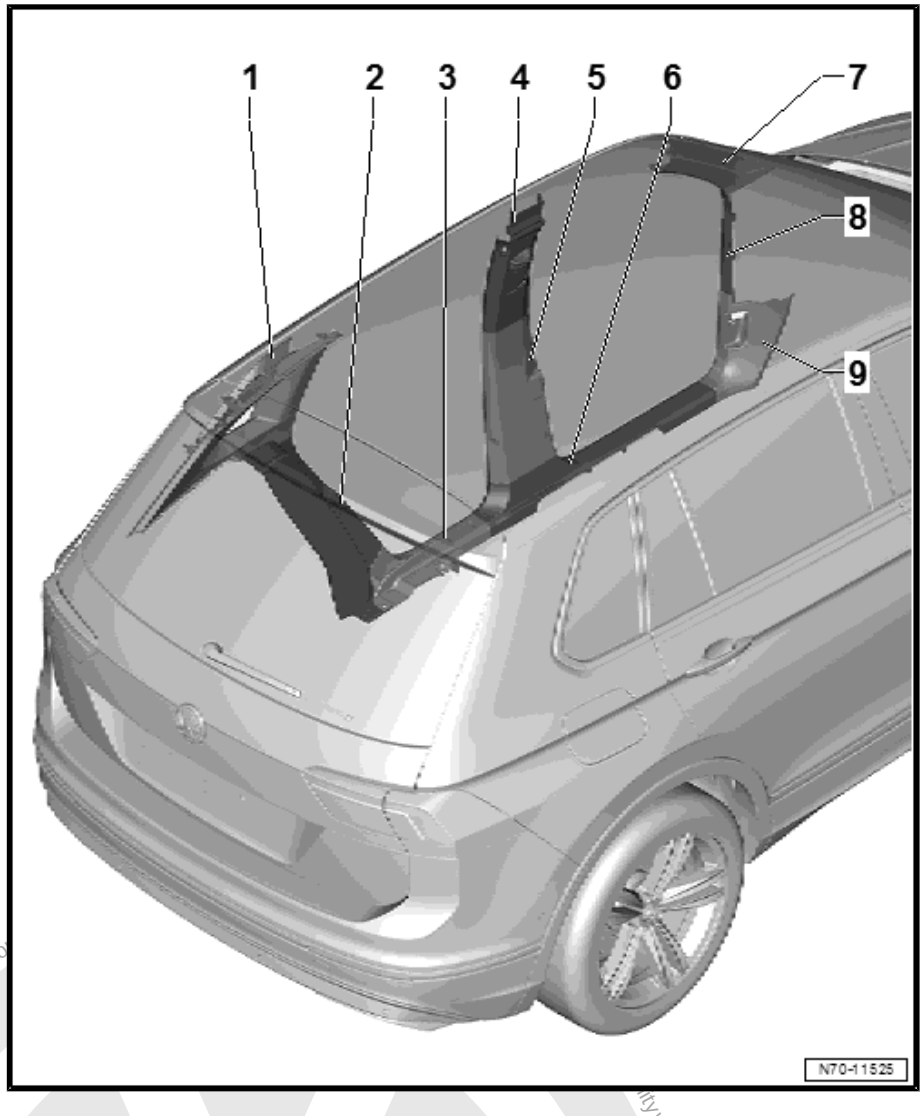
⇒ “5.13 Removing and installing wheel housing trims”, page 226

⇒ “5.14 Removing and installing foot rest”, page 228

⇒ “5.15 Removing and installing floor covering”, page 230

5.1 Overview of fitting locations - interior trims

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 207
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 224

2 - Wheel housing trim

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 208
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 226

3 - Rear sill panel moulding

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 202
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 210

4 - Upper part of B-pillar trim

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 205
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 220

5 - Lower B-pillar trim

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 205
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 220

6 - Front sill panel moulding

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 202
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 210

7 - Upper A-pillar trim

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 203
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 212

8 - A-pillar gap cover

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 203
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 220

9 - Lower A-pillar trim

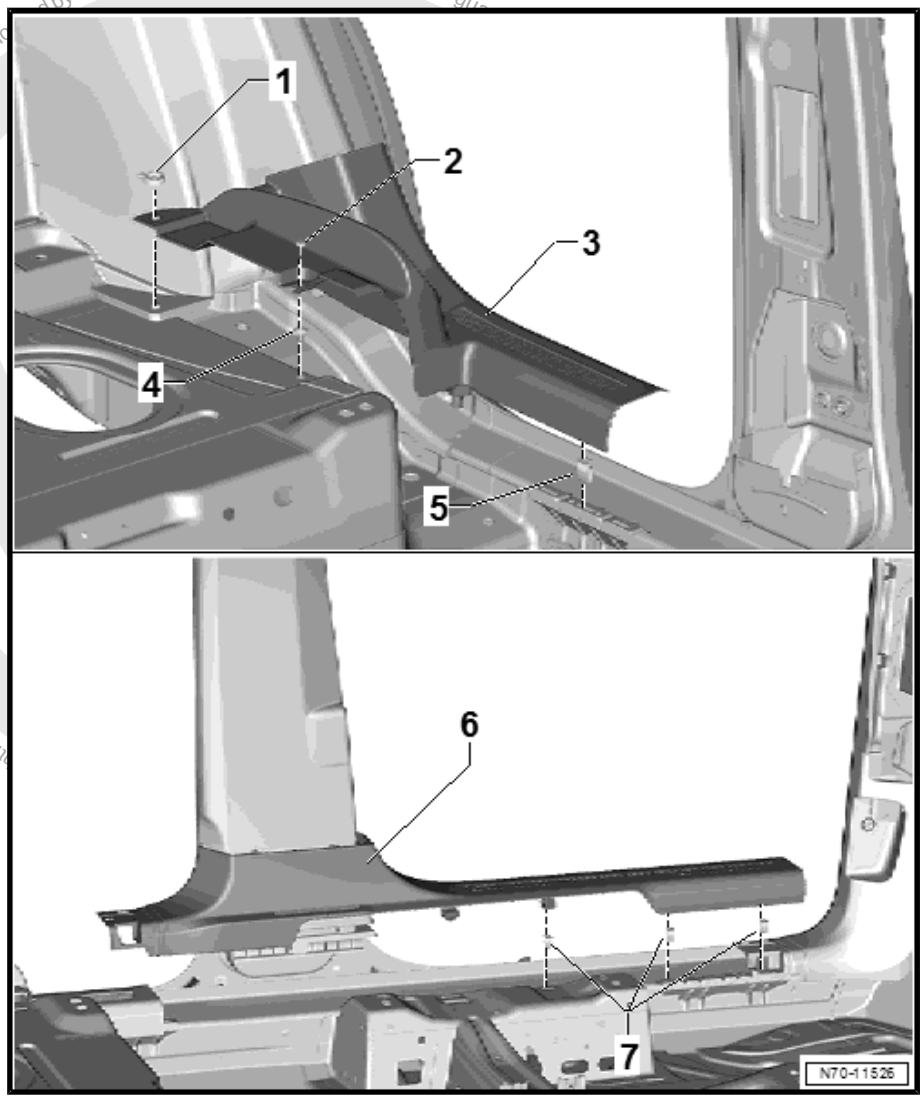
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 203
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 212

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

5.2 Assembly overview - sill panel moulding

Note

The illustration shows the sill panel mouldings on the left side. The right-hand side is similar (mirror image of left-hand side).



1 - Clip

- ❑ Renew clip if damaged or deformed.

2 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ Renew spreader rivet if damaged or deformed

3 - Rear sill panel moulding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 210

4 - Spreader plug

- ❑ Insert into body.
- ❑ Renew clip if damaged or deformed.

5 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Insert into rear sill panel moulding
- ❑ Remove any retaining clips left in body mounting using removal tool - T40280- .
- ❑ Renew retaining clip if it is damaged or deformed

6 - Front sill panel moulding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 210

7 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ Insert into front sill panel moulding
- ❑ Remove any retaining clips left in body mountings using removal tool - T40280- .
- ❑ Renew any damaged or deformed retaining clips.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

5.3 Assembly overview - A-pillar trim

⇒ “5.3.1 Assembly overview - A-pillar trim, upper A-pillar trim”, page 203

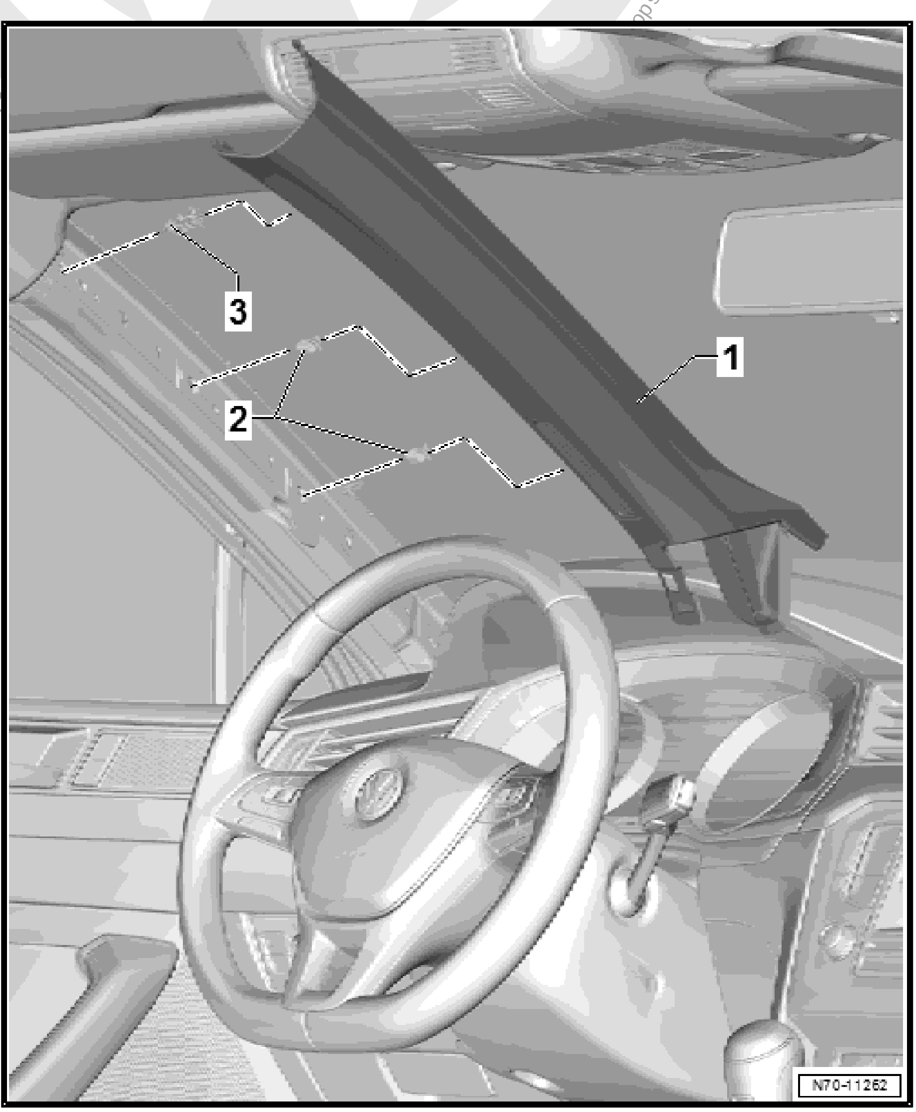
⇒ “5.3.2 Assembly overview - A-pillar trim, lower A-pillar trim, LHD vehicles”, page 204

⇒ “5.3.3 Assembly overview - A-pillar trim, lower A-pillar trim, RHD vehicles”, page 205

5.3.1 Assembly overview - A-pillar trim, upper A-pillar trim

Note

The illustration shows the A-pillar trims on the left side. The right-hand side is similar (mirror image of left-hand side).



1 - Upper A-pillar trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 212

2 - Retaining clip
- ❑ Insert into trim
- ❑ Remove any retaining clips left in body mountings using removal tool -T40280- .
- ❑ Renew any damaged or deformed retaining clips.

3 - Retaining clip
- ❑ Insert into trim
- ❑ Remove any retaining clips left in body mountings using removal tool -T40280- .
- ❑ Renew retaining clip if it is damaged or deformed

5.3.2 Assembly overview - A-pillar trim, lower A-pillar trim, LHD vehicles

1 - Lower A-pillar trim

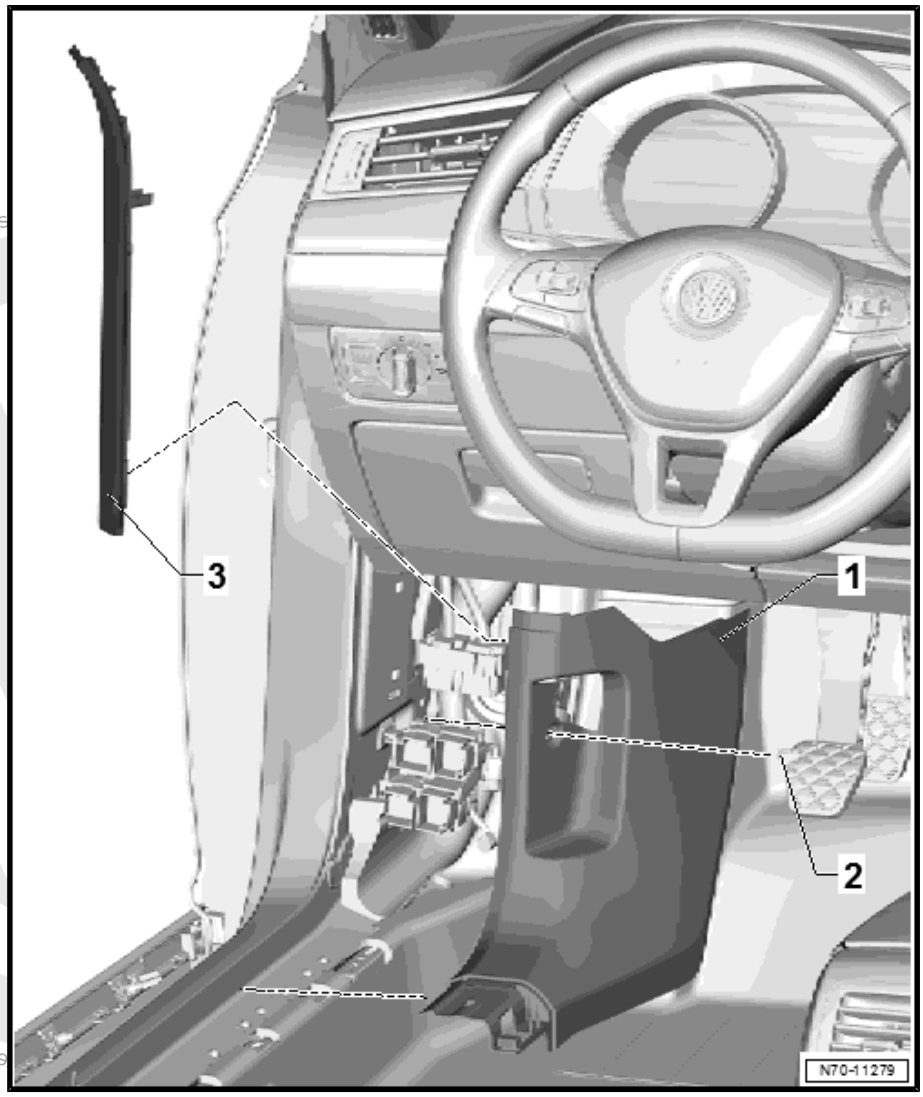
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 212

2 - Clip

- ❑ Renew clip if damaged or deformed.

3 - A-pillar gap cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 220



Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

5.3.3 Assembly overview - A-pillar trim, lower A-pillar trim, RHD vehicles

1 - Lower A-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 212

2 - Fastener

3 - Spreader plug

4 - Nut

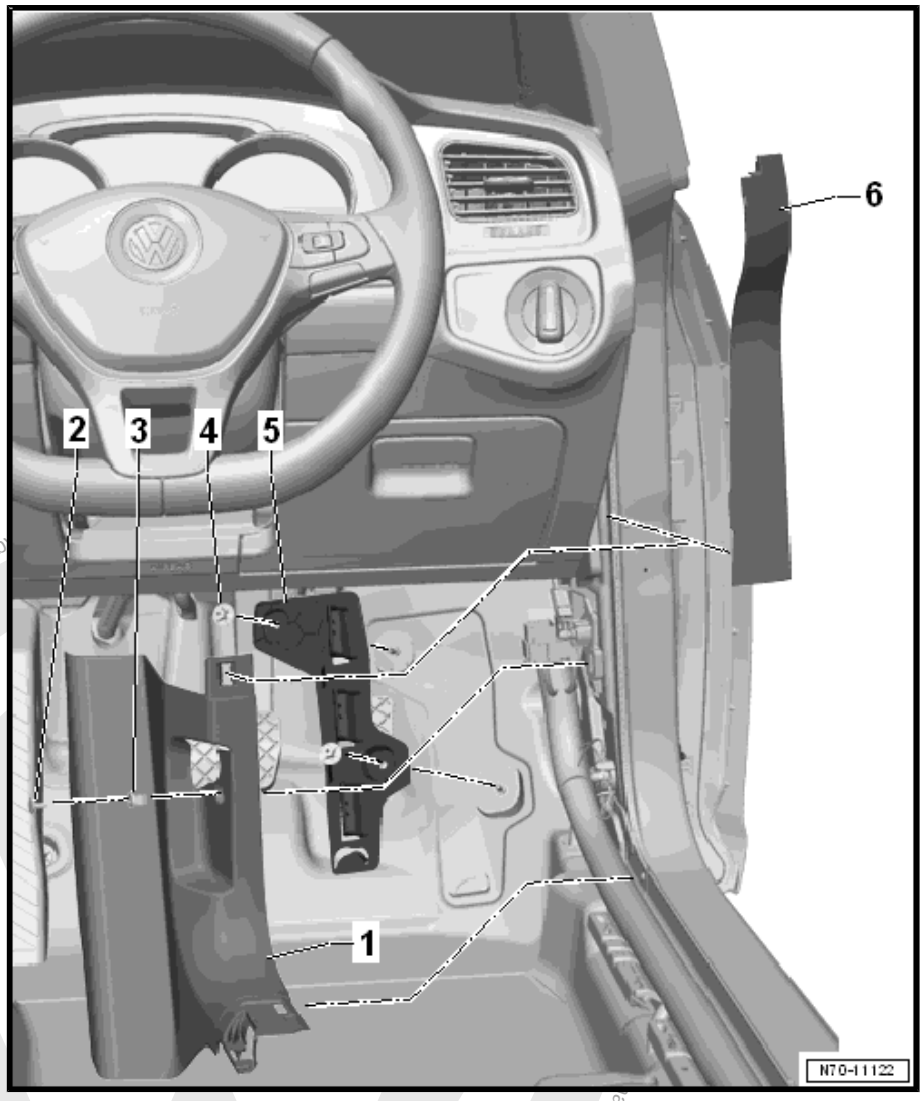
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Bracket

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 212

6 - A-pillar gap cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 220



5.4 Assembly overview - B-pillar trim

Note

The illustration shows the B-pillar trims on the left side. The right-hand side is similar (mirror image of left-hand side).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1 - Upper part of B-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 221

2 - Lower B-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 223

3 - Button for deactivating interior monitoring and vehicle inclination sensor - E616-

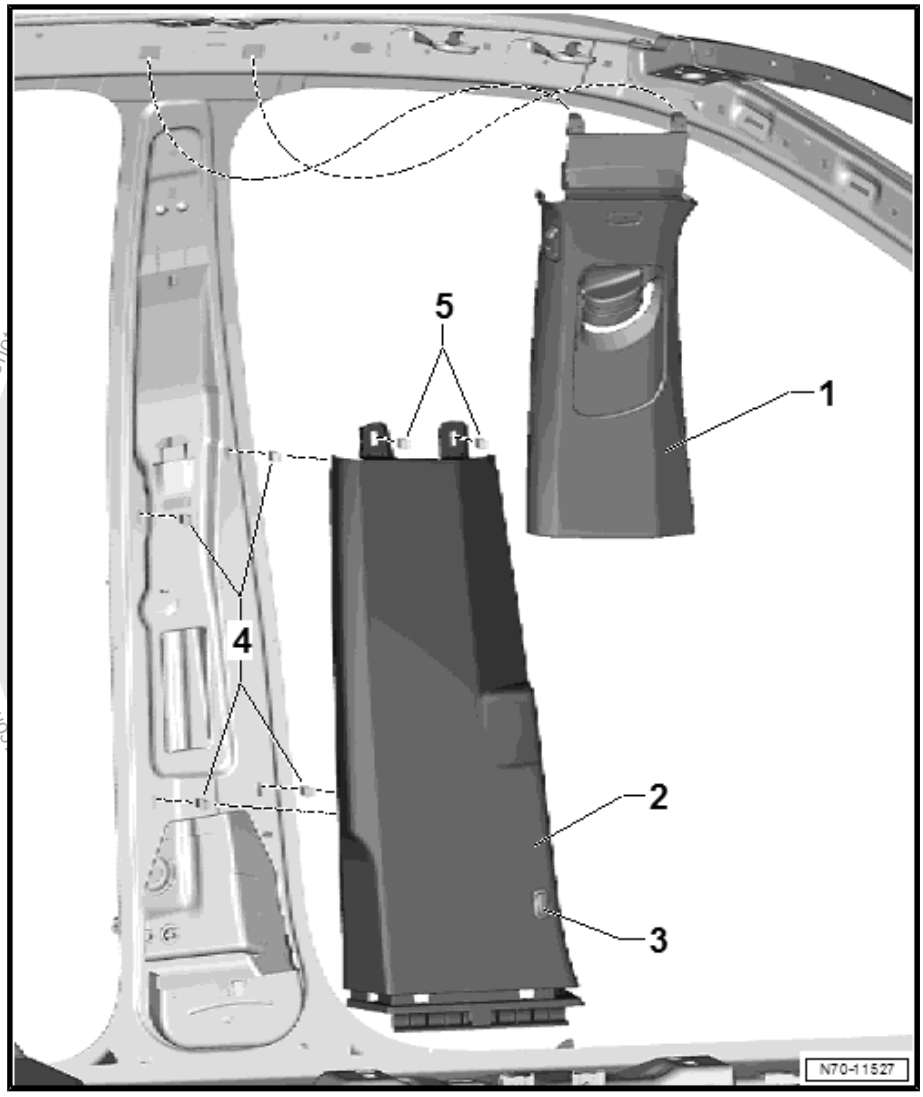
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Anti-theft alarm system; Assembly overview - interior monitoring .

4 - Retaining clips

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ Insert in lower B-pillar trim
- ❑ Remove any retaining clips left in body mountings using removal tool T40280- .
- ❑ Renew any damaged or deformed retaining clips.

5 - Retaining clips

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Insert in upper B-pillar trim.
- ❑ Renew any damaged or deformed retaining clips.



commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not

5.5 Assembly overview - C-pillar trim

Note

The illustration shows the C-pillar trim on the left side. The right-hand side is similar (mirror image of left-hand side).

1 - C-pillar trim

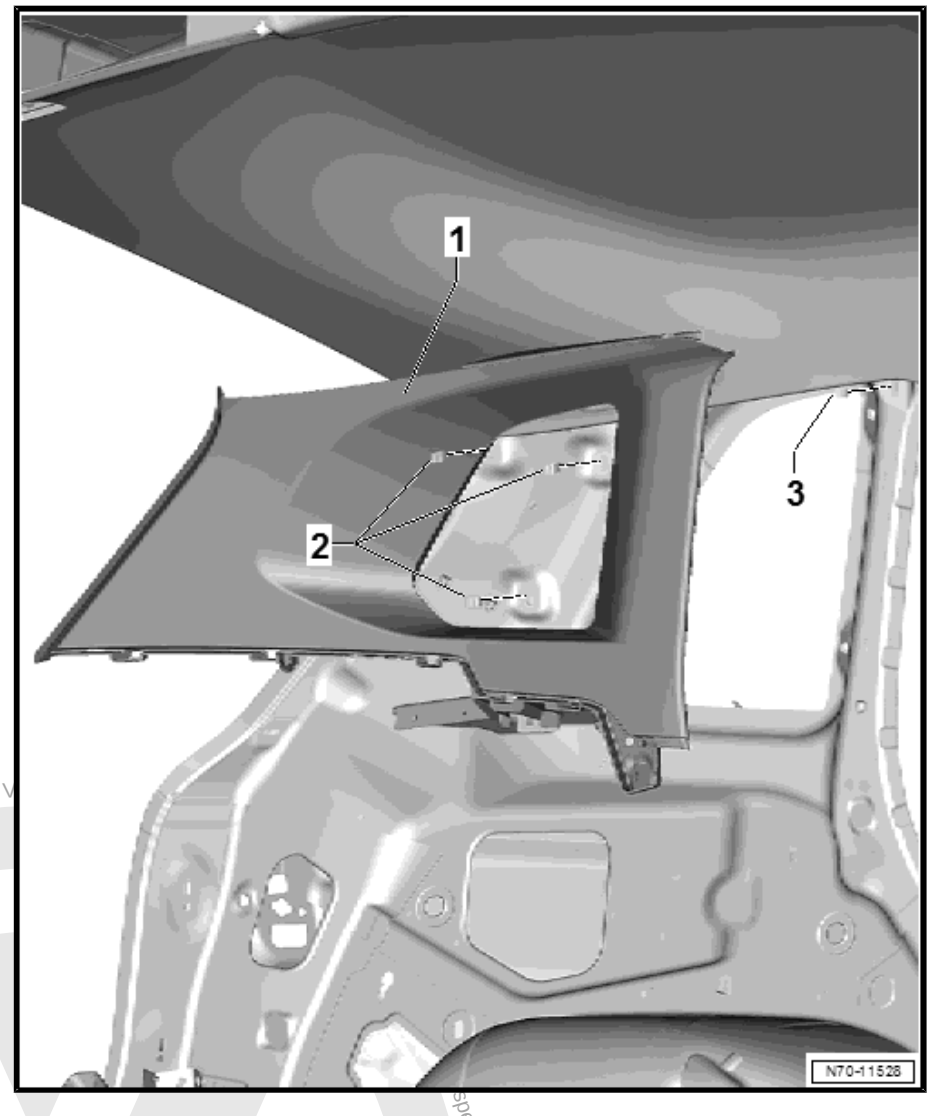
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 224

2 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Insert into trim
- ❑ Remove any retaining clips left in body mountings using removal tool -T40280- .
- ❑ Renew any damaged or deformed retaining clips.

3 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Insert into trim
- ❑ Remove any retaining clips left in body mountings using removal tool -T40280-
- ❑ Renew retaining clip if it is damaged or deformed



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. V
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. spect to the correctness of information in this document.

5.6 Assembly overview - wheel housing trim

Note

The illustration shows the wheel housing trim on the left side. The right-hand side is similar (mirror image of left-hand side).

1 - Wheel housing trim

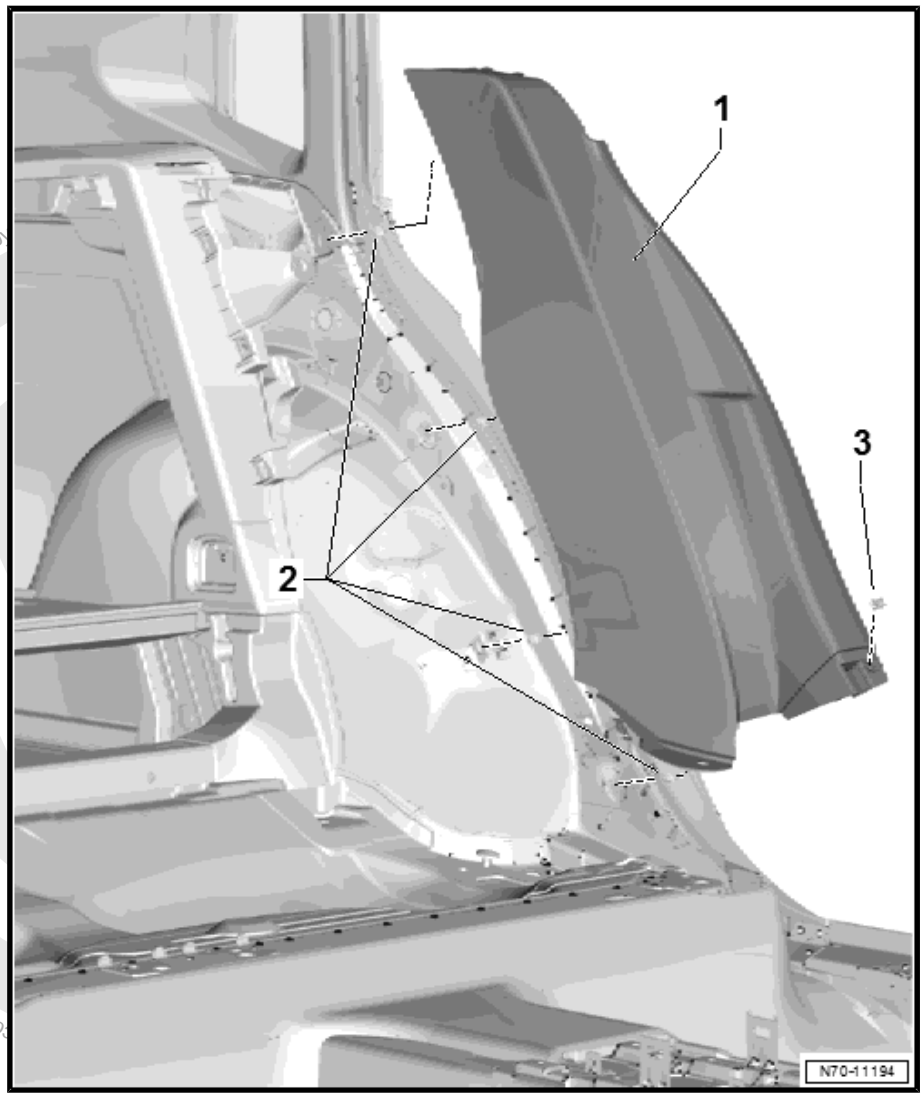
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 226

2 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Insert into trim
- ❑ Remove any retaining clips left in body mountings using removal tool - T40280- .
- ❑ Renew any damaged or deformed retaining clips.

3 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Insert into trim
- ❑ Renew retaining clip if it is damaged or deformed



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by

5.7 Assembly overview - foot rest and floor covering

⇒ "5.7.1 Assembly overview - foot rest and floor covering, LHD vehicles", page 209

⇒ "5.7.2 Assembly overview - foot rest and floor covering, RHD vehicles", page 210

5.7.1 Assembly overview - foot rest and floor covering, LHD vehicles

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not g

1 - Foot rest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 228
- ❑ Must fully engage into bracket.

2 - Nut

- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 2 Nm

3 - Bracket

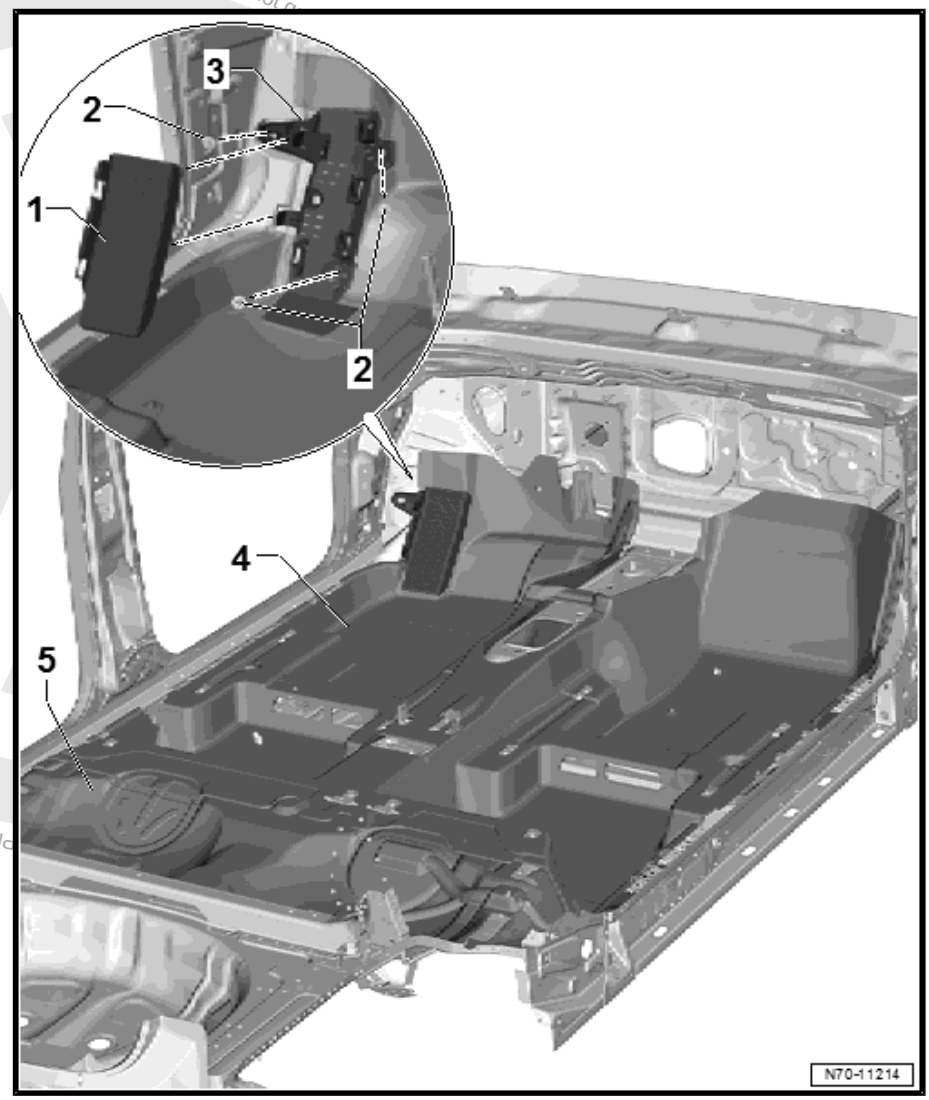
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 228

4 - Front floor covering

- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 230

5 - Rear floor covering

- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 230



5.7.2 Assembly overview - foot rest and floor covering, RHD vehicles

1 - Foot rest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 229

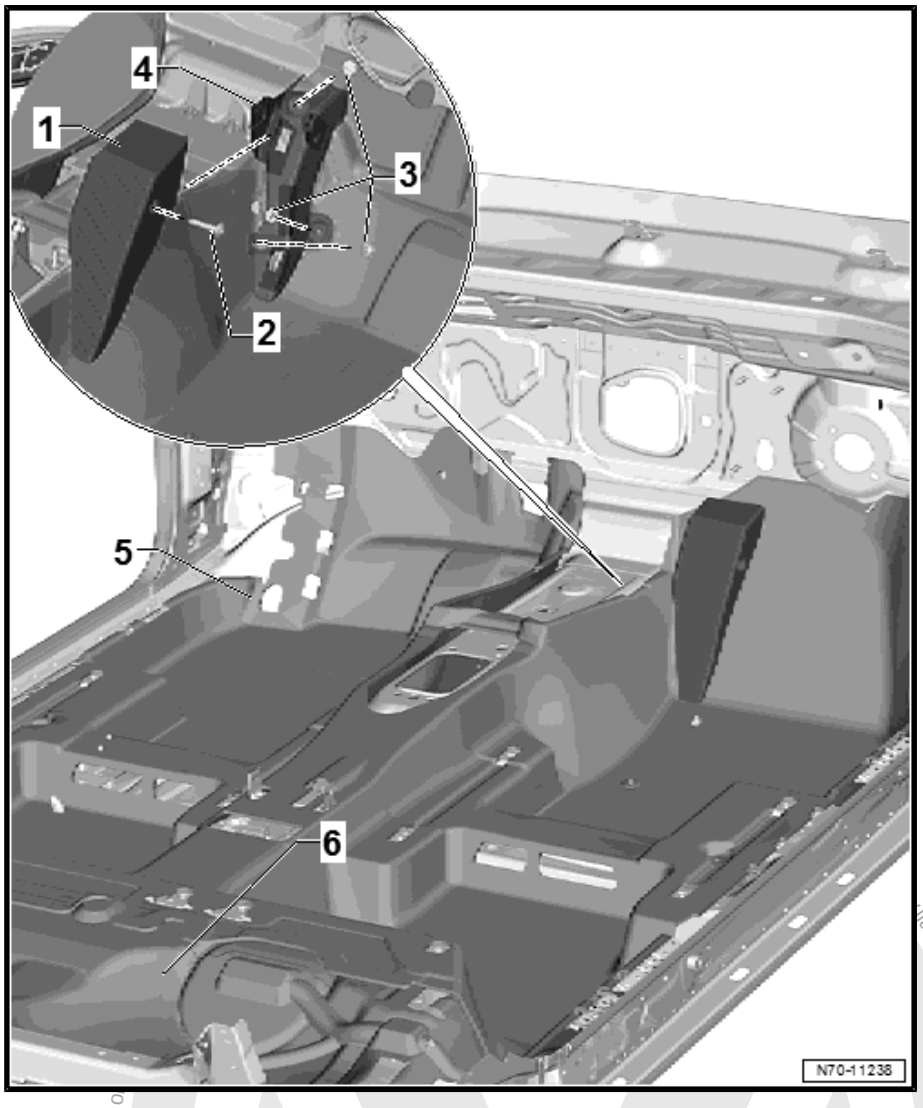
2 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

3 - Nut
- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 2 Nm

4 - Bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 229

5 - Front floor covering
- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 230

6 - Rear floor covering
- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 230



5.8 Removing and installing sill panel moulding

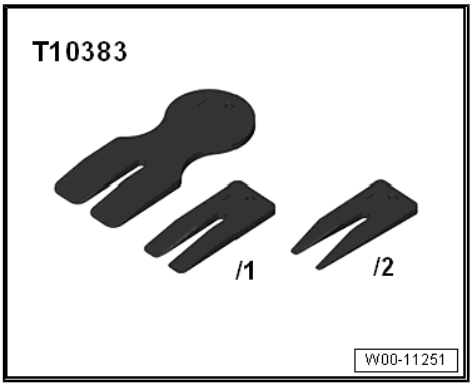
Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side.
Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

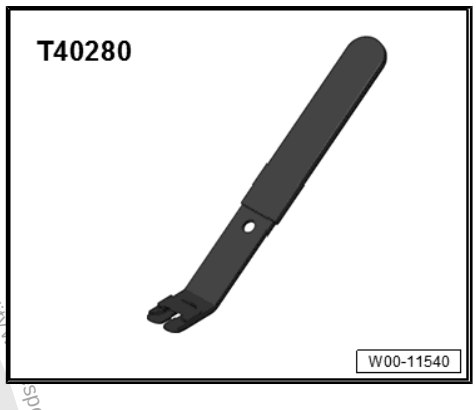
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part of this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

♦ Wedges - T10383-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of this document. This document is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

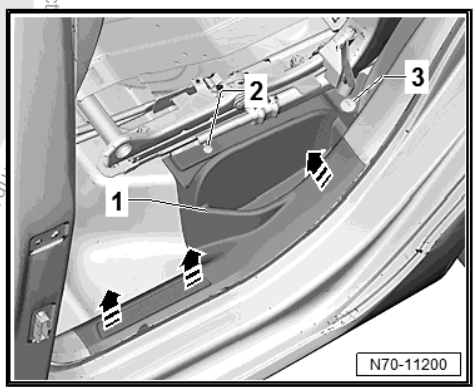
Removing

Rear sill panel moulding

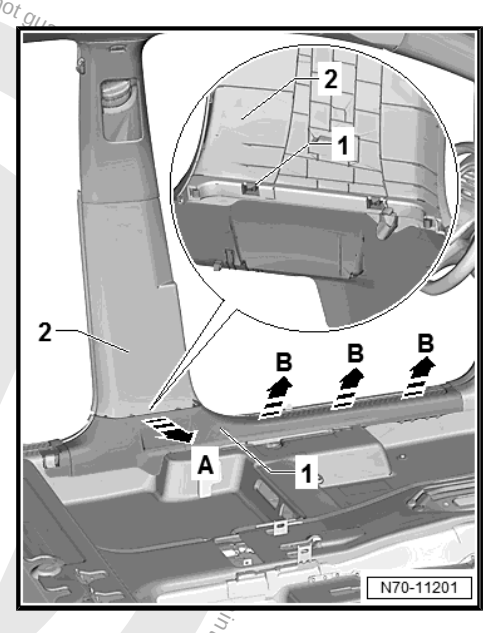
– Remove rear bench seat ⇒ page 364 .
– Remove spreader rivet -2-.
– Remove clip -3-.
– Unclip rear sill panel moulding -1- from wheel housing trim.
– Using wedge - T10383- , release rear sill panel moulding -1- from side member and beading of door seal -arrows-.
– Remove rear sill panel moulding -1- from vehicle.

Front sill panel moulding

– Release rear sill panel moulding at transition to front sill panel moulding from body.



– Using wedge - T10383- , release locking lugs of front sill panel moulding -1- from lower B-pillar trim -2- -arrow A-.
– Using wedge - T10383- , release front sill panel moulding -1- from side member and beading of door seal -arrows B-.
– Open cover for belt guide and thread out seat belt.
– Remove sill panel moulding from vehicle.



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

- *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- *Remove any retaining clips left in body mountings using removal tool - T40280- and fit them in sill panel moulding for installation.*
- *Following installation, ensure that the sill panel moulding is positioned in the door seal beading.*

5.9 Removing and installing A-pillar trim

⇒ “5.9.1 Removing and installing A-pillar trim, upper A-pillar trim”, page 212

⇒ “5.9.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim, lower A-pillar trim, driver side, LHD vehicles”, page 215

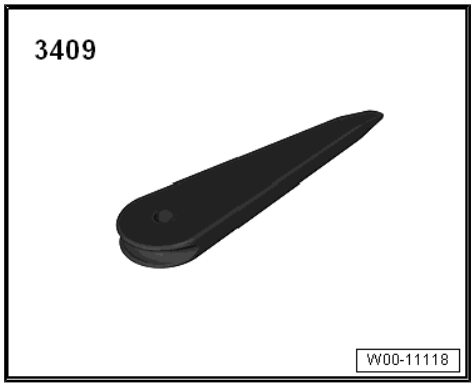
⇒ “5.9.3 Removing and installing A-pillar trim, lower A-pillar trim, driver side, RHD vehicles”, page 216

⇒ “5.9.4 Removing and installing A-pillar trim, lower A-pillar trim, front passenger side”, page 218

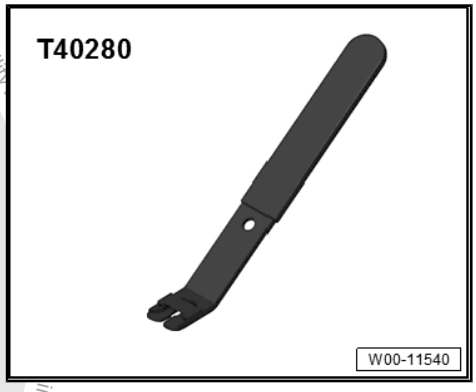
5.9.1 Removing and installing A-pillar trim, upper A-pillar trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Caution

When carrying out the steps below, the curtain airbag may become damaged. For this reason, proceed with extreme caution during the removal.

– Remove A-pillar gap cover ⇒ page 220 .

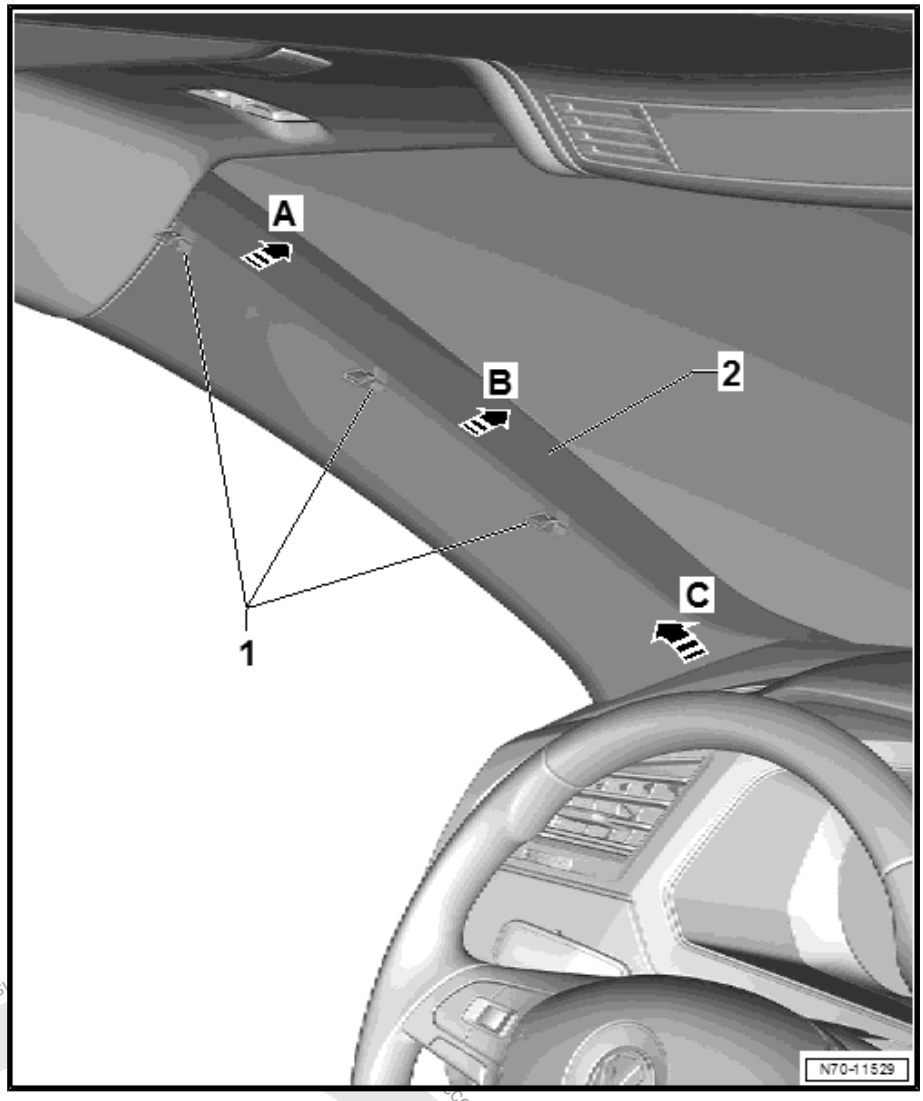
Removing

– Using removal wedge - 3409- and beginning at top, carefully release upper A-pillar trim -2- in area of retaining clips -1- from body mountings -arrow B-.

– Pull upper A-pillar trim -2- upwards out of dash panel -arrow C- in order to release upper clip from body.

– Detach upper A-pillar trim -2- -arrow A-.

commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Installing

Note

- *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- *Remove any retaining clips left in body mountings using removal tool - T40280- and fit them in A-pillar trims for installation.*

WARNING

Prior to reinstallation of the upper A-pillar trim, the topmost retaining clip must be replaced by a new part.

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part of pictures or text is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

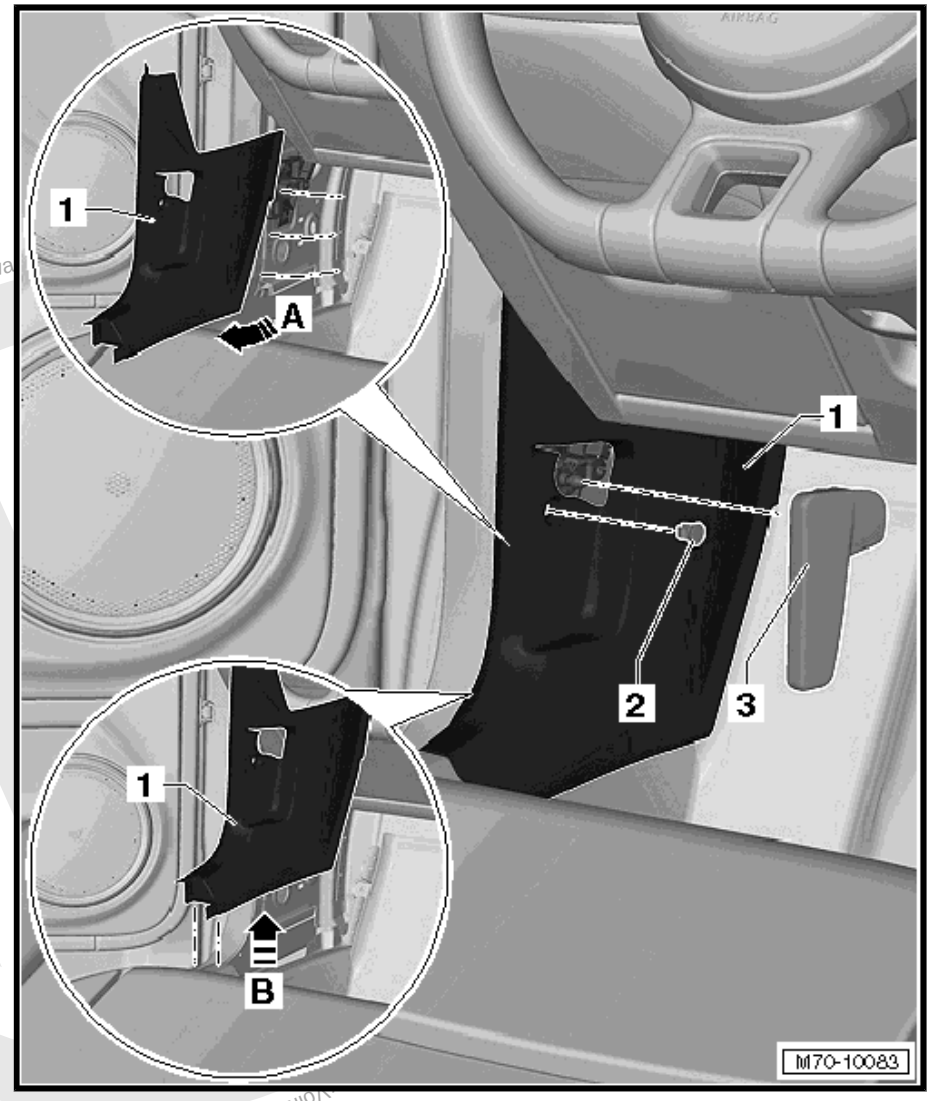
Following installation, check if the upper A-pillar trim is positioned in the beading of the door seal.

5.9.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim, lower A-pillar trim, driver side, LHD vehicles

Removing

– Release front sill panel moulding at transition to lower A-pillar trim from body ⇒ page 210 .

– Remove A-pillar gap cover ⇒ page 220 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove bonnet operating lever -3- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing bonnet lock operating lever .

– Remove clip -2-.

– Release lower A-pillar trim -1- in -direction of arrow B- from body. Release lower A-pillar trim from door seal beading while doing so.

– Remove lower A-pillar trim -1- in -direction of arrow A- from mounting.

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

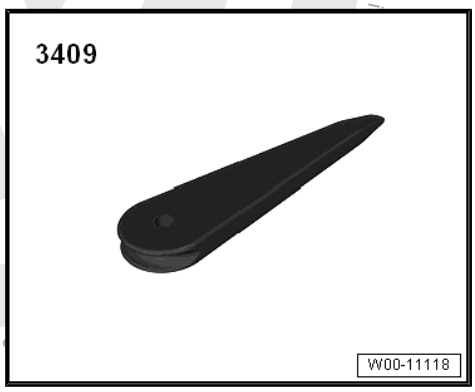
Note

- *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- *Following installation, ensure that the A-pillars trim are positioned in door seal beading.*

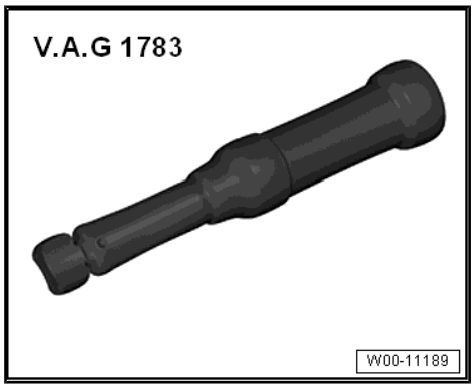
5.9.3 Removing and installing A-pillar trim, lower A-pillar trim, driver side, RHD vehicles

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-

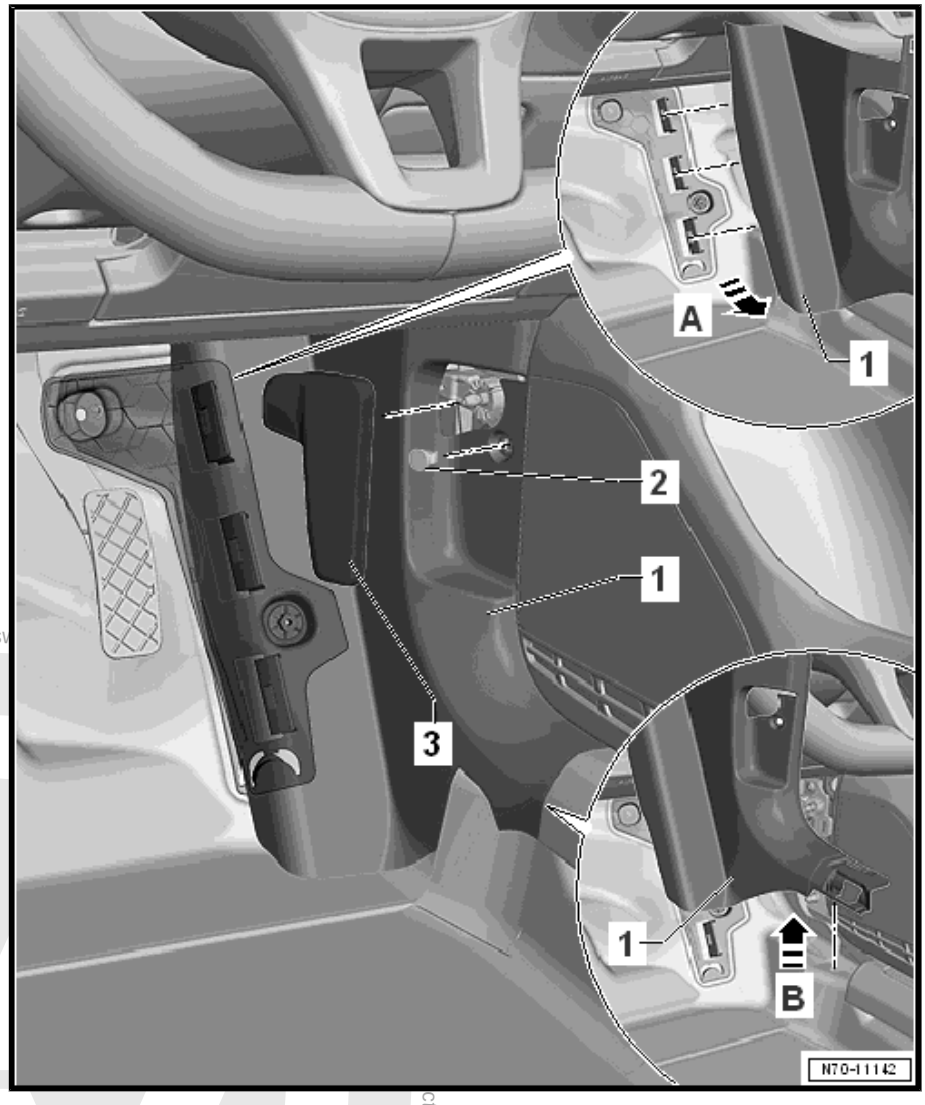


- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing

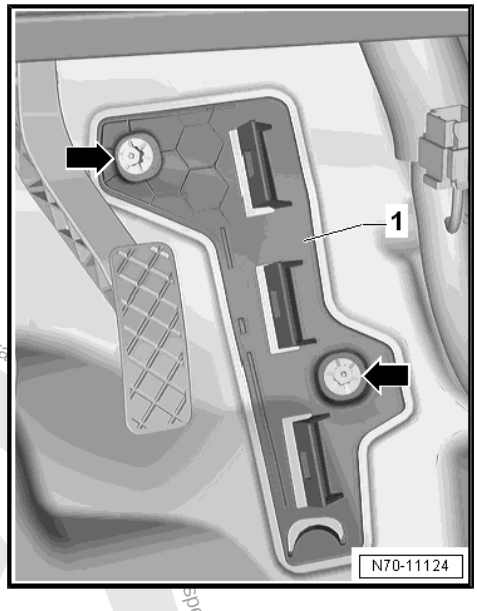
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of



– Release front sill panel moulding at transition to lower A-pillar trim from body ⇒ page 210 .
– Remove A-pillar gap cover ⇒ page 220 .
– Remove bonnet operating lever -3- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing bonnet lock operating lever .
– Remove clip -2-.
– Unclip lower A-pillar trim -1- in -direction of arrow A- from mountings.
– At the same time, release lower A-pillar trim -1- in -direction of arrow B- from body. Release lower A-pillar trim from door seal beading while doing so.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volksw... Commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. ... correctness of information in this document. ...

– Push floor covering in area of bolted connections aside and unscrew nuts -arrows-.
– Lift bracket -1- off studs and pull it out from beneath floor covering.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Note

- *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- *Following installation, ensure that the A-pillars trim are positioned in door seal beading.*

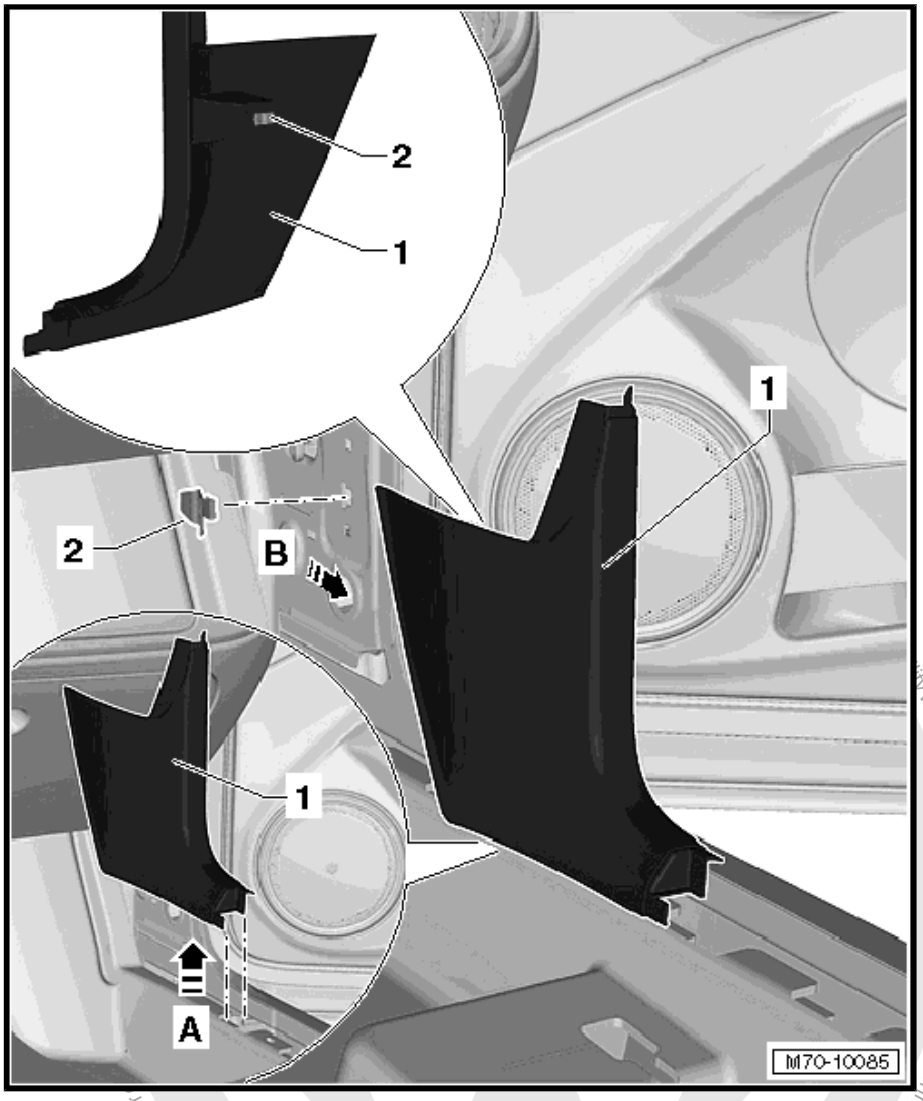
Torque settings

- ⇒ “5.7 Assembly overview - foot rest and floor covering”, page 209

5.9.4 Removing and installing A-pillar trim, lower A-pillar trim, front passenger side

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Release front sill panel moulding at transition to lower A-pillar trim from body ⇒ page 210 .

– Remove A-pillar gap cover ⇒ page 220 .

– Release lower A-pillar trim -1- in -direction of arrow A- from body. Release lower A-pillar trim from door seal beading while doing so.

– Remove lower A-pillar trim -1- in -direction of arrow B- from A-pillar.

Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

- *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- *Following installation, ensure that the A-pillars trim are positioned in door seal beading.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

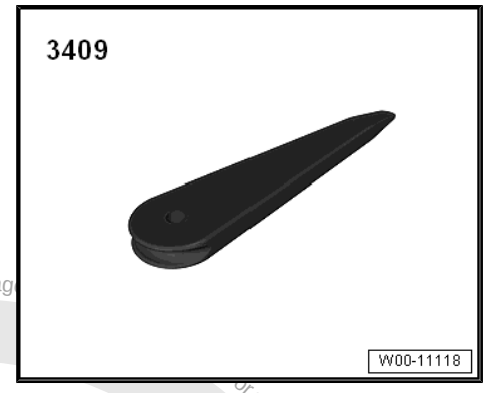
5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar gap cover

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side.
Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Remove side dash panel cover ⇒ page 172 .
– Unclip A-pillar gap cover -1- from upper A-pillar trim and lower A-pillar trim -arrows-.
– Release A-pillar gap cover -1- from door seal beading and remove it.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Note

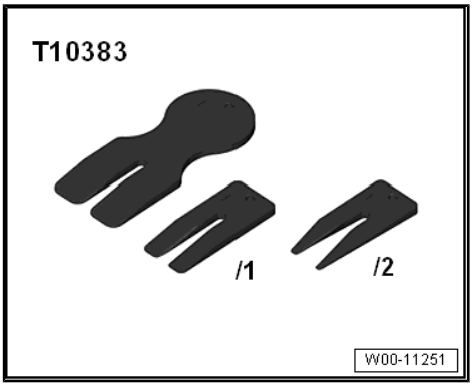
Following installation, ensure that the A-pillar gap cover is positioned in door seal beading.

5.11 Removing and installing B-pillar trim

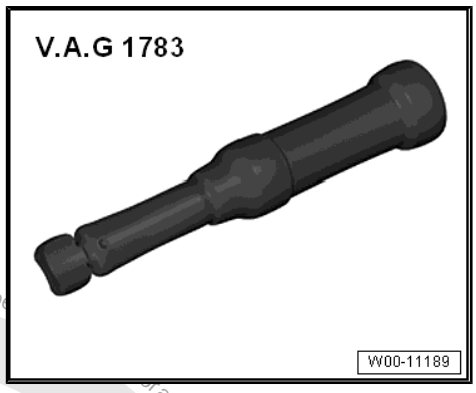
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Wedges - T10383-



- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



- Removal tool - T40280-



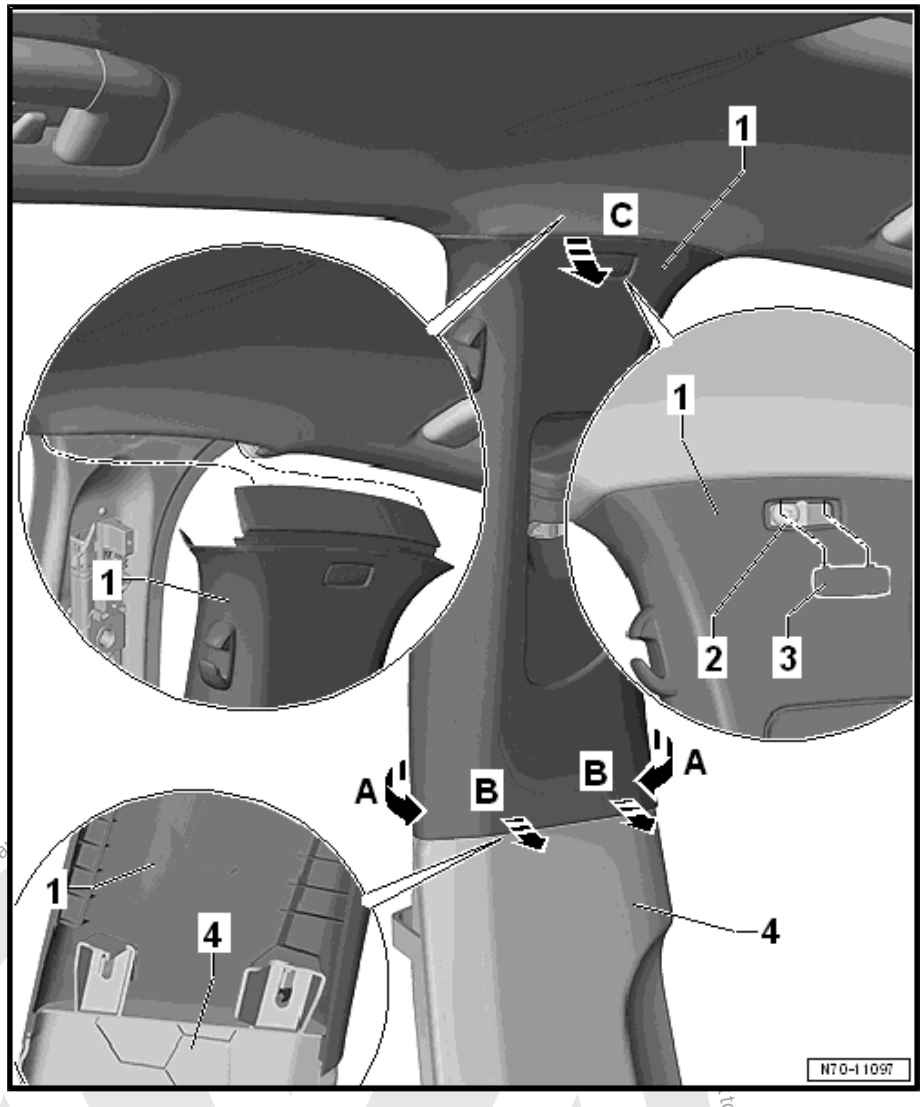
Removing

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Upper part of B-pillar trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove front belt end fitting ⇒ page 89 .
– Move belt height adjuster to lowest position.

Note

Bolt -2- and cap -3- are not fitted.

– Starting at bottom, detach upper B-pillar trim -1- from door seal -arrow A-. To do this, fit wedge - T10383- on front edge of trim.
– Unclip upper B-pillar trim -1- from lower B-pillar trim -4- -arrows B-. To do this, fit wedge - T10383- on lower edge of trim.

Caution

When carrying out the following work, make sure not to swing the upper B-pillar trim too far inwards to prevent damage to the moulded headliner.

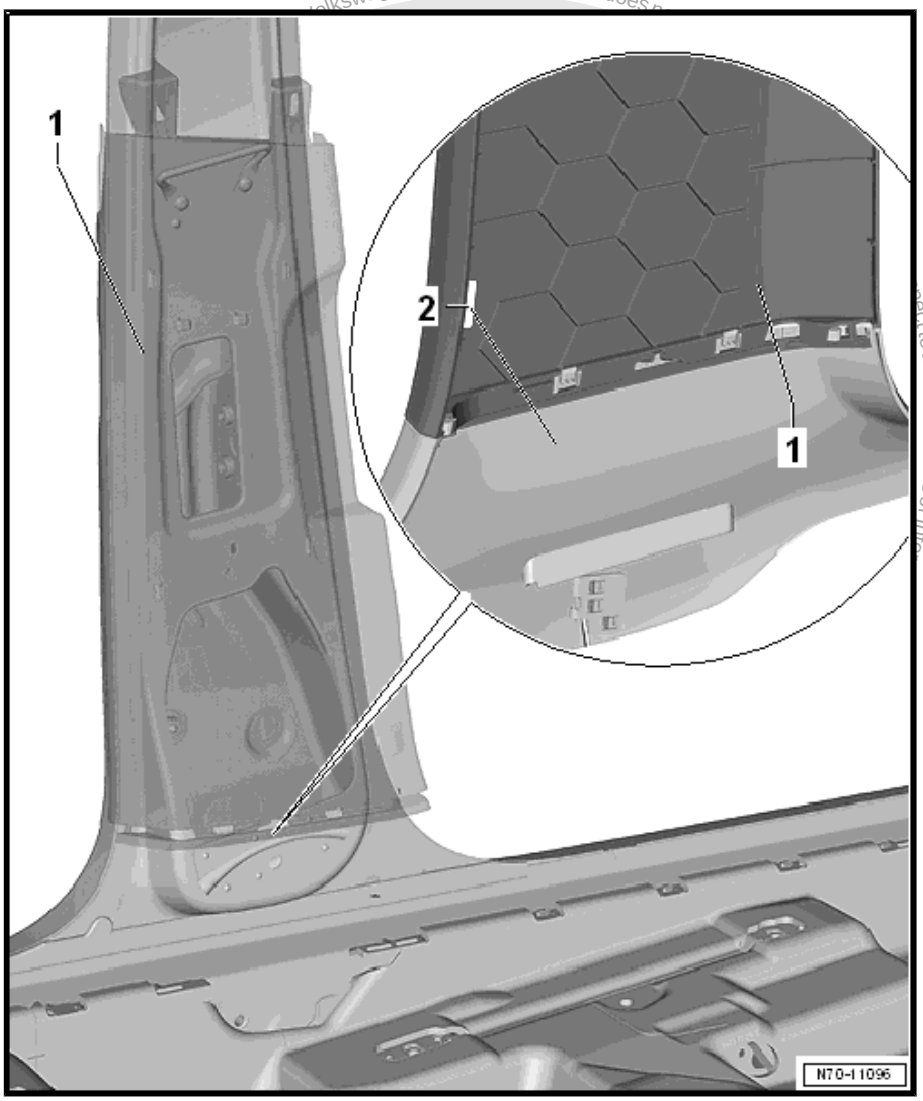
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ... to the correctness of information in this document.

– Pull upper B-pillar trim -1- out of body mounting -arrow C-. To do this, swing trim slightly towards inside, and pull it off downwards.

– Thread out belt webbing with latch plate through slider for belt height adjuster and remove upper B-pillar trim.

Lower B-pillar trim

olkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does



ect to the correctness of info

– Release sill panel moulding -2- in area of overlap to lower B-pillar trim -1- ⇒ page 210 .

– Release upper B-pillar trim in area of overlap to lower B-pillar trim -1- ⇒ page 221 .

– Release lower B-pillar trim -1- from door seal beading.

– Release lower B-pillar trim -1- in area of retaining clips from body mountings using wedge - T10383- .

– If fitted, disconnect connector on button for deactivating interior monitoring and vehicle inclination sensor - E616- and remove lower B-pillar trim -1-.

Installing

Note

If the lower B-pillar trim is renewed, a cut must be made in the new part on vehicles with “interior monitoring”. Observe marking on inside of trim.

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Note

- *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- *Remove any retaining clips left in body mountings using removal tool - T40280- and fit them in B-pillar trims for installation.*
- *Following installation, ensure that the B-pillar trims are positioned in door seal beading.*

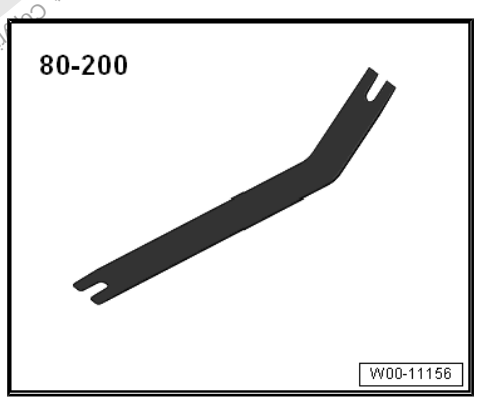
Torque settings

- ⇒ “5.4 Assembly overview - B-pillar trim”, page 205

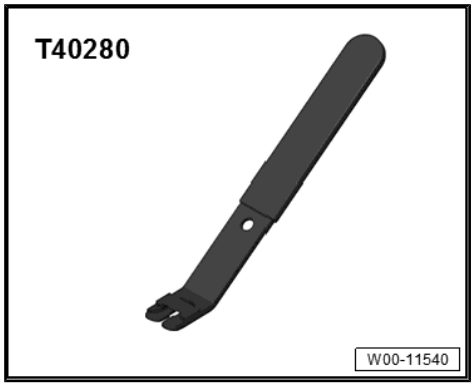
5.12 Removing and installing C-pillar trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80 - 200-



- Removal tool - T40280-



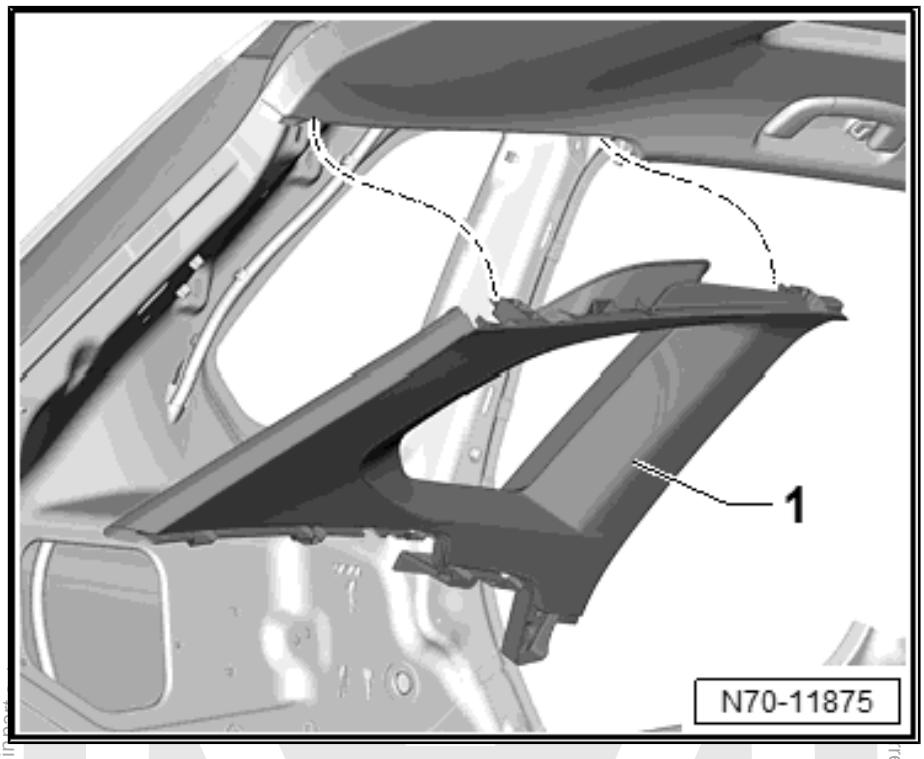
Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use, disclosure or commercial exploitation of this document or any part thereof is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

- Remove luggage compartment cover ⇒ page 232 .
- Removing wheel housing trim ⇒ page 226 .
- Remove bracket for luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 246 .
- Remove tie-down ring ⇒ page 245 .
- Detach bag hook ⇒ page 247 .
- Depending on equipment version, remove operating lever for remote release mechanism for backrest ⇒ page 336 .
- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 241 .
- Using removal lever - 80 - 200- and working from rear towards front, unclip C-pillar trim -1- in upper area from mountings on body.



- Swing C-pillar trim -1- towards inside.
- Guide out C-pillar trim -1- upwards over seat belt mounting.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Correctness of information in this document.

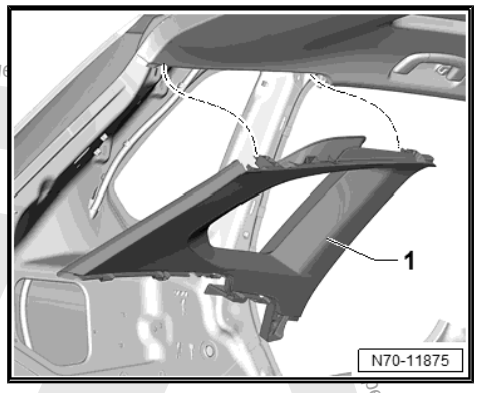
Installing

Note

- *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- *Remove any retaining clips left in body mountings using removal tool - T40280- and fit them in C-pillar trim for installation.*

– Guide C-pillar trim -1- from above over seat belt mounting.
– Guide lower centring pin of C-pillar trim -1- into corresponding aperture in body.
– Working from front towards rear, engage C-pillar trim -1- in body using 4 clips.
– Press C-pillar trim -1- into beading of door seal and rear lid seal.

Continue installation in reverse order of removal.



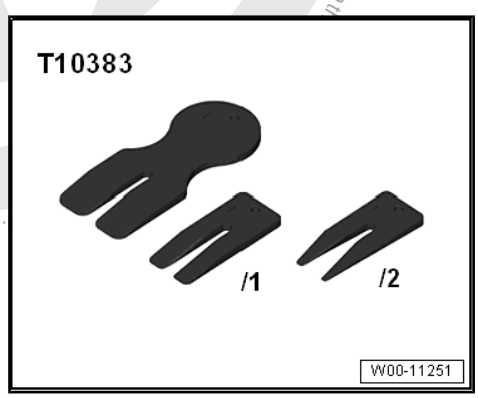
5.13 Removing and installing wheel housing trims

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

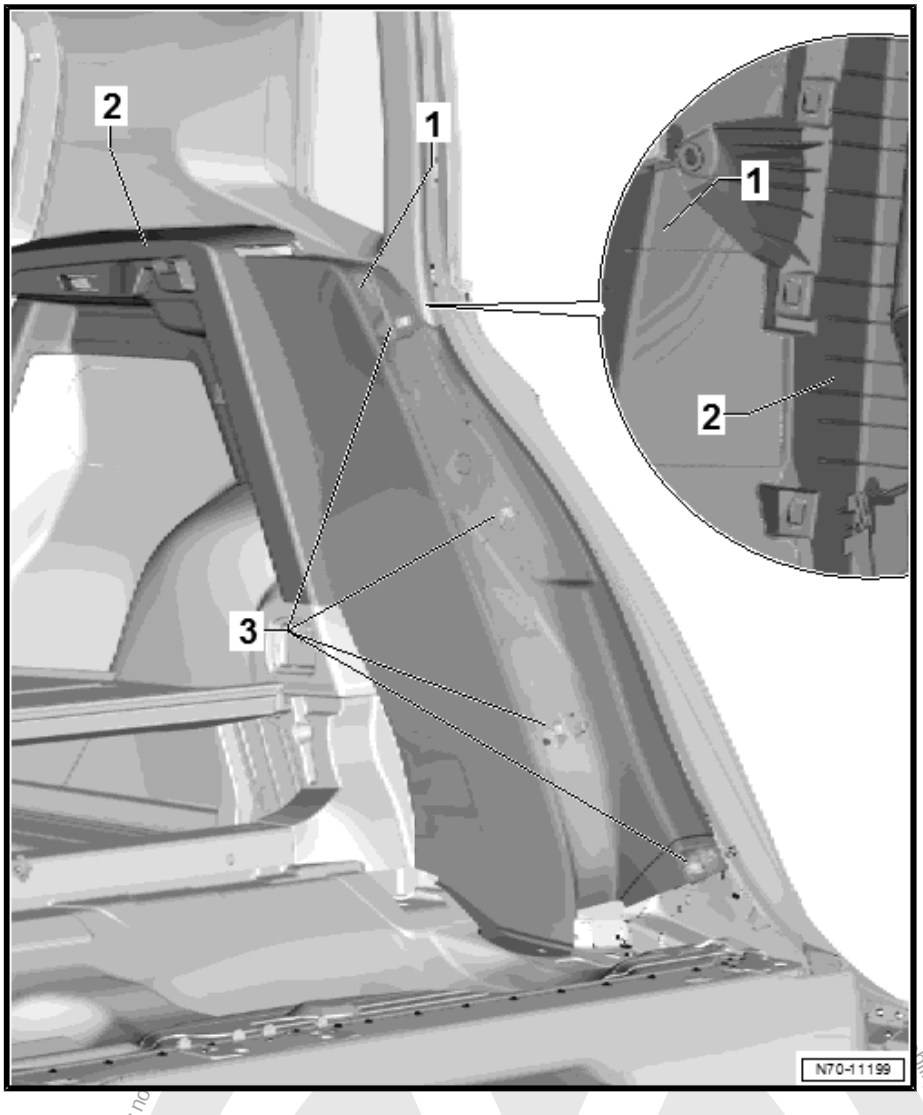
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-



Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this



– Remove rear sill panel moulding ⇒ page 210 .
– Using wedge - T10383- , unclip wheel housing trim -1- from rear shelf -2-.
– Using wedge - T10383- , release wheel housing trim -1- in area of retaining clips -3- from body mountings, and remove it.

Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

- *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- *Remove any retaining clips left in body mountings using removal tool - T40280- and fit them in wheel housing trim for installation.*
- *Following installation, ensure that the wheel housing trim is positioned in the door seal beading.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ...bility with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

5.14 Removing and installing foot rest

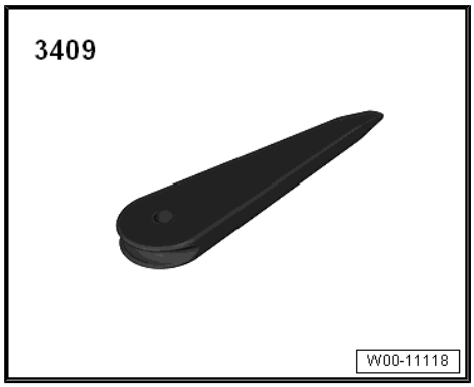
⇒ “5.14.1 Removing and installing foot rest, LHD vehicles”, page 228

⇒ “5.14.2 Removing and installing foot rest, RHD vehicles”, page 229

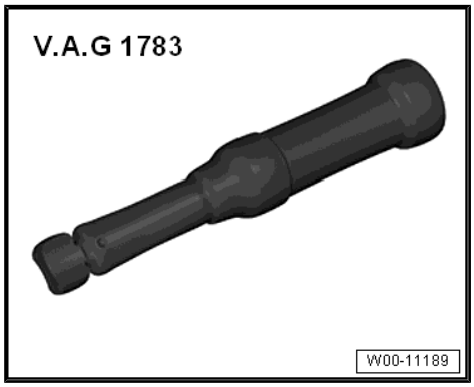
5.14.1 Removing and installing foot rest, LHD vehicles

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing

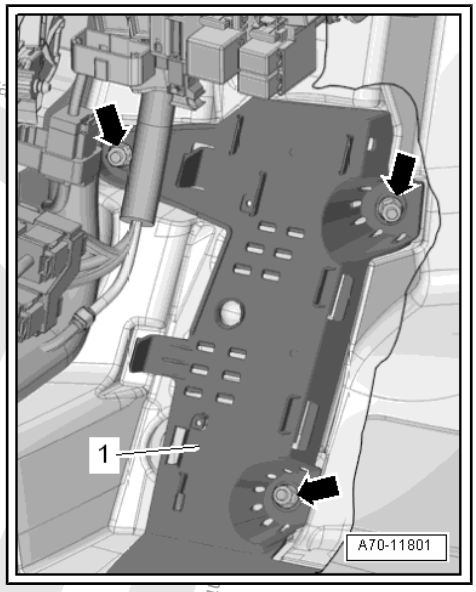
– Remove lower A-pillar trim on driver side ⇒ page 215 .

– Release catches -1-, unclip foot rest -2- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows- and remove foot rest.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Push floor covering in area of bolted connections aside and unscrew nuts -arrows-.
– Lift bracket -1- off studs and pull it out from beneath floor covering.



Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

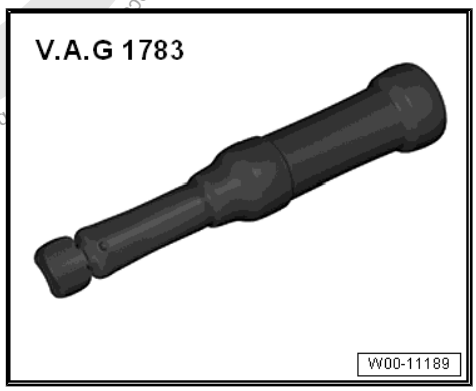
Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “5.7.1 Assembly overview - foot rest and floor covering, LHD vehicles”, page 209

5.14.2 Removing and installing foot rest, RHD vehicles

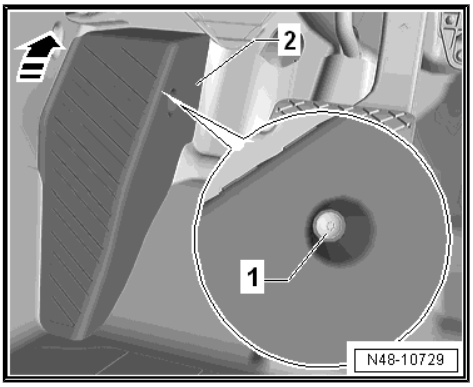
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

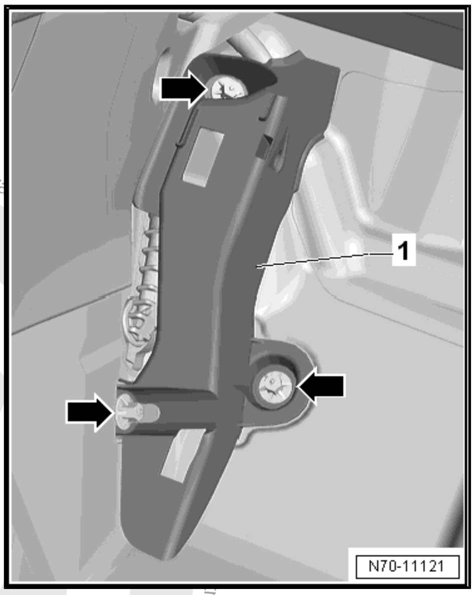


Removing

– Unscrew bolt -1-.
– Press foot rest -2- upwards in -direction of arrow- and remove it.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Push floor covering in area of bolted connections aside and unscrew nuts -arrows-.

– Lift bracket -1- off studs and remove it.

Installing

Continue installation in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

Torque settings

- ⇒ “5.7.2 Assembly overview - foot rest and floor covering, RHD vehicles”, page 210

5.15 Removing and installing floor covering

Removing

Front floor covering

– Remove front seats ⇒ page 275 .

– Remove rear seats ⇒ page 325 .

– Remove sill panel mouldings ⇒ page 210 .

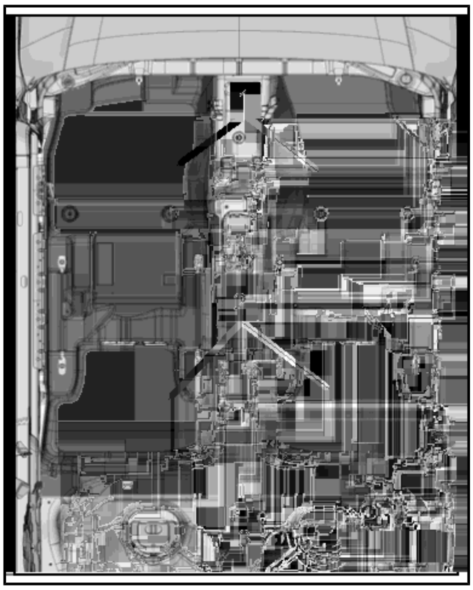
– Remove lower A-pillar trims ⇒ page 212 .

– Remove front belt end fittings ⇒ page 89 .

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 50 .

– Remove foot rest ⇒ page 228 .

– If fitted, remove rear air duct ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct; Assembly overview - air duct and air distribution in passenger compartment .



– Remove floor mats -1 and 2-.

– Lift front floor covering -3- at rear, and pull it towards rear.

Caution

Ensure that the floor covering is not torn in the area of the cut-outs.

– Fold front floor covering, and remove it through front door aperture.

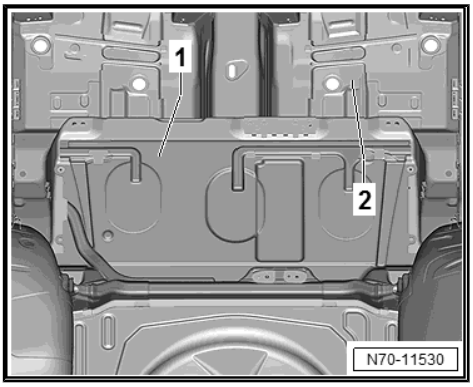
Rear floor covering

– Remove rear seats ⇒ page 325 .

– Remove wheel housing trim ⇒ page 226 .

– Remove bracket for luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 246 .

– Pull out rear floor covering -1- from underneath luggage compartment floor covering -4-.
– Pull out rear floor covering -1- from underneath front floor covering -2-.
– Fold rear floor covering, and remove it through rear door aperture.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

6 Luggage compartment trims

⇒ “6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trims”, page 232

⇒ “6.2 Assembly overview - luggage compartment side trim”, page 234

⇒ “6.3 Assembly overview - luggage compartment floor”, page 235

⇒ “6.4 Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim”, page 236

⇒ “6.5 Assembly overview - upper rear lid trim”, page 237

⇒ “6.6 Removing and installing lower rear lid trim”, page 237

⇒ “6.7 Removing and installing upper rear lid trim”, page 239

⇒ “6.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim”, page 241

⇒ “6.9 Removing and installing lock carrier trim”, page 244

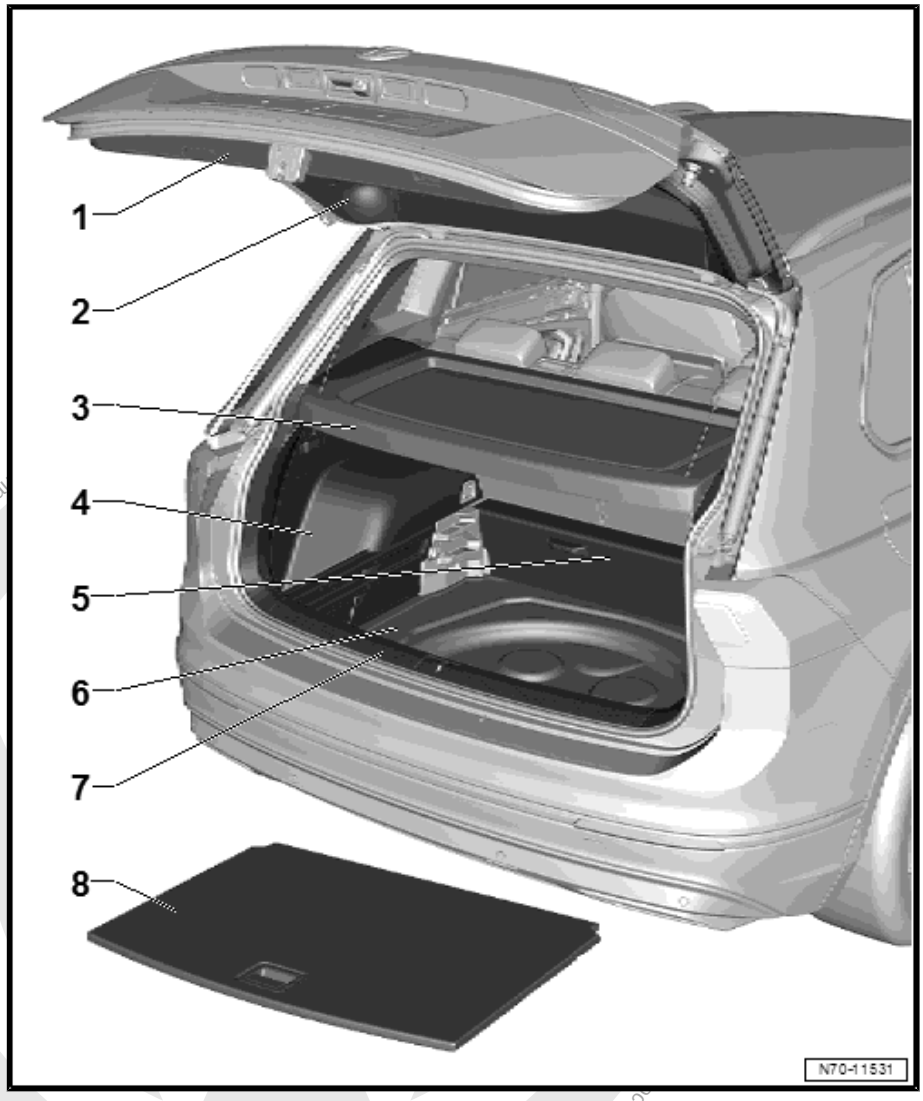
⇒ “6.10 Removing and installing fastening rings”, page 245

⇒ “6.11 Removing and installing support for luggage compartment floor”, page 246

⇒ “6.12 Removing and installing bag hooks”, page 247

6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trims

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Lower rear lid trim

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 236
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 237

2 - Upper rear lid trim

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 237
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 239

3 - Luggage compartment cover

- ❑ Removing
  - – Detach retaining straps for luggage compartment cover on left and right from window frame.
  - – Remove luggage compartment cover towards rear from mountings in rear shelf support.

4 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 234
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 241

5 - Carrier insert

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 235

6 - Luggage compartment floor covering

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 235

7 - Lock carrier trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 244

8 - Luggage compartment floor

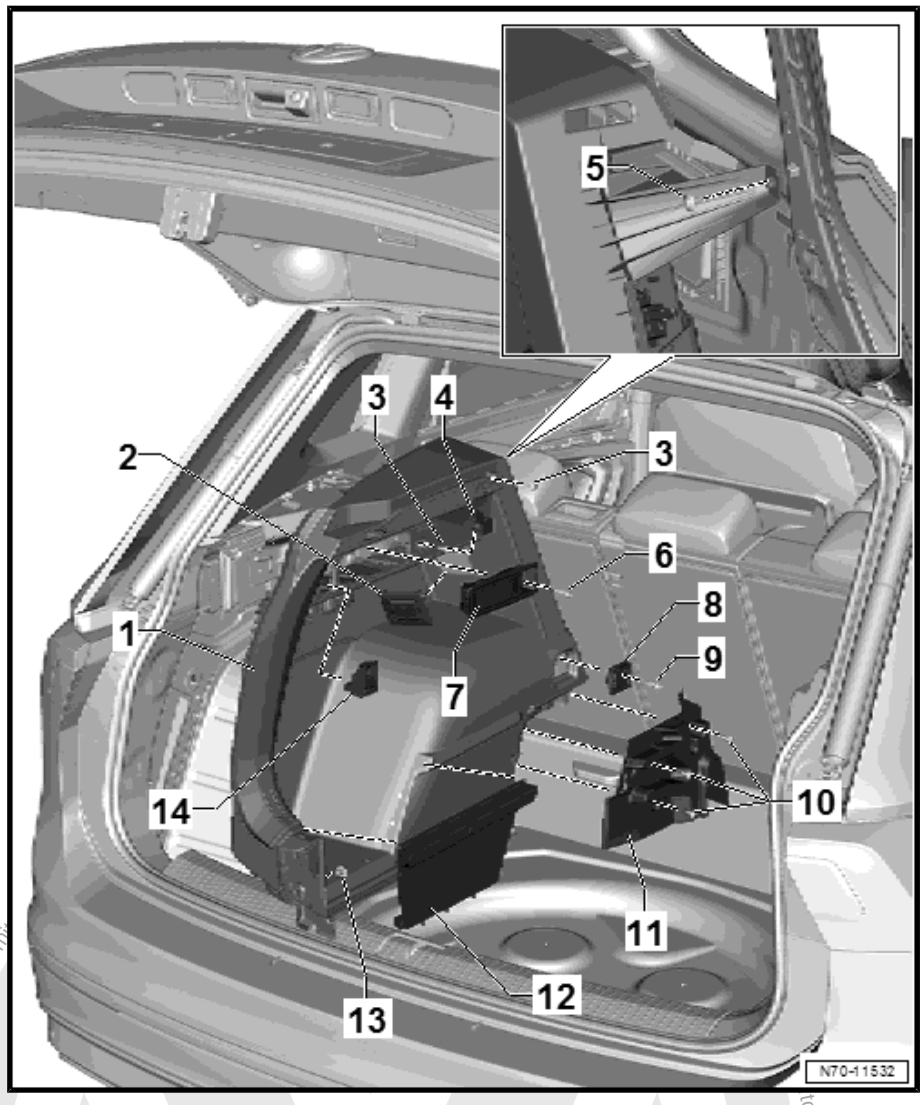
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 235

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

6.2 Assembly overview - luggage compartment side trim

Note

The illustration shows the luggage compartment side trim on the left side. The right-hand side is similar (mirror image of left-hand side).



1 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 241

2 - Socket for DC/AC converter

- ❑ Equipment version

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

4 - Bag hook

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 247

5 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ Renew spreader rivet if damaged or deformed

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 7 Nm

7 - Operating handle for remote release mechanism

- ❑ Equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 336

8 - Fastening ring

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 245

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

10 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 8 Nm

11 - Luggage compartment floor covering bracket

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 246

12 - Lid

13 - Fastener

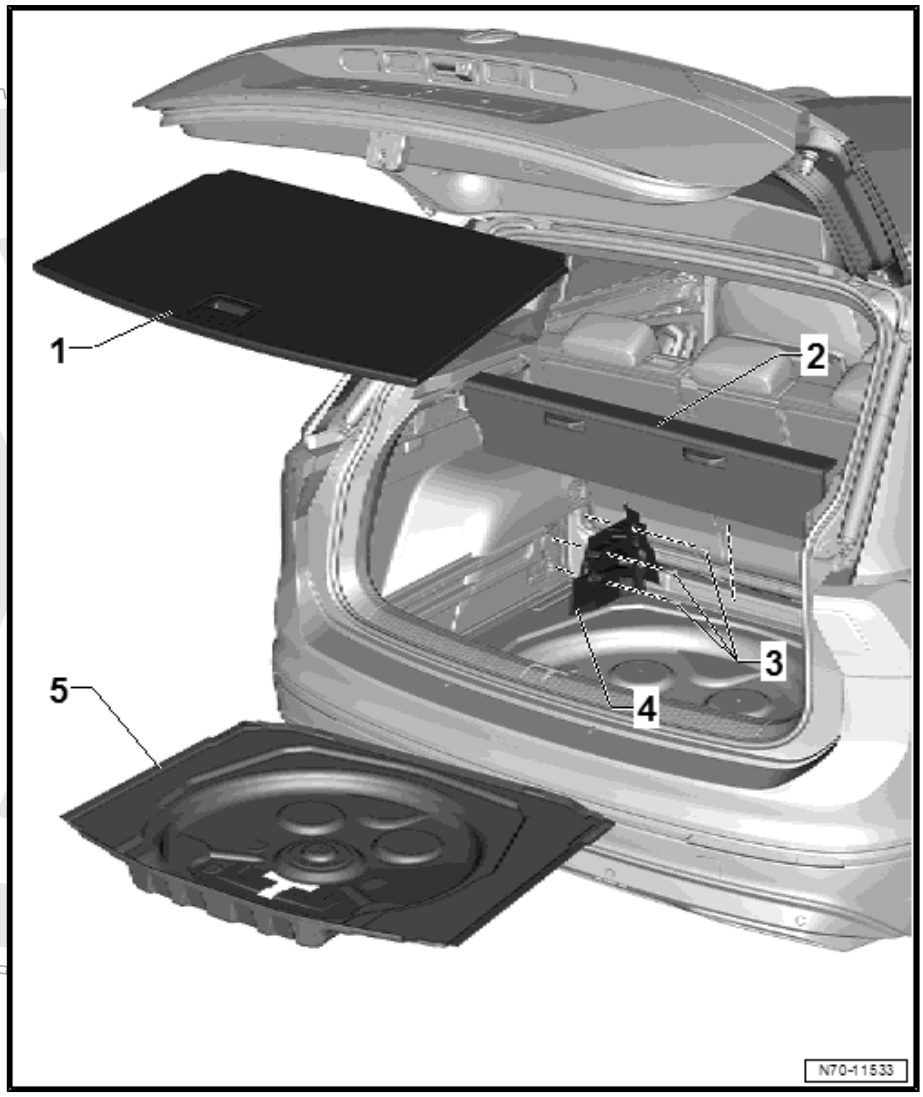
- ❑ Renew clip if damaged or deformed.

14 - Electric hinged tow coupling attachment button - E474-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash luggage compartment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part of this whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No guarantee for the correctness of information in this document.

6.3 Assembly overview - luggage compartment floor



1 - Luggage compartment floor

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Remove from vehicle towards rear

2 - Carrier insert

- ❑ Removing
- – Remove carrier insert upwards.
- ❑ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Luggage compartment floor covering bracket

- ❑ For luggage compartment floor.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 246

5 - Luggage compartment floor covering

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing
- – Remove bracket for luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 246 .
- – Remove luggage compartment floor covering from vehicle towards rear.
- ❑ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen

ed unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept an bility with respect to the correctness of information in thi

6.4 Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim

1 - Rear lid

- ❑ Assembly overview - upper rear lid trim ⇒ page 237
- ❑ Removing and installing upper rear lid trim ⇒ page 239

2 - Lower rear lid trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 237

3 - Bolt

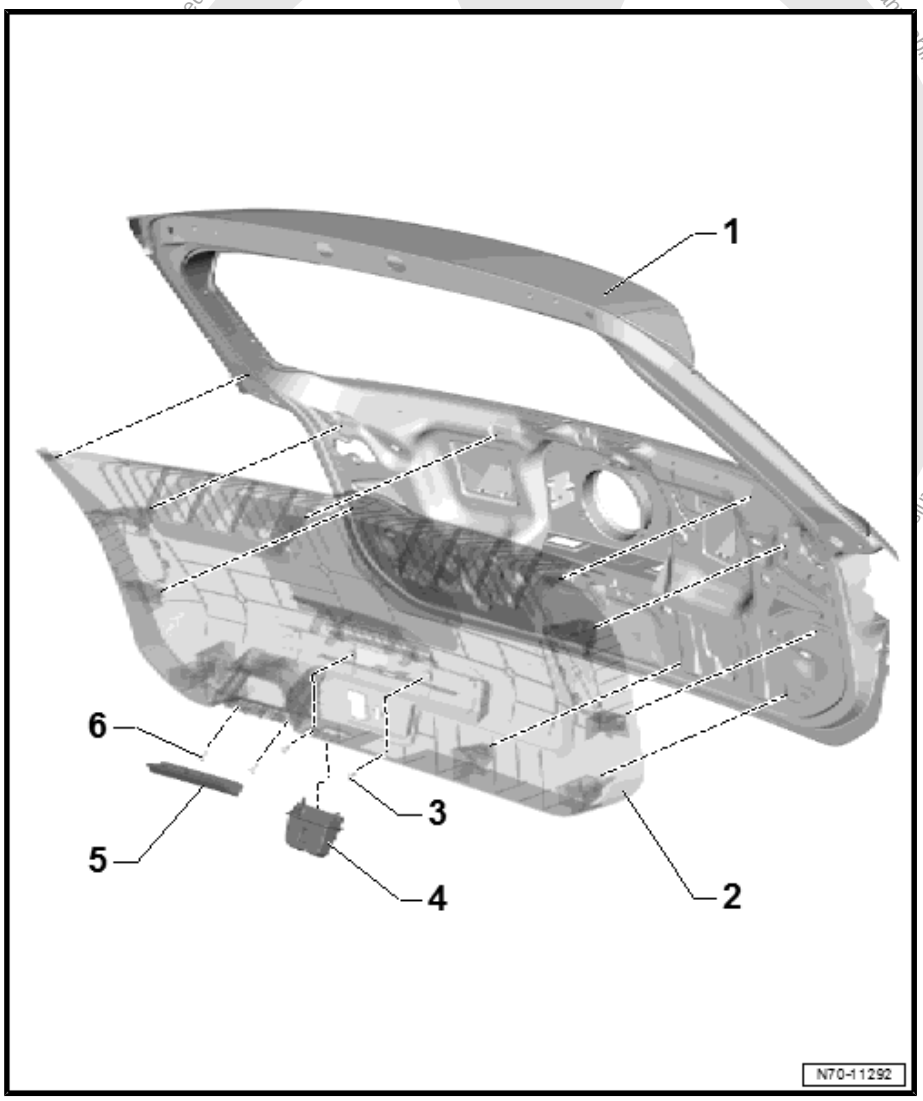
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 2 Nm

4 - Lock cover

5 - Lever trim

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 2 Nm



6.5 Assembly overview - upper rear lid trim

1 - Rear lid with lower rear lid trim

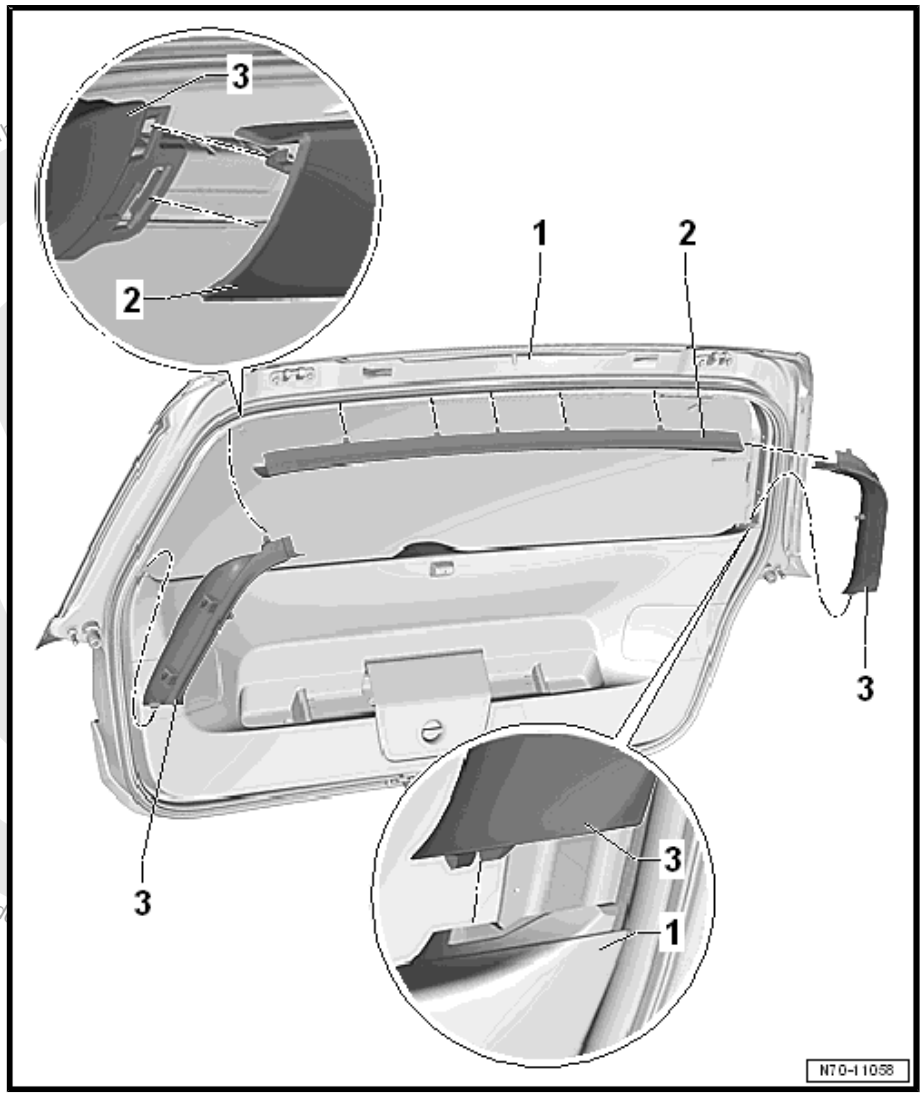
- ❑ Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim ⇒ page 236
- ❑ Removing and installing lower rear lid trim ⇒ page 237

2 - Window frame trim, middle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 239

3 - Window frame trim, side

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 239

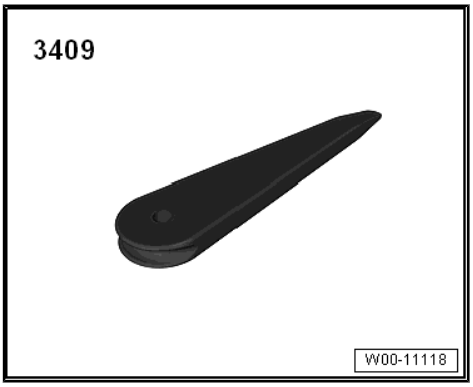


Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised

6.6 Removing and installing lower rear lid trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



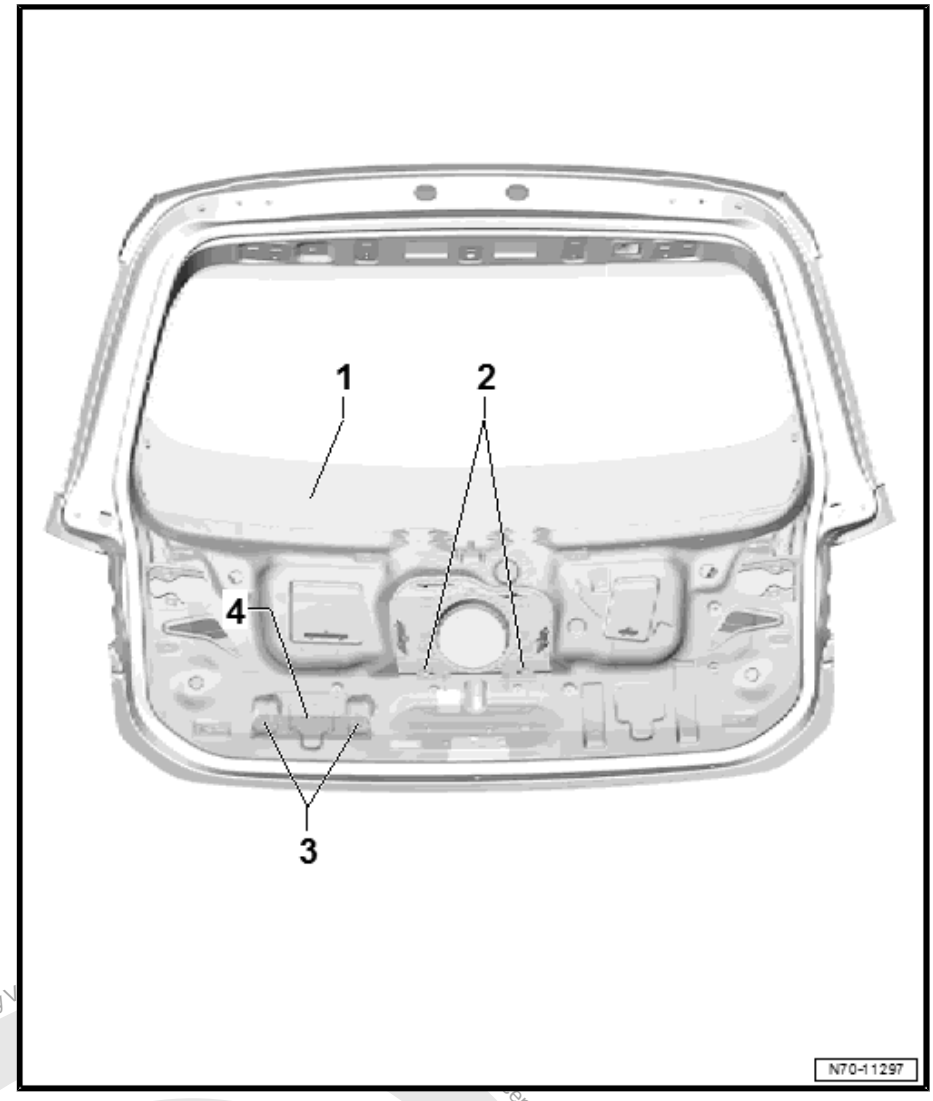
♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by Copyright. Copyright for Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any use of this document, or parts thereof, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Remove warning triangle.
– Remove upper rear lid trim ⇒ page 239 .
– Unscrew bolts -2-.
– Remove mounting for warning triangle.
– Unclip trim -4- from handle.
– Unscrew bolts -3-.
– Open service flaps at sides of trim -1-.
– Grasp in service holes in trim.
– With a »firm jerk«, release trim -1- from mountings in rear lid.
– Check if all retaining clips are inserted in trim -1-.
– Unclip any retaining clips left in rear lid using removal tool - T40280- .
– Fit those retaining clips back in trim -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

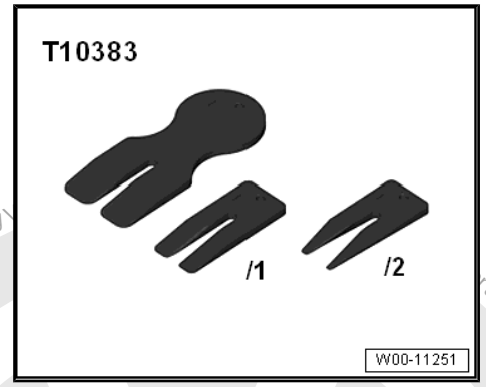
- ⇒ “6.4 Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim”, page 236

6.7 Removing and installing upper rear lid trim

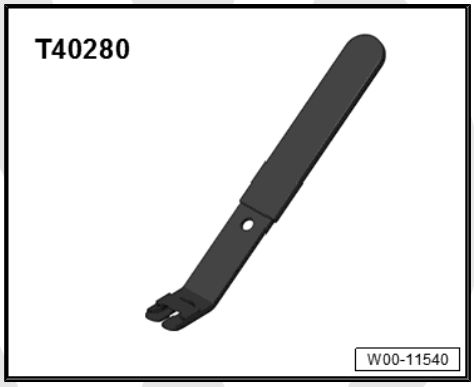
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

- Wedges - T10383-



- Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

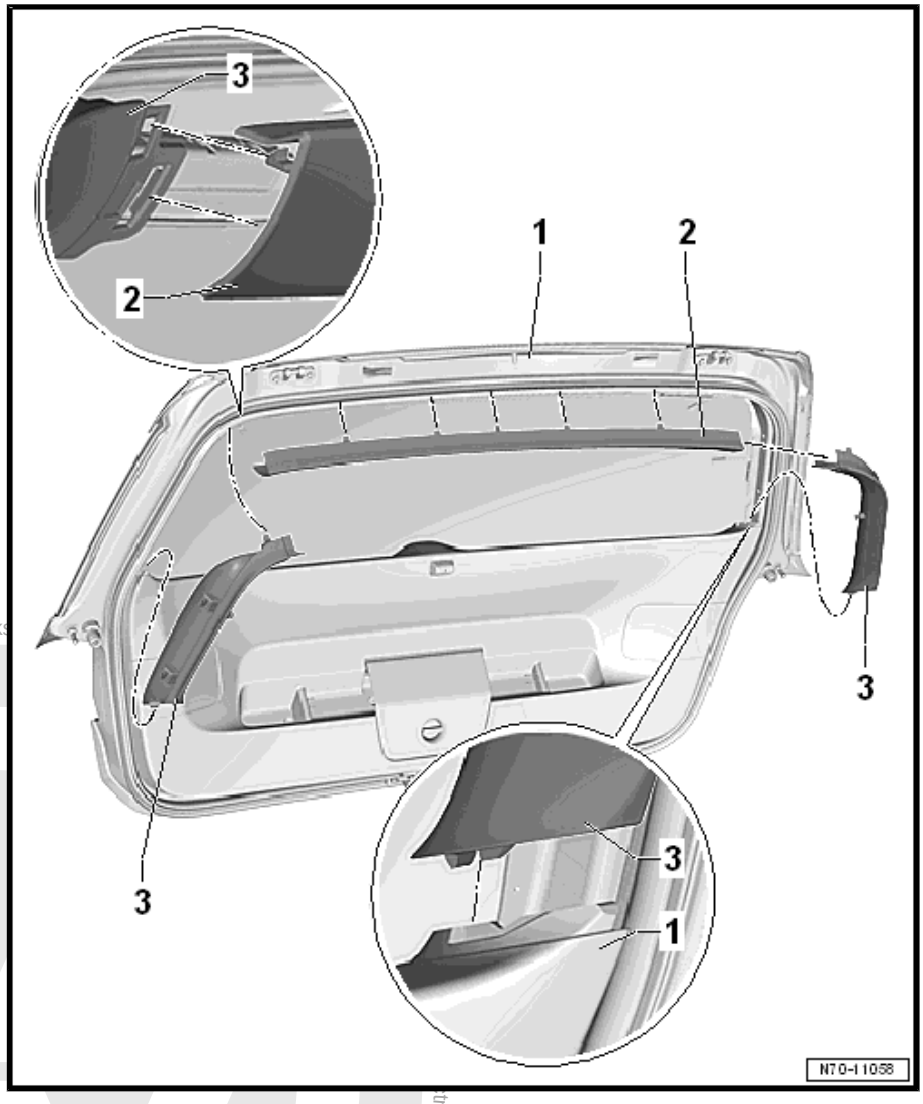
– Detach retaining straps for rear shelf on left and right from window frame.

– Release centre window frame -2- from mountings in rear lid and side trim panels -3- using wedge - T10383- .

– Unclip centre window frame -2-.

– Release side window frame -3- from catches in rear lid and lower rear lid trim -1- using wedge - T10383- .

– Remove side window frame -3-.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Note

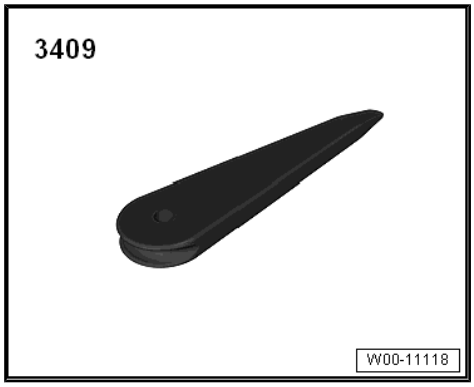
- *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- *Remove any retaining clips left in mountings in rear lid using removal tool - T40280- and fit them in window frames for installation.*

6.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim

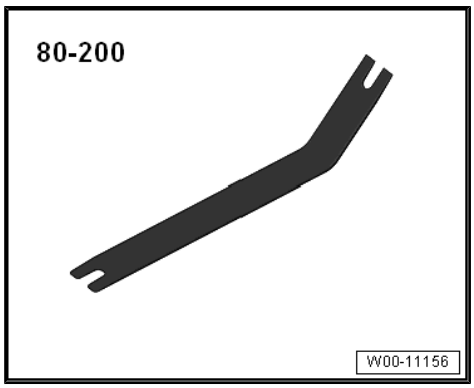
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Removal wedge - 3409-



- Removal lever - 80 - 200-



If luggage compartment floor holder on left/right is jammed, renew “spring shackle”; allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Renewal of luggage compartment side trim is not necessary in this case.

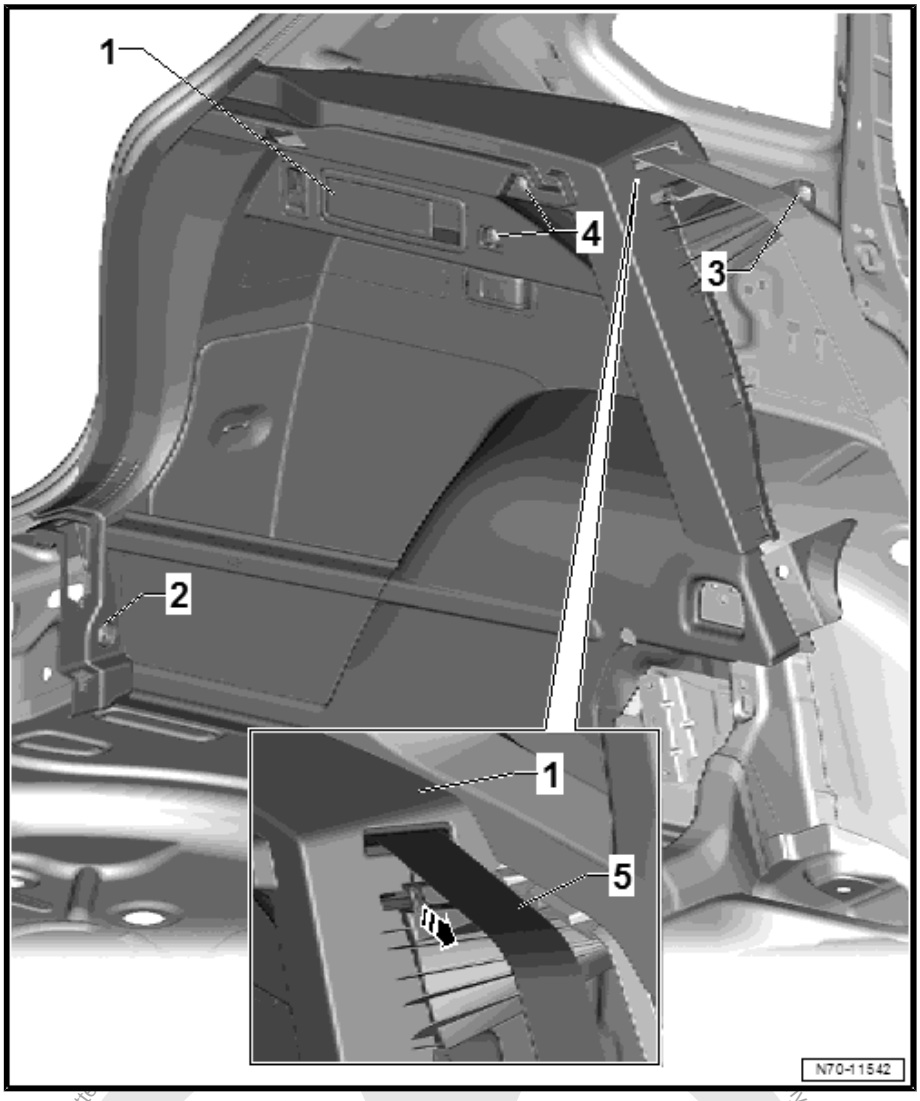
Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Removing

– Remove luggage compartment cover ⇒ page 232 .
– Removing wheel housing trim ⇒ page 226 .
– Remove bracket for luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ page 246 .
– Remove tie-down ring ⇒ page 245 .
– Detach bag hook ⇒ page 247 .
– Depending on equipment version, remove operating lever for remote release mechanism for backrest ⇒ page 336 .
– Remove spreader rivet -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove spreader clip -2-.
– Unscrew bolts -4-.
– Detach luggage compartment side trim all-round from mountings in body using removal lever - 80 - 200- .
– Thread belt webbing -5- out of side trim -arrow-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. All liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Vehicles with DC/AC converter with electric socket

WARNING

There is a danger of an electric shock.

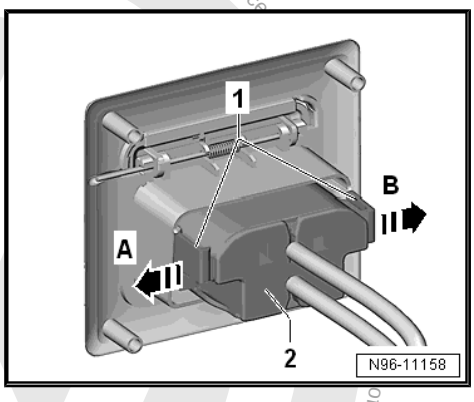
- *In the housing of the DC/AC converter with socket, 12 V - 230 V - U13- there are capacitors that may still be charged with a residual voltage.*
- *Never open the housing of the DC/AC converter with socket, 12 V - 230 V - U13- .*
- *The connector, the wiring and the 230-V socket must never be repaired.*
- *The complete unit must be renewed if the connector, the wiring, the 230-V socket or the AC/DC converter are defective.*

– Switch off ignition and all electrical consumers.

– Keep the ignition key outside the vehicle to prevent the ignition from being switched on unintentionally.

– Press fasteners -1- in direction of arrows -A- and -B-, respectively.

– Pull socket -2- out of trim.



Continued for all vehicles

– Disconnect connectors, and detach luggage compartment side trim.

Installing

Note

If the luggage compartment side trim is renewed, the new part may need to be adapted using engineering methods.

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Note

- *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- *Remove any retaining clips left in body mountings using removal tool - T40280- , and fit them in luggage compartment side trim for installation.*
- *Following installation, ensure that luggage compartment side trim is positioned in rear lid seal beading.*

Torque settings

- ⇒ “6.2 Assembly overview - luggage compartment side trim”, page 234

6.9 Removing and installing lock carrier trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

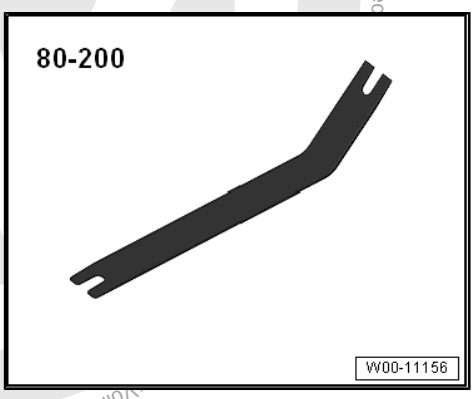
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Removal wedge - 3409-



- Removal lever - 80 - 200-



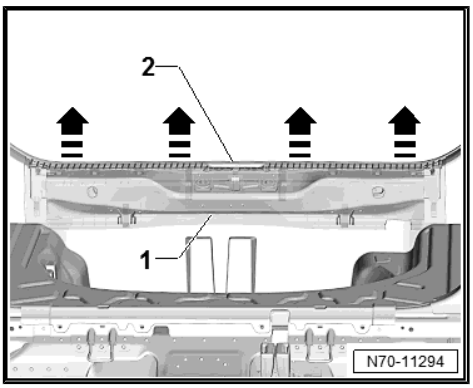
Removing

– Remove luggage compartment floor towards rear.

– Detach lock carrier trim -1- from rear lid seal beading -2-.

– Release lock carrier trim -1- in area of retaining clips from body mountings -arrows- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .

– Remove lock carrier trim -1- upwards.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Note

- *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- *Remove any retaining clips left in body mountings using removal tool - T40280- and fit them in lock carrier trim for installation.*
- *After having assembled the trim, use removal wedge - 3409- to straighten the beading lip.*

6.10 Removing and installing fastening rings

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

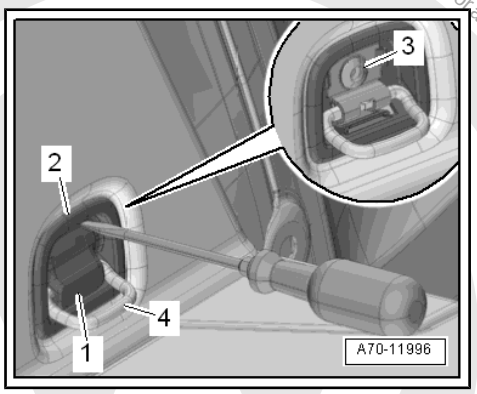
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing

– Fold down bar -4-, and open cover -1- with a screwdriver.

– Unscrew bolt -3- and remove fastening ring -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Torque settings

- ⇒ “6.2 Assembly overview - luggage compartment side trim”, page 234

6.11 Removing and installing support for luggage compartment floor

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side.
Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

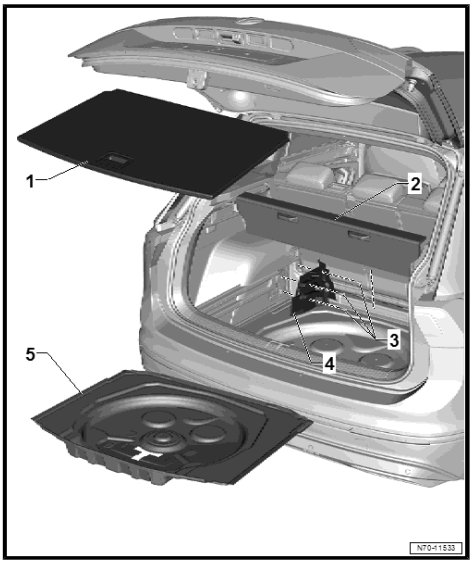
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Copyright by Volkswagen. Copyright. Copyright by VW. Commercial use or distribution of data, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Removing

– Remove luggage compartment floor -1- towards rear.
– Pull carrier insert upwards, and remove it.
– Unscrew bolts -3-.
– Detach bracket for luggage compartment floor covering -4-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

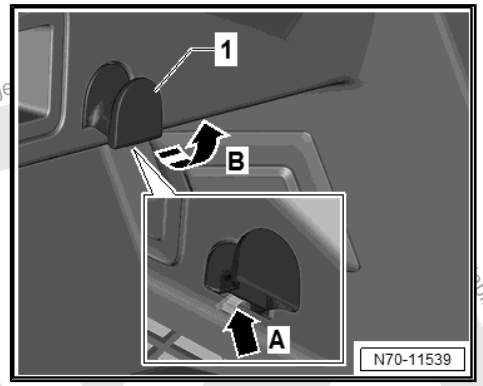
Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “6.3 Assembly overview - luggage compartment floor”, page 235

6.12 Removing and installing bag hooks

Removing

– Using a screwdriver, carefully release locking lug -arrow A- of bag hook -1-.
– Remove bag hook -1- upwards -arrow B-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ...bility with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

7 Roof trims

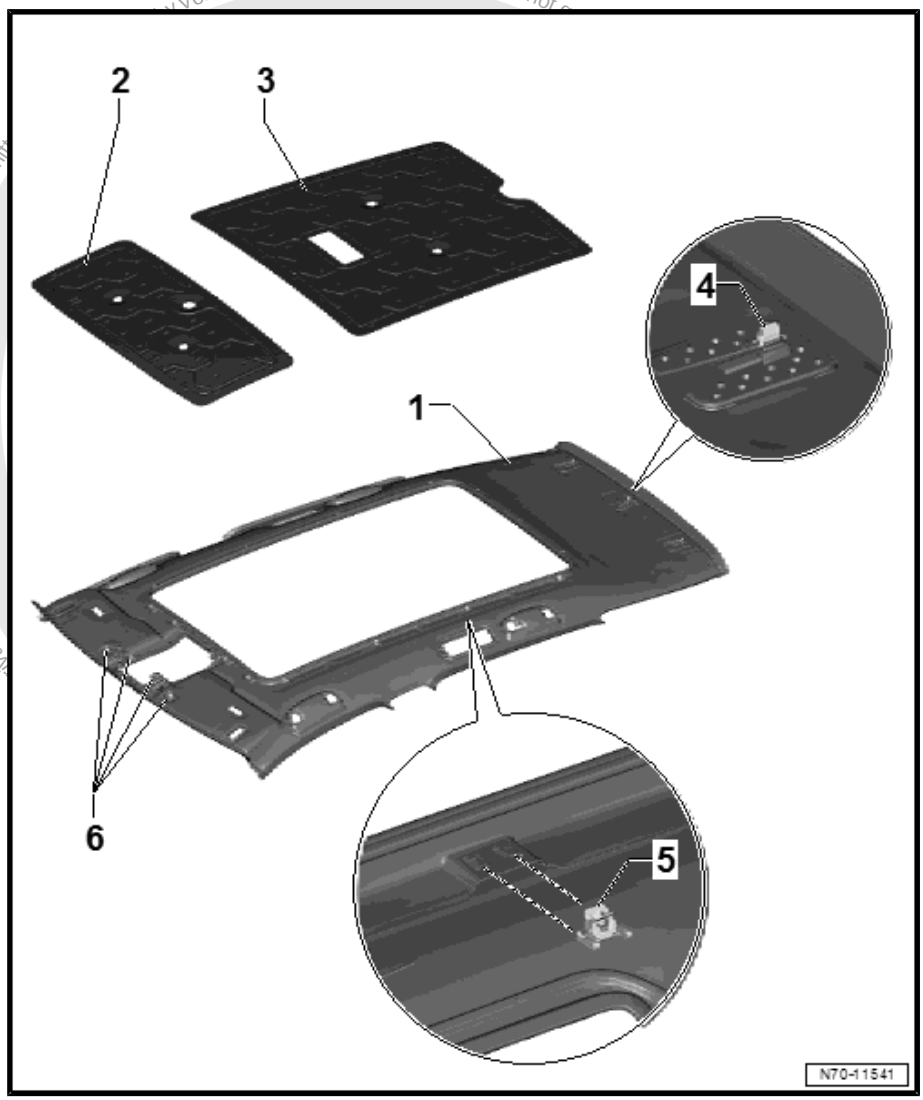
⇒ “7.1 Assembly overview - moulded headliner”, page 248

⇒ “7.2 Removing and installing moulded headlining”, page 248

⇒ “7.3 Installing roof reinforcement to body”, page 251

7.1 Assembly overview - moulded headliner

...Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not ...
...ware or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitt...



1 - Moulded headliner

- ❑ For some vehicle equipment versions cut-outs must be cut into new moulded headliner ⇒ page 251 .
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 248

2 - Roof reinforcement

- ❑ Not installed if a sunroof is fitted.
- ❑ Install to body ⇒ page 251 .

3 - Roof reinforcement

- ❑ Not installed if a sunroof is fitted.
- ❑ Install to body ⇒ page 251 .

4 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ Remove any retaining clips left in body mountings using removal tool - T40280- .
- ❑ Renew any damaged or deformed retaining clips.

5 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Only installed if a sunroof is fitted.
- ❑ Qty. 15
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner.
- ❑ Remove remaining retaining clips in fastening strip.
- ❑ Renew any damaged or deformed retaining clips.

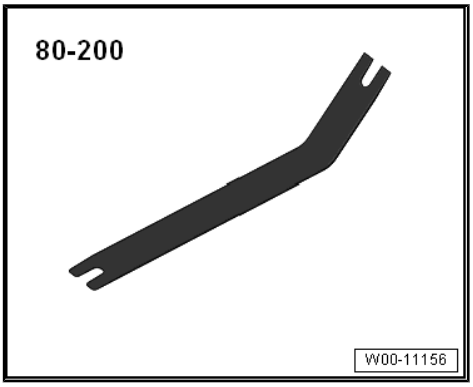
6 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ Release using release pliers - VAS 6427-

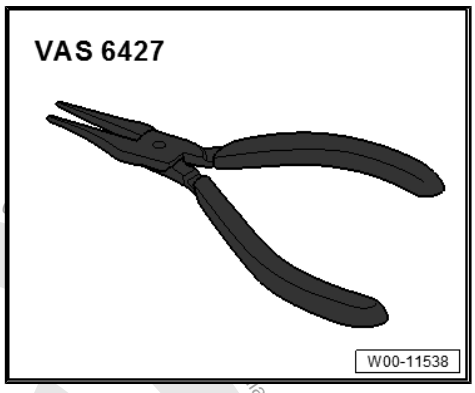
7.2 Removing and installing moulded headlining

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



♦ Release pliers - VAS 6427-



Removing

Vehicles with sunroof

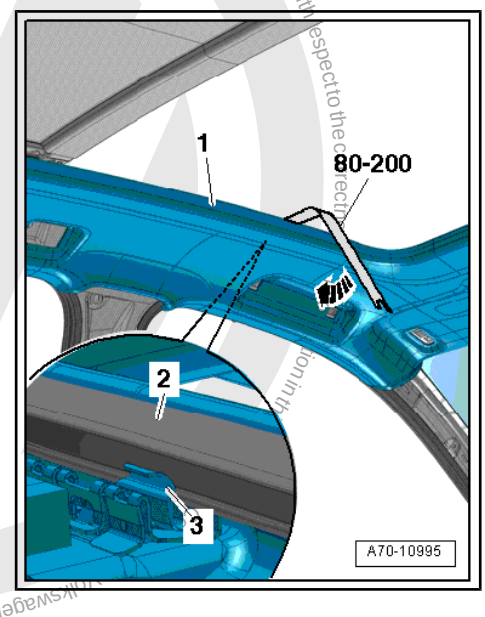
– Open sliding sunroof completely.

– Open sun blind at about $^{2}/_{3}$.

– Clean removal lever - 80 - 200- to prevent the moulded headliner from getting soiled.

– Run removal lever - 80 - 200- between trim frame -2- and moulded headliner -1- until you feel one of the retaining clips -3-.

– Unclip -arrow- trim frame -2- all round in area of retaining clips -3- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .



Continued for all vehicles

– Unclip upper A-pillar trims in area of overlap to moulded headliner ⇒ page 212 .

– Remove upper B-pillar trims ⇒ page 220 .

– Remove C-pillar trims ⇒ page 224 .

– If necessary, remove interior mirror covers ⇒ page 64 .

– Remove sun visors ⇒ page 37 .

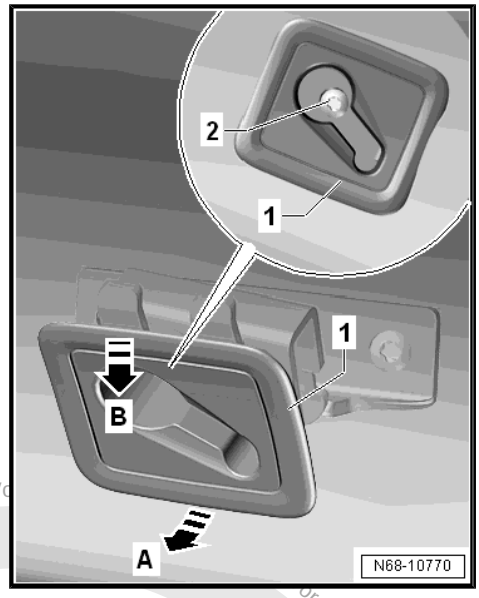
– Remove sun visor centre mount ⇒ page 39 .

– Remove storage compartment in roof headliner ⇒ page 34 .

– Remove roof grab handle ⇒ page 40 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– If present, unscrew bolt -2- in frame -1- of 4 load guard eyelets respectively but do not remove frame.
– Fold down rear seat backrests.
– Move front backrest to 45°-position.
– Disconnect connector for moulded headliner wiring harness in retaining frame for moulded headliner.



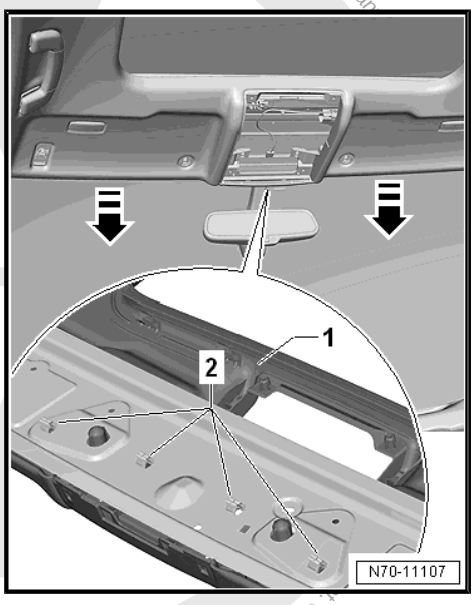
Caution

- *The moulded headliner is easily kinked.*
- *If kinked, the headliner must be renewed.*

Note

When carrying out the steps below, ensure that release pliers - VAS 6427- are positioned centrally in retaining clips.

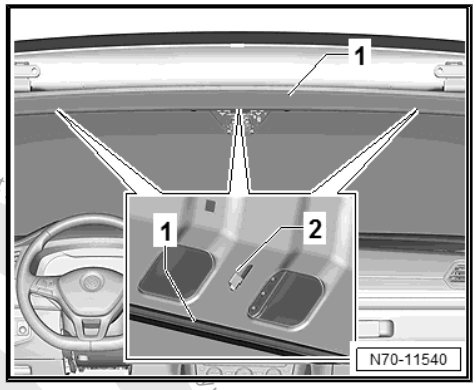
– Using release pliers - VAS 6427- , release retaining clips -2- in retaining frame for moulded headliner -1- from body mountings.
– Hold moulded headliner -1- in such a way -arrows- that released retaining clips -2- do not engage again.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– With aid of a second mechanic, hold moulded headliner -1- in position, and release retaining clips -2- in rear area from body using removal lever - 80 - 200- .

– With the aid of a second mechanic, carefully remove moulded headliner -1- from vehicle through rear lid aperture.



Installing

Cutting new cut-outs into a new moulded headliner

On vehicles with illuminated vanity mirrors and/or rain and light sensor - G397- the respective cut-outs must be cut into a new moulded headliner.

– Cut the required cut-outs into the new moulded headliner using a cutter knife. The moulded headliner is provided with the respective markings.

Continue installation in reverse order of removal observing the following:

Note

- *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- *Always renew retaining clips for trim frame (qty. 15) before installation.*

Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts in frame of eyelets for load guard	4.5 Nm

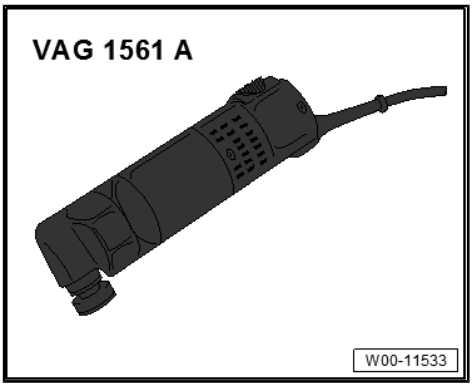
7.3 Installing roof reinforcement to body

⇒ "7.3.1 Mounting roof reinforcement on body, vehicles without sliding sunroof", page 251

7.3.1 Mounting roof reinforcement on body, vehicles without sliding sunroof

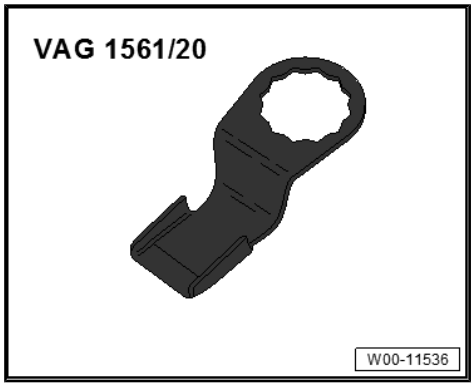
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A-

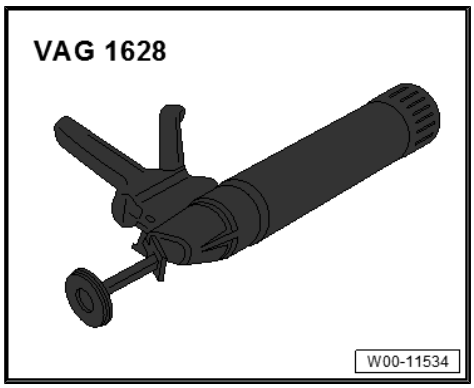


Printed by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Duplication, in part or in whole, for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG

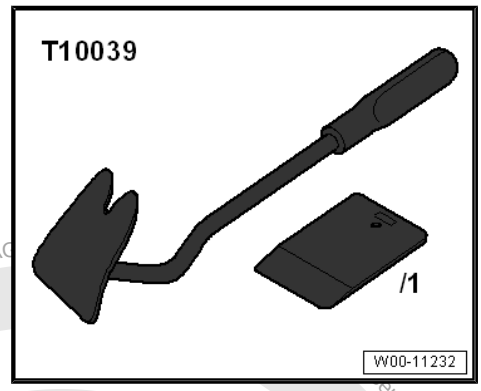
- Scraping blade - V.A.G 1561/20-



- Hand-cartridge gun - V.A.G 1628-

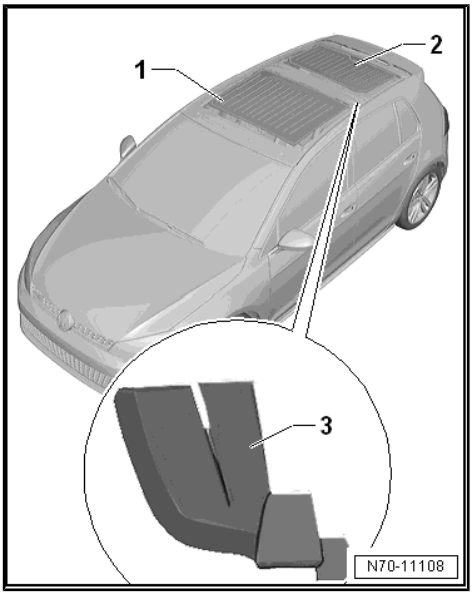


- Release lever - T10039 -



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Removing



– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 248 .

– Cut roof reinforcements -1- and -2- into approx. 6 cm wide strips -3- -dot-dash lines-, using a cutter knife.

– Pull off strips -3- from roof.

– Trim back adhesive residues with electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A- and scraper - V.A.G 1561/20- .

Note

If the paint structure has been damaged on removal of roof reinforcements, repair paint damage according to guidelines of ⇒ Paint workshop manual .

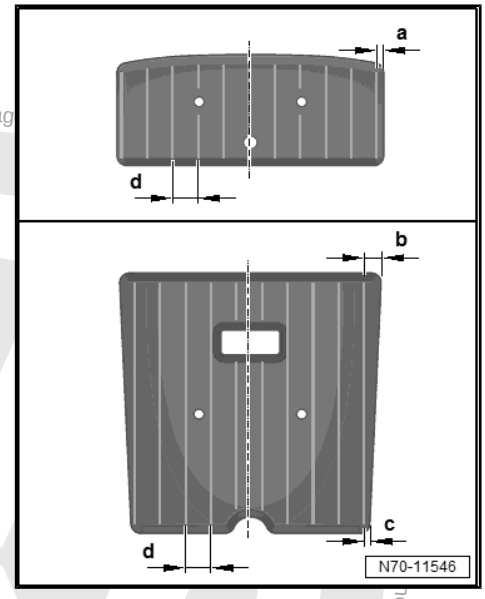
Installing

Note

Observe adhesive processing instructions when installing the roof reinforcement.

– Measure the width of the two roof reinforcements, and mark centre on each roof reinforcement from both sides.

– Use hand-cartridge gun - V.A.G 1628- to apply single-component assembly adhesive (⇒ Electronic parts catalogue) to roof reinforcements. Observe the following dimensions while doing so.

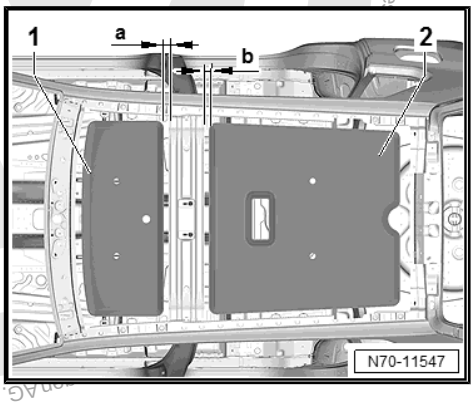


- Dimension -a- = 17 mm
- Dimension -b- = 55 mm
- Dimension -c- = 14 mm
- Dimension -d- = 95 mm

– Guide roof reinforcement -1- into vehicle.

– Position roof reinforcement -1- according to dimension -a- centrally on roof, and press it on across entire surface.

Dimension -a-: 33 ± 3 mm from front sheet-metal edge



– Guide roof reinforcement -2- into vehicle.

– Position roof reinforcement -2- according to dimension -b- centrally on roof; and press it on across entire surface.

Dimension -b-: 29 ± 3 mm from rear sheet-metal edge

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswag

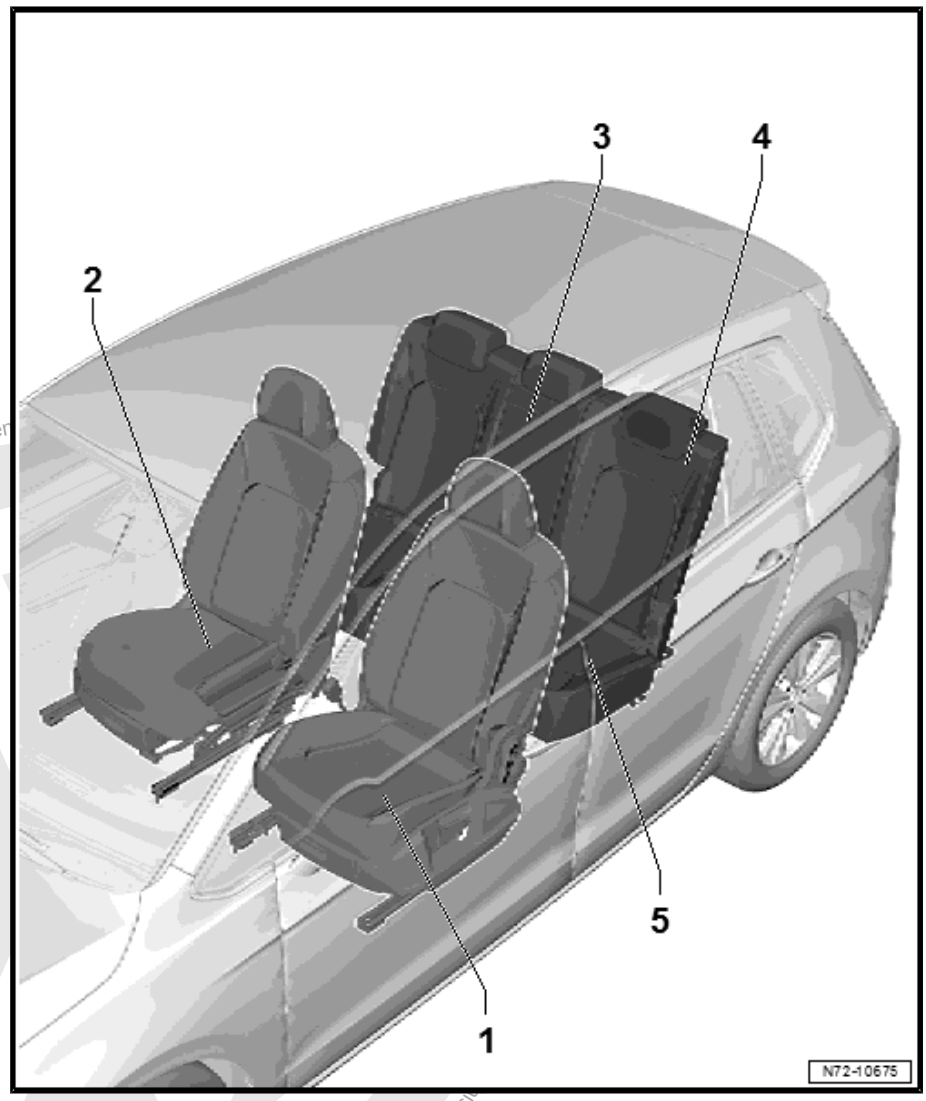
72 – Seat frames

1 Overview of seat variants

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat variants”, page 254

⇒ “1.2 Mounting front seat on seat repair stand”, page 254

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat variants



1 - Driver seat

- ❑ Configuration depends on vehicle equipment.
- ❑ Assembly overview - front seat ⇒ page 261
- ❑ Assembly overview - front backrest ⇒ page 265
- ❑ Assembly overview - seat pan ⇒ page 267

2 - Front passenger seat

- ❑ Configuration depends on vehicle equipment.
- ❑ Assembly overview - front seat ⇒ page 261
- ❑ Assembly overview - front backrest ⇒ page 265
- ❑ Assembly overview - seat pan ⇒ page 267

3 - Through loading aperture

- ❑ Configuration depends on vehicle equipment.
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 323

4 - Rear seat

- ❑ Consists of wide section (2/3) and narrow section (1/3)
- ❑ Configuration depends on vehicle equipment.
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 320

5 - Bench seat / individual seats

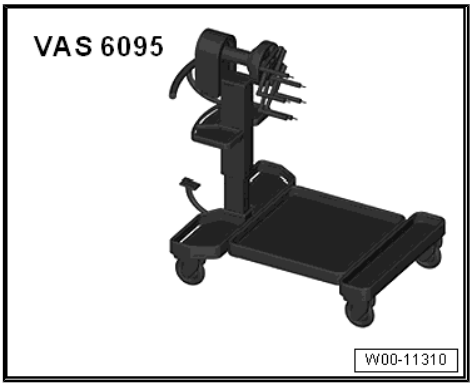
- ❑ Configuration depends on vehicle equipment.
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 317

1.2 Mounting front seat on seat repair stand

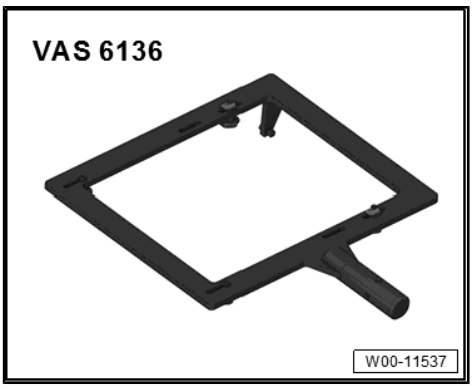
Special tools and workshop equipment required

This document is not permitted for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, without the express written permission of Volkswagen. Copyright by Volkswagen.

♦ Engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095-



♦ Seat repair stand - VAS 6136-



Sequence of operations

- Seat removed from vehicle.

– Fit seat repair stand - VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095- .

– Secure seat on seat repair stand - VAS 6136- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2 Front seats

⇒ “2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components”, page 258

⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 261

⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - front backrest”, page 265

⇒ “2.4 Assembly overview - seat pan”, page 267

⇒ “2.5 Assembly overview - seat height adjustment”, page 271

⇒ “2.6 Assembly overview - seat depth adjustment”, page 273

⇒ “2.7 Assembly overview - folding tray table”, page 274

⇒ “2.8 Assembly overview - fire extinguisher”, page 275

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing front seat”, page 275

⇒ “2.10 Removing front seat if seat longitudinal adjustment motor V28 / V31 is defective”, page 279

⇒ “2.11 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter”, page 283

⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing handle for seat height adjustment”, page 284

⇒ “2.13 Removing and installing seat trim on tunnel side”, page 285

⇒ “2.14 Removing and installing seat trim on sill side”, page 286

⇒ “2.15 Removing and installing bracket for seat trim”, page 291

⇒ “2.16 Removing and installing lumbar support”, page 293

⇒ “2.17 Removing and installing seat depth adjustment unit”, page 295

⇒ “2.18 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit”, page 298

⇒ “2.19 Removing and installing lower seat pan frame with seat longitudinal adjustment motor V28 / V31 ”, page 300

⇒ “2.20 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit”, page 302

⇒ “2.21 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment unit”, page 303

⇒ “2.22 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit”, page 305

⇒ “2.23 Removing and installing front backrest”, page 306

⇒ “2.24 Removing and installing head restraint”, page 308

⇒ “2.25 Removing and installing head restraint guide”, page 310

⇒ “2.26 Removing and installing storage compartment”, page 310

⇒ “2.27 Removing and installing fire extinguisher holder on seat frame”, page 311

⇒ “2.28 Removing and installing fire extinguisher holder”, page 312

⇒ “2.29 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177 ”, page 313

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

⇒ “2.30 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 ”, page 313

⇒ “2.31 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit E470 / E471 ”, page 314

⇒ “2.32 Removing and installing massage control unit J740 ”, page 315

⇒ “2.33 Removing and installing seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory J136 ”, page 316

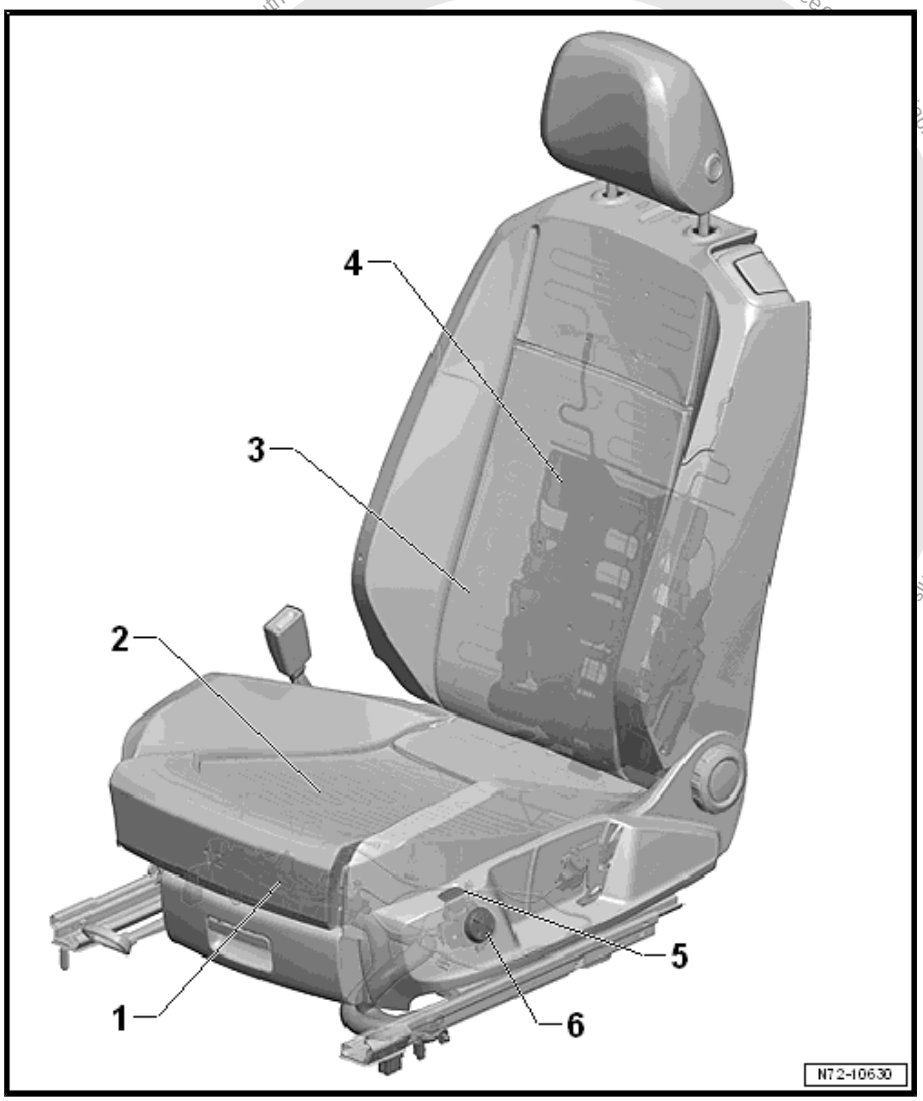
2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components

⇒ “2.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, standard seat, seat of type "ergo Aktiv"”, page 258

⇒ “2.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, electrically adjustable seat”, page 259

2.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, standard seat, seat of type "ergo Aktiv"

thorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee



1 - Massage control unit - J740-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 315
- ❑ Depending on equipment

2 - Seat heating element

- ❑ Heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6-
- ❑ Heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ❑ Depending on equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 359

3 - Backrest heating element

- ❑ Heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-
- ❑ Heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ❑ Depending on equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 360

4 - Lumbar support

- ❑ Driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125-
- ❑ Driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129-
- ❑ Front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V126-
- ❑ Front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V130-

- ❑ Equipment version
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 266
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 313

5 - Massage function button

- ❑ Driver seat massage function button - E670-
- ❑ Front passenger seat massage function button - E671-
- ❑ Depending on equipment
- ❑ To remove, carefully lever out of seat trim using removal wedge - 3409- .

6 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- ❑ Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-
- ❑ Front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Depending on equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 313
- ❑ Removing and installing lumbar support ⇒ page 313 .

2.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, electrically adjustable seat

1 - Lumbar support

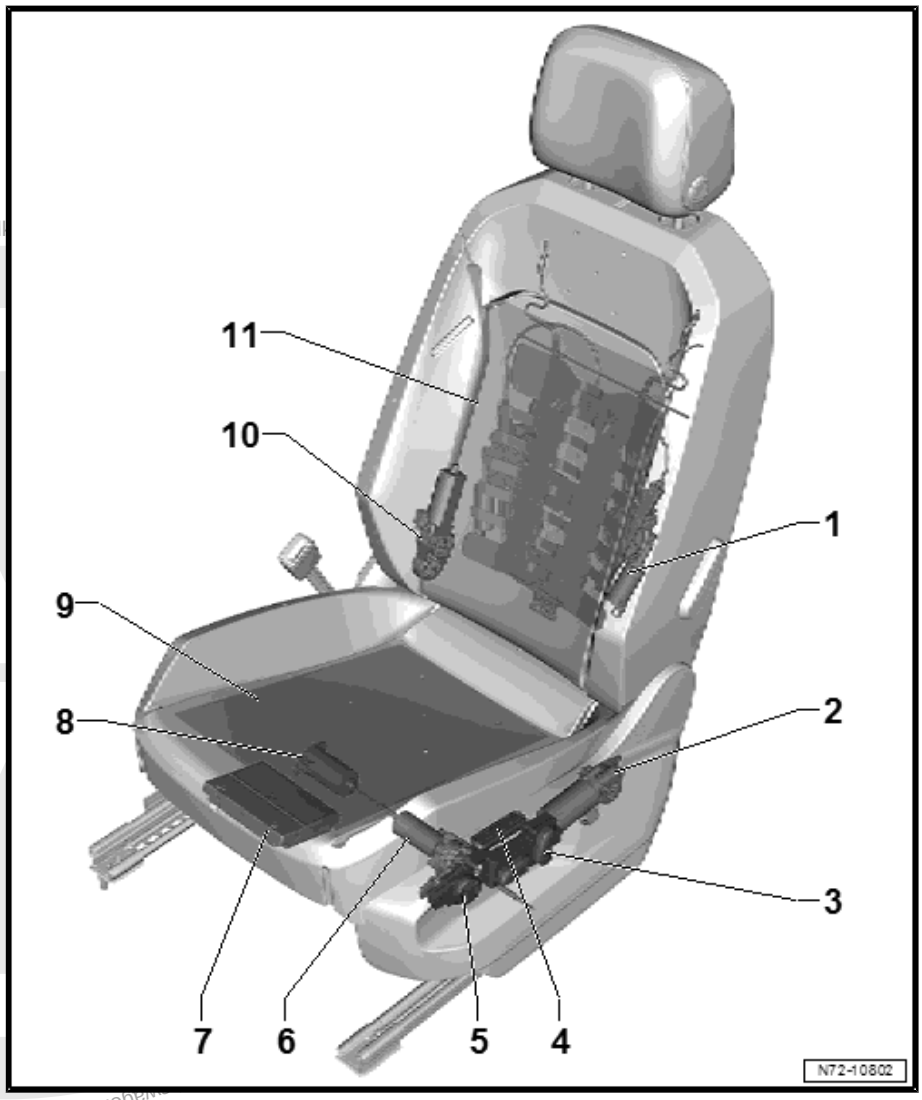
- ❑ Driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125-
- ❑ Driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129-
- ❑ Front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V126-
- ❑ Front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V130-
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 266
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 313

2 - Seat height adjuster

- ❑ Driver seat height adjustment motor - V138-
- ❑ Front passenger seat height adjustment motor - V246-
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 272
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 299

3 - Seat adjustment operating unit

- ❑ Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-
- ❑ Front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 314

4 - Massage function button

- ❑ Driver seat massage function button - E670-
- ❑ Front passenger seat massage function button - E671-
- ❑ Depending on equipment
- ❑ To remove, carefully lever out of seat trim using removal wedge - 3409- .

5 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- ❑ Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-
- ❑ Front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 313

6 - Seat rake adjustment

- ❑ Driver seat rake adjustment motor - V243-
- ❑ Front passenger seat rake adjustment motor - V244-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 302

7 - Control unit

- ❑ Depending on equipment
- ❑ Massage control unit - J740-
- ❑ Seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory - J136-
- ❑ Removing and installing massage control unit - J740- ⇒ page 315
- ❑ Removing and installing seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory - J136- ⇒ page 316

8 - Seat longitudinal adjuster

- ❑ Driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-
- ❑ Front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 300

9 - Seat heating element

- ❑ Heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6-
- ❑ Heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ❑ Depending on equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 359

10 - Backrest adjuster

- ❑ Driver seat backrest adjustment motor - V45-
- ❑ Front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor - V46-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 306

11 - Backrest heating element

- ❑ Heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-
- ❑ Heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ❑ Depending on equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 360

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.2 Assembly overview - front seat

⇒ "2.2.1 Assembly overview - front seat, standard seat, seat of type "ergo Aktiv"", page 261

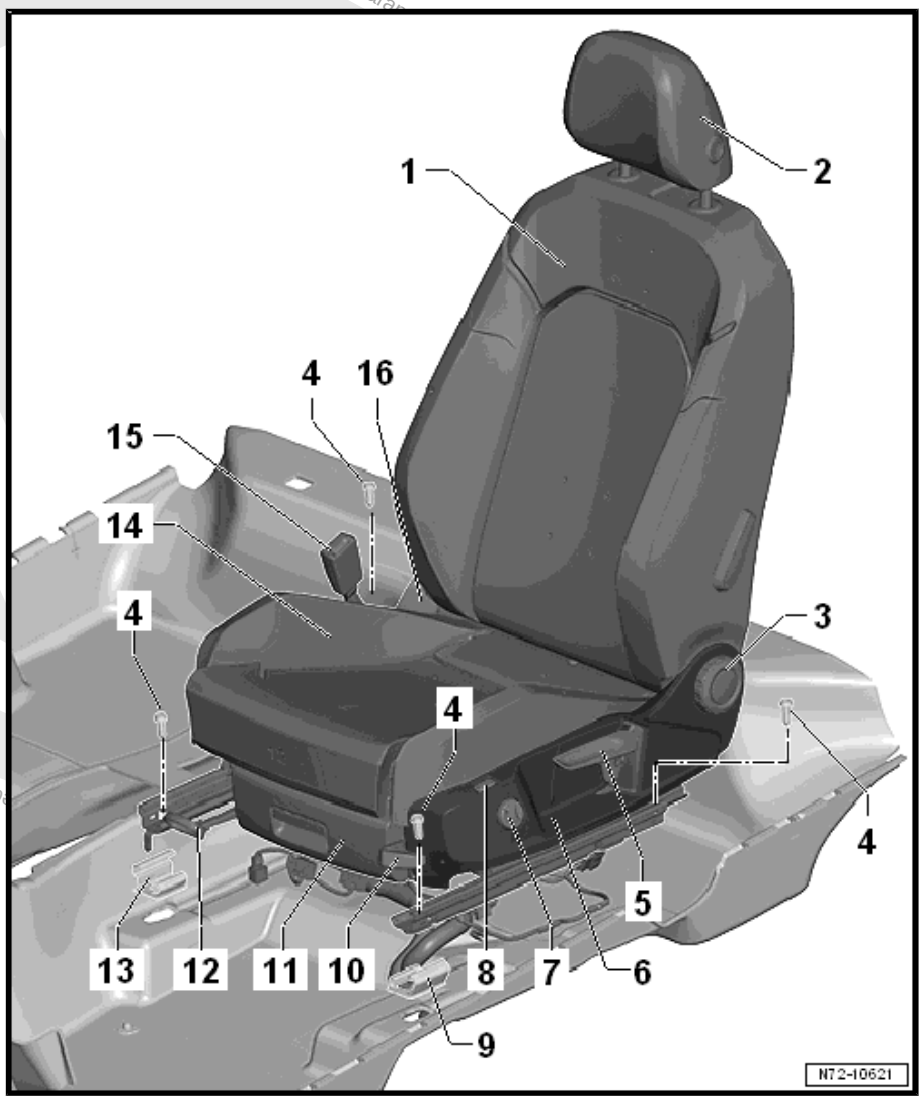
⇒ "2.2.2 Assembly overview - front seat, electrically adjustable seat", page 263

2.2.1 Assembly overview - front seat, standard seat, seat of type "ergo Aktiv"

Note

- *The illustration shows the driver seat. The front passenger seat is similar (mirror image of driver seat).*
- *The illustration shows the front seat for LHD vehicles. The front seat for RHD vehicles is similar (mirror image of front seat for LHD vehicles).*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Backrest

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 265
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 306

2 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308

3 - Handwheel

- ❑ For manual backrest adjustment
- ❑ On vehicles with front passenger seat with through-loading function, the adjustment and release lever is fitted instead of the adjustment knob.
- ❑ Depending on equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 305

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ 40 Nm

5 - Seat height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 298
- ❑ Removing and installing handle for seat height adjustment ⇒ page 284 .

6 - Seat trim on sill side

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 286

7 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- ❑ Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-
- ❑ Front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Depending on equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 313

- ❑ Removing and installing lumbar support ⇒ page 313 .

8 - Massage function button

- ❑ Driver seat massage function button - E670-
- ❑ Front passenger seat massage function button - E671-
- ❑ Depending on equipment
- ❑ To remove, carefully lever out of seat trim using removal wedge - 3409- .

9 - Cover

- ❑ For seat rail on sill side.
- ❑ Installed at front and rear.
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Detach from seat rail and pull off; to do so, use a screwdriver to carefully release locking lugs without breaking them off
- ❑ Carefully slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly.

10 - Seat rake adjustment

- ❑ Depending on equipment
- ❑ 2 bolts
- ❑ 8 Nm

11 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Depending on equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 310

12 - Seat longitudinal adjustment handle

- ❑ Pull off by hand or separate from handle mounting using rubber-headed or plastic hammer.
- ❑ Drive onto handle mounting as far as stop using a rubber hammer, taking care not to damage surface

13 - Cover

- ❑ For seat rail on tunnel side.
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Installed at front and rear.
- ❑ Detach from seat rail and pull off; to do so, use a screwdriver to carefully release locking lugs without breaking them off
- ❑ Carefully slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly.

14 - Seat pan

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment with seat depth adjustment
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 267

15 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 92

16 - Seat trim on tunnel side

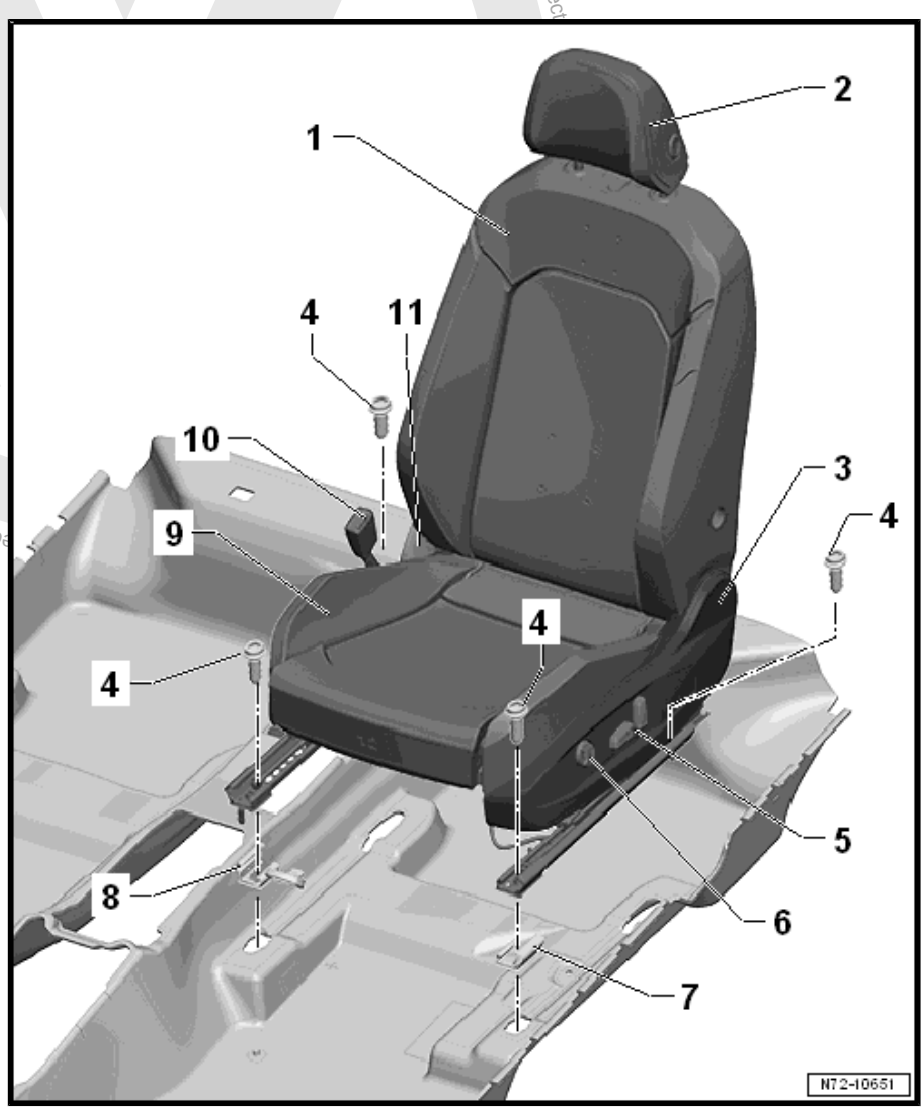
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 285

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.2.2 Assembly overview - front seat, electrically adjustable seat

Note

- *The illustration shows the driver seat. The front passenger seat is similar (mirror image of driver seat).*
- *The illustration shows the front seat for LHD vehicles. The front seat for RHD vehicles is similar (mirror image of front seat for LHD vehicles).*



1 - Backrest

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 265
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 306

2 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308

3 - Seat trim on sill side

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 289

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ 40 Nm

5 - Seat adjustment operating unit

- ❑ Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-
- ❑ Front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 314

6 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- ❑ Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-
- ❑ Front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 313
- ❑ Removing and installing lumbar support ⇒ page 313 .

7 - Cover

- ❑ For seat rail on sill side.
- ❑ Installed at front and rear.
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Detach from seat rail and pull off; to do so, use a screwdriver to carefully release locking lugs without breaking them off
- ❑ Carefully slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly.

8 - Cover

- ❑ For seat rail on tunnel side.
- ❑ Qty. 2

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

- ❑ Installed at front and rear.
- ❑ Detach from seat rail and pull off; to do so, use a screwdriver to carefully release locking lugs without breaking them off
- ❑ Carefully slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly.

9 - Seat pan

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 267

10 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 92

11 - Seat trim on tunnel side

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 285

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.3 Assembly overview - front backrest

⇒ "2.3.1 Assembly overview - front backrest", page 265

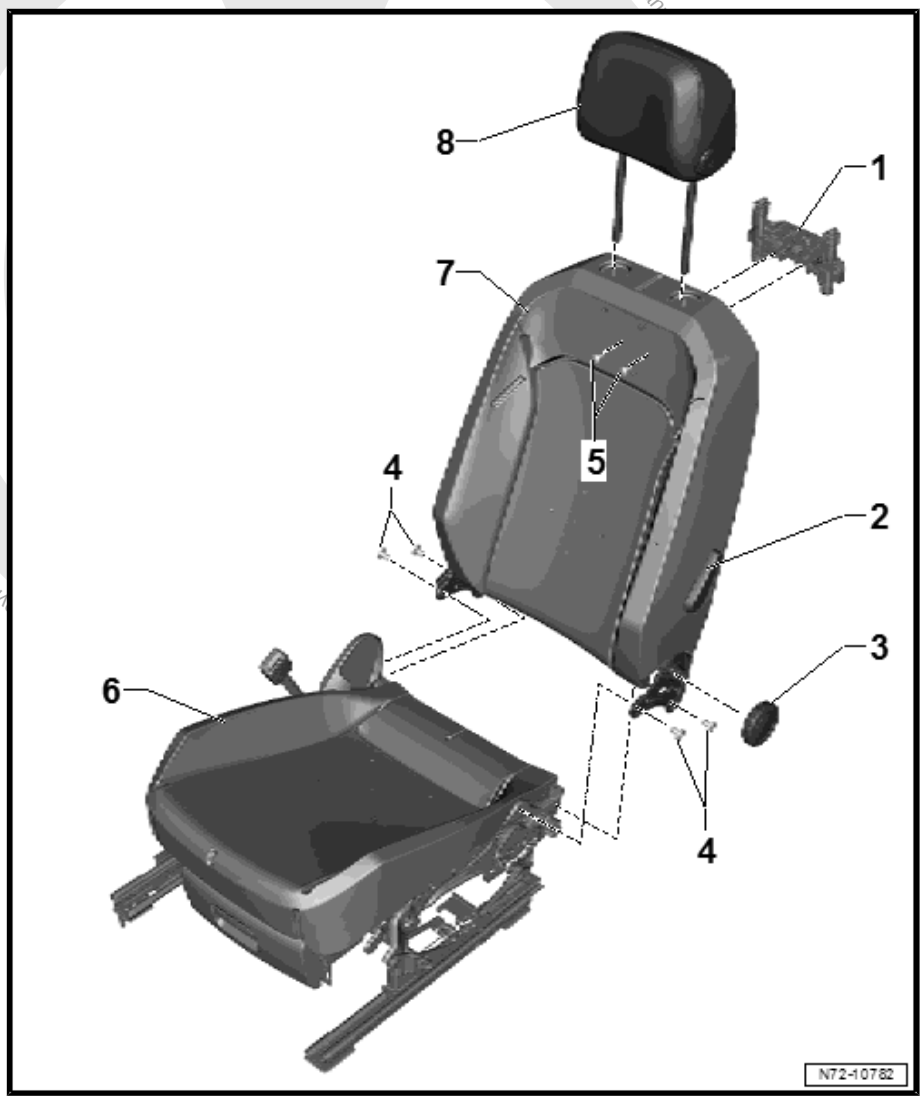
⇒ "2.3.2 Assembly overview - front backrest, electrically adjustable lumbar support", page 266

2.3.1 Assembly overview - front backrest

Note

- *The illustration shows the driver seat backrest. The front passenger seat backrest is similar (mirror image of driver seat backrest).*
- *The illustration shows the front seat backrest for LHD vehicles. The front seat backrest for RHD vehicles is similar (mirror image of front seat backrest for LHD vehicles).*

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 310

2 - Lever

- ❑ Only for vehicles with manual adjustment of lumbar support
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 303

3 - Handwheel

- ❑ Only for vehicles with manual backrest adjustment
- ❑ On vehicles with a load-through hatch, an adjustment and release lever is fitted instead of the handwheel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 305

4 - Bolts

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removal
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts with, for example, a thread tap
- ❑ Observe specified torque and tightening sequence ⇒ page 308

5 - Bolts

- ❑ For head restraint guide
- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Seat pan

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 267

7 - Backrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 306
- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 348 .
- ❑ Separating backrest cover from backrest padding ⇒ page 355 .
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment, with electric lumbar support adjustment ⇒ page 266 .

8 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308
- ❑ Must be properly engaged in head restraint guides.

2.3.2 Assembly overview - front backrest, electrically adjustable lumbar support

1 - No replacement part

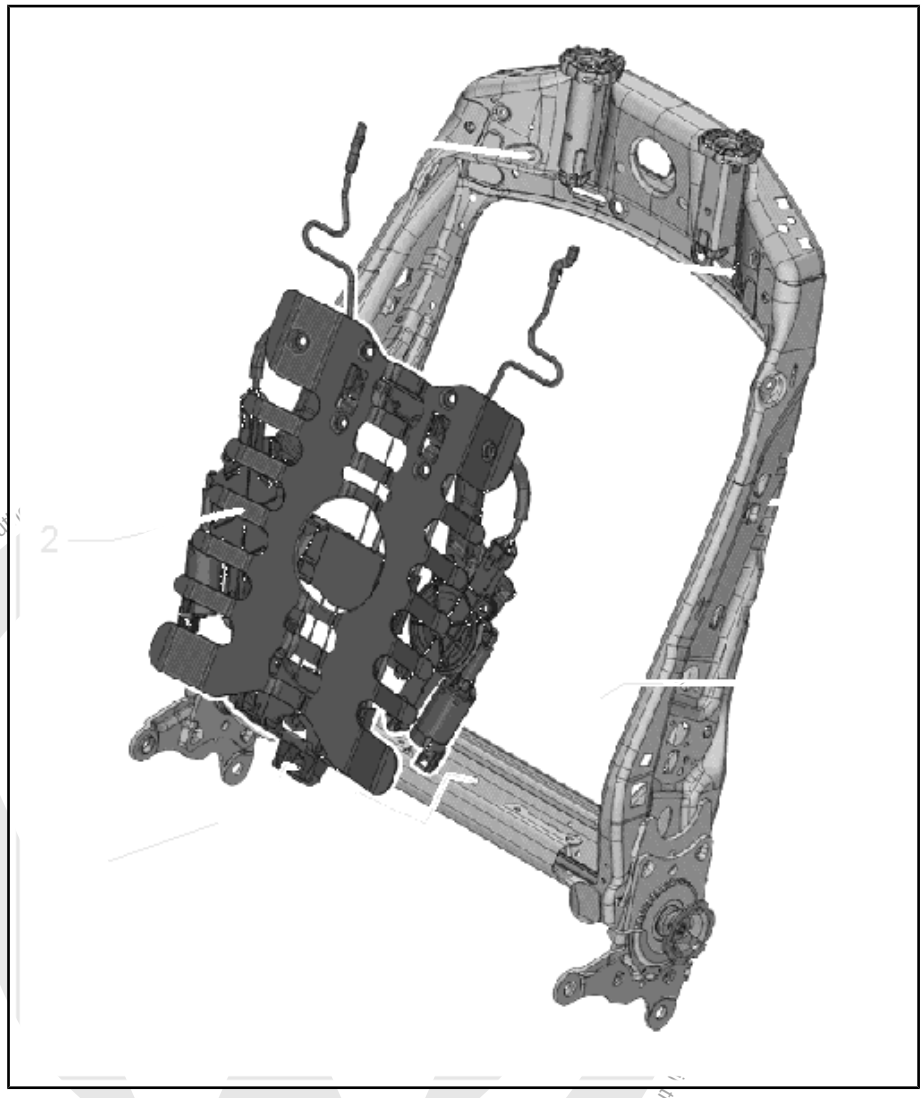
- ❑ Washer cast in lumbar support

2 - Lumbar support

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125- / driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129-
- ❑ Front passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V126- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V130-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 313

3 - Backrest frame

4 - Rivet



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. This document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.4 Assembly overview - seat pan

⇒ “2.4.1 Assembly overview - seat pan, standard seat, seat of type "ergo Aktiv"”, page 267

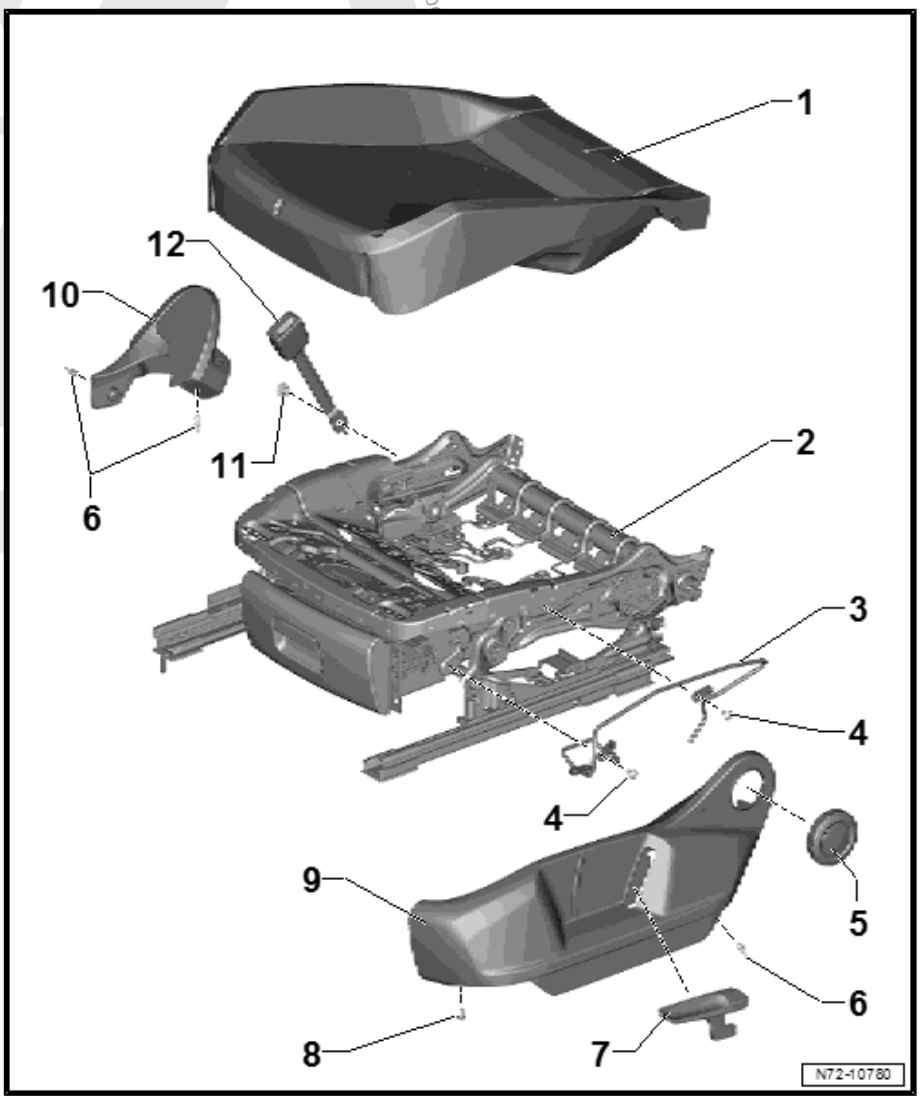
⇒ “2.4.2 Assembly overview - seat pan, electrically adjustable seat”, page 269

⇒ “2.4.3 Assembly overview - seat pan, torsion rod”, page 270

2.4.1 Assembly overview - seat pan, standard seat, seat of type "ergo Aktiv"

Note

- *The illustration shows the driver seat pan. The front passenger seat pan is similar (mirror image of driver seat pan).*
- *The illustration shows the seat pan for LHD vehicles. The seat pan for RHD vehicles is similar (mirror image of seat pan for LHD vehicles).*



1 - Seat padding

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding on seat pan ⇒ page 345
- ❑ Separating seat pan cover from seat pan padding ⇒ page 352

2 - Seat pan

3 - Bracket

- ❑ For seat trim on sill side
- ❑ Configuration depends on vehicle equipment.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 291

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 8 Nm

5 - Handwheel

- ❑ On vehicles with a load-through hatch, an adjustment and release lever is fitted instead of the handwheel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 305

6 - Spreader rivet

7 - Handle

- ❑ For seat height adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 284

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Depending on equipment
- ❑ 2 Nm

9 - Seat trim

- ❑ Sill side

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- ❑ Configuration depends on vehicle equipment.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 286

10 - Seat trim

- ❑ Tunnel side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 285

11 - Bolt

- ❑ For belt buckle
- ❑ Renew each time loosened
- ❑ Specified torque ⇒ page 82

12 - Belt buckle

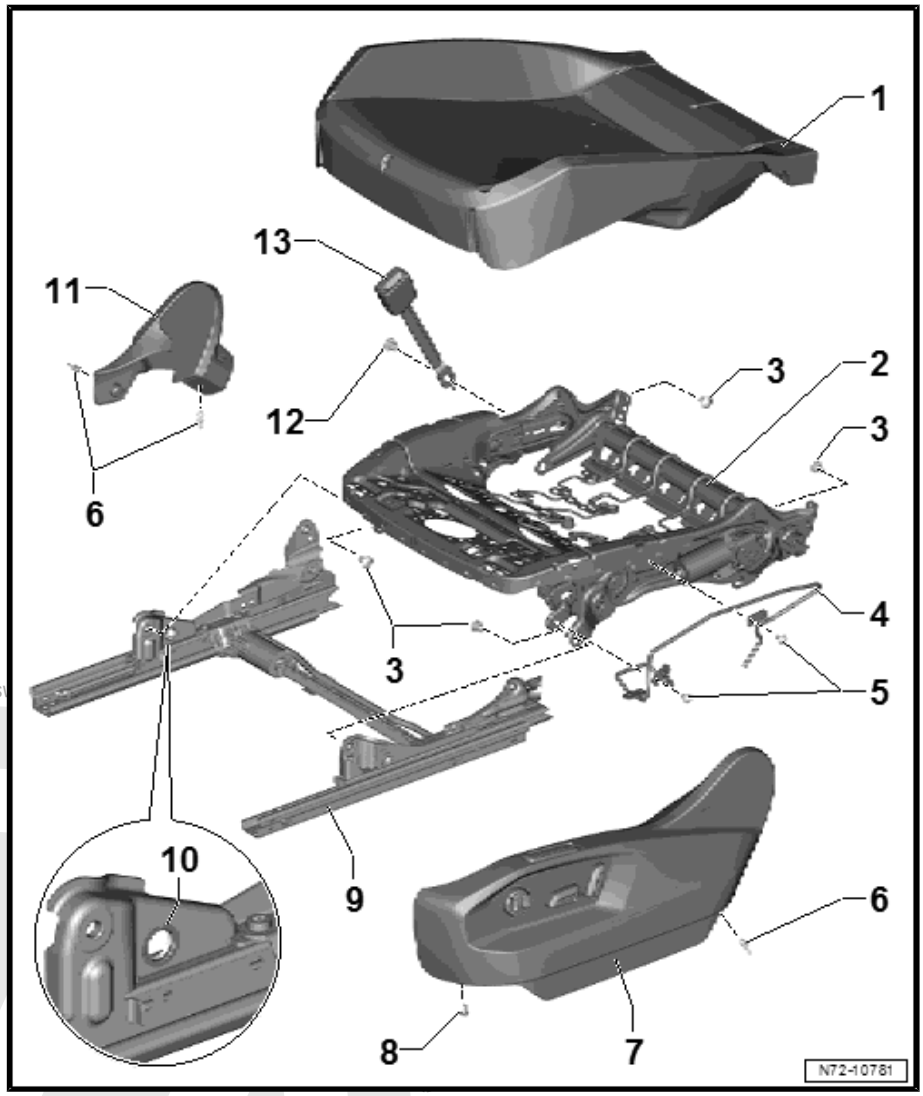
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 92

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.4.2 Assembly overview - seat pan, electrically adjustable seat

Note

- *The illustration shows the driver seat pan. The front passenger seat pan is similar (mirror image of driver seat pan).*
- *The illustration shows the seat pan for LHD vehicles. The seat pan for RHD vehicles is similar (mirror image of seat pan for LHD vehicles).*



1 - Seat padding
- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding on seat pan ⇒ page 345
- ❑ Separating seat pan cover from seat pan padding ⇒ page 352

2 - Seat pan

3 - Bolts
- ❑ For seat pan
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removal
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts with, for example, a thread tap
- ❑ 22 Nm

4 - Bracket
- ❑ For seat trim on sill side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 292

5 - Bolts
- ❑ For bracket
- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Spreader rivet

7 - Seat trim
- ❑ Sill side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 289

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

9 - Lower frame of seat pan
- ❑ Driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-
- ❑ Front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-
- ❑ Cannot be disassembled
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 300
- ❑ When renewing, fit belt buckle in new lower frame

10 - Bush
- ❑ Inserted in all bearing points
- ❑ Cannot be renewed using workshop equipment
- ❑ If bush is damaged, renew lower seat pan frame

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volks
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. correctness of information in this document.

11 - Seat trim

- ❑ Tunnel side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 285

12 - Bolt

- ❑ For belt buckle
- ❑ Renew each time loosened
- ❑ Specified torque ⇒ page 82

13 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 92

...ate or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any...

2.4.3 Assembly overview - seat pan, torsion rod

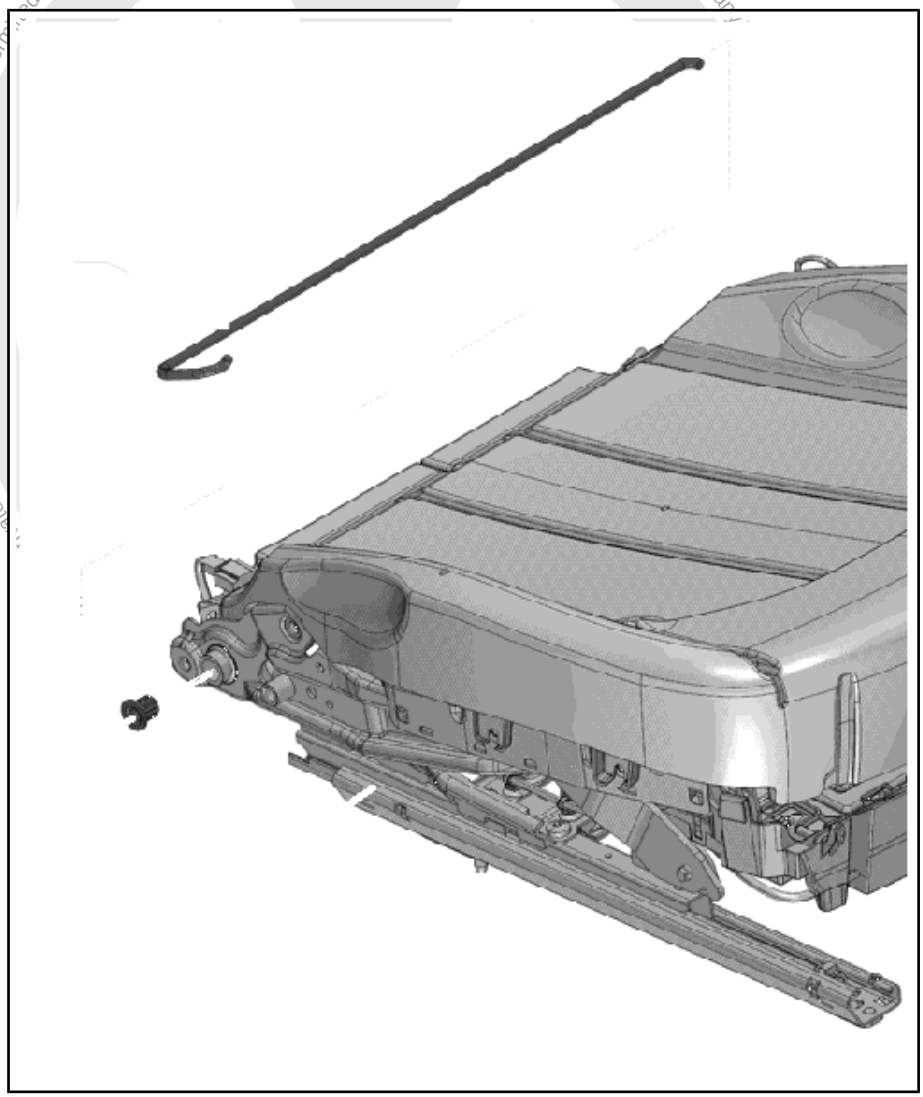
1 - Seat pan

2 - Mounting

- ❑ For torsion bar
- ❑ Fitted into guide

3 - Torsion rod

- ❑ Greased; Grease ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .



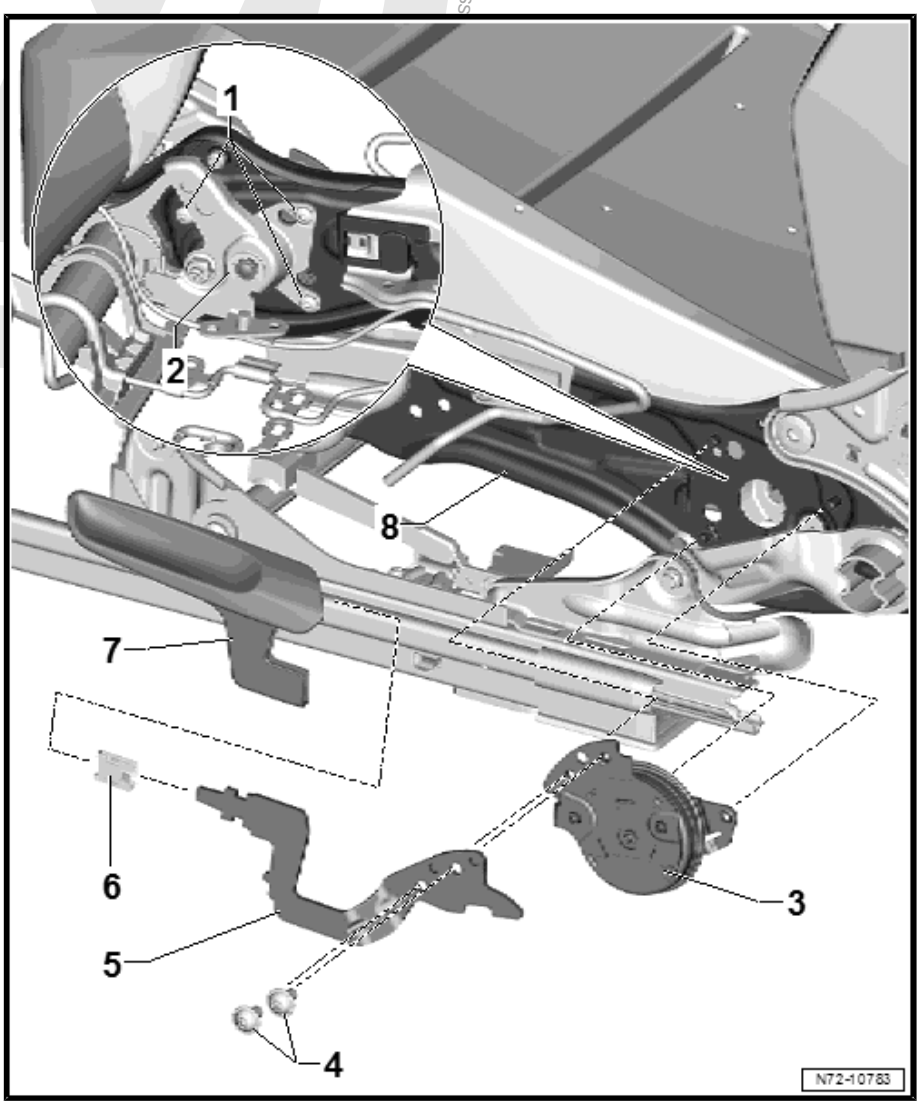
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness

2.5 Assembly overview - seat height adjustment

⇒ "2.5.1 Assembly overview - seat height adjustment, standard seat, seat of type "ergo Aktiv"", page 271

⇒ "2.5.2 Assembly overview - seat height adjustment, electrically adjustable seat", page 272

2.5.1 Assembly overview - seat height adjustment, standard seat, seat of type "ergo Aktiv"



1 - Bolts
- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 10 Nm

2 - Securing clip
- ❑ Renew after removal

3 - Seat height adjuster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 298

4 - Bolts
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 8 Nm

5 - Lever for seat height adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 298

6 - Retaining clip
- ❑ Ensure firm seating

7 - Handle for seat height adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 284

8 - Seat pan
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 267

2.5.2 Assembly overview - seat height adjustment, electrically adjustable seat

1 - Bolts

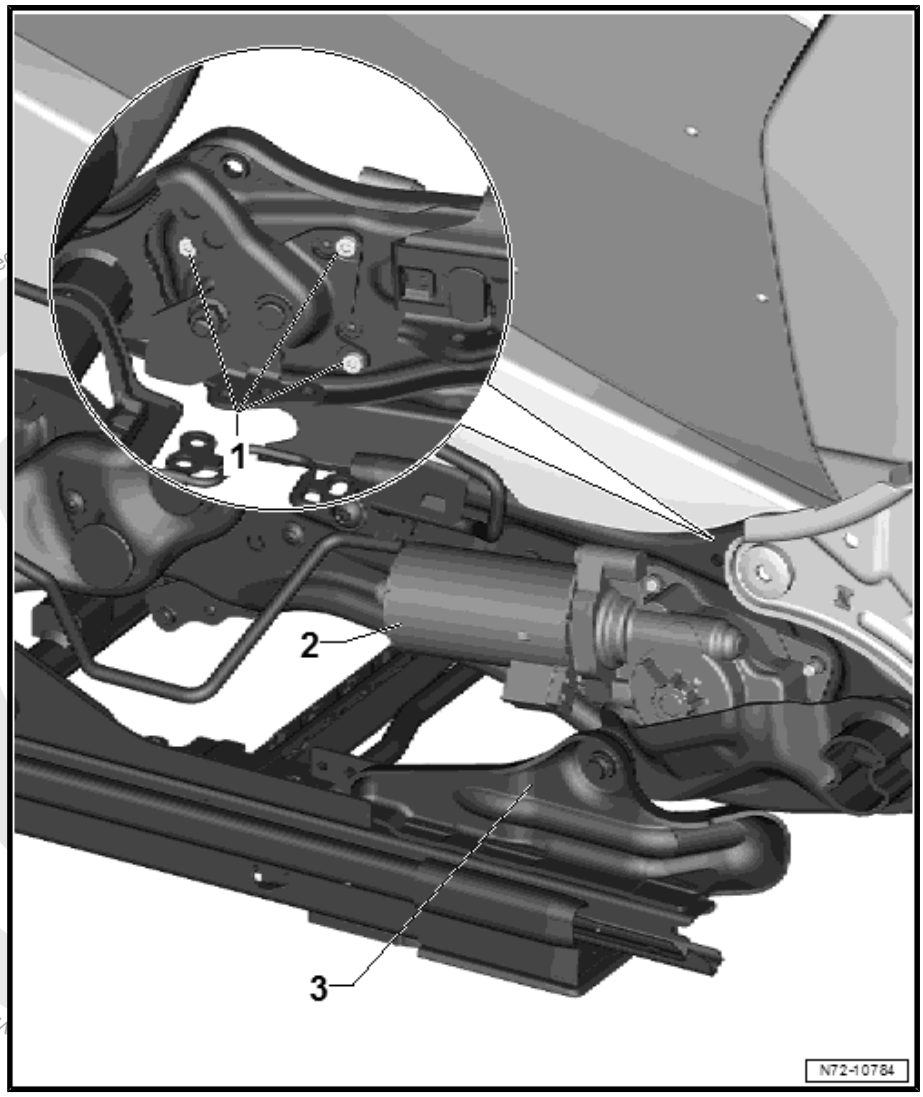
- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 10 Nm

2 - Seat height adjustment motor

- ❑ Driver seat height adjustment motor - V138-
- ❑ Front passenger seat height adjustment motor - V246-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 299

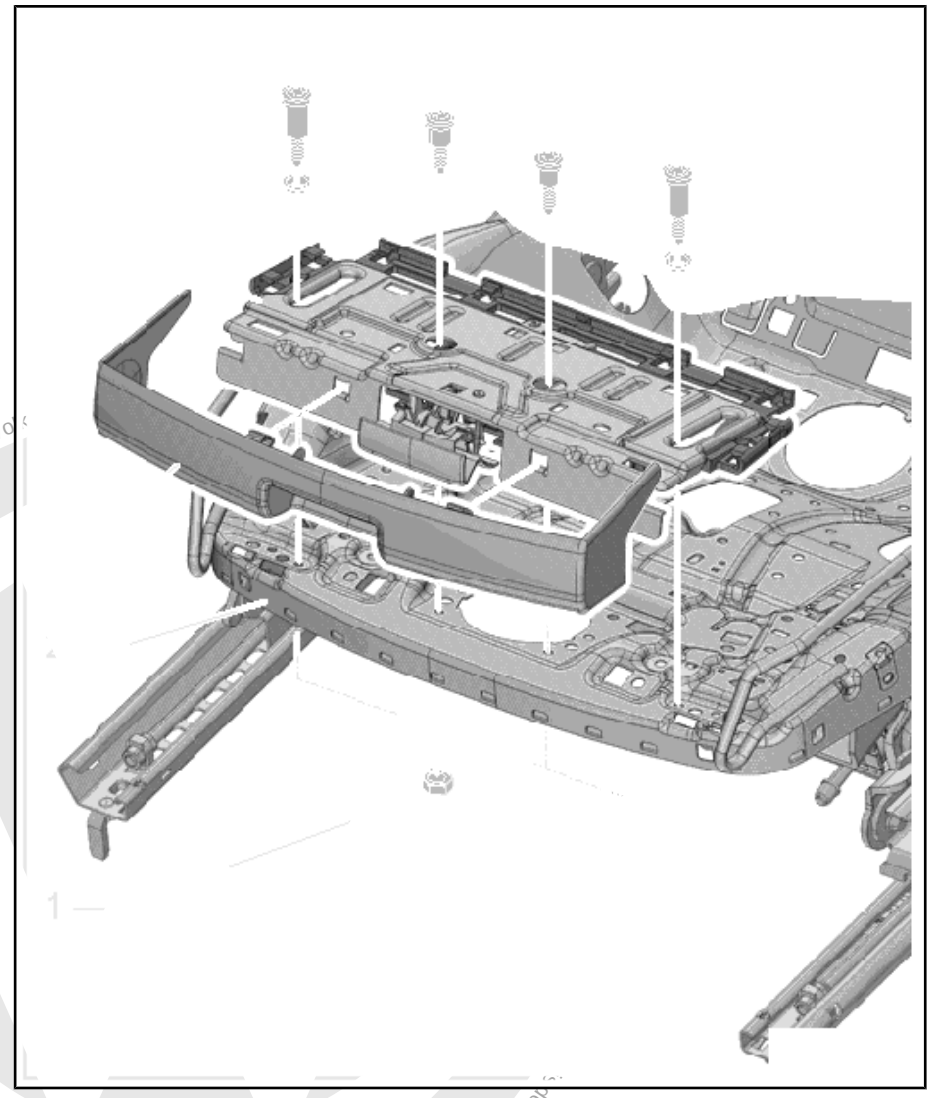
3 - Seat pan

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 269



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised

2.6 Assembly overview - seat depth adjustment



1 - Nut

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ Renew after removal

2 - Seat pan

3 - Trim

- ❑ For seat depth adjustment.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 295
- ❑ Press in until it audibly engages.

4 - Seat depth adjustment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 295

5 - Bush

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removal
- ❑ Fit bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- ❑ 4 Nm

7 - Bolts

- ❑ Renew after removal
- ❑ Fit bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- ❑ 4 Nm

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removal
- ❑ Fit bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- ❑ 4 Nm

9 - Bush

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.7 Assembly overview - folding tray table

1 - Folding table

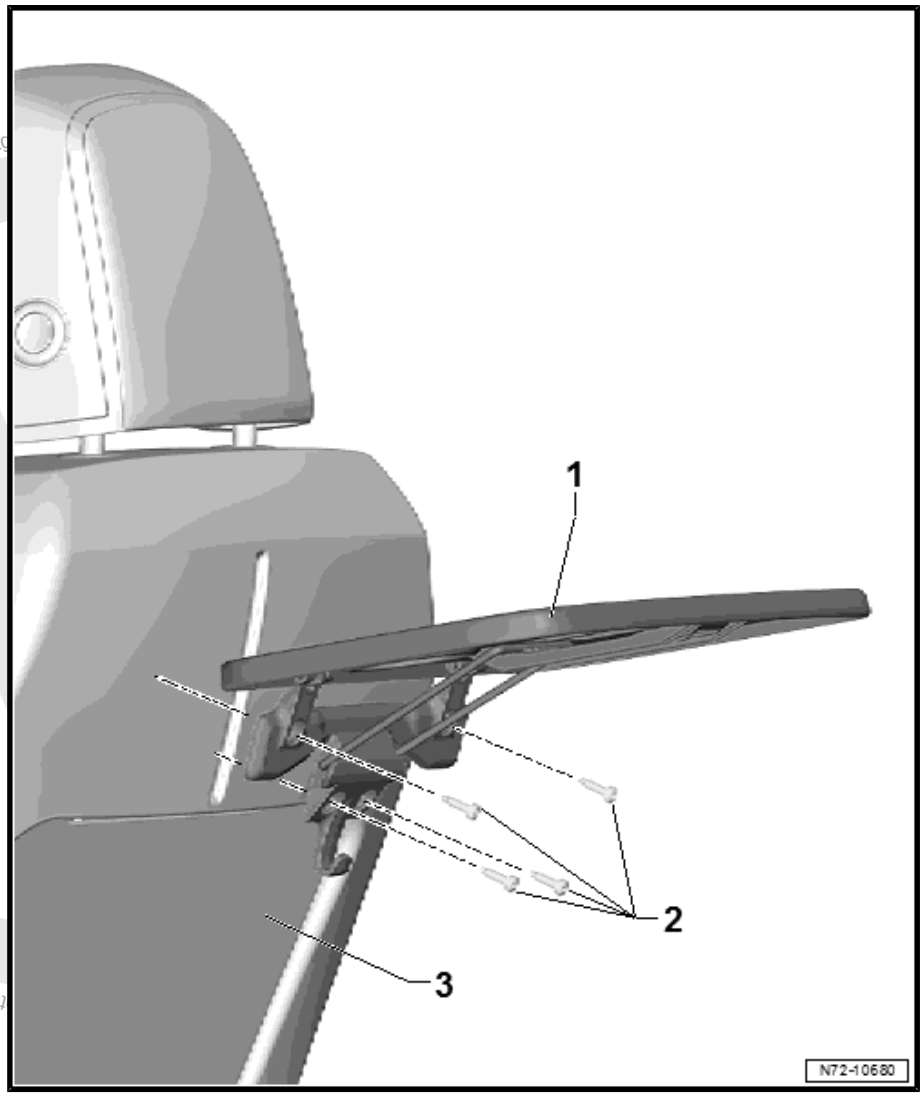
- ❑ Removing
- – Fold folding tray table upwards.
- – Unscrew bolts -2-.
- – Remove folding tray table from backrest -3-.
- ❑ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

3 - Front backrest



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswag

2.8 Assembly overview - fire extinguisher

1 - Bracket

- ❑ For fire extinguisher on seat frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 311

2 - Rivet

- ❑ Qty. 4

3 - Bolt

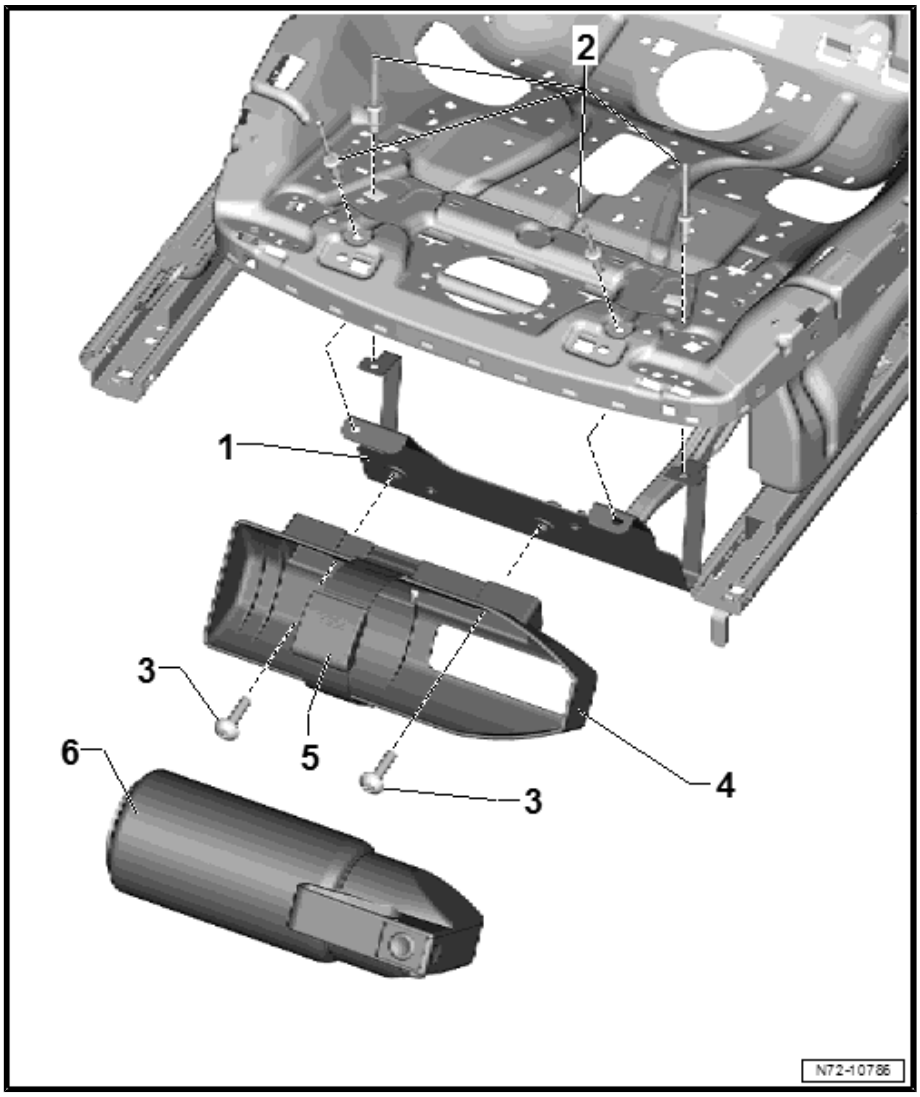
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Bracket

- ❑ For fire extinguisher
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 312

5 - Tensioning strap

6 - Fire extinguisher



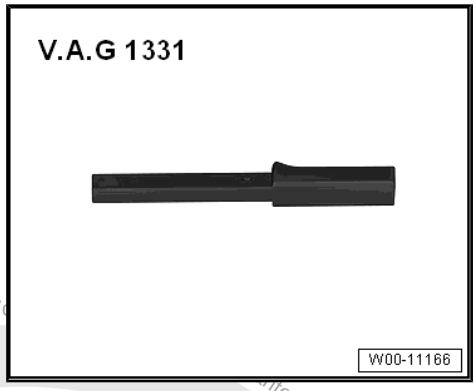
2.9 Removing and installing front seat

Note

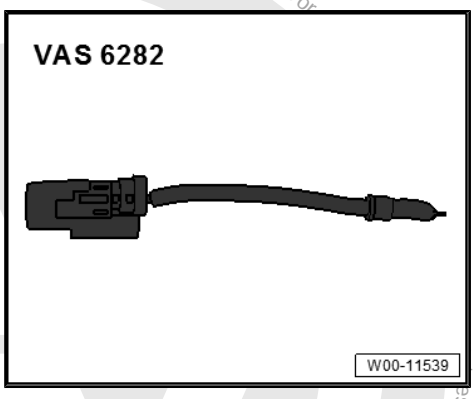
- *Removal and installation is described for the left seat. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation of the right seat as appropriate.*
- *Removal and installation is described for a manually adjustable seat. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation of the an electrically adjustable seat as appropriate.*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



♦ Airbag adapter - VAS 6282-



WARNING

Observe general safety regulations when working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components) ⇒ page 1 .

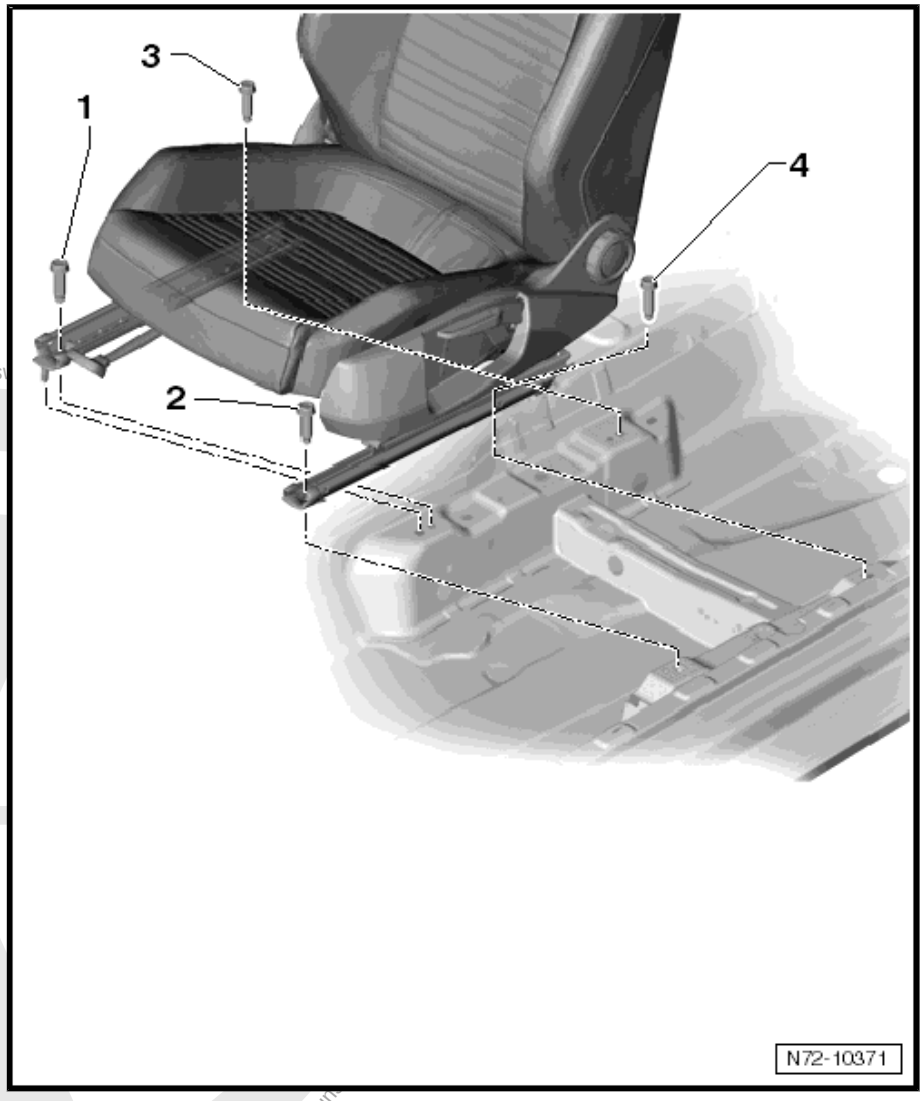
Removing

– Move seat to foremost position using fore and aft adjustment mechanism.

In the event of a defective seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31- it is not possible to adjust the front seat using the seat adjustment operating unit -E470- / -E471- . In this case carry out the appropriate procedure ⇒ page 279 .

– Unscrew bolts -3- and -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volksw

– Move seat to rearmost position using fore and aft adjustment mechanism.
– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2-.
– Disconnect battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Tilt seat towards rear.
– Open cover in floor covering.
– Depending on vehicle equipment, release and pull wiring harnesses off coupling station on seat.
– Connect airbag adapter ⇒ page 283 .

Caution

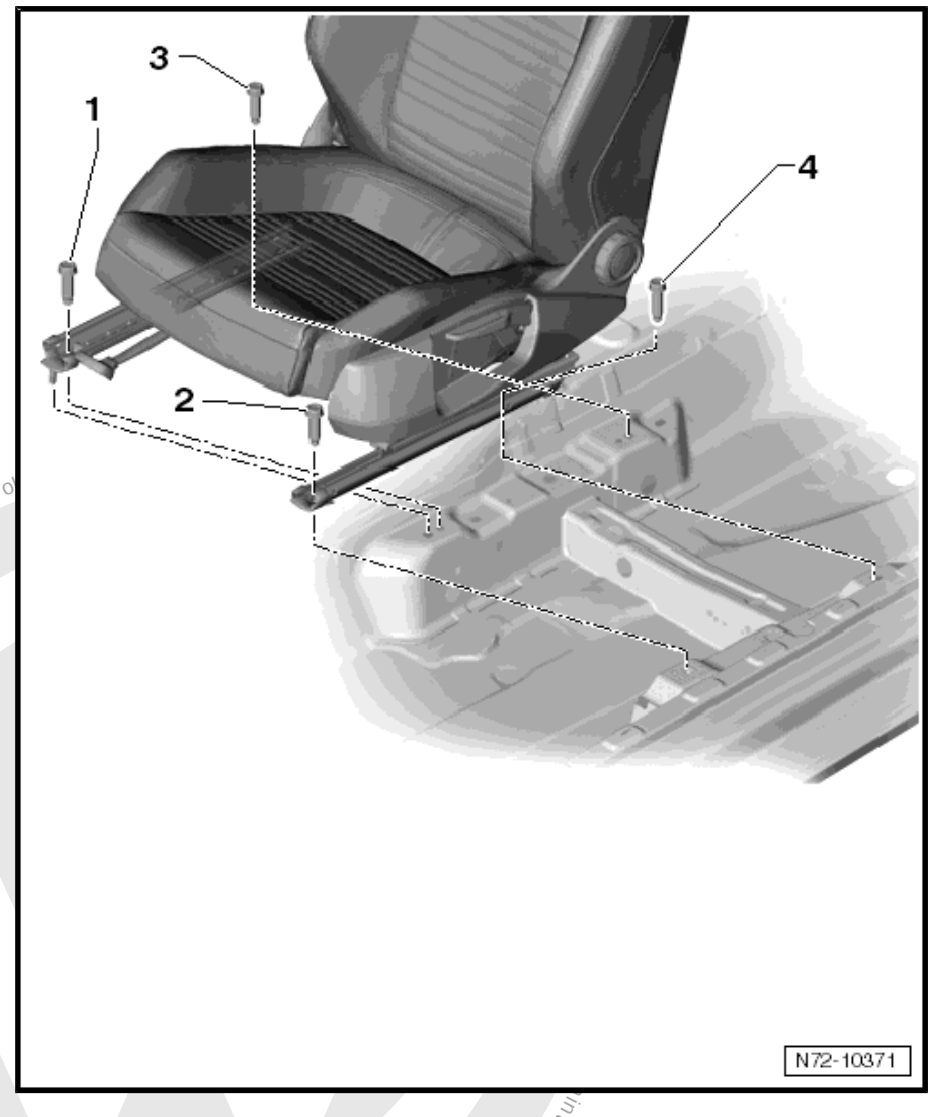
If seat is lifted out of vehicle or transported, it must not, in order to prevent damage, be gripped by attaching parts such as, e.g. belt buckle, lever for seat longitudinal adjustment, lever for seat height adjustment or seat trim.

– Use suitable means to protect attachments against damage.

– With your right hand, grasp between backrest and seat padding, while with your left hand grasping the front edge of the seat padding.
– Lift seat out of vehicle.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



– Lift seat into vehicle through front door aperture.
– Put down seat on front edge first.
– Guide seat into centring pins.

WARNING

If a thread in the seat cross member mounting plate becomes damaged during installation, reworking damaged threads is prohibited. In this case, the seat cross member mounting plate must be replaced.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

If seat cross member mounting plate threads have been damaged:

- Renew seat cross member mounting plate concerned ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 51 .
- Remove airbag adapter - VAS 6282- .
- Engage side airbag wiring harness in coupling station.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, engage wiring harnesses in coupling station.
- Close cover in floor covering.
- Switch on ignition.

WARNING

Make sure that nobody is in the vehicle.

- Connect battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, the event memory must be read, cleared and then read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

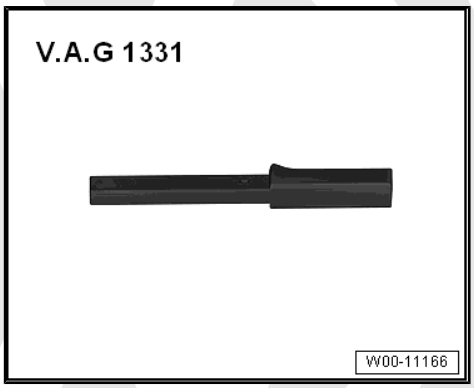
Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 261

2.10 Removing front seat if seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31- is defective

Special tools and workshop equipment required

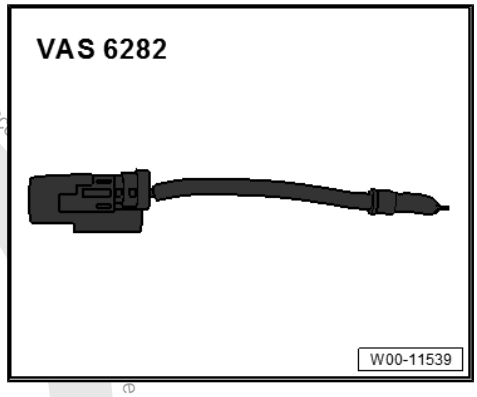
♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use, in whole or in part, is prohibited. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use, in whole or in part, is prohibited unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Airbag adapter - VAS 6282-



Checking seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31-

– Move front seat to highest position.

Note

To prevent unnecessary repair costs check seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31- prior to removing front seat.

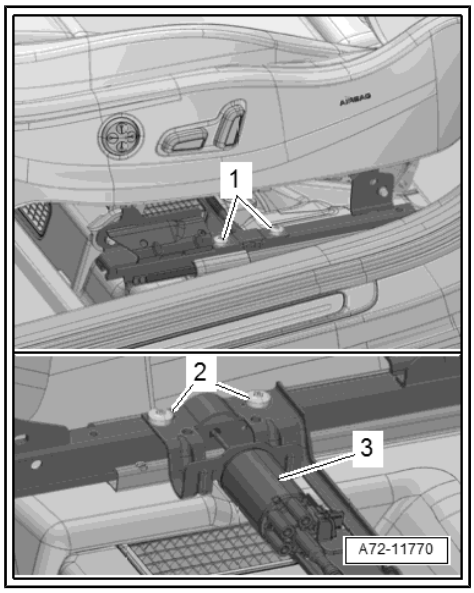
– Check seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31- ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Removing if seat longitudinal adjustment motor is defective - V28- / -V31-

– Disconnect battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Caution

- *Do not loosen bolts -1- and -2- until after having checked the longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31- .*
- *Once bolts have been loosened, the lower seat pan frame must be renewed together with longitudinal adjustment motor -3-.*

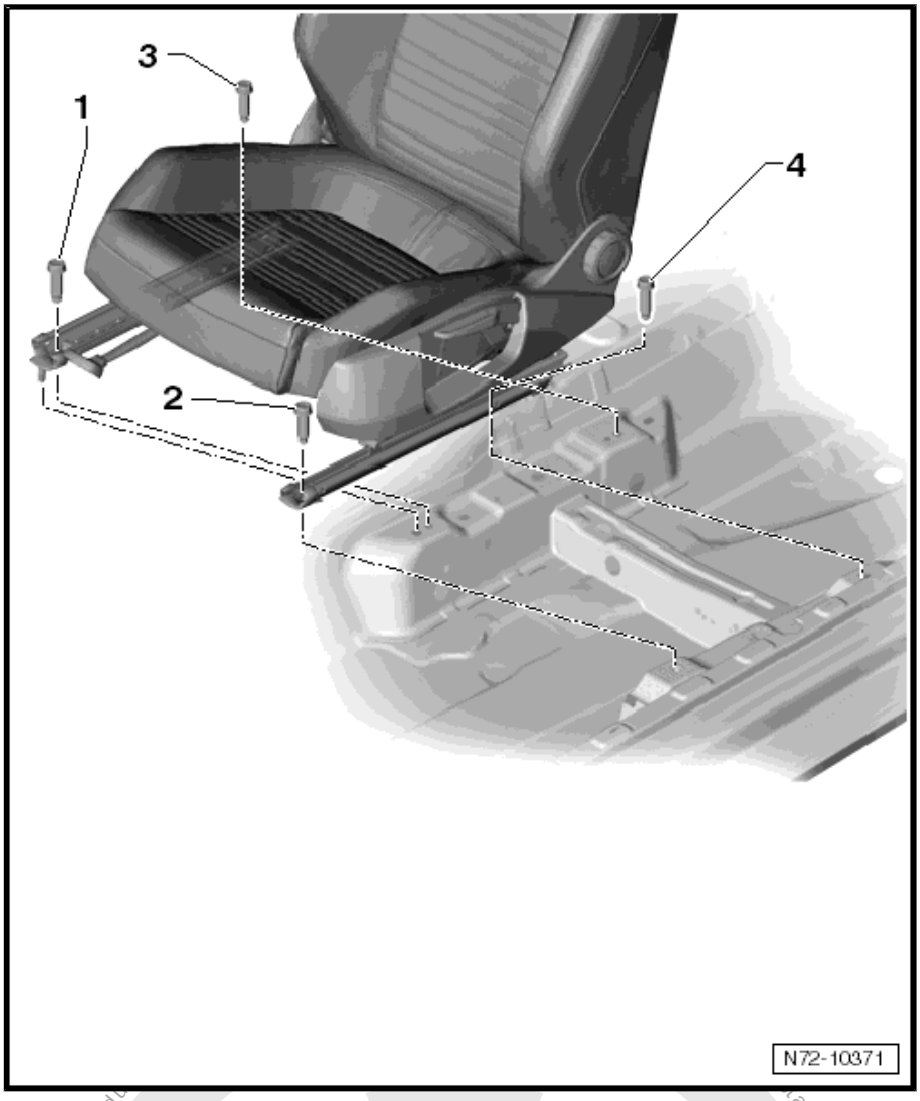


– Remove bolts -1- and -2-

Note

Access tunnel-side bolts for removal by reaching under seat from in front.

– Move seat to foremost position.



– Unscrew bolts -3- and -4-.
– Move seat to rearmost position.
– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2-.
– Tilt seat towards rear.
– Open cover in floor covering.
– Depending on vehicle equipment, release and pull wiring harnesses off coupling station on seat.
– Connect airbag adapter ⇒ page 283 .

Caution

If seat is lifted out of vehicle or transported, it must not, in order to prevent damage, be gripped by attaching parts such as, e.g. belt buckle, lever for seat longitudinal adjustment, lever for seat height adjustment or seat trim.

– Use suitable means to protect attachments against damage.
– With your right hand, grasp between backrest and seat padding, while with your left hand grasping the front edge of the seat padding.

Printed by copyright. Copying for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

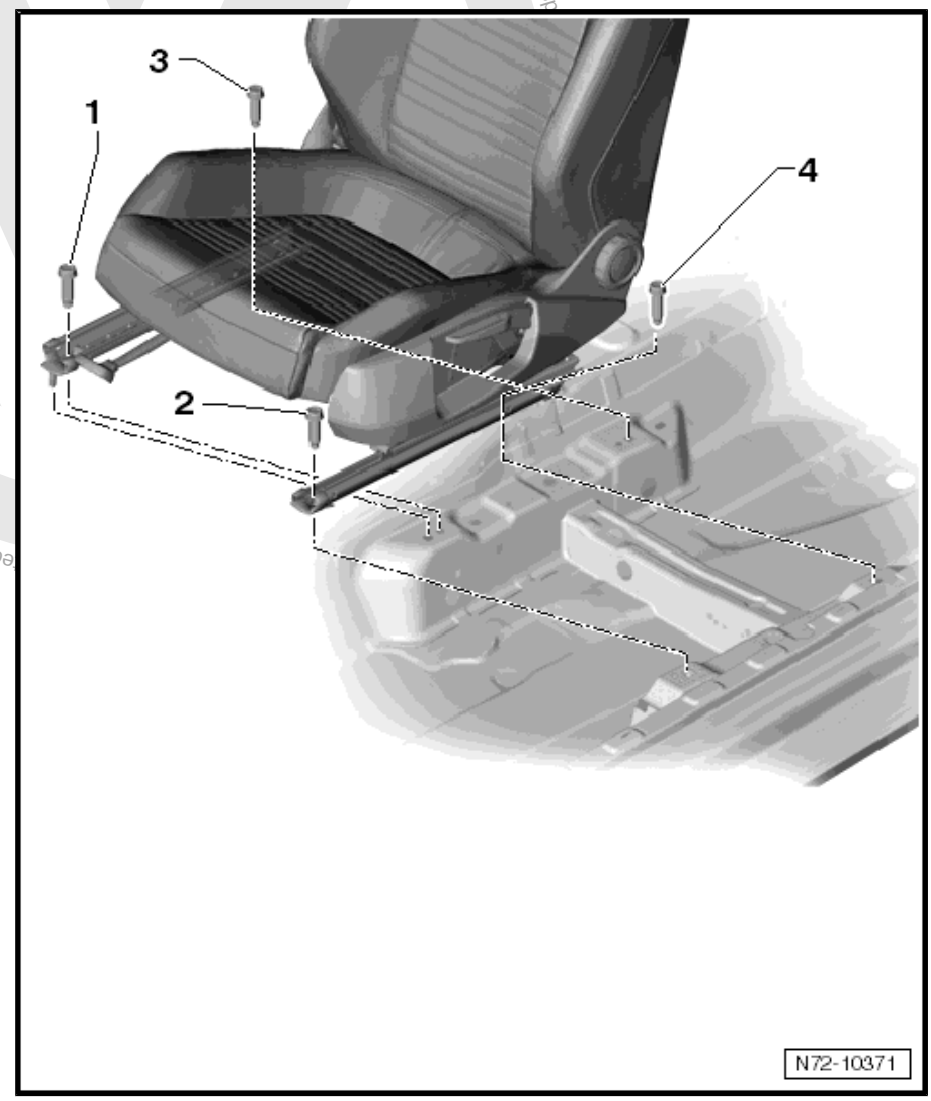
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect

– Lift seat out of vehicle.
– Separate lower seat pan frames from seat pan ⇒ page 300 .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Install lower seat pan frames to seat pan ⇒ page 300 .



– Lift seat into vehicle through front door aperture.
– Put down seat on front edge first.
– Guide seat into centring pins.

WARNING

If a thread in the seat cross member mounting plate becomes damaged during installation of the seat, reworking damaged threads is prohibited. In this case, the seat cross member mounting plate must be replaced.

If seat cross member mounting plate threads have been damaged:

– Renew seat cross member mounting plate concerned ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 51 .
– Remove airbag adapter - VAS 6282- .
– Engage side airbag wiring harness in coupling station.
– Depending on vehicle equipment, engage wiring harnesses in coupling station.
– Close cover in floor covering.
– Switch on ignition.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> *Make sure that nobody is in the vehicle.*

– Connect battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, the event memory must be read, cleared and then read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

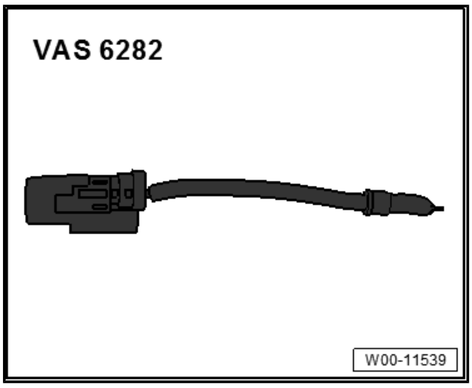
Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 261

2.11 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter

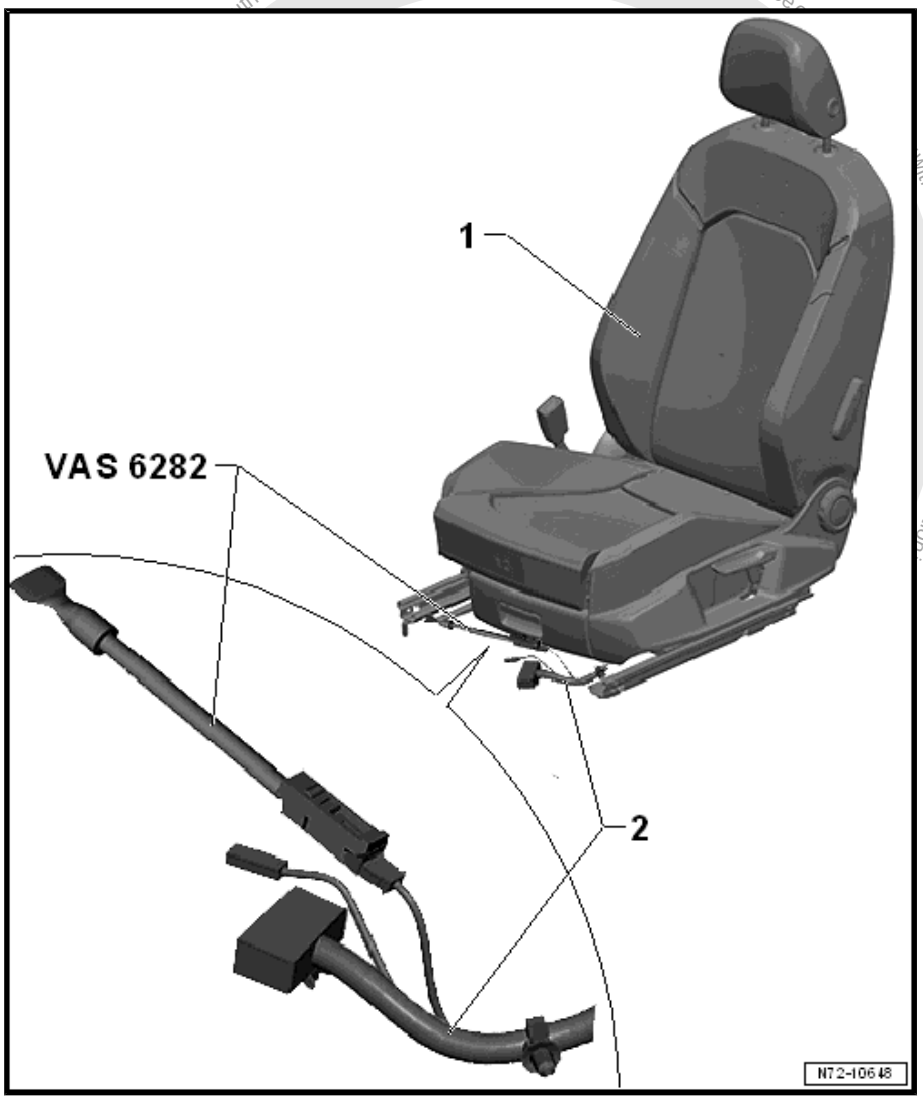
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Airbag adapter - VAS 6282-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee



– Connect airbag adapter - VAS 6282- to side airbag wiring harness -1-.

Caution

The airbag adapter - VAS 6282- must remain connected to the seat until the seat is installed again.

2.12 Removing and installing handle for seat height adjustment

Note

The handle for seat height adjustment can be renewed with front seat installed.

Removing

Note

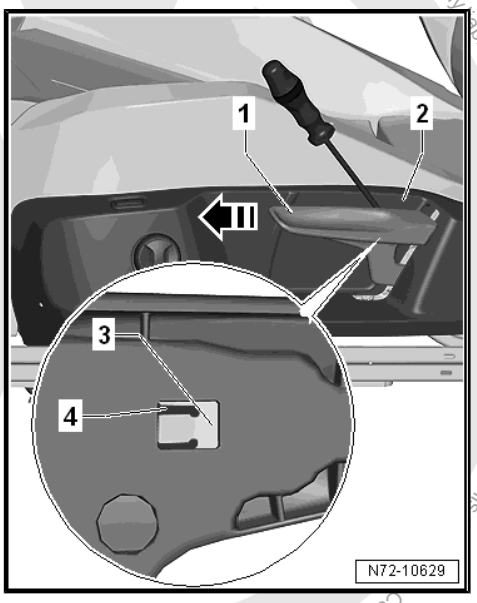
- *Remove handle for seat height adjustment as described. Do not knock handle for seat height adjustment off lever.*
- *If the tab is damaged during removal of the handle, the handle cannot be refitted. The handle for seat height adjustment has to be renewed then.*

– Pull handle for seat height adjustment -1- as far as possible upwards, and hold it in this position.

– Guide a small screwdriver through handle for seat height adjustment -1- and trim -2- up to catch -3-.

– Push locking lug -3- inwards using screwdriver.

– Simultaneously pull handle for seat height adjustment -1- in -direction of arrow- off lever -4-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Check retaining clip -3- for damage and ensure it is properly seated on lever -4-.

– Slide handle for seat height adjustment -1- onto lever -4- until it engages.

– After installing, ensure that retaining clip -4- is properly engaged.

– Check firm seating by pulling on it.

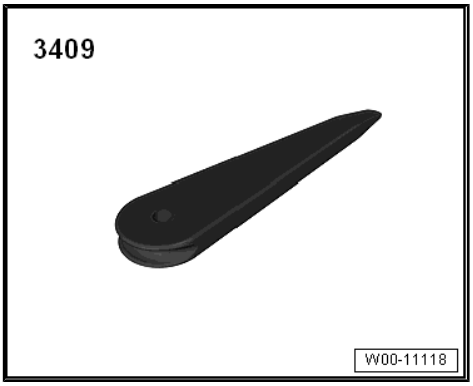
2.13 Removing and installing seat trim on tunnel side

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

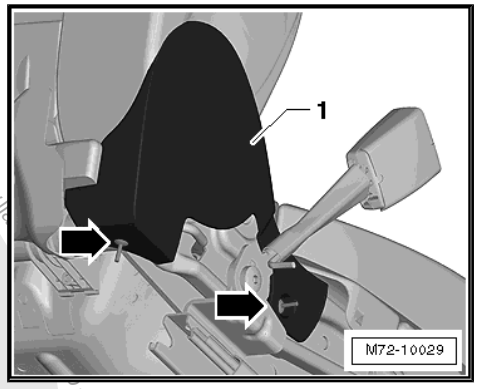
- Removal wedge - 3409-



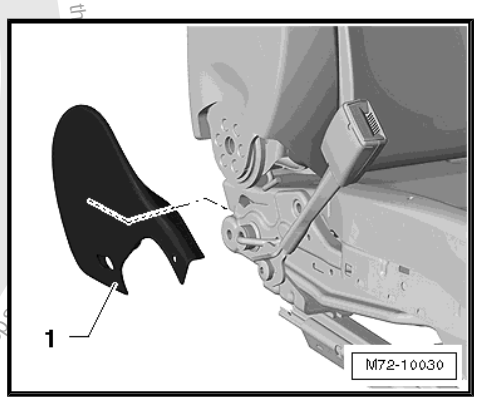
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 275 .
– Remove spreader rivets -arrows- of trim -1-.
– To do this, press clamping pins in spreader rivets -arrows- inwards.
– Lever off spreader rivets using removal wedge - 3409- .



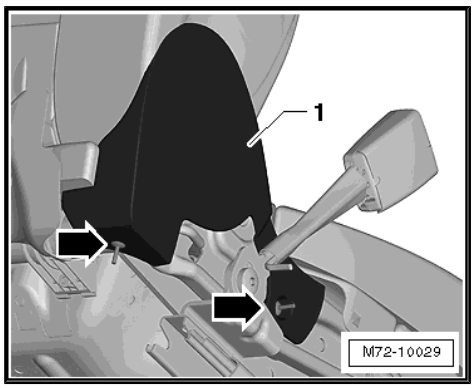
1 – Remove trim -1- from mountings in seat frame.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Insert spreader rivets -arrows- and press in clamping pins.



2.14 Removing and installing seat trim on sill side

⇒ “2.14.1 Removing and installing seat trim on sill side, standard seat”, page 286

⇒ “2.14.2 Removing and installing seat trim on sill side, seat of type "ergo Aktiv"”, page 288

⇒ “2.14.3 Removing and installing seat trim on sill side, electrically adjustable seat”, page 289

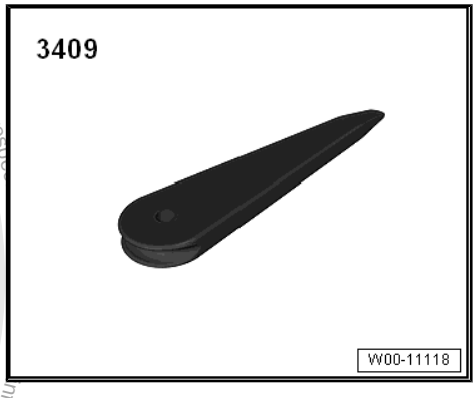
2.14.1 Removing and installing seat trim on sill side, standard seat

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side.
Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

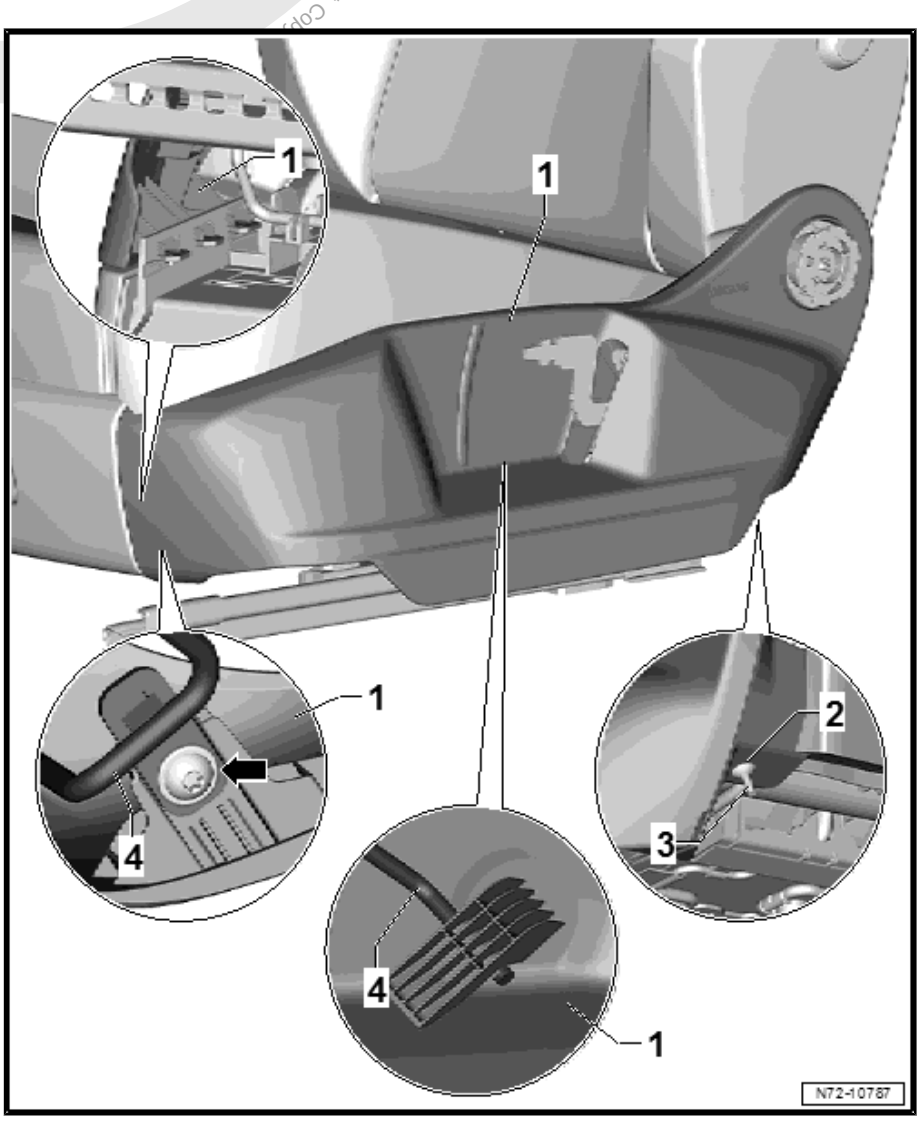
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Adjust seat to fully upright position.
– Remove backrest adjustment ⇒ page 305 .
– Remove handle for seat height adjustment ⇒ page 284 .



– Press in clamping pin -3-.
– Lever off spreader rivets -2- using removal wedge - 3409- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Unscrew bolt -arrow- from underneath.
– Detach trim -1- at rear and at front trim.
– Detach trim -1- of bracket -4- towards front.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Torque settings

◆ ⇒ “2.4.1 Assembly overview - seat pan, standard seat, seat of type "ergo Aktiv"”, page 267

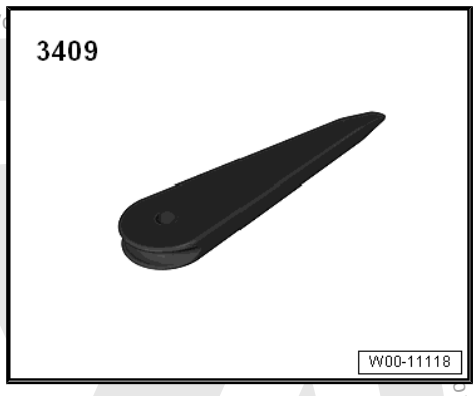
2.14.2 Removing and installing seat trim on sill side, seat of type "ergo Aktiv"

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side.
Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

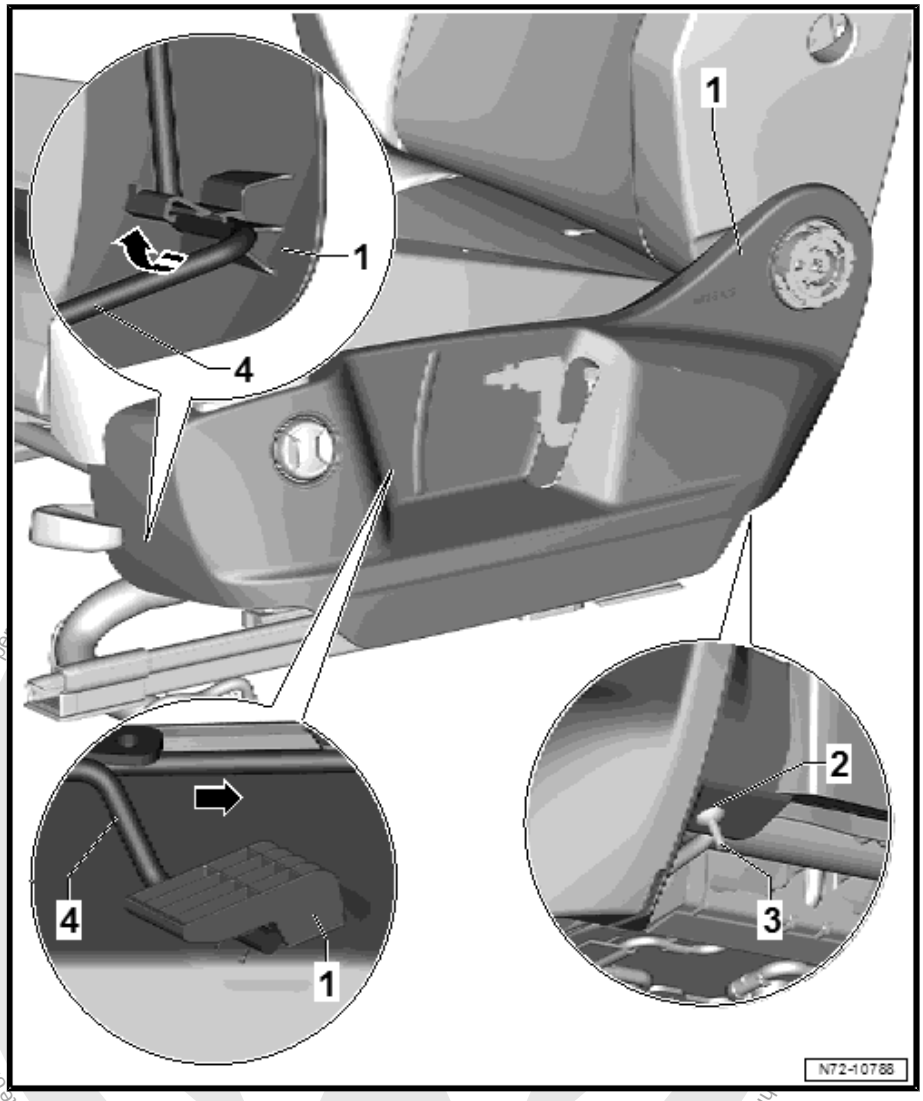
◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Adjust seat to fully upright position.
– Remove backrest adjustment ⇒ page 305 .
– Remove handle for seat height adjustment ⇒ page 284 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. V
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability for the correctness of information in this document.



This document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Released by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not pe

– Press in clamping pin -3-.
– Lever off spreader rivets -2- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Open locking element on trim -1- at front.
– Detach trim -1- of bracket for seat trim -4- towards front.
– Unclip wiring harness from trim -1-.
– Release and pull off connectors on switches.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

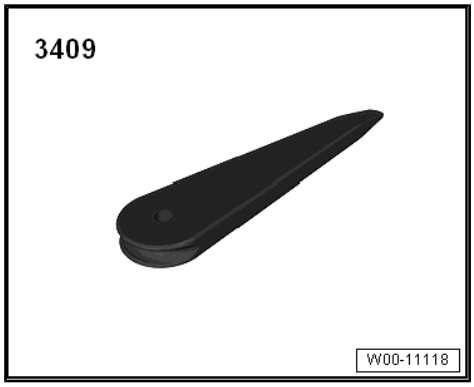
2.14.3 Removing and installing seat trim on sill side, electrically adjustable seat

Note

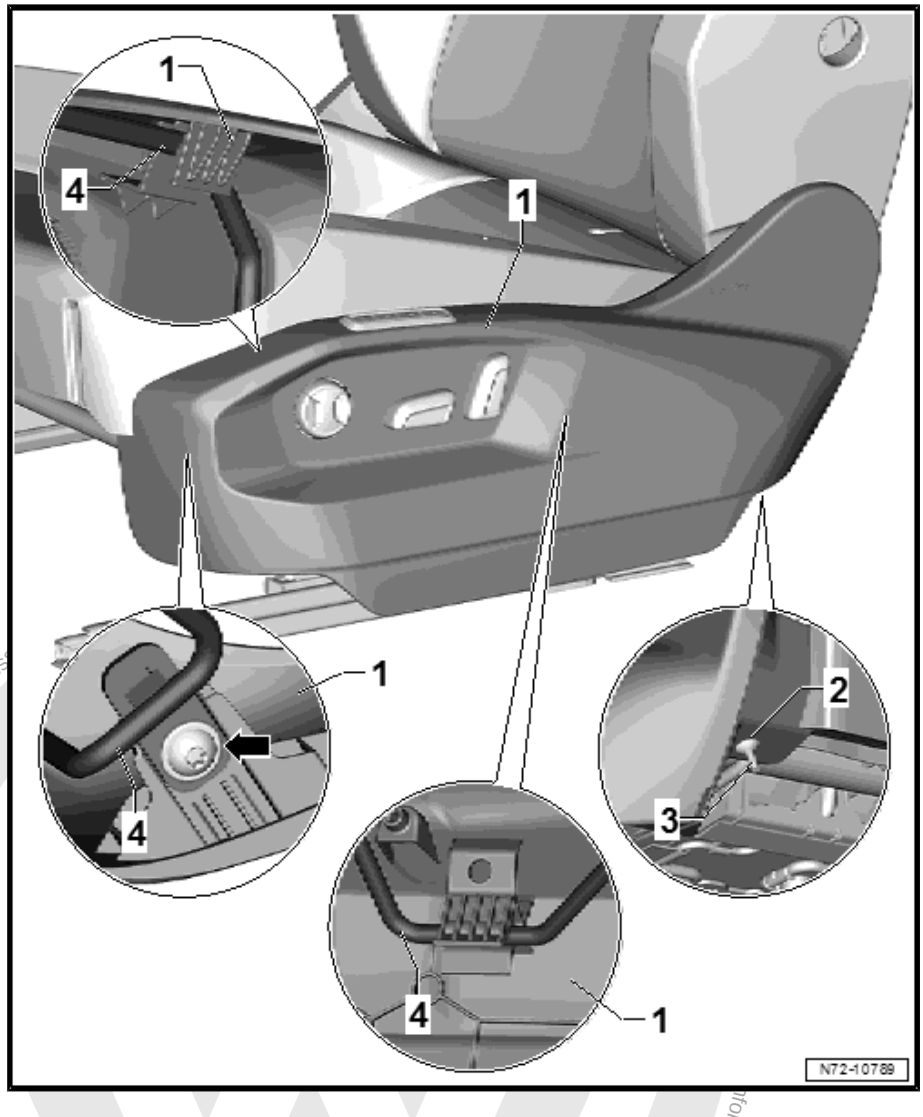
Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side.
Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing



– Adjust seat to fully upright position.
– Press in clamping pin -3-.
– Lever off spreader rivets -2- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Unscrew bolt -arrow- from underneath.
– Unclip trim -1- from brackets -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document.

– Detach trim -1-.
– Unclip wiring harness from trim -1-.
– Release and pull off connectors on switches.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “2.4.2 Assembly overview - seat pan, electrically adjustable seat”, page 269

2.15 Removing and installing bracket for seat trim

⇒ “2.15.1 Removing and installing bracket for seat trim, standard seat of type "ergo Aktiv"”, page 291

⇒ “2.15.2 Removing and installing bracket for seat trim, electrically adjustable seat”, page 292

2.15.1 Removing and installing bracket for seat trim, standard seat of type "ergo Aktiv"

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side.
Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing

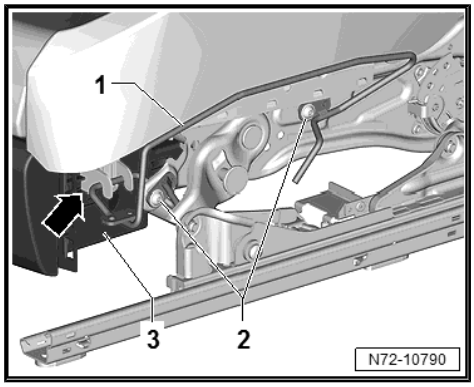
– Adjust seat to fully upright position.
– Remove seat trim on sill side ⇒ page 286 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Unscrew bolts -2-.

– If a storage compartment is fitted, guide bracket for seat trim -1- out of mounting -arrow- on storage compartment -3-.

– Remove bracket for seat trim -1- from front seat.



Note

Appearance of the bracket -1- may differ from the illustration.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– If a storage compartment is fitted, ensure firm seating of bracket for seat trim and mounting of storage compartment.

Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “2.4 Assembly overview - seat pan”, page 267

2.15.2 Removing and installing bracket for seat trim, electrically adjustable seat

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



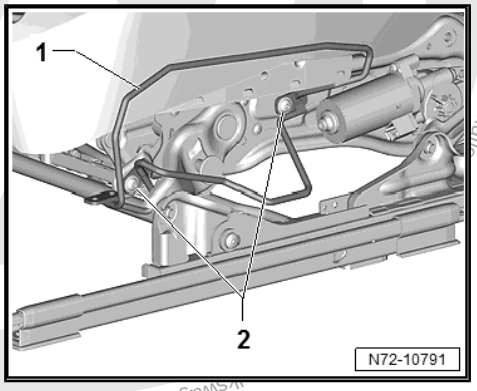
Removing

– Adjust seat to fully upright position.

– Remove seat trim on sill side ⇒ page 289 .

– Unscrew bolts -2-.

– Remove retaining bracket -1- from front seat.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “2.4.2 Assembly overview - seat pan, electrically adjustable seat”, page 269

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information

2.16 Removing and installing lumbar support

Removing and installing manually adjustable lumbar support
⇒ page 293

Removing and installing electrically adjustable lumbar support
⇒ page 313

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left seat. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation of the right seat as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



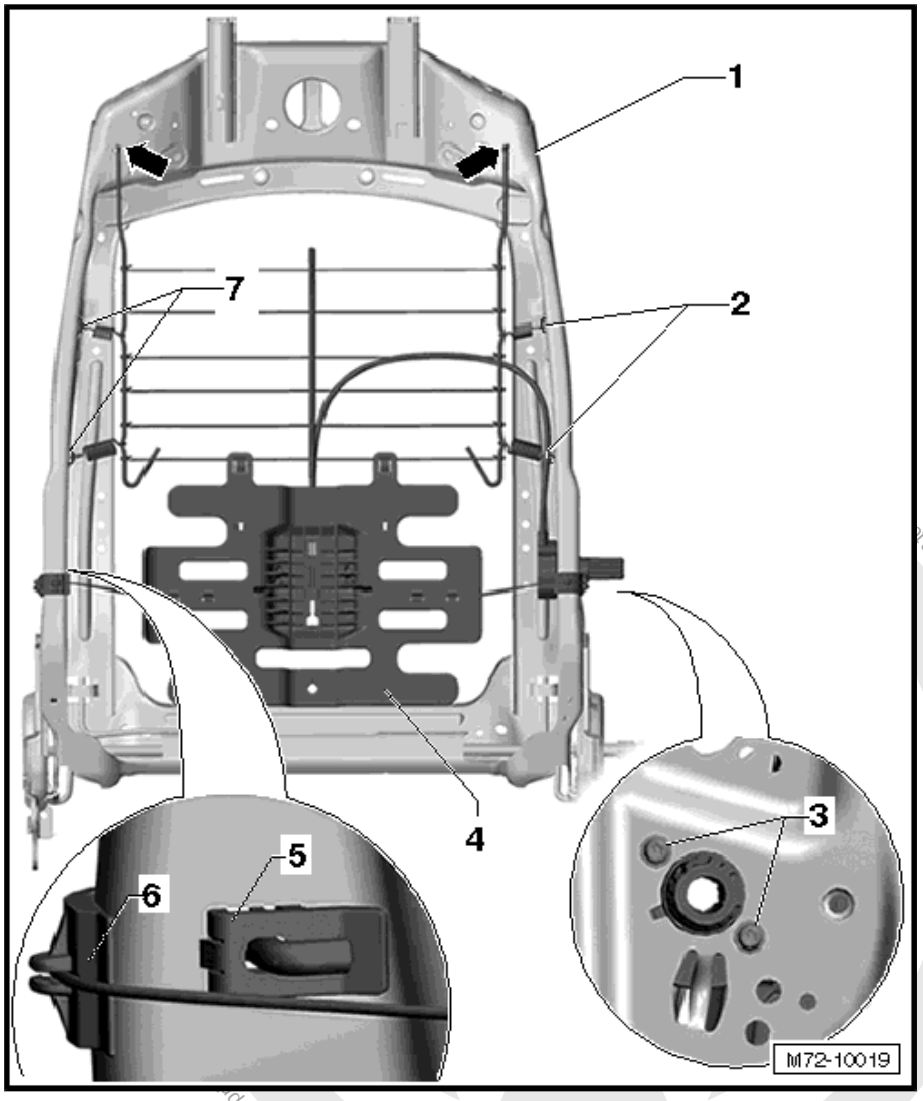
Manually adjustable lumbar support

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 275 .

– Remove front seat backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 348 .

– Unscrew bolts -3-, and detach lumbar support height adjustment mechanism from backrest frame -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Unhook lateral fasteners -6- and -5- from backrest frame -1-.
– Unhook lateral fasteners -2- and -7- from backrest frame -1-.
– Detach lumbar support -4- from upper mountings -arrows-.
– Remove lumbar support -4- from backrest frame -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage, and renew them as necessary.

Torque settings

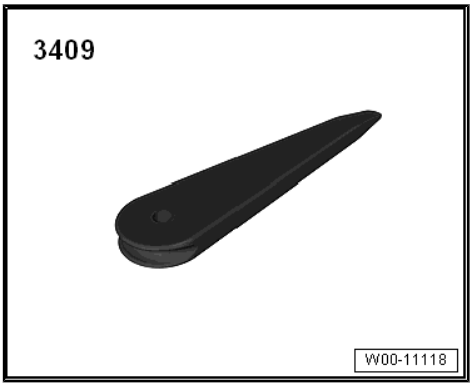
Component	Torque settings
Bolts -3- for lumbar support adjustment	2 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.17 Removing and installing seat depth adjustment unit

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



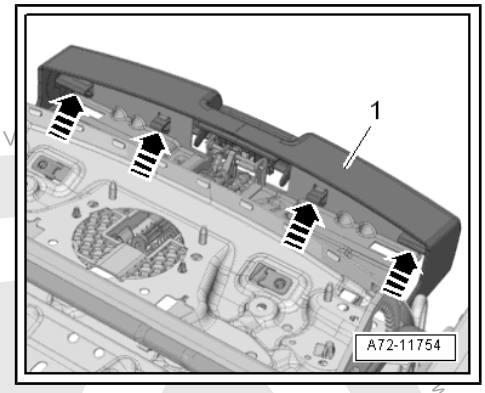
Removing

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 275 .

– Set seat depth adjustment as far forwards as possible.

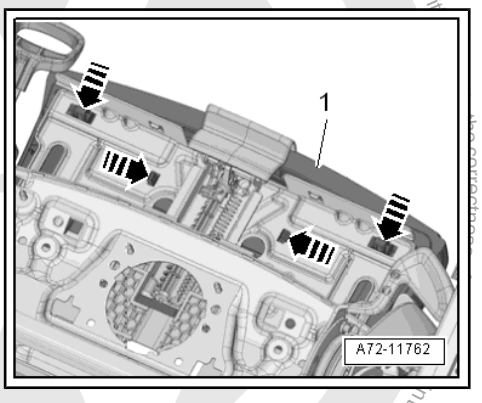
– Release locking lugs -arrows- on trim -1- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Remove trim -1- from seat depth adjustment.



– Release locking lugs -arrows- on carrier from seat depth adjustment using removal wedge - 3409- .

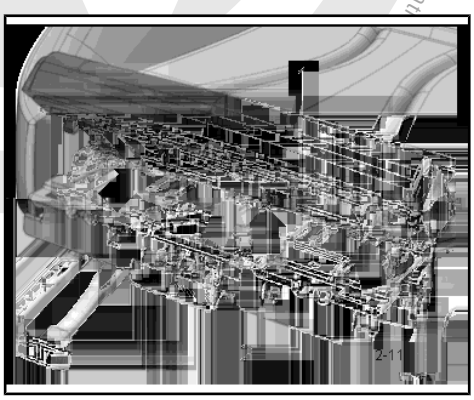
– Pull off carrier -1- with seat padding and seat cover for seat depth adjustment upwards and towards front.



– Detach tabs -arrows- from seat depth adjustment -2-.

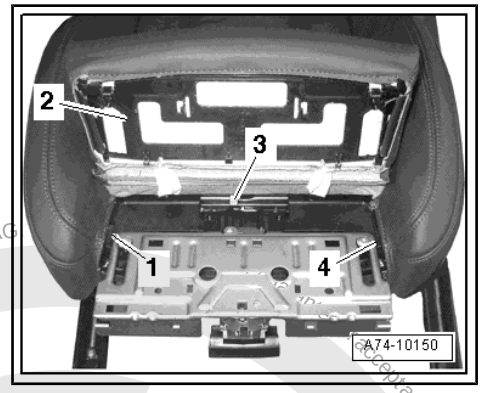
– Fold back carrier with seat padding and seat cover upwards.

– To do this, pull off carrier -1- with seat padding and seat cover for seat depth adjustment upwards and simultaneously towards front.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. V

– Place carrier -2- with seat padding and seat cover for seat depth adjustment onto front seat.



Note

For reasons of clarity, the lower seat pan frame is not shown.

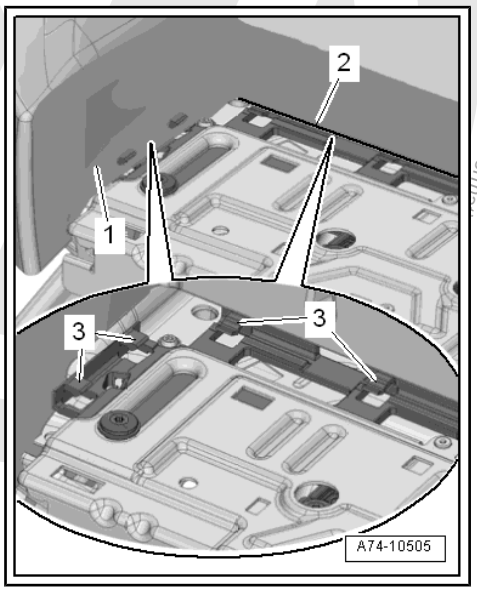
– Detach seat cover retaining strips -1- and -4-.
– Remove beading strip -3- of seat cover from seat depth adjustment.
– Pull beading strip towards front.

Caution

Risk of damage to locking lugs.

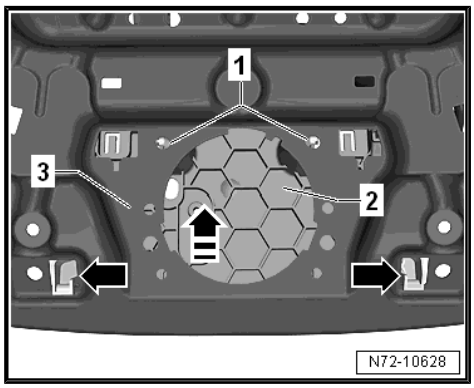
- ***Proceed with great care when unclipping and clipping in.***

– To do this, unclip seat cover -1- from locking lugs -3-.



Vehicles with massage control unit - J740-

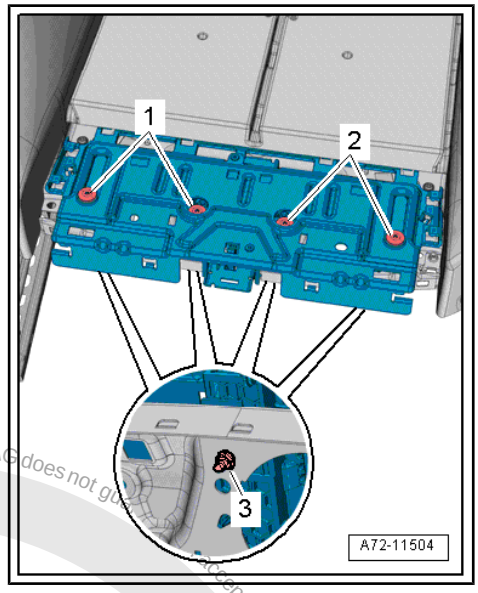
– Remove massage control unit - J740- ⇒ page 315 .
– Pull out seat depth adjustment.
– Unclip retaining lugs -1-.
– Lower bracket for massage control unit - J740- -2- in area of retaining lugs -1-.
– Push bracket for massage control unit - J740- -2- in -direction of arrow-.
– Detach bracket for massage control unit - J740- -2- from mountings -arrows-.



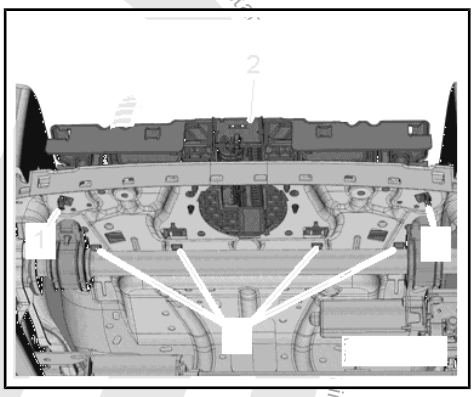
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information

Continued for all vehicles

– Slide seat depth adjustment towards rear.
– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2-.
– Counterhold on nuts -3- on seat depth adjustment while doing so.



– Unclip locking lugs -1- and -3- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Pull seat depth adjustment -2- upwards and towards front off seat pan -arrows-.
– Detach tabs -4- from seat pan while doing so.
– Remove seat depth adjustment from front seat.



Installing

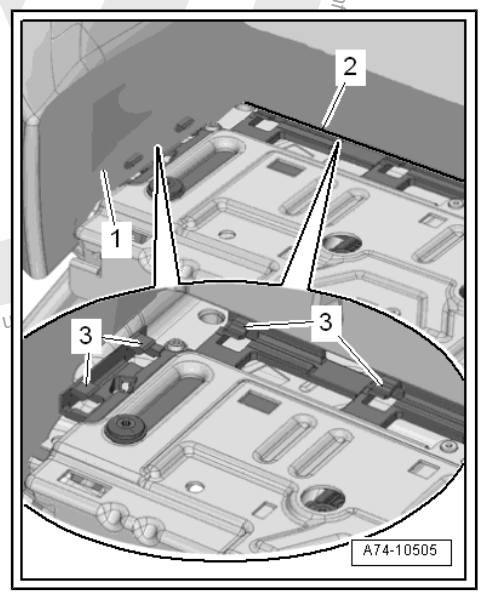
Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Attach seat cover -1- to locking lugs -3-.
– Engage beading strip -2- in rear locking lugs -3-.
– Ensure that locking lugs are firmly engaged.

Caution

Risk of damage to locking lugs.

- ***Proceed with great care when unclipping and clipping in.***

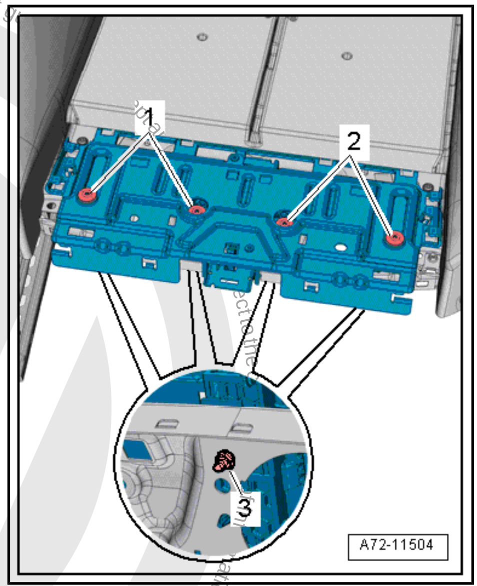


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

- *The two outer bolts are provided with a plastic guide* *⇒ page 273* *.*
- *Ensure proper allocation.*



Torque settings

- ⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 261
- ⇒ “2.4 Assembly overview - seat pan”, page 267
- ⇒ “2.6 Assembly overview - seat depth adjustment”, page 273

2.18 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit

⇒ “2.18.1 Removing and installing seat height adjustment, standard seat, seat of type "ergo Aktiv"”, page 298

⇒ “2.18.2 Removing and installing seat height adjustment, electrically adjustable seat”, page 299

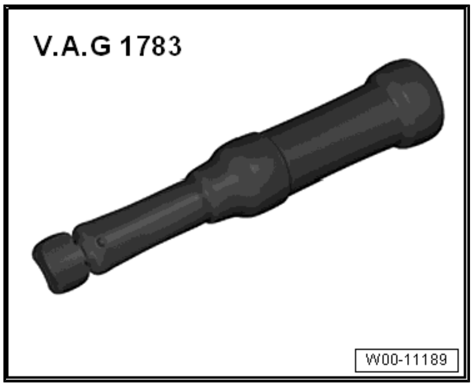
2.18.1 Removing and installing seat height adjustment, standard seat, seat of type "ergo Aktiv"

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

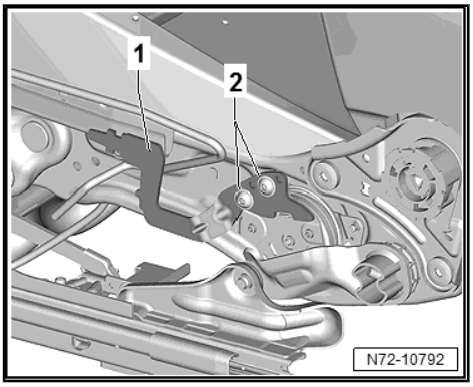
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

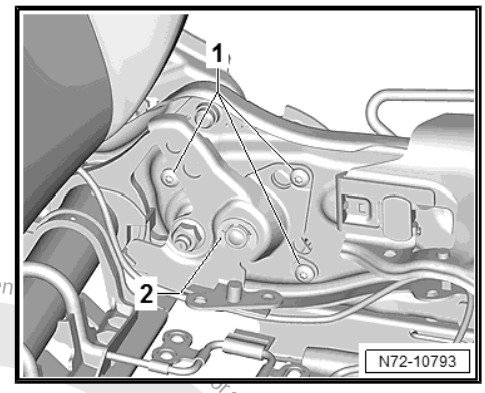


Removing

– Move front seat to highest position.
– Remove cover and padding from seat pan ⇒ page 345 .
– Unscrew bolts -2-, and detach lever -1-.



– Remove securing clip -2-.
– Unscrew bolts -1-, and remove seat height adjustment unit.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “2.5.1 Assembly overview - seat height adjustment, standard seat, seat of type "ergo Aktiv"”, page 271

2.18.2 Removing and installing seat height adjustment, electrically adjustable seat

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side.
Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



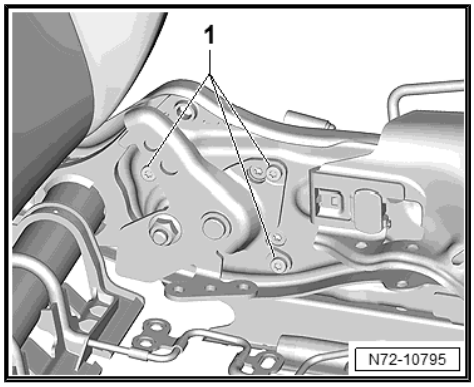
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Move front seat to highest position.

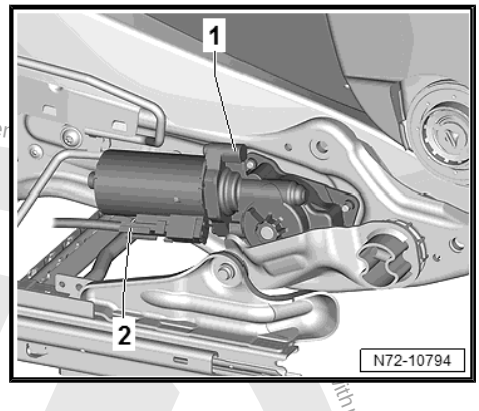
– Remove seat cover and padding from seat pan ⇒ page 345 .

– Unscrew bolts -1-.



– Disconnect electrical connector -2- on seat height adjustment motor -1-.

– Detach seat height adjustment unit together with seat height adjustment motor -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Torque settings

◆ ⇒ “2.5.2 Assembly overview - seat height adjustment, electrically adjustable seat”, page 272

2.19 Removing and installing lower seat pan frame with seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31-

Removing

– If possible, move front seat to highest position to reduce as much tension on torsion rod as possible.

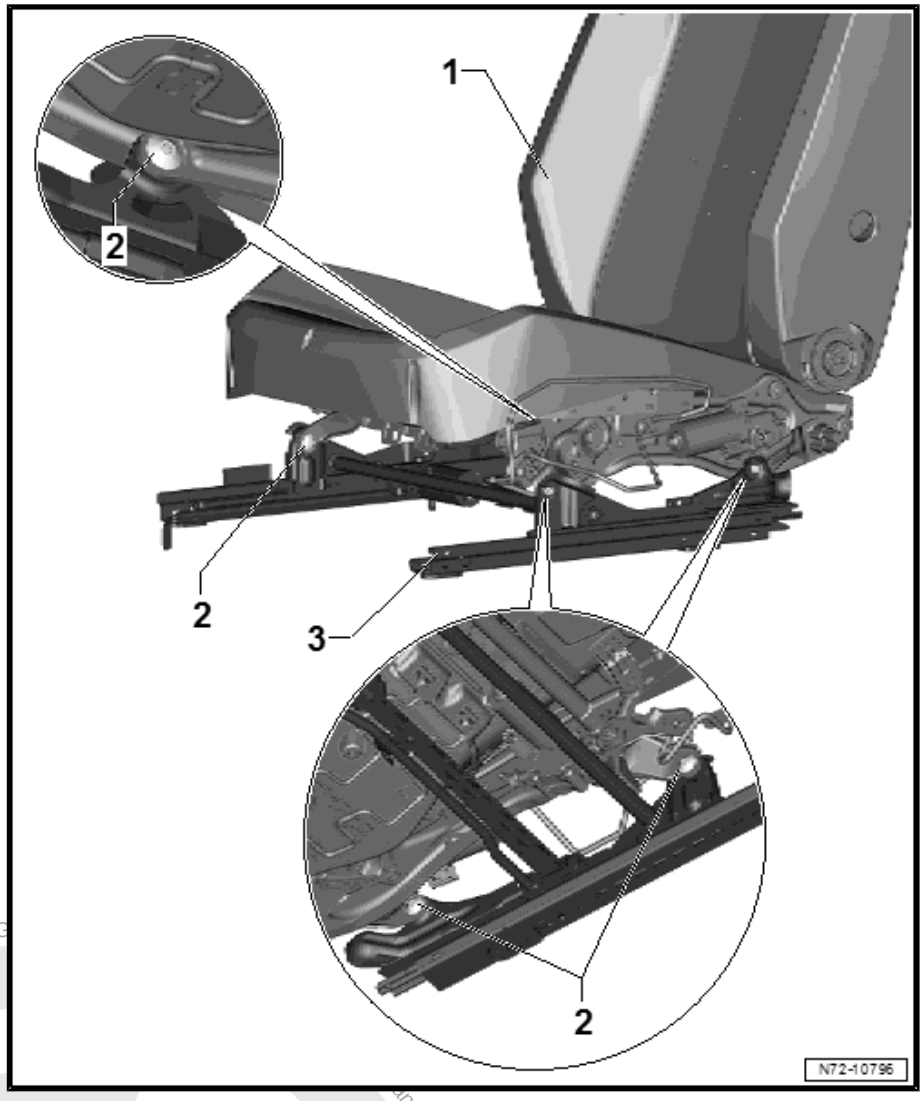
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 275 .

– Disconnect electrical connectors for seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28- / -V31-.

– Unclip wire from lower seat pan frame and lay it to one side.

– Remove front belt buckle ⇒ page 92 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Unscrew bolts -2-.

– Detach seat pan -1- from lower frame -3-.

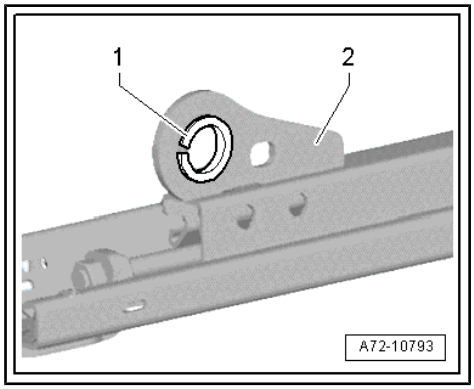
Caution

Risk of damage to bushes in the bearing locations (threaded connection between seat pan and lower frame).

- ***The bushes cannot be replaced using workshop equipment.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

If the bushes -1- are damaged, renew lower seat pan frame -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Torque settings

- ⇒ “2.4.2 Assembly overview - seat pan, electrically adjustable seat”, page 269

2.20 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit

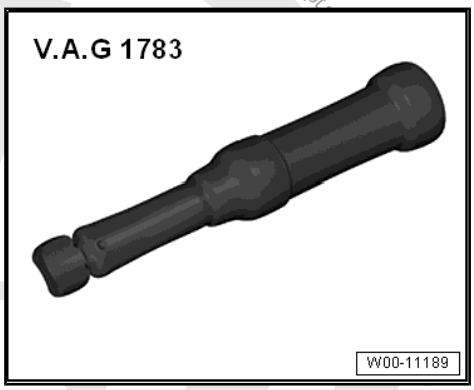
Removing and installing seat rake adjustment mechanism for electrically adjustable seats

Note

- *Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.*
- *Renew self-locking bolts after removal.*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



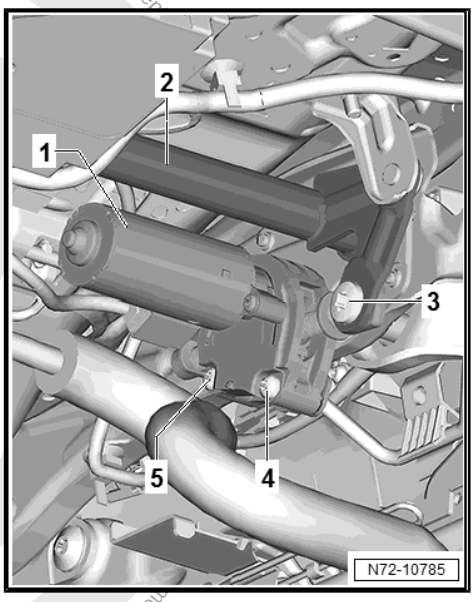
Removing

– Move front seat to highest position.

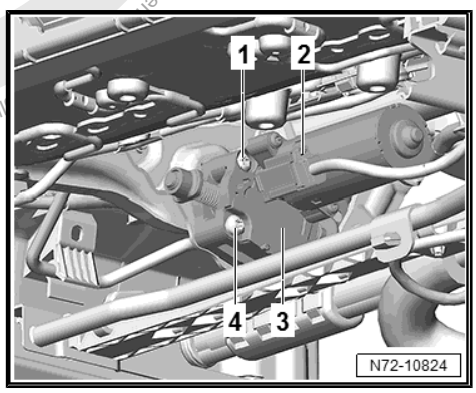
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 275 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Unscrew bolt -3- for adjuster spindle of seat rake adjustment motor -1-.
– Unscrew bolts -4- and -5- on motor.



– Disconnect electrical connector -2- on seat rake adjustment motor.
– Unscrew bolt -1- while simultaneously detaching seat rake adjustment motor -3-.
– Bolt -4- has already been loosened.



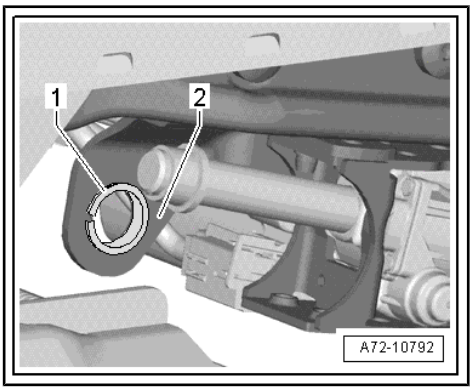
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Caution

Risk of damage to bush -1- in the bearing location -2- (threaded connection of adjuster spindle and seat pan).

- ***The bush cannot be renewed using workshop equipment.***
- ***If the bush is damaged, the respective assembly parts must be renewed.***



Torque settings

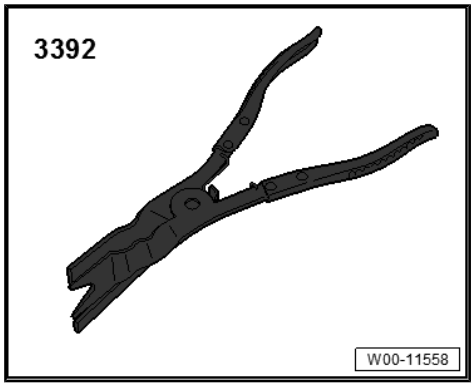
Bolt	Specified torque
For securing the motor	10 Nm
For securing the adjuster spindle to seat pan	20 Nm

- ⇒ “2.4.2 Assembly overview - seat pan, electrically adjustable seat”, page 269

2.21 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment unit

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal pliers - 3392-

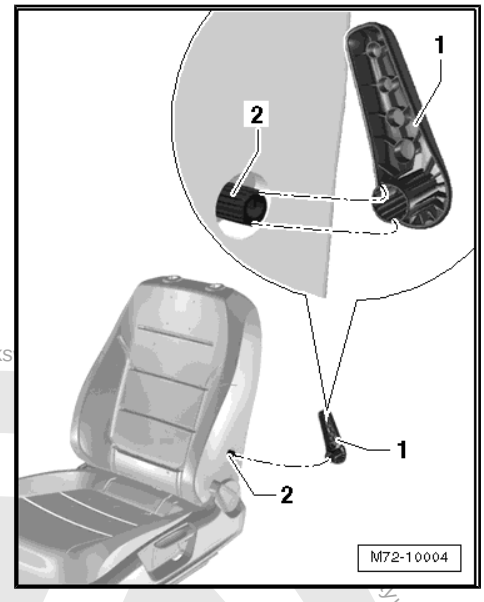


Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Removing

– Pull lumbar support adjusting lever -1- off shaft -2- using removing pliers - 3392- .



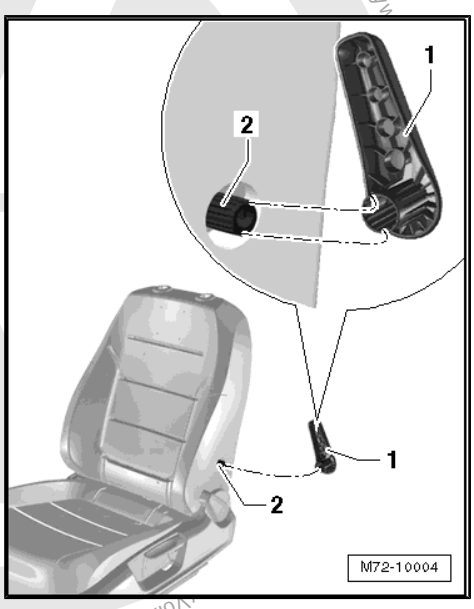
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Make sure that teeth on lumbar support adjusting lever -1- align with shaft splines -2-.

– Pull on lever to ensure it is firmly seated.

– If adjusting lever is too loose following assembly, it must be renewed.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG.

2.22 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit

⇒ “2.22.1 Removing and installing backrest adjustment, standard seat without through-loading function, ergo Aktiv seat”, page 305

⇒ “2.22.2 Removing and installing backrest adjustment, standard seat with through-loading function”, page 306

⇒ “2.22.3 Removing and installing backrest adjustment, electrically adjustable seat”, page 306

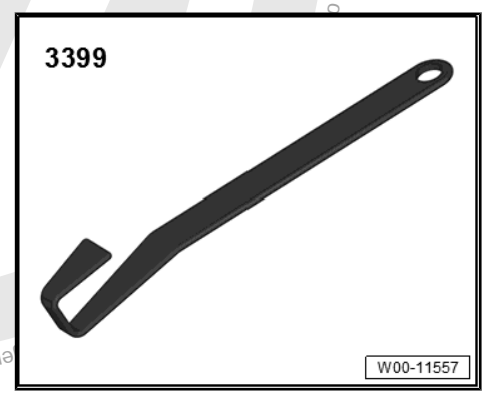
2.22.1 Removing and installing backrest adjustment, standard seat without through-loading function, ergo Aktiv seat

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side.
Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Assembly tool - 3399-



Removing

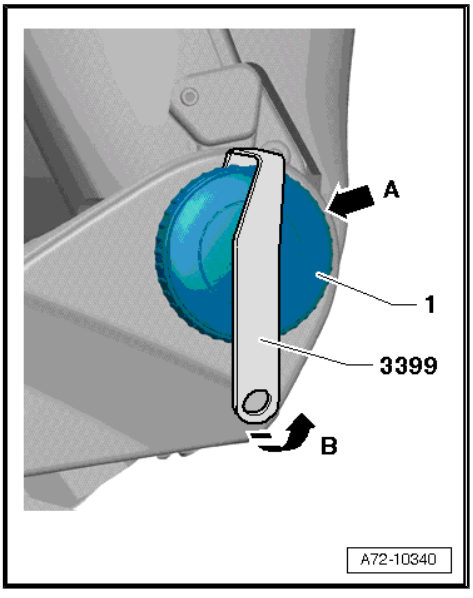
– Turn backrest adjustment -1- until a detent can be seen from the rear -arrow A-. Use a torch if necessary.

– Insert assembly tool - 3399- and lever it in -direction of arrow B-.

– Turn backrest adjustment 120° further.

– Insert assembly tool - 3399- and lever it in -direction of arrow B-.

– Remove backrest adjustment.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Ensure correct installation position of backrest adjustment.

– Pull on backrest adjustment to ensure it is firmly seated.

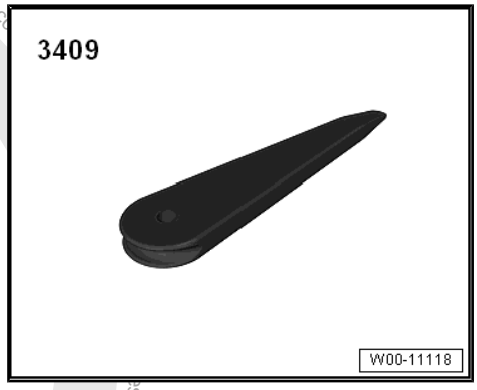
– If backrest adjuster is too loose following assembly, it must be renewed.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of

2.22.2 Removing and installing backrest adjustment, standard seat with through-loading function

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

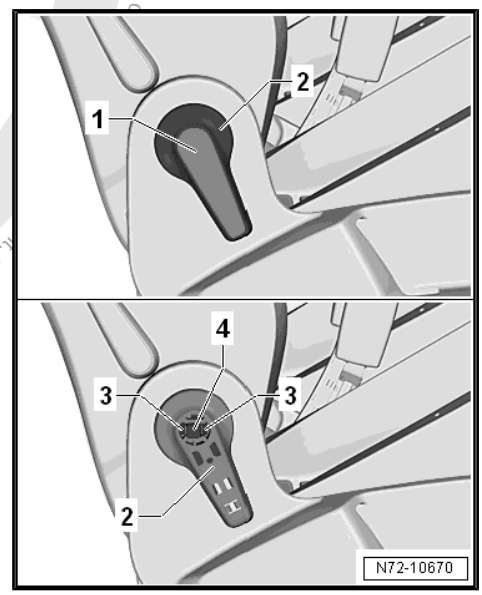
– Unclip cover -1- on adjustment and release lever -2- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Push retaining lugs -3- on adjustment and release lever -2- outwards, and release them.

– Pull adjustment and release lever -2- off shaft -4-, and remove it.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



Note

Note installation position of adjustment and release lever -2-. Install adjustment and release lever -2- as shown in illustration.

2.22.3 Removing and installing backrest adjustment, electrically adjustable seat

The backrest adjustment with backrest adjustment motor -V45- / -V46- cannot be renewed individually. In event of a defective backrest adjustment mechanism, the backrest frame must be renewed.

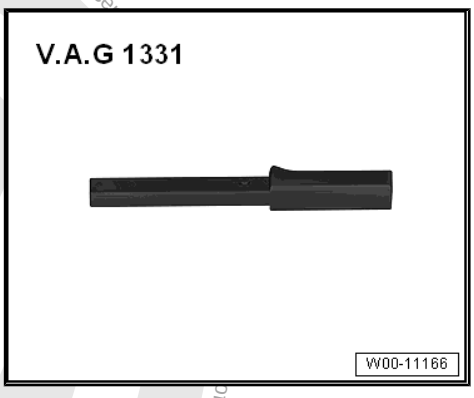
2.23 Removing and installing front backrest

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left seat. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation of the right seat as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Removing

WARNING

- ***Follow safety regulations for pyrotechnic components.***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.***

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 275 .

– Remove seat trim on tunnel side ⇒ page 285 .

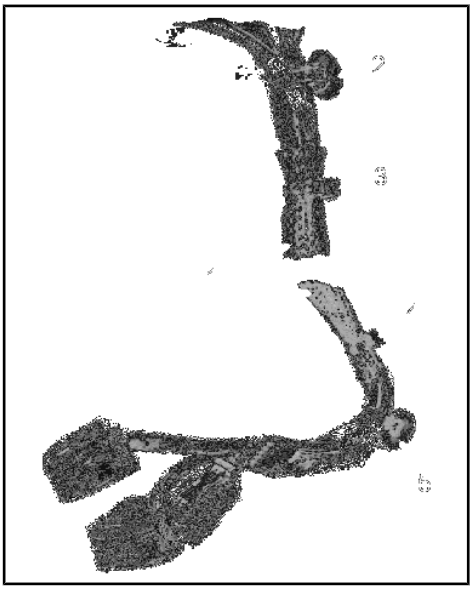
– Remove seat trim on sill side ⇒ page 286 .

– Disconnect connectors of wiring harnesses leading to backrest.

– Unclip clips -2- and -5- of wiring harness -1- from seat pan.

– Release wiring harness -1- together with braided sleeve from seat pan.

– To do this, remove all cable ties -3- and -4-.



The wiring harness between coupling station and side airbag is continuous.

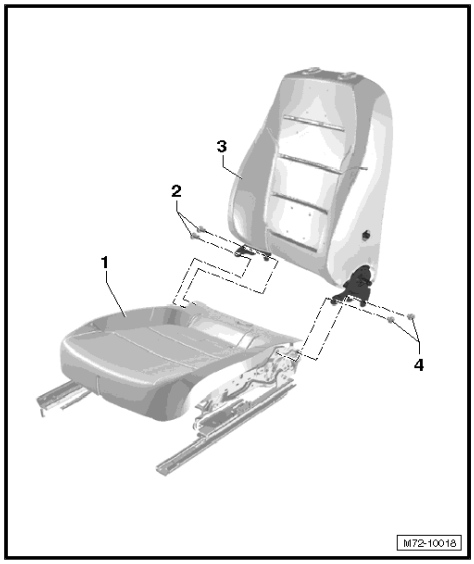
– Thread wiring harness leading to side airbag out if braided sleeve.

– To do this, remove cable ties -3- and -4-.

– Unscrew bolts -2-.

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Unscrew bolts -4-.



Note

- *The bolts are microencapsulated and must be renewed each time they are removed.*
- *Before new bolts are installed, the threads of the corresponding nuts must be cleaned.*

– Fold backrest -3- forwards onto seat pan -1-.
– Push seat pan padding to side.
– Carefully pull out side airbag wiring harness from seat pan.
– Remove backrest.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

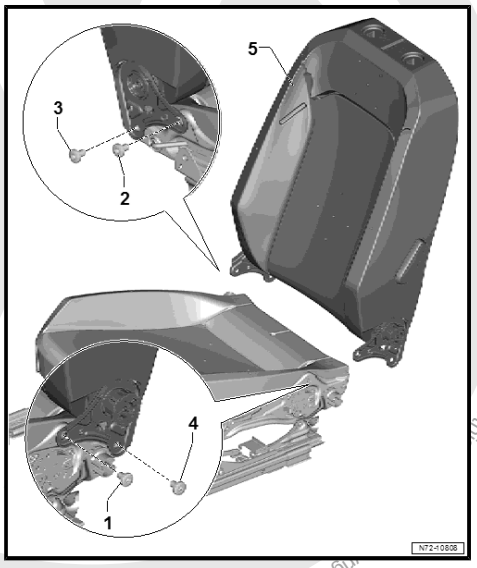
WARNING

- ***Follow safety regulations for pyrotechnic components.***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.***

– Renew any damaged cable ties and clips.
– Route wires in their original positions.

Specified torque and tightening sequence for backrest

Stage	Bolt	Specified torque
1	-1…4-	Screw in by hand as far as stop
2	-1-	35 Nm
3	-2-	35 Nm
4	-3-	35 Nm
5	-4-	35 Nm



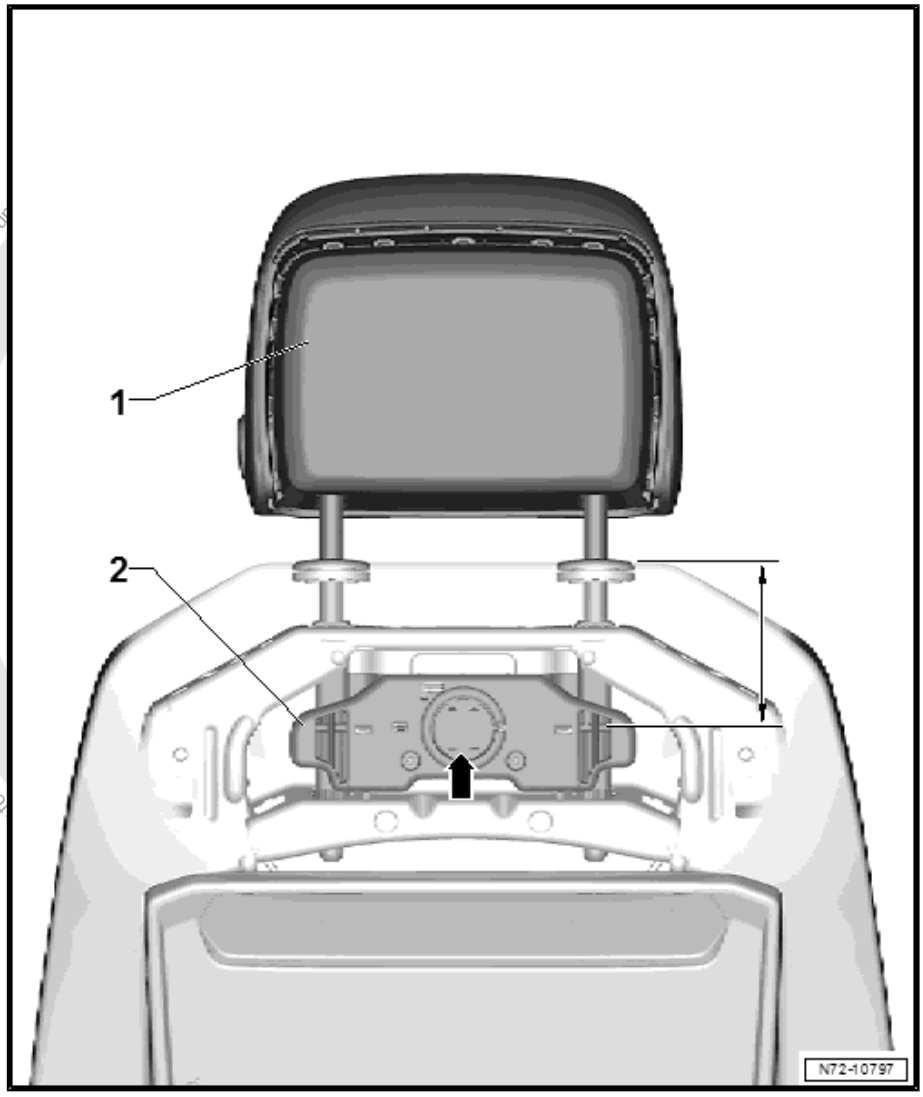
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.24 Removing and installing head restraint

Note

- *The head restraints can be renewed with front seat installed.*
- *The release mechanism (release button) can be found on the back of the seats behind the seat cover.*

Removing



for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted

– Move front seat to foremost and lowest position and tilt backrest by 45°.

The release button -arrow- is located approx. “9 cm” below the upper edge of backrest on the head restraint guide -2-.

– Press release button -arrow-, and pull out head restraint -1-.

Installing

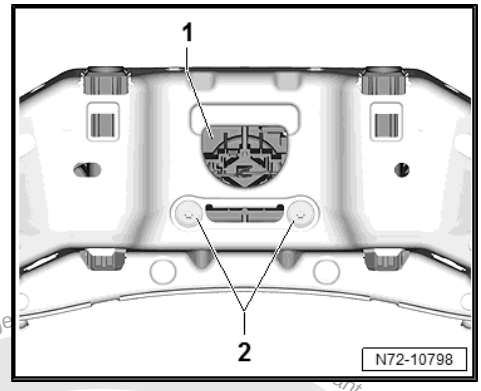
Install in reverse order of removal.

Note

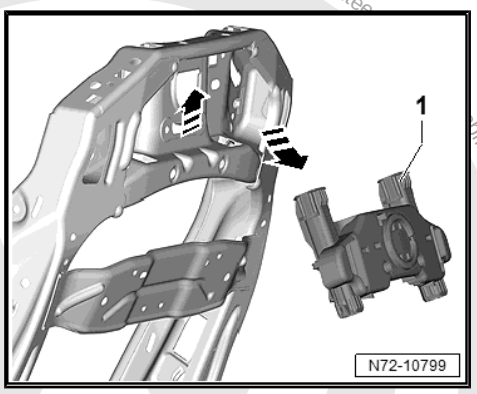
Engage head restraint in the head restraint guide, and ensure proper engagement.

2.25 Removing and installing head restraint guide

Removing



– Remove backrest cover and backrest padding ⇒ page 348 .
– Unscrew bolts -2- for head restraint guide -1-
– Press in locking lugs of head restraint guide -1-.



– Push head restraint guide -1- up as far as stop, and pull it out of backrest frame towards rear bottom.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- The guide lugs of the head restraint guide must engage in the recesses of the backrest frame mounting.
- The locking lug must properly engage in backrest frame.

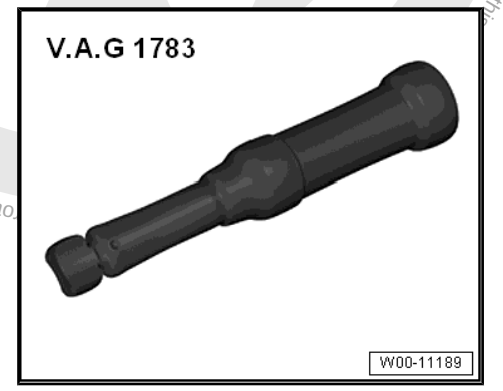
Torque settings

- ⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 261
- ⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - front backrest”, page 265

2.26 Removing and installing storage compartment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing

– Unbolt front seat, and tilt it towards rear. Do not remove seat completely ⇒ page 275 .
– Remove bracket for seat trim ⇒ page 291 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen. No liability with respect to the correctness of information in this

Caution

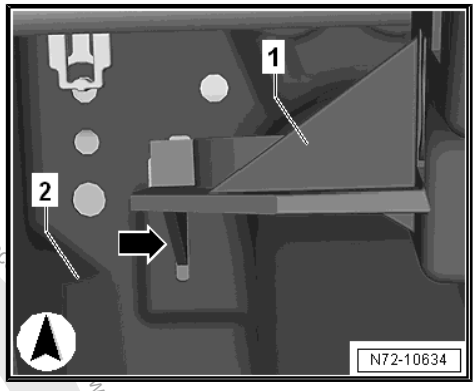
Ensure not to damage any objects stored by the customer in the storage compartment.

- *Store objects any objects from the storage compartment in a sealable plastic bag.*

– Remove any objects from the storage compartment -2-.
– Pull out storage compartment -2-.
– Unscrew bolt -3-.
– Close storage compartment -2-.
– Unscrew bolt -1-.



– Lower storage compartment -1- at front of seat -2-.
– Pull storage compartment -1- towards front in direction of travel.
– Remove storage compartment -1- from mountings -arrow- on left and right.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Ensure that the retainer for side trim is properly engaged in mounting on storage compartment.

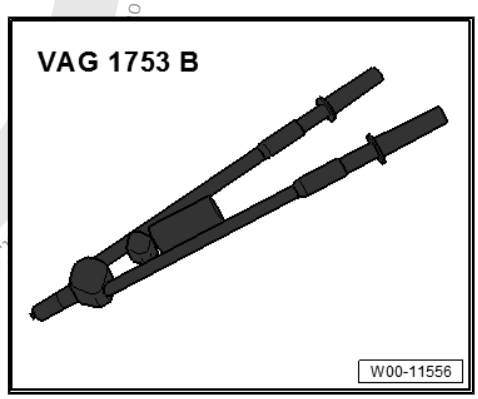
Torque settings

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for storage compartment	8 Nm

2.27 Removing and installing fire extinguisher holder on seat frame

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-

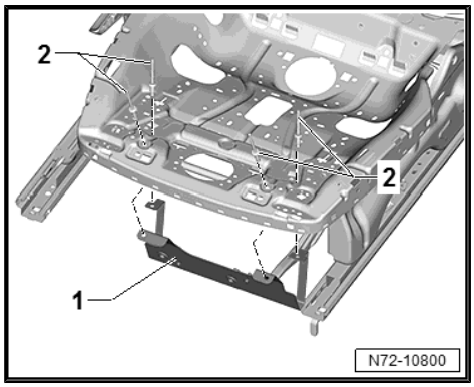


Removing

– Remove fire extinguisher.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove cover and padding from seat pan ⇒ page 345 .
– Remove fire extinguisher holder ⇒ page 312 .
– Drill open and remove pop rivets -2-.
– Remove holder for fire extinguisher -1- from seat frame.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Insert new pop rivets, and install them using pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072- .

2.28 Removing and installing fire extinguisher holder

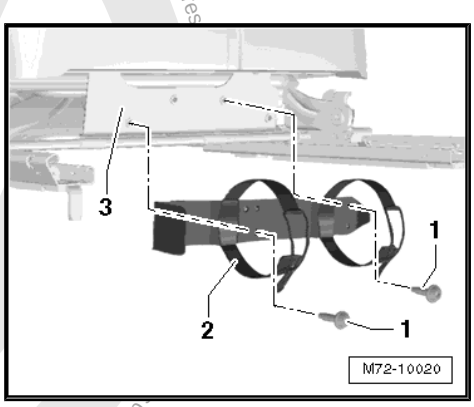
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing

– Remove fire extinguisher.
– Unscrew bolts -1-.
– Remove fire-extinguisher holder -2- from bracket -3- on seat frame.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage, and renew them as necessary.

Torque settings

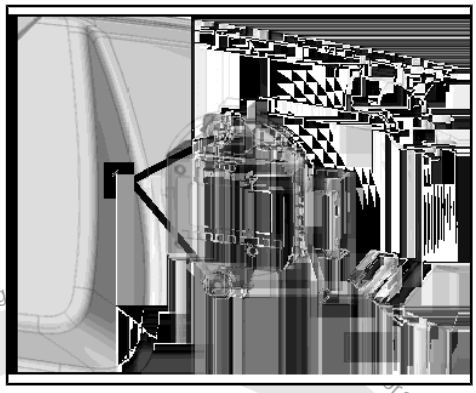
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee the accuracy of this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.29 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side.
Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Removing



– Remove seat trim on sill side ⇒ page 286 .
– Disconnect electrical connector for lumbar support adjustment switch - E176- / -E177- .
– Unscrew bolts -1-.
– Remove switch -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

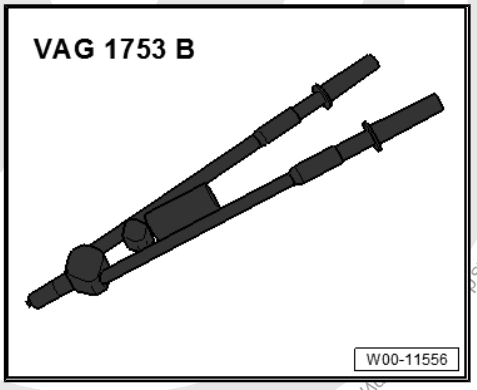
Torque settings

Component	Specified torque
Bolt -1-	1 Nm

2.30 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor -V125- / -V126- / -V129- / -V130-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



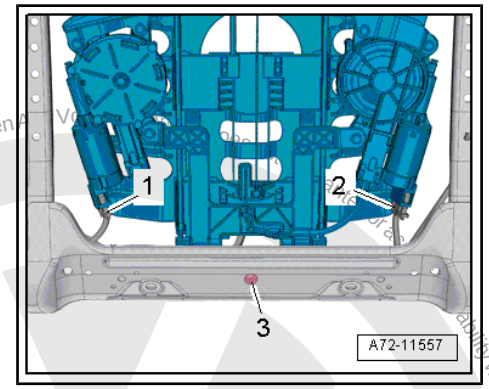
♦ Hand drill
♦ Safety goggles

Removing

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 275 .
– Remove backrest cover and backrest padding ⇒ page 348 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this

– Release and pull off connectors -1 and 2- on motors.



WARNING

Risk of eye injury.

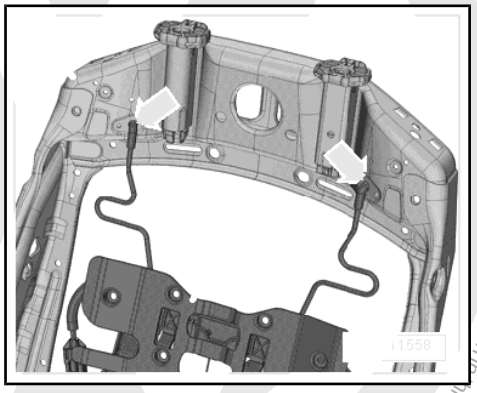
- *Wear safety goggles.*

– Drill out rivet -3-.

Continued for all vehicles

– Swing lumbar support -1- at bottom towards front.

– Detach lumbar support -1- on top from backrest frame -2- -arrows- and remove it.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Attach lumbar support -1- on top to backrest frame -2- -arrows- and swing toward rear at bottom.

– Rivet lumbar support to backrest frame.

Torque settings

- ⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - front backrest”, page 265
- ⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 261

2.31 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit -E470- / -E471-

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side.
Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

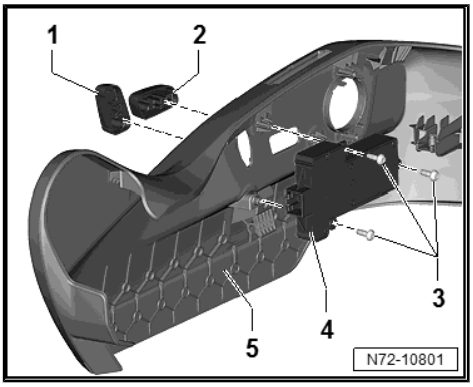
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Release tool - T10236-



Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. This document, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information.

Removing



– Remove seat trim on sill side ⇒ page 289 .
– Carefully lever buttons -1- and -2- out of catches on seat adjustment operating unit using release tool - T10236- .
– Unscrew bolts -3-.
– Remove seat adjustment operating unit -4-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

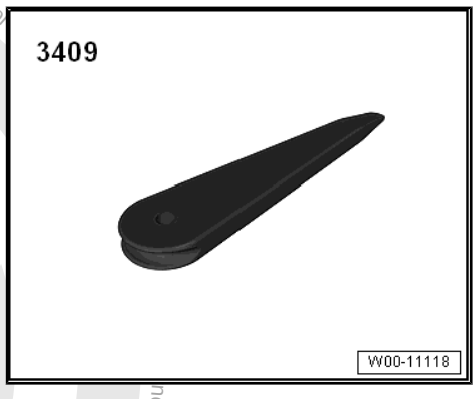
Torque settings

Component	Specified torque
Bolt -3- for seat adjustment operating unit	1 Nm

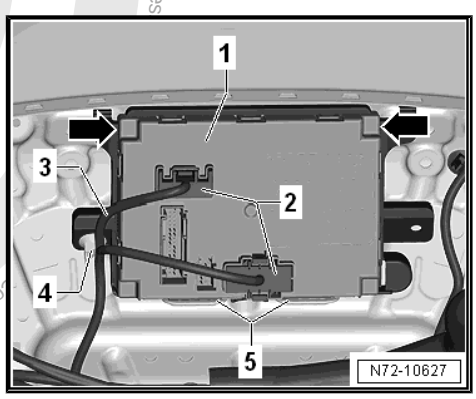
2.32 Removing and installing massage control unit - J740-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing



– Unclip wiring harness -3- from retainer.
– To do this, lever off cable retainer -4- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Release connectors -2- and pull them off.
– Release massage control unit - J740- -1- from retaining tabs -5-.
– Pull massage control unit - J740- -1- out of mountings -arrows-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Renew any damaged cable ties and clips.
– Route wires in their original positions.

Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 261
♦ ⇒ “2.4 Assembly overview - seat pan”, page 267

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.33 Removing and installing seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory - J136-

Removal and installation of the seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory - J136- are the same as for the massage control unit - J740- .

– Removing and installing massage control unit - J740- ⇒ page 315 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3 Rear seats

⇒ “3.1 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats”, page 317

⇒ “3.2 Assembly overview - locking mechanism”, page 319

⇒ “3.3 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats”, page 320

⇒ “3.4 Assembly overview - load-through hatch and centre armrest”, page 323

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing head restraint”, page 324

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing bench seat / individual seats”, page 325

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing rear seat backrest”, page 327

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism”, page 329

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing locking mechanism for load-through hatch”, page 330

⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing through-loading aperture”, page 331

⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing centre armrest”, page 332

⇒ “3.12 Removing and installing seat trim on sill side”, page 333

⇒ “3.13 Removing and installing seat trim on tunnel side”, page 334

⇒ “3.14 Removing and installing head restraint guide”, page 334

⇒ “3.15 Disconnecting and connecting Bowden cable for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest”, page 335

⇒ “3.16 Removing and installing operating handle for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest”, page 336

⇒ “3.17 Removing and installing Bowden cable for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest”, page 337

3.1 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1 - Rear bench seat

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 364

2 - Guide

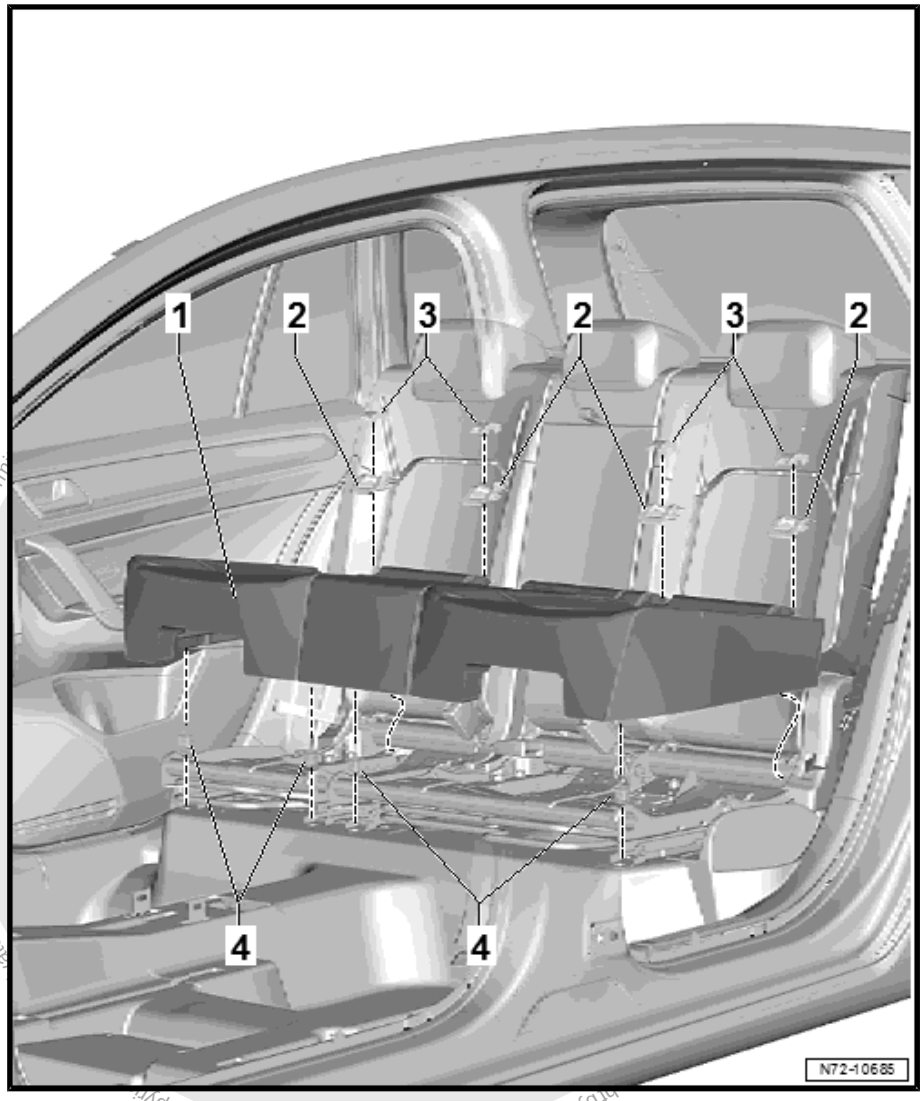
- ❑ For ISOFIX child seat anchor
- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

3 - Cover

- ❑ For ISOFIX child seat anchor
- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

4 - Mounting grommet

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ For securing rear bench seat.
- ❑ Clipped into seat frames
- ❑ Renew if damaged



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

3.2 Assembly overview - locking mechanism

1 - Load-through hatch frame

2 - Trim for locking mechanism

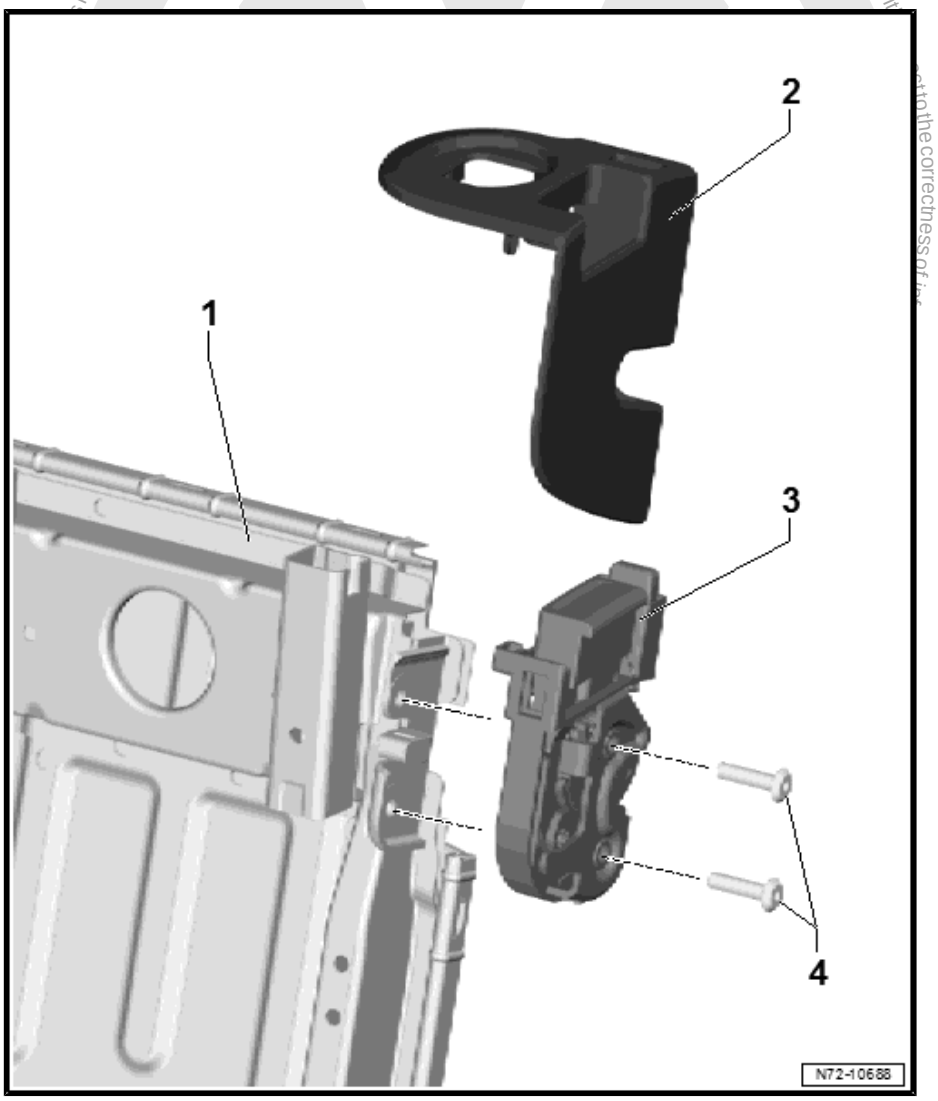
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 329

3 - Locking mechanism for load-through hatch

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 330

4 - Rivet

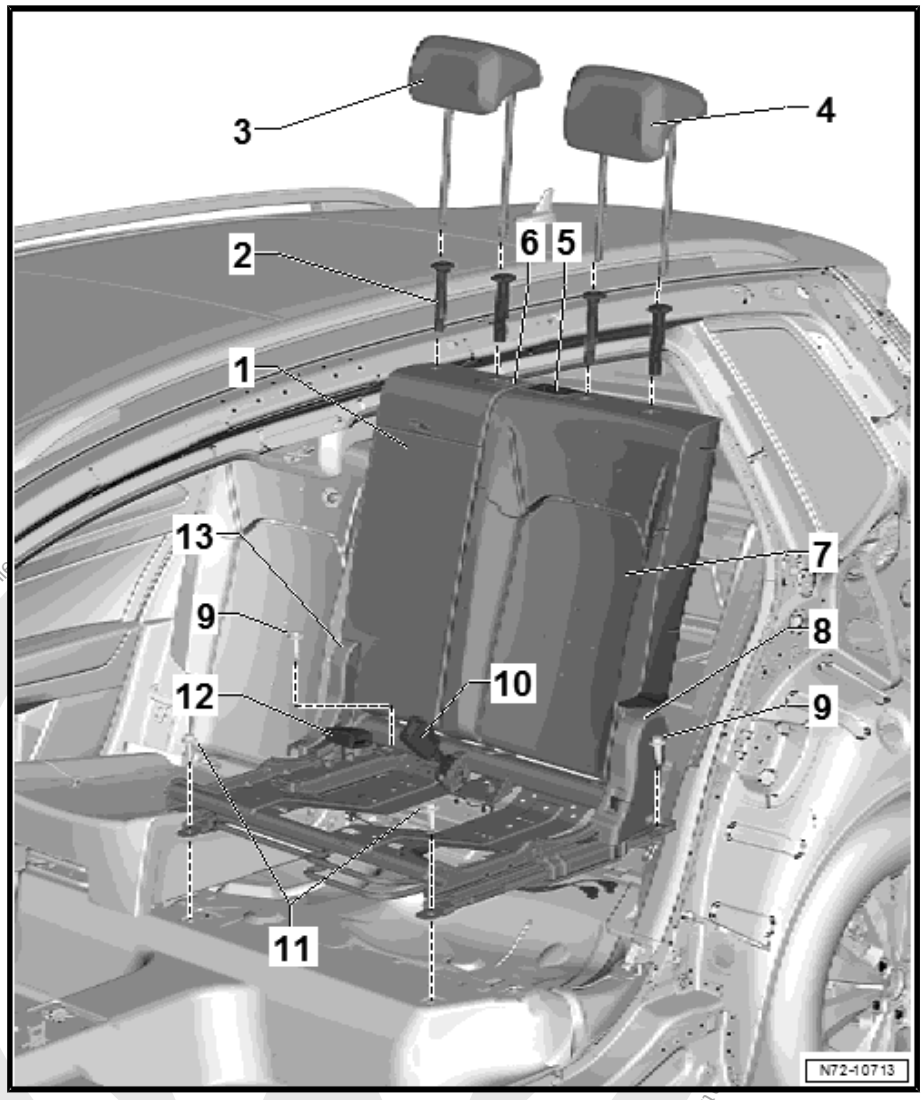
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ In the event of repair the rivets must be replaced by bolts and nuts
- ❑ Specified torque for bolts in event of repair: 23 Nm



...not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with ... to the correctness of ...

3.3 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats

Rear seat, complete



1 - Through loading aperture

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment, with centre armrest
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 323
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 331
- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 368

2 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 334

3 - Centre head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 324

4 - Outer head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 324

5 - Rear centre belt guide

- ❑ Renew complete belt guide if damaged.
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 81

6 - Lock

- ❑ For pass-through.
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 319

7 - Rear seat

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 325

8 - Seat trim on sill side

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

9 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 65 Nm

10 - Rear outer belt buckle

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 83
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 93

11 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 40 Nm

12 - Rear centre belt buckle

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 83

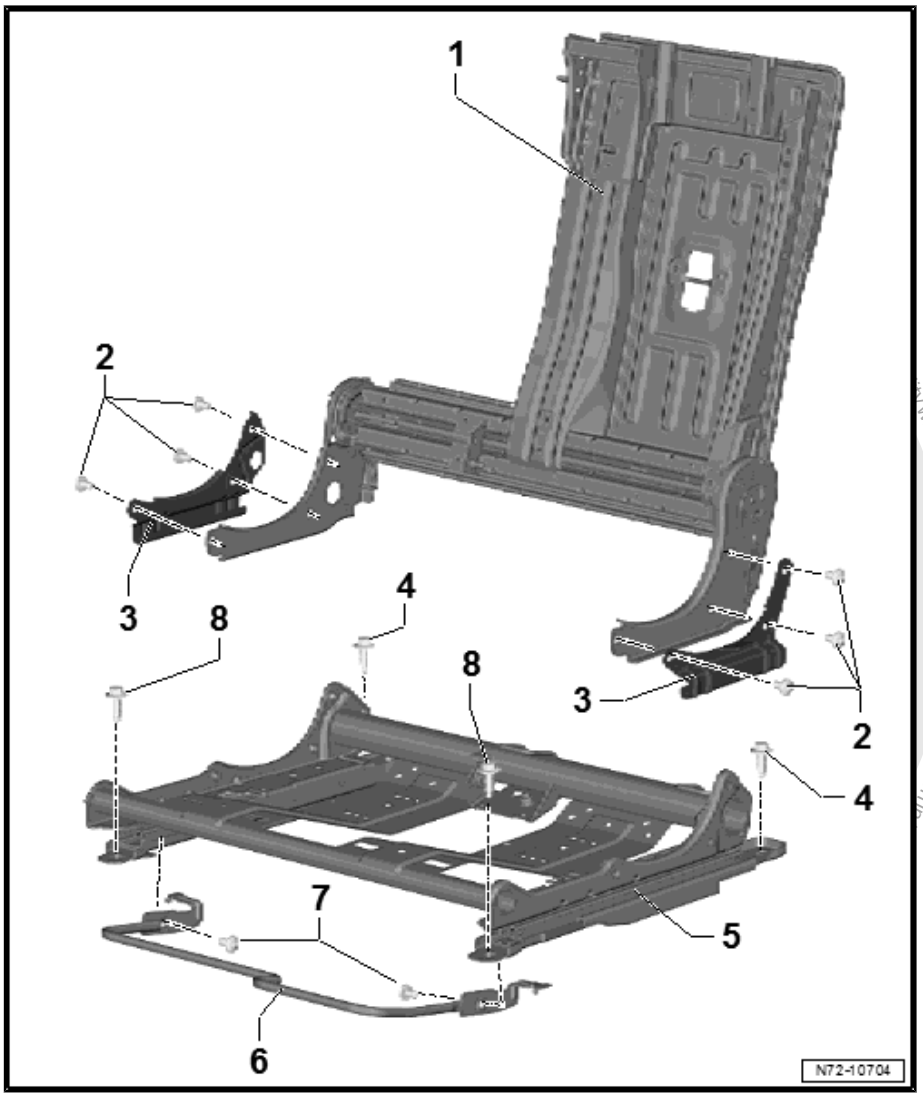
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. This document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 94

13 - Seat trim on tunnel side

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 334

Rear seat (2/3)



1 - Rear bulkhead 2/3

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 327

2 - Bolt

❑ Qty. 6
❑ Clean prior to reinstalling.
❑ Insert with locking fluid
❑ 24 Nm

3 - Reinforcing bracket

4 - Bolt

❑ Qty. 2
❑ Specified torque ⇒ Item 9 (page 320)

5 - Seat pan 2/3

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 327

6 - Lever

❑ For longitudinal seat adjustment
❑ Removing
– Unscrew bolts -7-.
– Detach lever from seat rails, and remove it.
❑ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

7 - Bolt

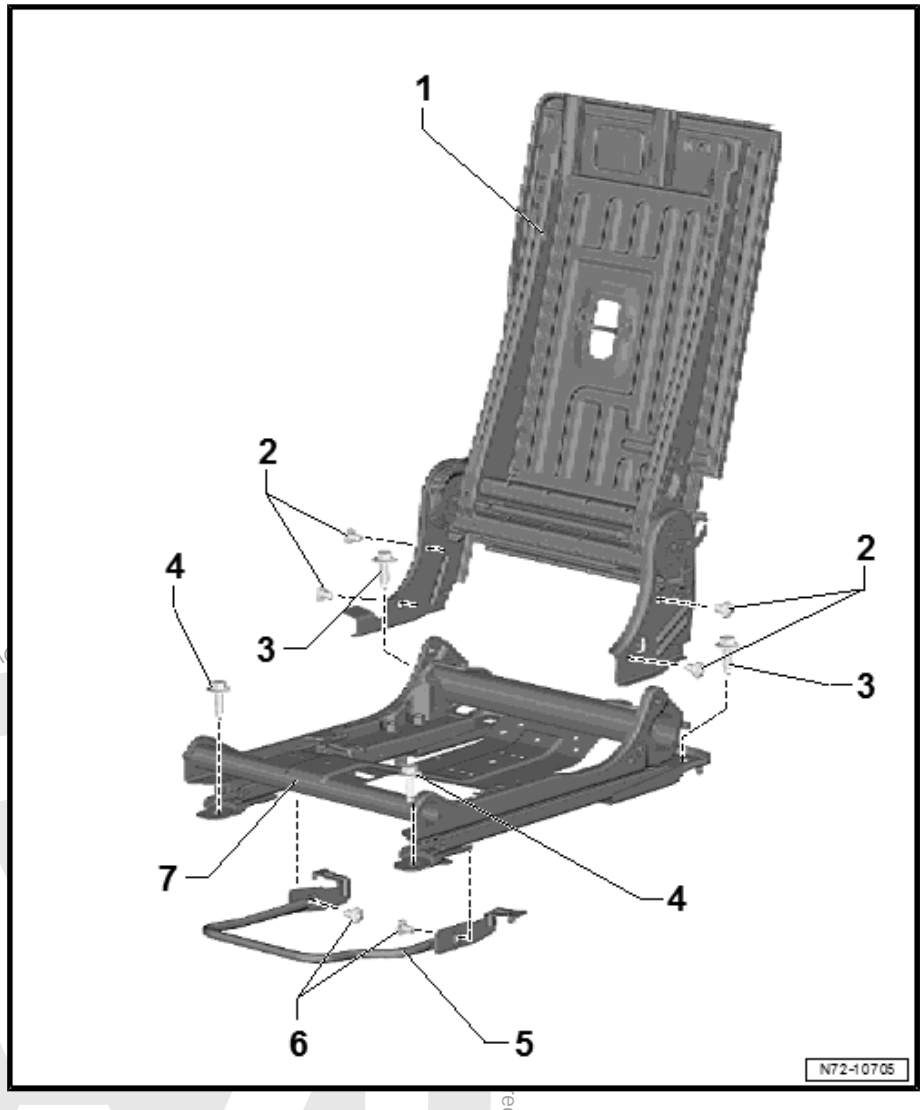
❑ Qty. 2
❑ Clean prior to reinstalling.
❑ Insert with locking fluid
❑ 8 Nm

8 - Bolt

❑ Qty. 2
❑ Specified torque ⇒ Item 11 (page 320)

Rear seat (1/3)

...with respect to the correctness of information in...



1 - Rear panel (1/3)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 327

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ Clean prior to reinstalling.
- ❑ Insert with locking fluid
- ❑ 24 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Specified torque ⇒ Item 9 (page 320)

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Specified torque ⇒ Item 11 (page 320)

5 - Lever

- ❑ For longitudinal seat adjustment
- ❑ Removing
- – Unscrew bolts -6-.
- – Detach lever from seat rails, and remove it.
- ❑ Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Clean prior to reinstalling.
- ❑ Insert with locking fluid
- ❑ 8 Nm

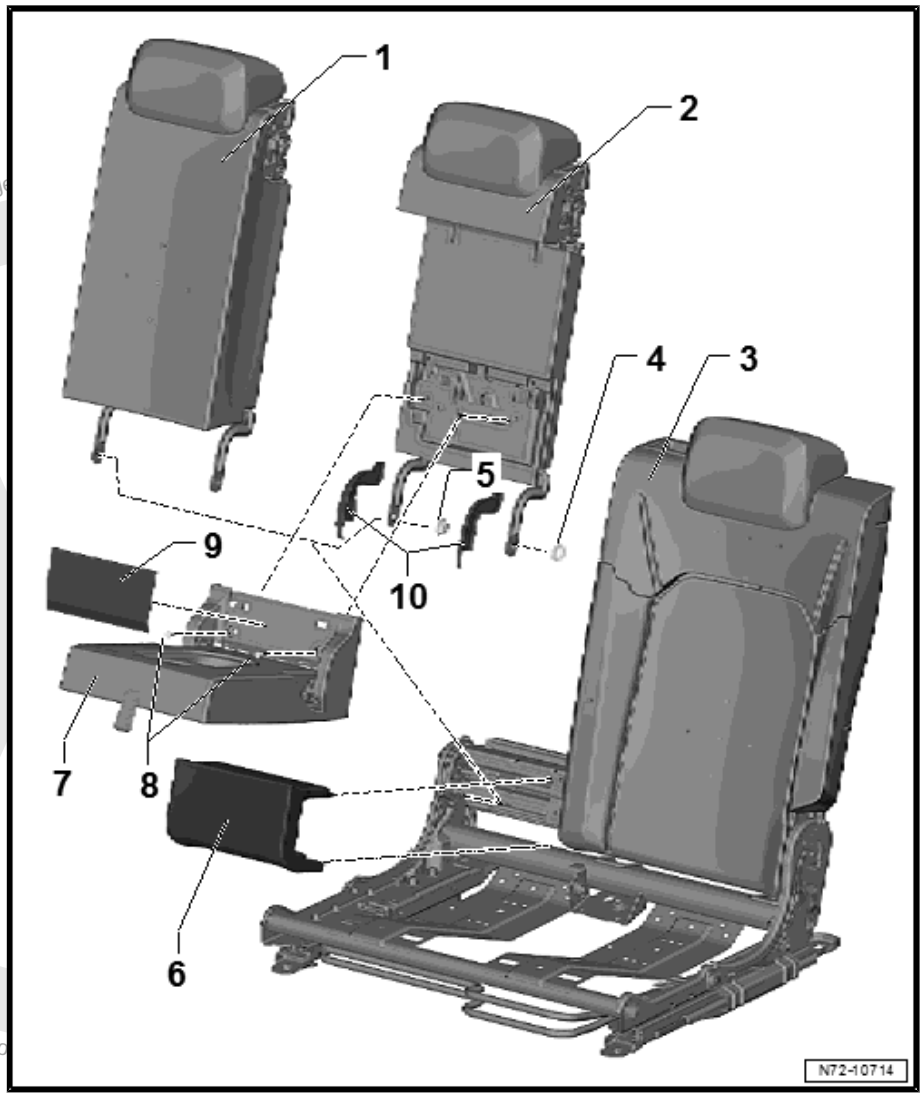
7 - Seat pan (1/3)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 327

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ectness of information in this document.

3.4 Assembly overview - load-through hatch and centre armrest

Through loading aperture



1 - Through loading aperture
- ❑ Without centre armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 331
- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 368

2 - Through loading aperture
- ❑ With centre armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 331
- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 368

3 - Rear seat 2/3 left
- ❑ With pass-through.
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Securing clip

5 - Nut
- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Intermediate padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 369

7 - Centre armrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 332

8 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Specified torque ⇒ Item 6 (page 324)

9 - Trim
- ❑ Clipped into trim cover

10 - Cover

Centre armrest

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen

1 - Through loading aperture

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 331

2 - Centre armrest bracket

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 332

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Centre armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 332

5 - Cup holder

- ❑ Clipped into centre armrest

6 - Bolt

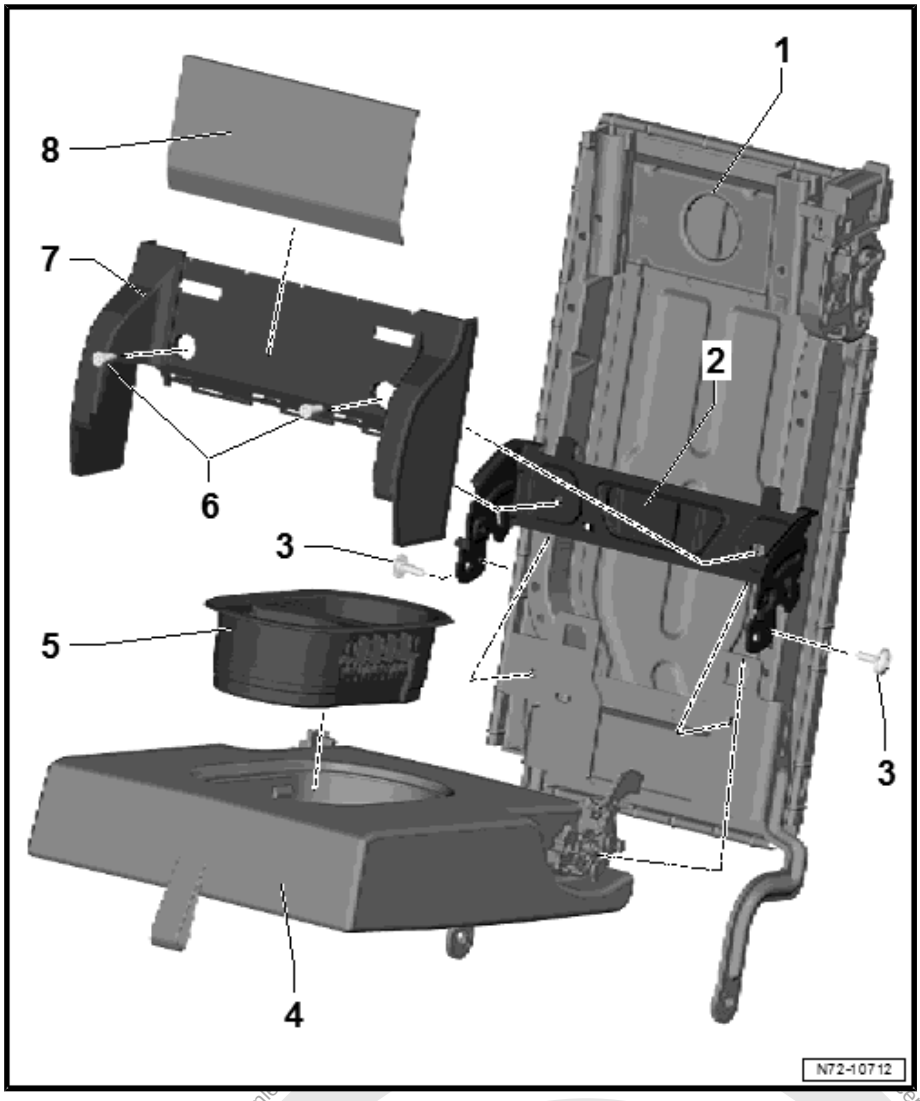
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 8 Nm

7 - Cover trim

- ❑ Clipped to centre armrest bracket

8 - Trim

- ❑ Clipped into trim cover

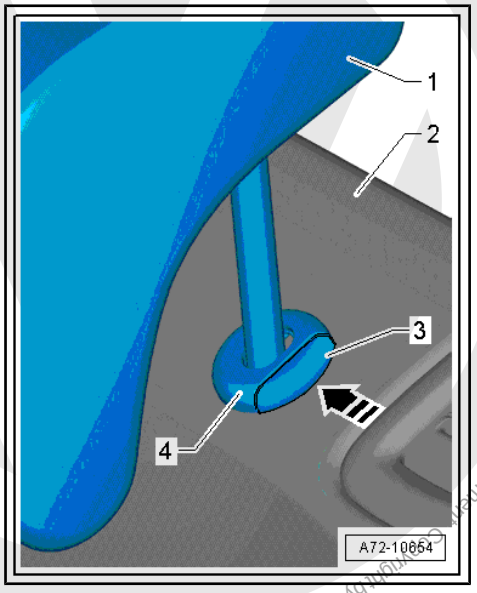


3.5 Removing and installing head restraint

Removing

– Press release button -3- for height adjustment on head restraint guide -4- in -direction of arrow-.

– At the same time, pull head restraint -1- out of rear seat backrest -2-, and remove it.



Note

The aperture in the head restraint guide -arrow- may be on »right« or »left« as seen from direction of travel.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3.6 Removing and installing bench seat / individual seats

Note

Removal and installation is described for the rear seat (2/3). Follow same instructions for the rear seat (1/3) as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1332-



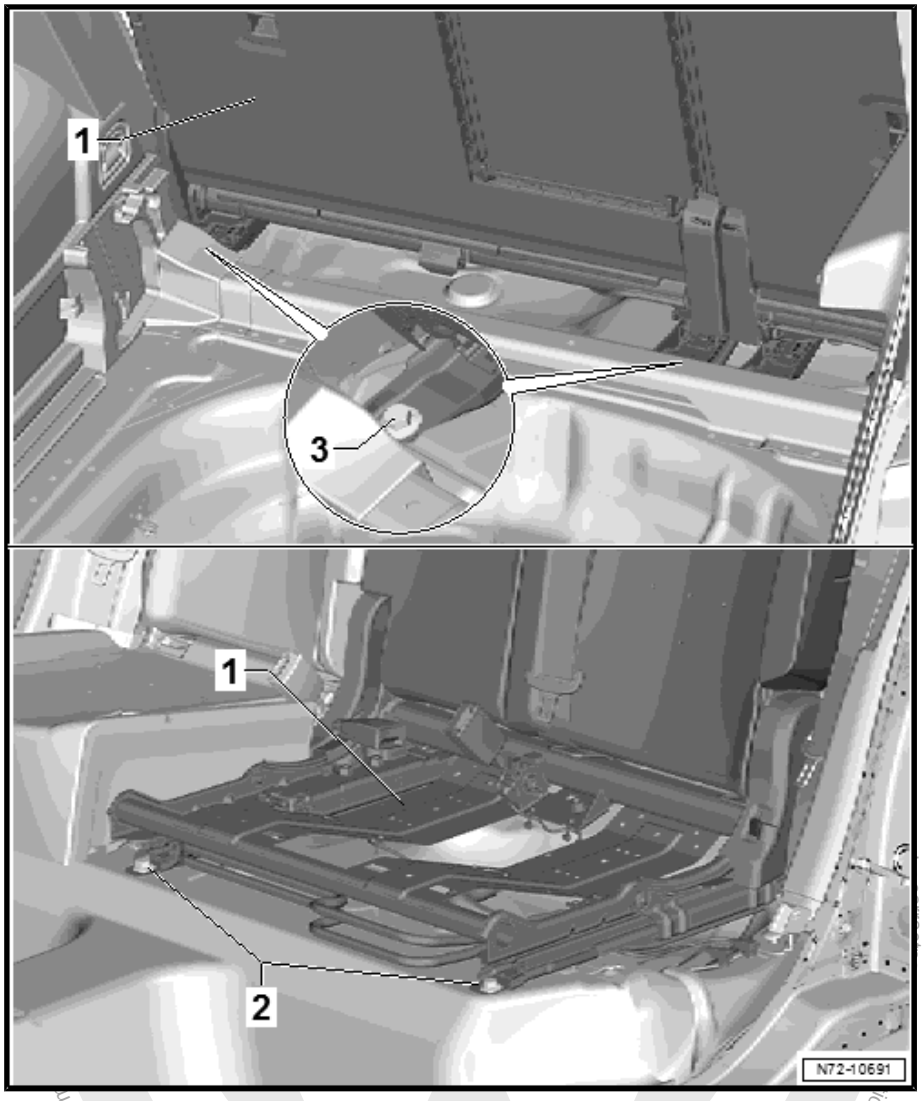
Removing

WARNING

Observe general safety regulations when working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components) ⇒ page 1 .

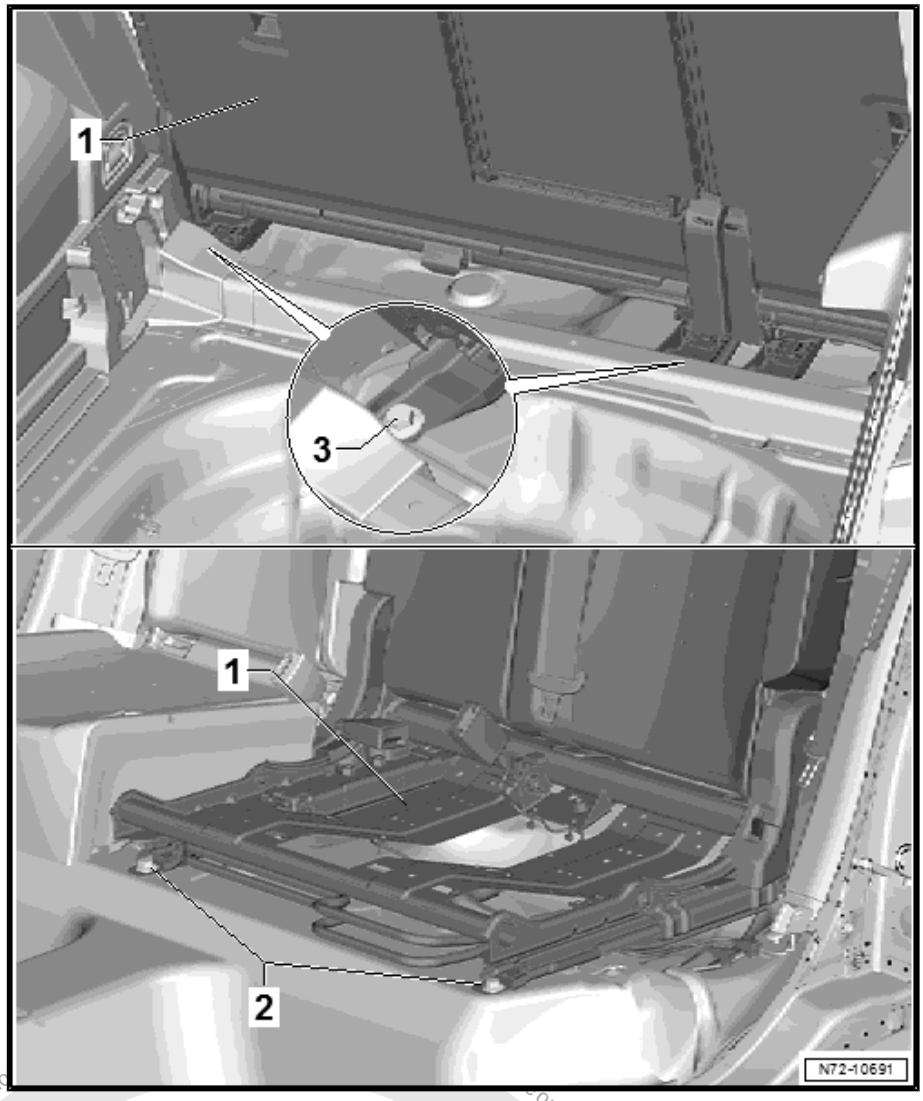
– Disconnect battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Remove respective bench seat ⇒ page 364 .
– Remove respective rear sill panel moulding ⇒ page 210 .
– Disconnect any connectors depending on vehicle equipment.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Move rear seat (2/3) -1- to foremost position using fore and aft adjustment mechanism.
– Unscrew bolts -3-.
– Move rear seat (2/3) -1- to rearmost position using fore and aft adjustment mechanism.
– Unscrew bolts -2-.
– Fold backrest of rear seat (2/3) -1- towards front, and carefully remove rear seat 2/3 with the aid of a 2nd mechanic from vehicle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Installing

– With the aid of a 2nd mechanic, carefully lift rear seat (2/3) -1- into vehicle.
– Position rear seat 2/3 -1- with centring pin.
– First, screw in bolts -2-, and tighten them.
– Move rear seat (2/3) -1- to foremost position using fore and aft adjustment mechanism.
– Screw in bolts -3- and tighten them.

Continue installation in reverse order of removal.

Torque settings

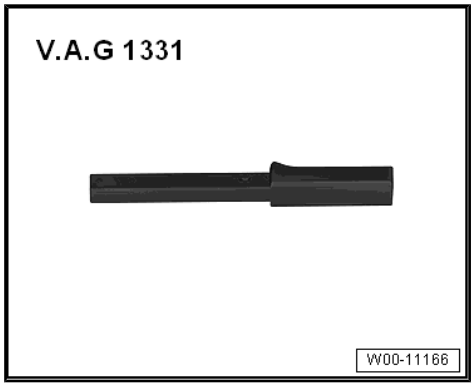
◆ ⇒ “3.3 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats”, page 320

3.7 Removing and installing rear seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



WARNING

After the bolts for the rear seat backrest have been loosened, the backrest release mechanism must not be operated. If the backrest release mechanism is nevertheless operated, the rear seat backrest must be renewed.

Removing

– Switch off ignition.
– Remove rear seats ⇒ page 325 .
– Remove seat trim on sill side ⇒ page 333 .
– Remove seat trim on tunnel side ⇒ page 334 .
– Remove rear centre belt end anchor ⇒ page 90 .

Vehicles with rear side airbag

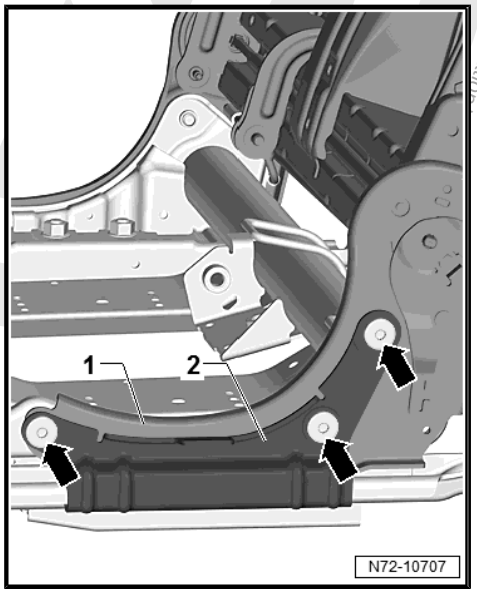
Note

It is recommended to make sketches or take photographs of how the wires for the rear side airbag are routed. This guarantees that everything is re-installed in its original position.

– Remove wire for remove side airbag from seat pan, and lay it to one side.

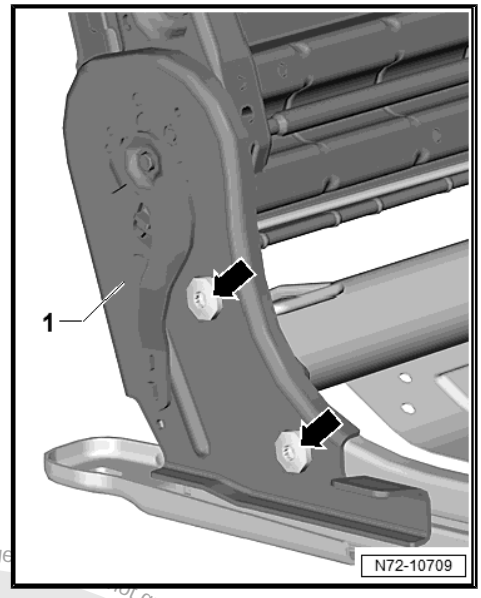
Rear seat backrest (2/3)

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- for rear seat backrest -1- on both sides of rear seat.
– Remove reinforcing bracket -2- on left and right.
– Detach rear seat backrest -1- from seat pan.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information.

Rear seat backrest (1/3)



– Unscrew bolts -arrows- for rear seat backrest -1- on both sides of rear seat.

– Detach rear seat backrest -1- from seat pan.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

A new rear seat backrest is delivered with a transport lock for the backrest release mechanism. The transport lock must not be removed until the rear seat backrest has been bolted completely to the seat pan.

– Clean bolts for rear seat backrest before reinstalling them.

– Insert bolts for rear seat backrest with locking fluid.

– When the rear seat backrest has been bolted completely to the seat pan, unclip transport lock.

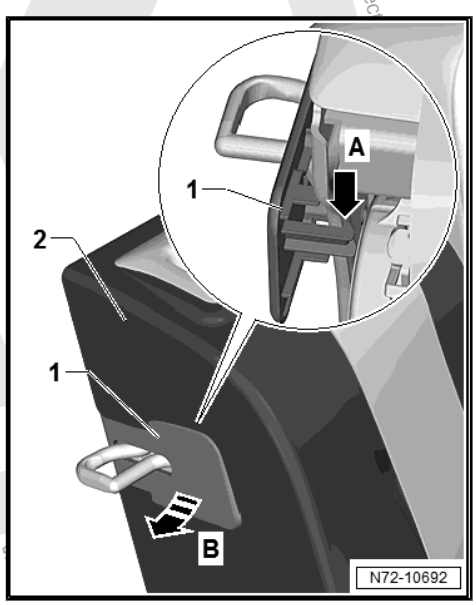
Torque settings

◆ ⇒ “3.3 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats”, page 320

3.8 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism

Removing

Trim for locking mechanism of load-through hatch on rear seat backrest



– Release load-through hatch, and fold it towards front.

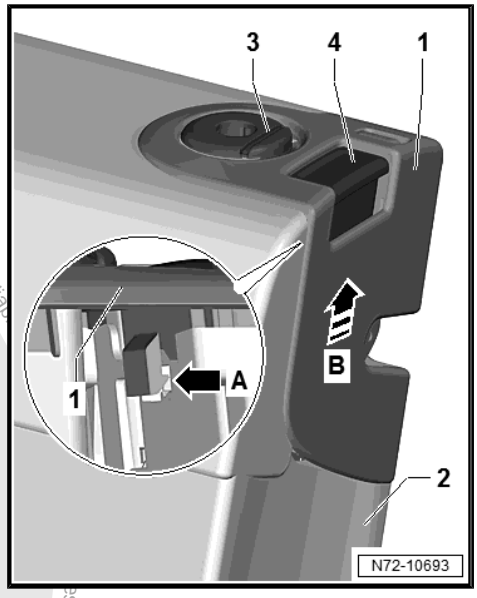
– Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, carefully push padding and cover -2- aside.

– Using a screwdriver, carefully release catch -arrow A- on trim -1-.

– At the same time, carefully unclip trim -1- in -direction arrow B- from rear seat backrest -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect

Trim for locking mechanism of load-through hatch on load-through hatch



– Release load-through hatch, and fold it towards front.
– Remove head restraint of load-through hatch ⇒ page 324 .
– Remove head restraint guide -3-.
– To do this, grasp under trim -1- and head restraint guide -3-, and pull both components upwards with a firm jerk.
– Grasp at bottom under trim -1-, and pull it slightly off load-through hatch -2-.
– At the same time, pull trim -1- upwards off load-through hatch -2- and release handle -4- -arrow B-, and remove it.

Due to the catch -arrow A- on trim -1-, a high level of force is required to pull off the trim.

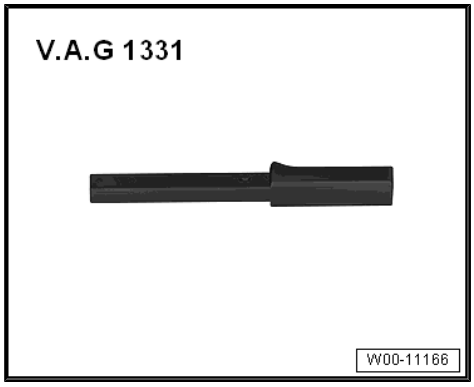
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– After the trim has been installed, the locking mechanism of the load-through hatch must work smoothly.

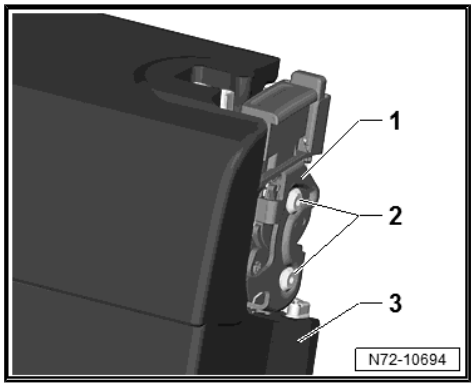
3.9 Removing and installing locking mechanism for load-through hatch

Special tools and workshop equipment required



♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-
♦ Hand drill
♦ Safety goggles

Removing



– Remove trim for locking mechanism of load-through hatch on load-through hatch ⇒ page 329 .
– Release backrest cover only in area of locking mechanism ⇒ page 366 .
– Unscrew bolts -2-. While doing so, counterhold nuts on opposite side of load-through hatch frame.
– Remove locking mechanism -1- from frame of load-through hatch -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Installing

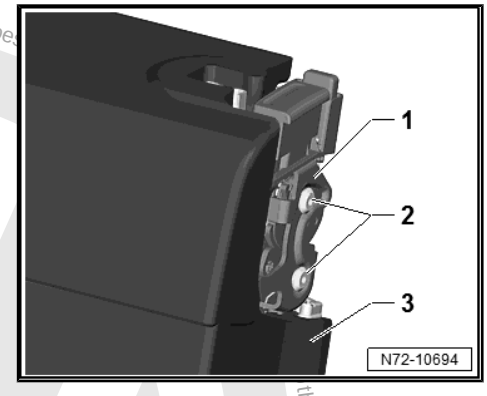
Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Install locking mechanism -1- with bolts -2- to frame of load-through hatch -3-.

– Counterhold nuts on opposite side of load-through hatch frame when tightening bolts -2-.

Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “3.2 Assembly overview - locking mechanism”, page 319



3.10 Removing and installing through-loading aperture

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-

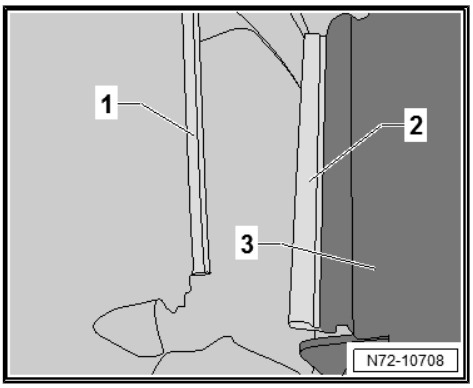


Removing

– Release load-through hatch, and fold it towards front.

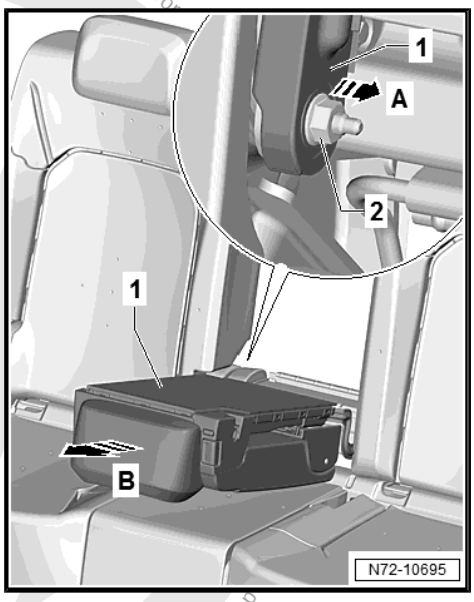
– Release fastening strip -1- at cover of intermediate padding from fastening strip -2- on cover of load-through hatch -3-.

– Fold load-through hatch back up, and lock it.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does the correctness of

– Carefully push intermediate padding with cover aside until nut -2- is accessible.
– Unscrew nut -2- (only installed on right pin).
– Lever securing clip ⇒ Item 4 (page 323) off left pin. To do this, carefully push backrest padding with cover aside.
– Release load-through hatch -1-, and fold it towards front.
– Pull load-through hatch -1- towards left -arrow A- off pins, and remove it towards front -arrow B-. While doing so, carefully push aside cover and padding on rear seat backrest and on intermediate padding.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Slide securing clip ⇒ Item 4 (page 323) onto pin as far as stop.

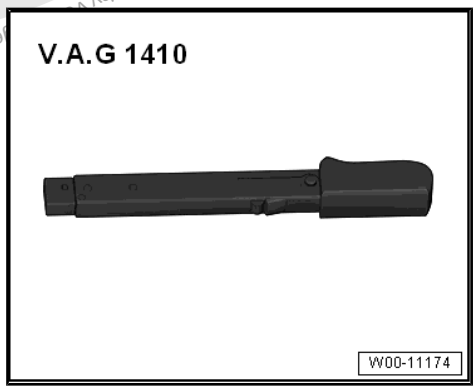
Torque settings

◆ ⇒ “3.4 Assembly overview - load-through hatch and centre armrest”, page 323

3.11 Removing and installing centre armrest

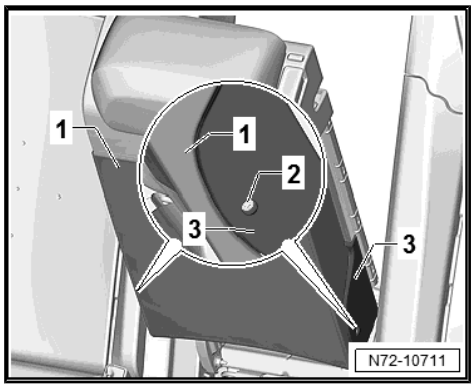
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1410-

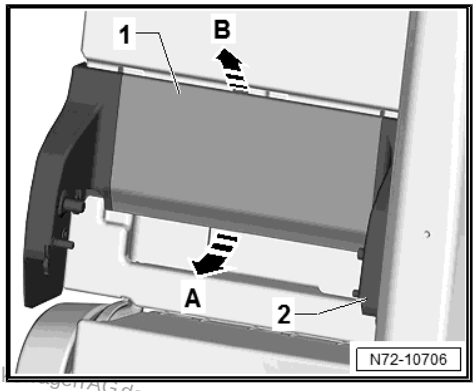


Removing

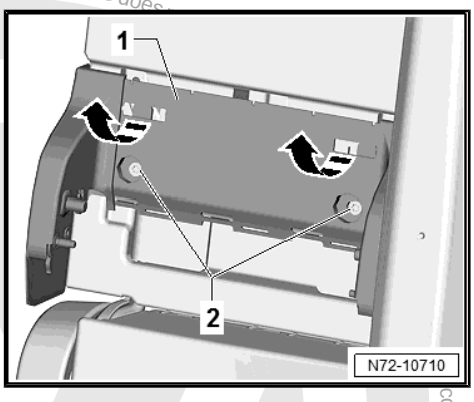
– Fold load-through hatch towards front until bolts -2- are accessible.
– Unscrew bolt -2- on left and right.
– Fold load-through hatch back up, and lock it.
– Then, remove centre armrest -1- from centre armrest bracket -3-.



– Unclip trim -1- at bottom from trim cover -2- -arrow A-.
– Then, remove trim -1- upwards from trim cover -2- -arrow B-.



– Unscrew bolts -2-.
– Remove centre armrest bracket -1- with trim cover in -direction of arrow- from load-through hatch.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Torque settings

◆ ⇒ “3.4 Assembly overview - load-through hatch and centre armrest”, page 323

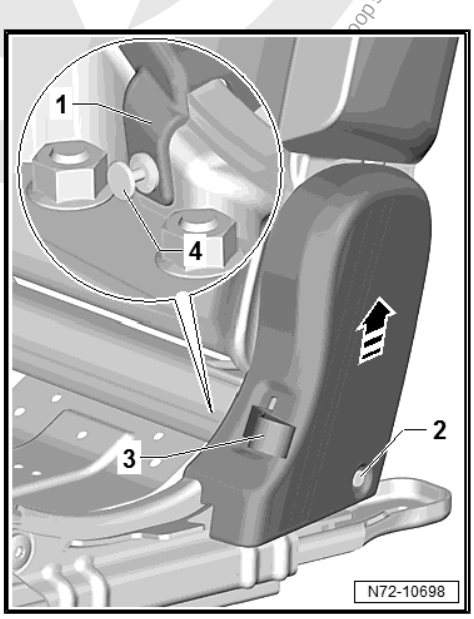
3.12 Removing and installing seat trim on sill side

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Removing

– Remove bench seat ⇒ page 364 .
– Move rear seat (2/3) to foremost position using fore and aft adjustment mechanism.
– Remove spreader rivets -2- and -4-.
– Release rear seat backrest and fold forwards.
– Unclip seat trim -1- upwards from seat frame -arrow-.
– Guide loop -3- for backrest release mechanism out of seat trim -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage, and renew them if necessary.

– After the seat trim on sill side has been installed, check proper operation of backrest release mechanism using loop.

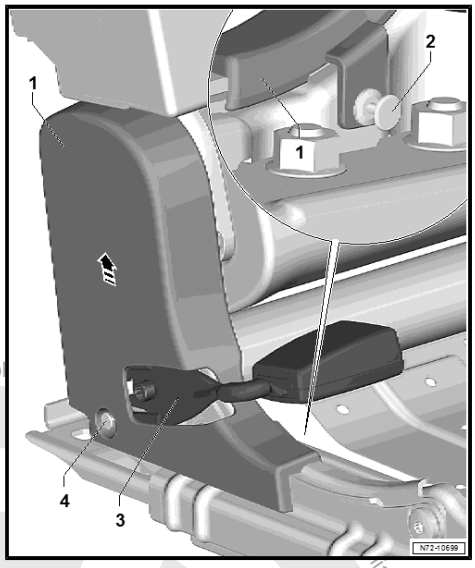
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

3.13 Removing and installing seat trim on tunnel side

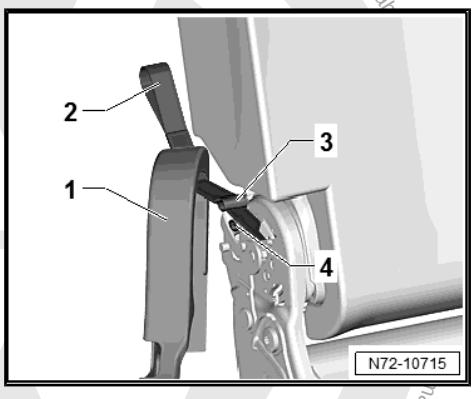
Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Removing



- Move rear seat (1/3) to foremost position using longitudinal adjustment mechanism.
- Move rear seat (2/3) to rearmost position using longitudinal adjustment mechanism.
- Remove bench seat ⇒ page 364 .
- Remove spreader rivets -2- and -4-.
- Unscrew bolt for belt buckle -3-.
- Release load-through hatch, and fold it towards front.
- Unclip seat trim -1- upwards from seat frame -arrow-.
- While doing so, guide belt buckle -3- out of seat trim -1-.
- Guide loop for backrest release mechanism out of seat trim -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Before installing, check all fasteners for damage, and renew them if necessary.

- Load-through hatch released
- When installing seat trim -1-, lay loop -2- around relay plate -3- .
- If fitted, lay loop -2- over stop -4-.
- After the seat trim on tunnel side -1- has been installed, check proper operation of backrest release mechanism using loop.

3.14 Removing and installing head restraint guide

Note

- *Removal and installation is described for the head restraint guides of the rear seat backrests.*
- *The head restraint guides of the load-through hatch are damaged during removal (pulled out upwards with suitable workshop means) and must be renewed.*

Removing

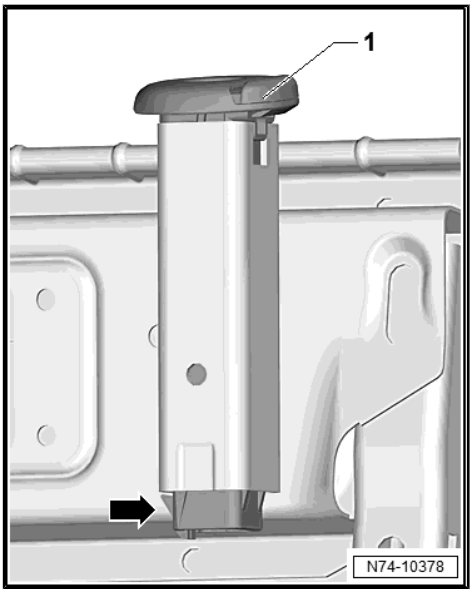
- Remove rear head restraint ⇒ page 324 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove backrest cover and backrest padding ⇒ page 366 .

Left head restraint guide

– Press locking lug inwards -arrow-, and at the same time pull out head restraint guide -1- upwards.



Right head restraint guide

Note

The locking lug on the right head restraint guide faces towards backrest frame.

– Press locking lug towards front, and at the same time pull out head restraint guide upwards.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

3.15 Disconnecting and connecting Bowden cable for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest

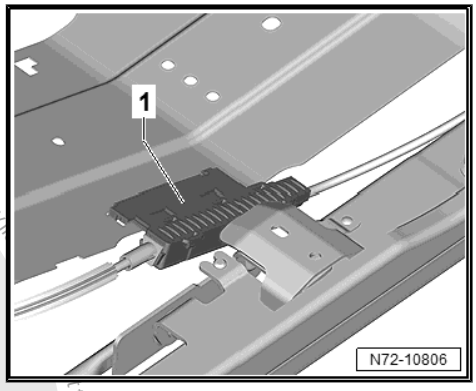
Note

The separating and connecting procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle. The separating and connecting procedures on the right side are analogous.

Disconnecting

– Remove respective bench seat ⇒ page 364 .

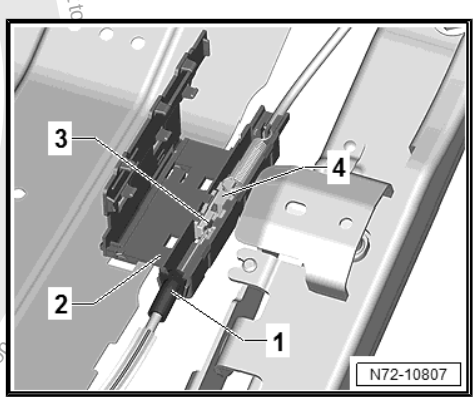
– Fold up cover -1-.



– Pull Bowden cable -1- out of cable support bracket -2-.

– Remove pin of Bowden cable -3- from mounting -4- in connecting piece.

– Thread Bowden cable -1- out of rear seat backrest.



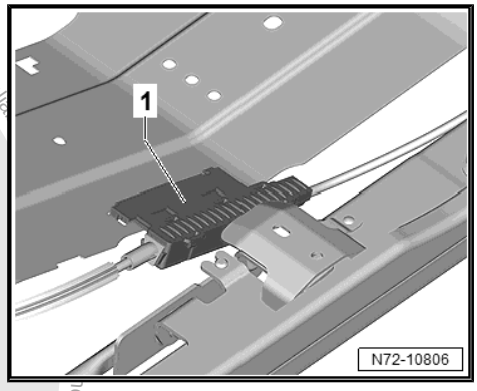
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Connecting

Connect Bowden cables proceeding in the reverse order of removal.

– Fold cover -1- back down.

– Install respective bench seat ⇒ page 364 .

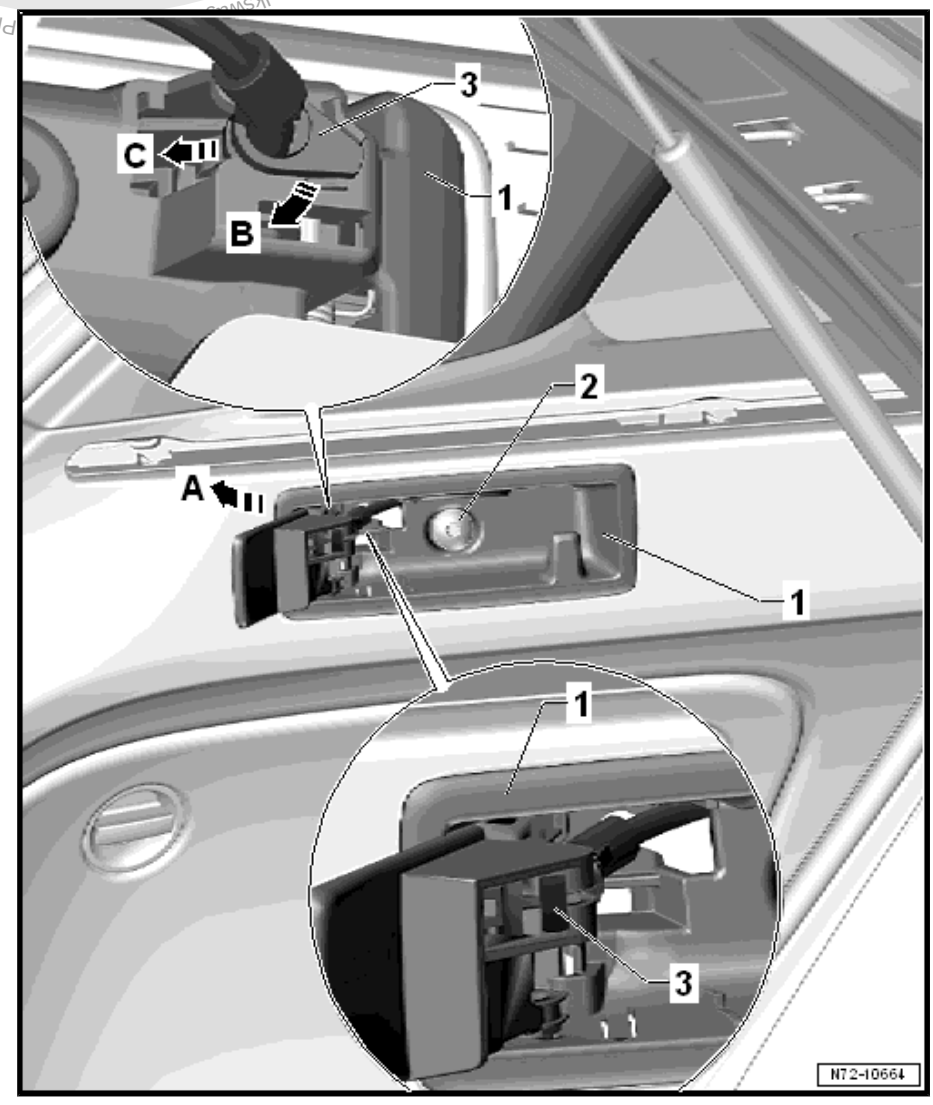


3.16 Removing and installing operating handle for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.

Removing



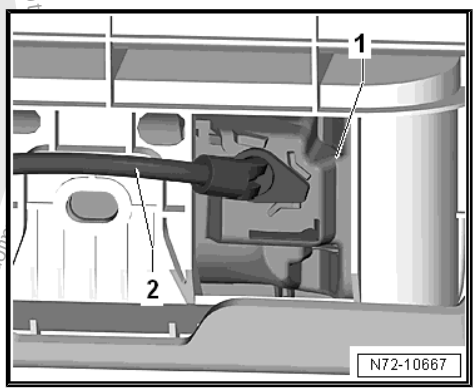
– Pull and hold operating lever to remotely release rear seat backrest -1-.
– Unscrew bolt -2-.
– Unclip operating handle for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest -1- from luggage compartment side trim, and swing it out -arrow A-.
– Release cable support bracket from Bowden cable -3- -arrow B-.
– Push Bowden cable -3- out of cable support bracket of operating handle for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest -1- -arrow C-.
– Detach pin of Bowden cable -3- from operating handle for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest -1-.
– Remove operating handle for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Note

Ensure that the cable support bracket of the Bowden cable -2- is properly seated in the locating lugs of the operating handle for the remote release mechanism of the rear seat backrest -1-.



Torque settings

◆ ⇒ “6.2 Assembly overview - luggage compartment side trim”, page 234

3.17 Removing and installing Bowden cable for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest

⇒ “3.17.1 Removing and installing Bowden cable for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest, Bowden cable on backrest end”, page 337

⇒ “3.17.2 Removing and installing Bowden cable for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest, Bowden cable on vehicle end”, page 338

3.17.1 Removing and installing Bowden cable for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest, Bowden cable on backrest end

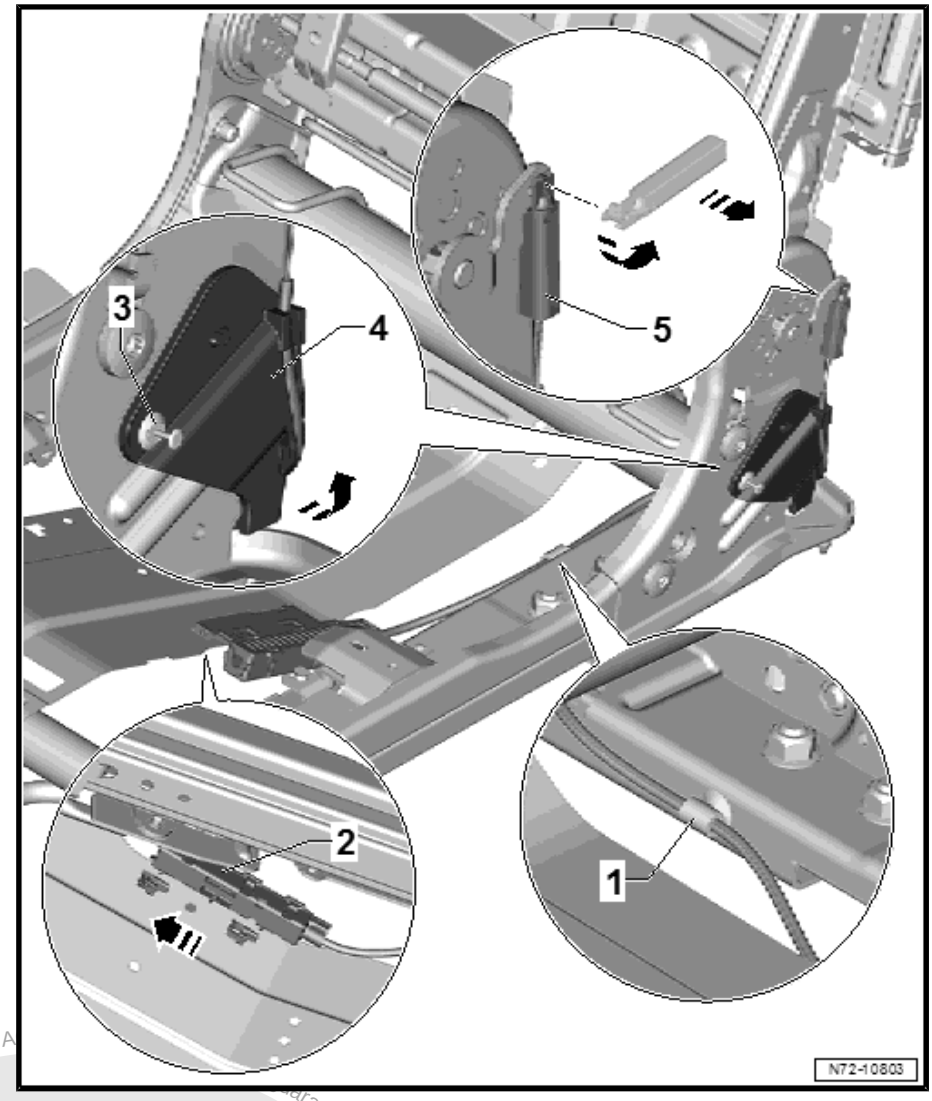
Note

Removal and installation is described for the right side of the vehicle. The procedures for the left side are analogous.

Removing

– Remove respective bench seat ⇒ page 364 .
– Disconnect any connectors depending on vehicle equipment.
– Remove seat trim on tunnel side ⇒ page 334 .
– Disconnect Bowden cable for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest (Bowden cable on vehicle end) at coupling point -2- ⇒ page 335 .

Copyright by Volkswagen. Commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen. VW does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Unclip Bowden cable for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest (Bowden cable on backrest end) -1- from seat pan.
– Pull coupling point -2- towards front -arrow-, and unclip it from seat pan.
– Remove spreader rivet -3-, and pull out guide -4- towards rear.
– Turn release lever -5- upwards, and pull it out.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

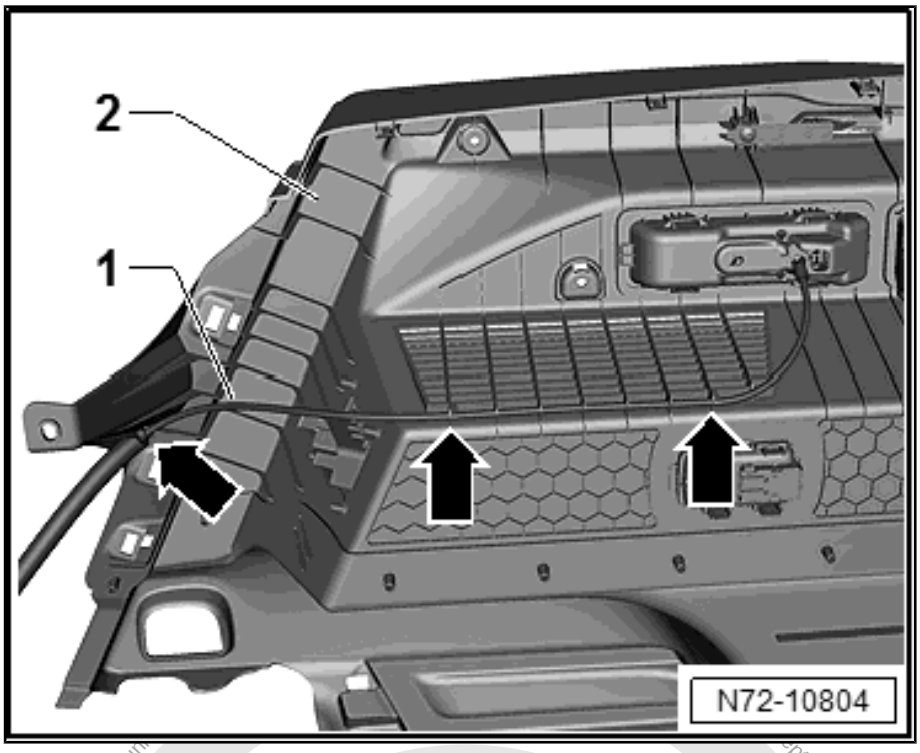
3.17.2 Removing and installing Bowden cable for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest, Bowden cable on vehicle end

Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 241 .
– Remove operating handle for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest ⇒ page 336 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ... guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Detach Bowden cable -1- from retainers -arrows- on luggage compartment side trim -2-, and remove it.



– Unclip Bowden cable from body (wheel housing).
– Disconnect Bowden cable for remote release mechanism of rear seat backrest ⇒ page 335

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

74 – Seat - padding, covers

1 Front seat covers and padding

⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - cover and padding for seat pan”, page 340

⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - cover and padding for backrest”, page 343

⇒ “1.3 Assembly overview - seat heating element”, page 344

⇒ “1.4 Assembly overview - backrest heater element”, page 345

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing cover and padding for seat pan”, page 345

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing backrest cover and backrest padding”, page 348

⇒ “1.7 Separating cover and padding on seat pan”, page 352

⇒ “1.8 Separating cover and padding on backrest”, page 355

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 ”, page 359

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 ”, page 360

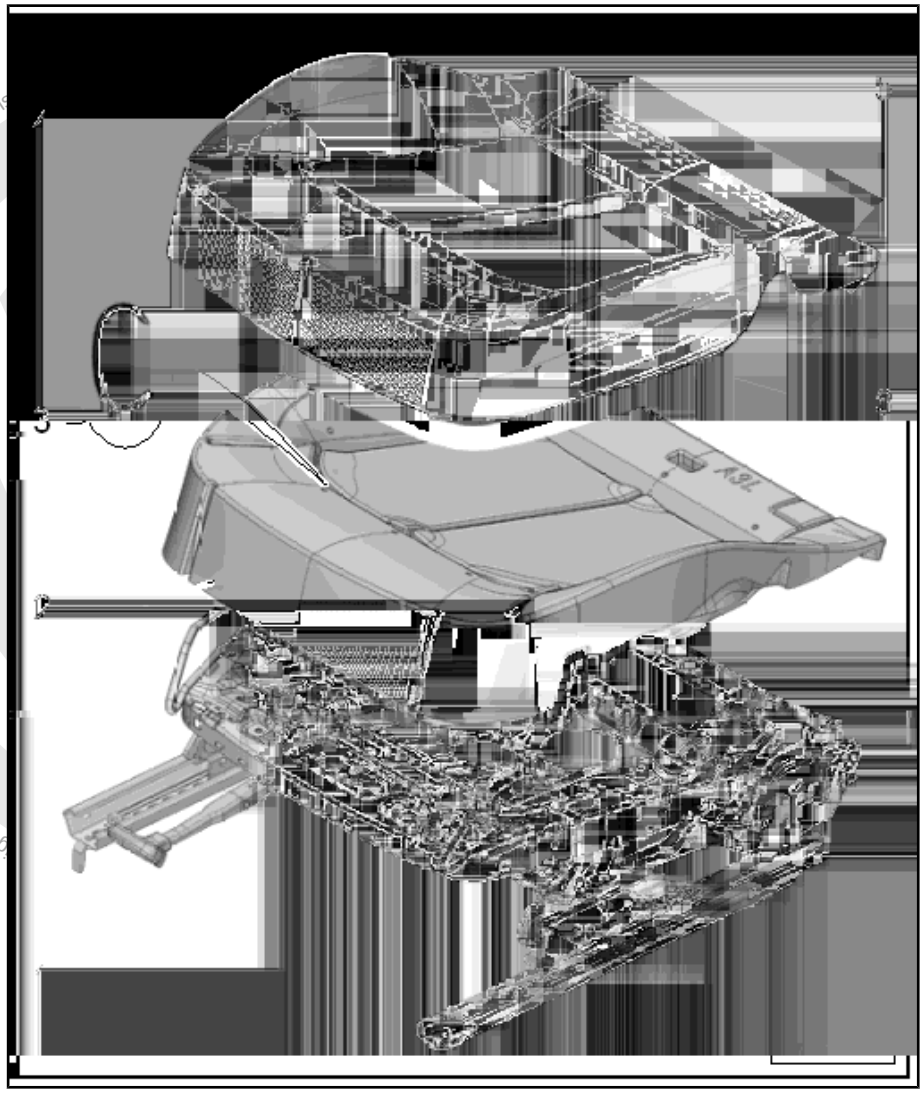
1.1 Assembly overview - cover and padding for seat pan

⇒ “1.1.1 Assembly overview - cover and padding for seat pan”, page 340

⇒ “1.1.2 Assembly overview - cover and padding for seat pan, seat depth adjustment”, page 342

1.1.1 Assembly overview - cover and padding for seat pan

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Seat pan

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 267

2 - Seat padding

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with seat padding ⇒ page 345
- ❑ Separating seat cover from seat padding ⇒ page 352

3 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding
- ❑ Renew after removal
- ❑ When installing, fit in same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- .

4 - Seat cover

- ❑ Different equipment versions.
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with seat padding ⇒ page 345
- ❑ Separating seat cover from seat padding ⇒ page 352
- ❑ After installation, check that there are no creases in seat.

5 - Channel

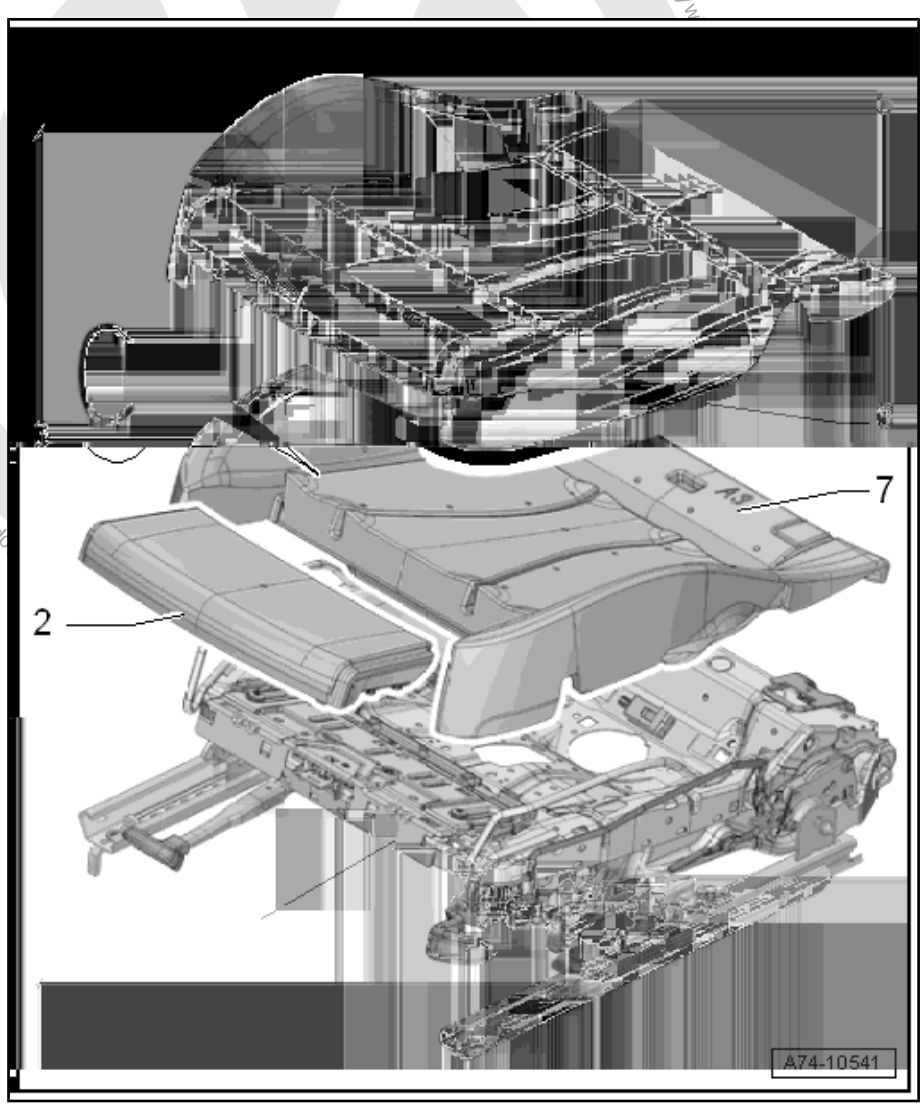
- ❑ Sewn to seat cover
- ❑ For attaching seat cover to upper frame of seat pan
- ❑ Ensure it is properly seated in upper frame of seat pan.

6 - Channel

- ❑ Sewn to seat cover
- ❑ For attaching seat cover to upper frame of seat pan
- ❑ Ensure it is properly seated in upper frame of seat pan.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Alle Rechte vorbehalten. Weitergabe an Dritte ohne Genehmigung der Volkswagen AG unzulässig.

1.1.2 Assembly overview - cover and padding for seat pan, seat depth adjustment



1 - Seat pan

- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 267

2 - Seat padding

- ❑ For seat depth adjustment.
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with seat padding ⇒ page 345
- ❑ Separating seat cover from seat padding ⇒ page 352

3 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding
- ❑ Renew after removal
- ❑ When installing, fit in same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- .

4 - Seat cover

- ❑ Different equipment versions.
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with seat padding ⇒ page 345
- ❑ Separating seat cover from seat padding ⇒ page 352
- ❑ After installation, check that there are no creases in seat.

5 - Channel

- ❑ Sewn to seat cover
- ❑ For attaching seat cover to upper frame of seat pan
- ❑ Ensure it is properly seated in upper frame of seat pan.

6 - Channel

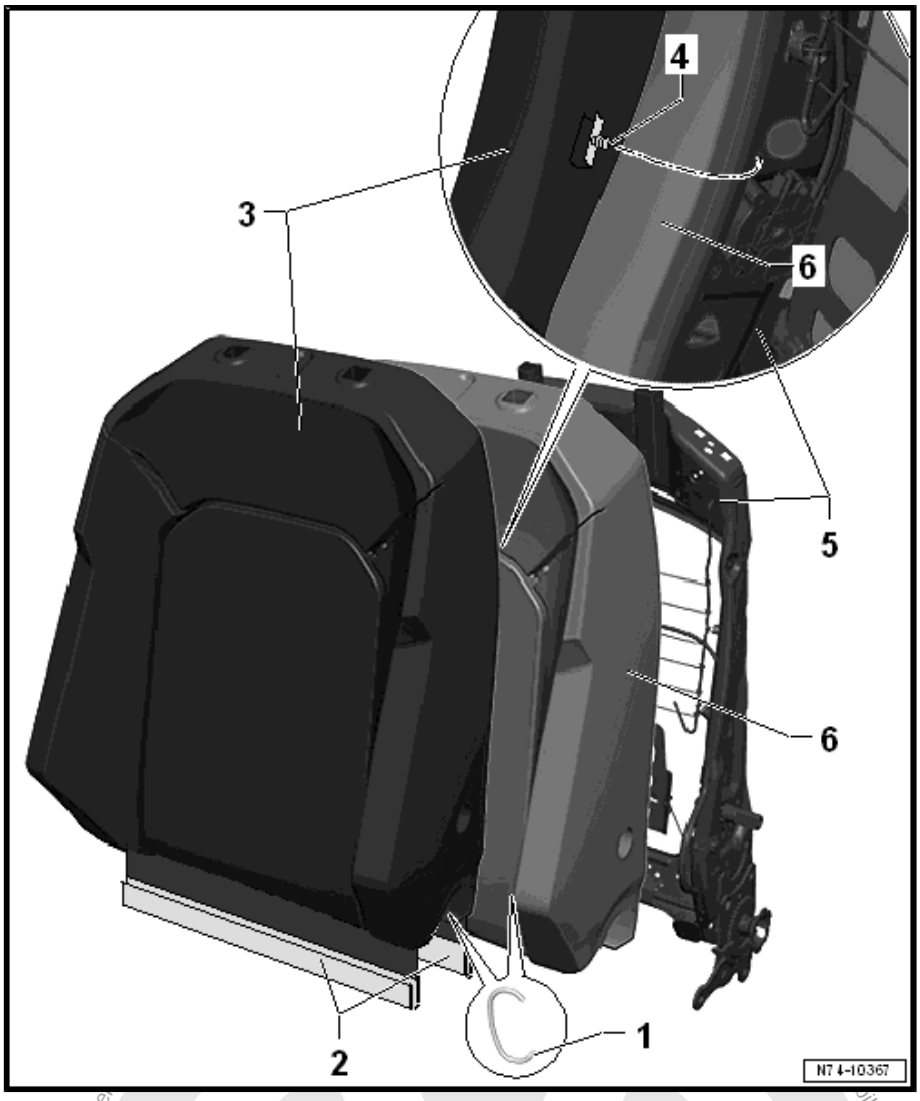
- ❑ Sewn to seat cover
- ❑ For attaching seat cover to upper frame of seat pan
- ❑ Ensure it is properly seated in upper frame of seat pan.

7 - Seat padding

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with seat padding ⇒ page 345
- ❑ Separating seat cover from seat padding ⇒ page 352

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability w

1.2 Assembly overview - cover and padding for backrest



1 - Upholstery clip

- For attaching backrest cover to backrest cushion
- Renew after removal
- When installing, fit in same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- .

2 - Fastening strip

- Sewn to backrest cover; ensure proper seating
- Seats with a load-through hatch have a zip fastener instead of the fastening strip; “zip closer”, allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Backrest cover

- Different equipment versions.
- Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 348
- Separating backrest cover from backrest padding ⇒ page 355
- After installation, check that there are no creases in seat.

4 - Clip

- For attaching backrest cover on rear backrest frame.
- Left and right

5 - Backrest frame

6 - Backrest padding

- Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 348
- Separating backrest cover from backrest padding ⇒ page 355

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1.3 Assembly overview - seat heating element

1 - Seat padding

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

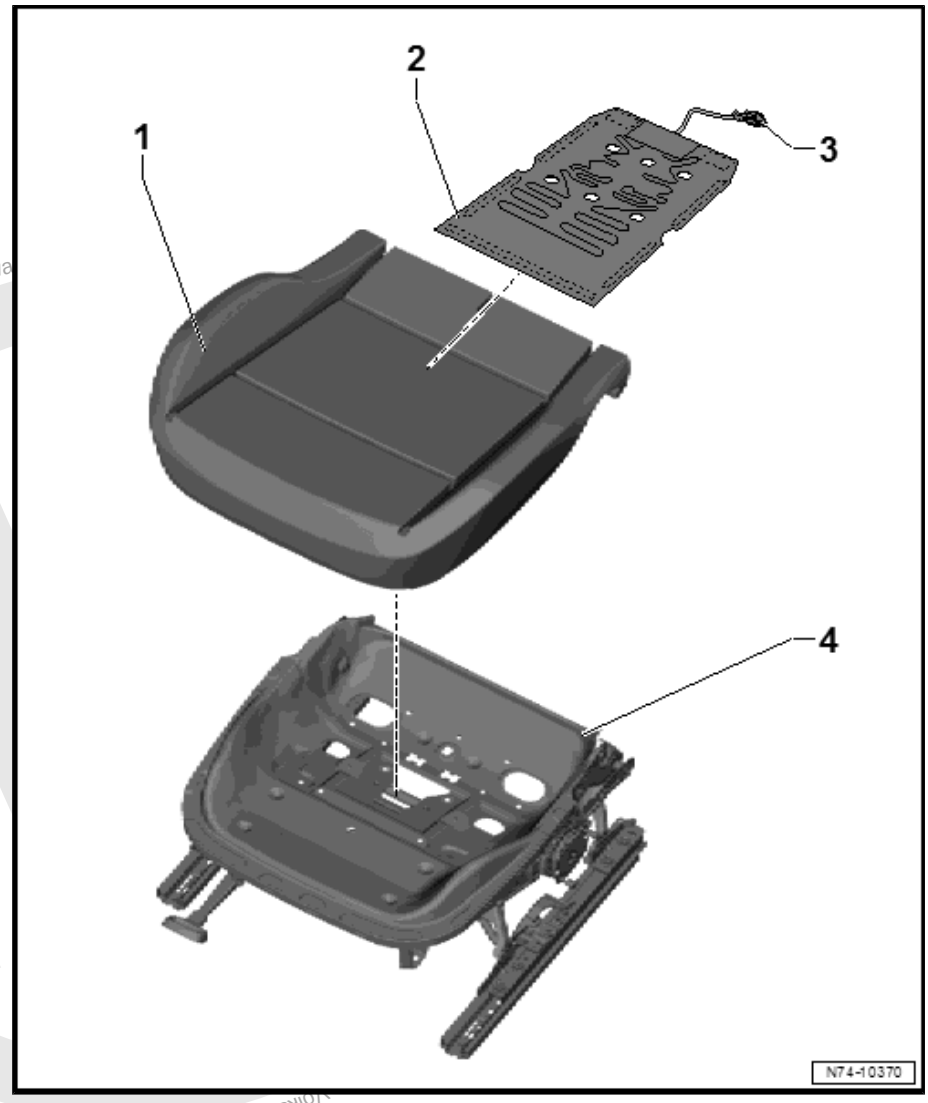
2 - Heater element

- ❑ Driver seat: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z6- .
- ❑ Front passenger seat: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8- .
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Renew after removal ⇒ page 359

3 - Electrical connector

4 - Seat frame

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

1.4 Assembly overview - backrest heater element

1 - Backrest frame

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 306

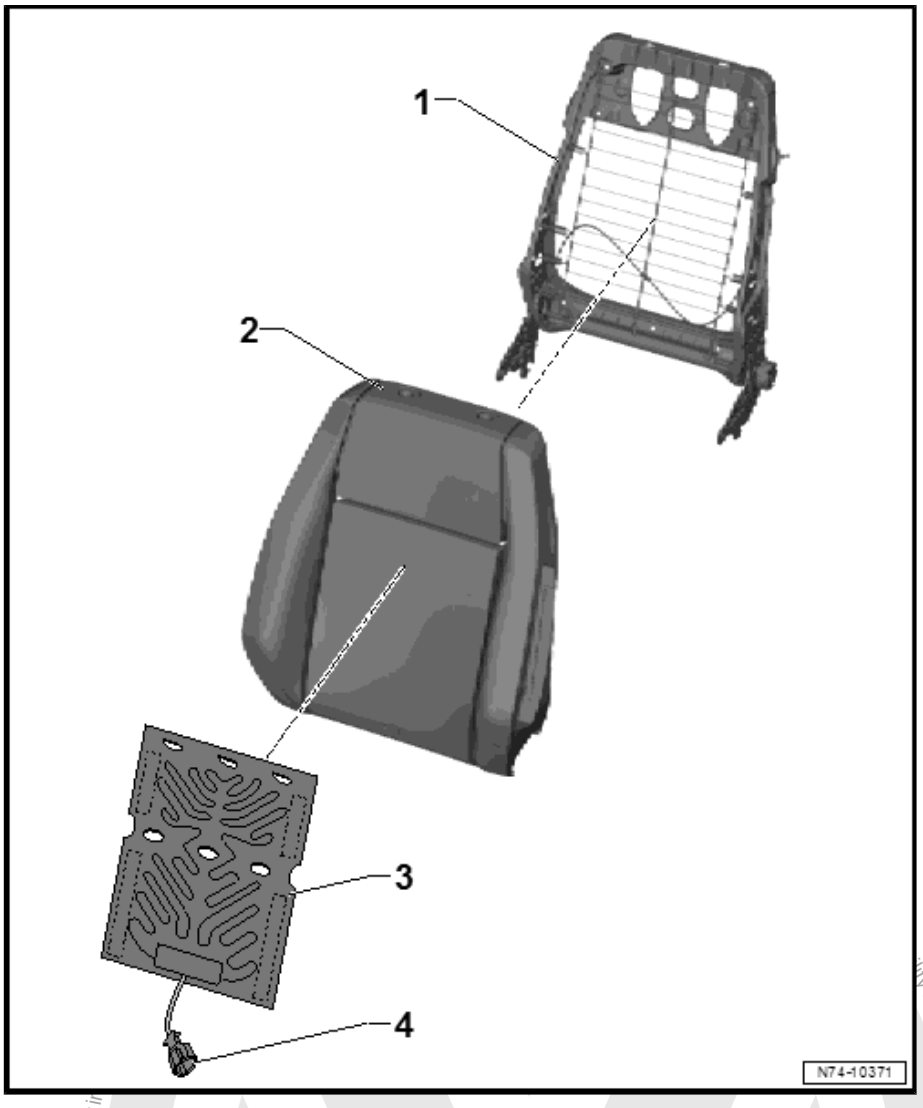
2 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA)
- ❑ Removing and installing

3 - Heater element

- ❑ Driver seat: heated backrest for driver seat - Z7- .
- ❑ Front passenger seat: heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9- .
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 373

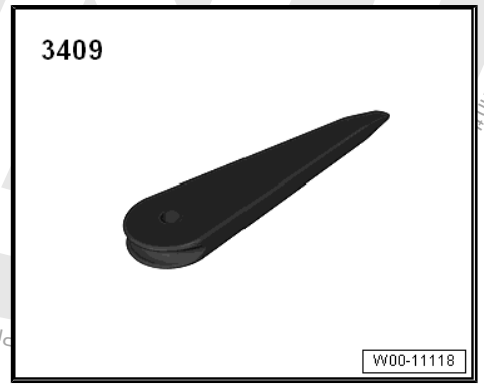
4 - Wire



1.5 Removing and installing cover and padding for seat pan

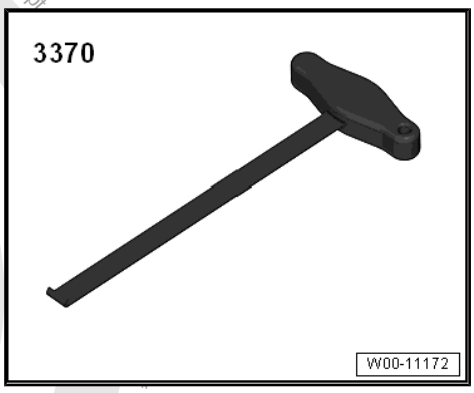
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in ... with respect to the correctness of information in ...

- Front end hook - 3370-



Note

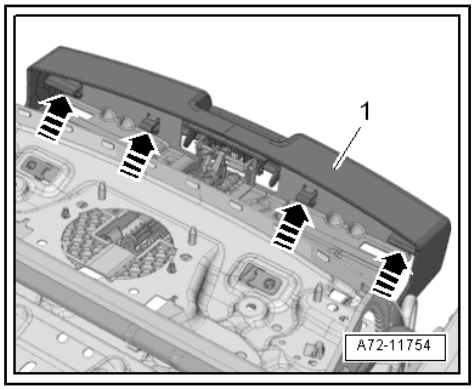
Removal and installation is described for the left seat. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation of right seat components as appropriate.

Removing

- Remove front seat ⇒ page 275 .
- Secure seat on seat repair stand ⇒ page 254 .
- Remove seat trim on tunnel side ⇒ page 285 .
- Remove backrest adjustment ⇒ page 305 .
- Remove handle for seat height adjustment ⇒ page 284 .
- Remove seat trim on sill side ⇒ page 286 .
- Remove bracket for seat trim on sill side ⇒ page 291 .
- Remove backrest ⇒ page 306 .
- If fitted, remove storage compartment ⇒ page 310 .
- Release electrical connector and pull off.
- Lay wiring harnesses to one side.

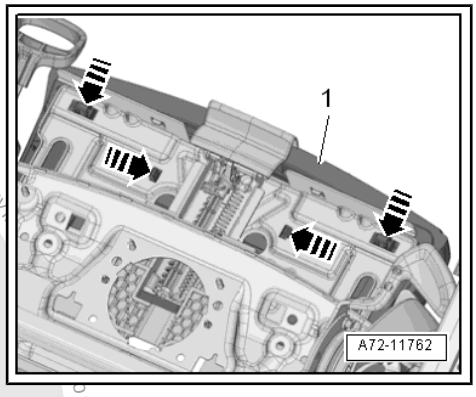
Vehicles with seat depth adjustment unit

- Set seat depth adjustment as far forwards as possible.
- Release locking lugs -arrows- on trim -1- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Remove trim from seat depth adjustment.

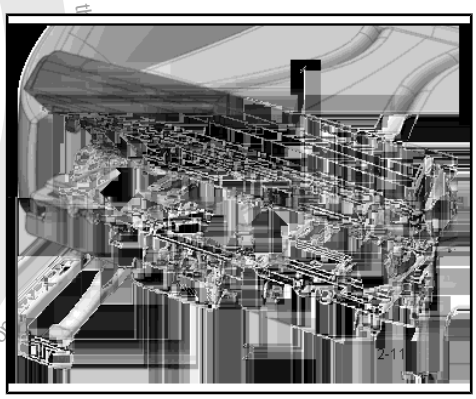


Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Release locking lugs -arrows- on carrier from seat depth adjustment using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Pull off carrier -1- with seat padding and seat cover for seat depth adjustment upwards and towards front.



– Detach tabs -arrows- from seat depth adjustment -2-.
– Fold back carrier with seat padding and seat cover upwards.
– To do this, pull off carrier -1- with seat padding and seat cover for seat depth adjustment upwards and simultaneously towards front.

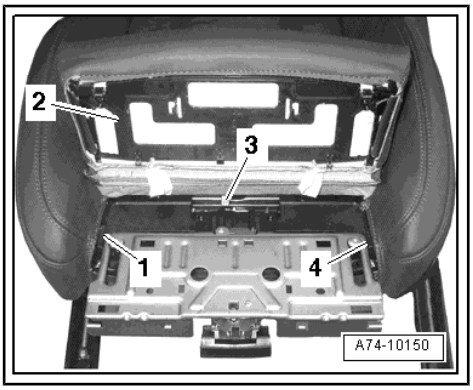


Caution

Risk of damage to locking lugs.

- *Proceed with great care when unclipping and clipping in.*

– Place carrier -2- with seat padding and seat cover for seat depth adjustment onto front seat.



Note

For reasons of clarity, the lower seat pan frame is not shown.

– Detach seat cover retaining strips -1- and -4-.
– Remove fastening strip -3- of seat cover from seat depth adjustment.
– To do this, pull fastening strip towards front.

Continued for all vehicles

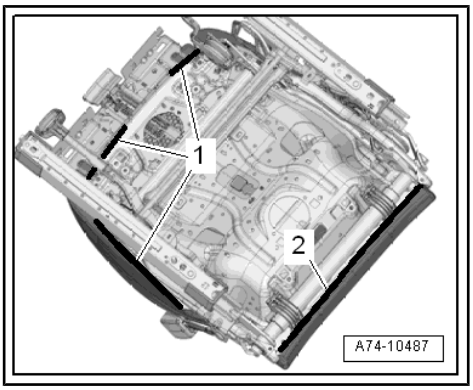
– Detach fastening strips -1- and -2- using front end hook - 3370- .
– Remove padding and cover from seat pan -2-.
– Separate cover from padding ⇒ page 352 .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Torque settings

- ⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 261



Protected by VW-Audi AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.

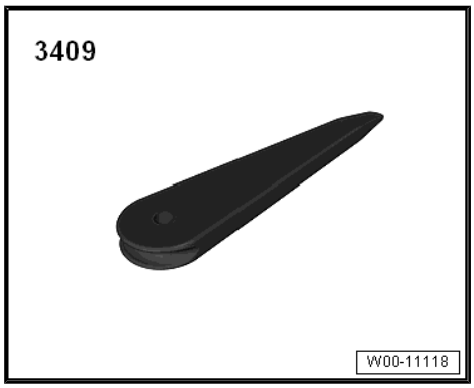
1.6 Removing and installing backrest cover and backrest padding

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left seat. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation of right seat components as appropriate.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

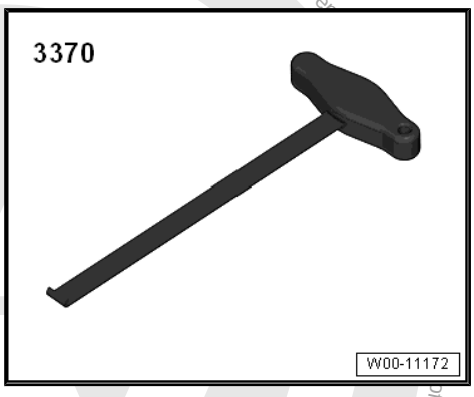
- Removal wedge - 3409-



- Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



- Front end hook - 3370-



- “Zip closer”; allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

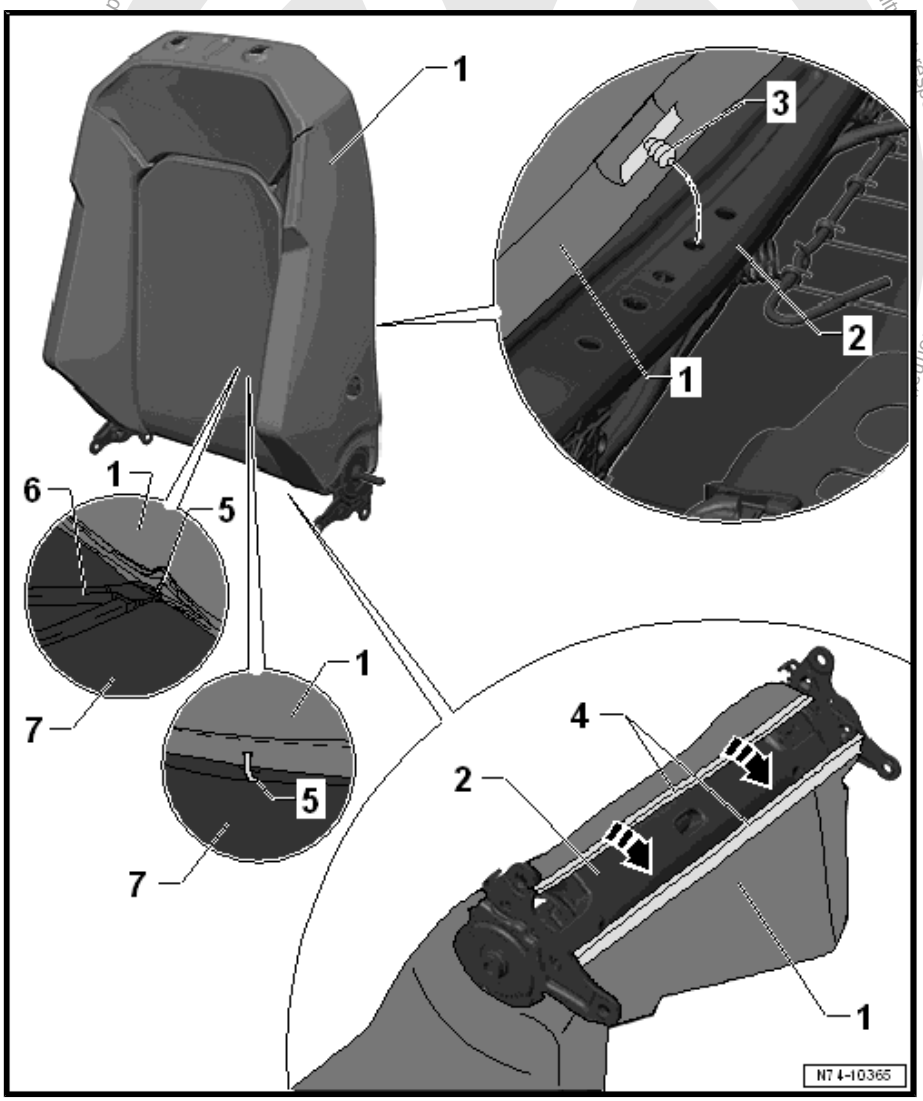
Removing, backrest cover made of fabric

Note

On vehicles with fabric covers, the front seat does not need to be removed.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volk
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
of information in this document.

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 308 .
– If fitted, remove lumbar support adjusting lever ⇒ page 303 .



Driver seat and front passenger seat with backrest which folds down completely

– Open beading strip -4- using front-end hook - 3370- .

Front passenger seat with backrest which folds down completely

A zip fastener is installed instead of the beading strip -4-.

– Open zip fastener with “zip closer”; allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Continuation for all seats

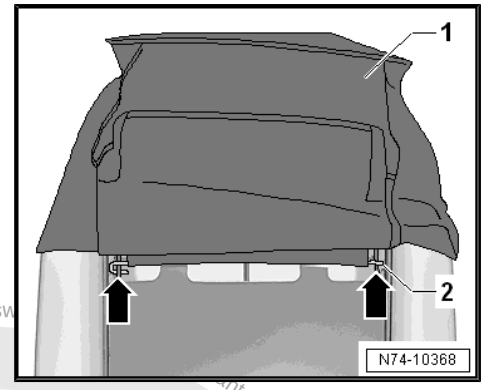
– Roll backrest cover -1- upwards at front and rear.
– Pull backrest cover -1- upwards in order to gain access to the upholstery clips -5- on left and right.
– Open upholstery clips -5- using pliers -6-.
– Pull backrest cover -1- on padding -7- upwards.
– Pull backrest cover -1- further upwards in order to gain access to the upholstery clips -5-.

– Detach clip -3- from backrest frame -2- on both sides at the rear.
– Use removal wedge - 3409- for this.
– Open upholstery clips -5- on backside.
– Pull backrest cover -1- further upwards in order to gain access to the upholstery clips -5-.

Note

The uppermost retaining clips need not be removed.

– Pull backrest cover on backside upwards up to cross bar -2-.
– Detach cross bar on left and right from seat frame -arrows-.
– On heated front seats, disconnect and guide out wiring harness below seat frame.
– Thread out backrest cover and backrest padding on head restraint locking mechanism.
– Remove backrest cover and backrest padding from backrest.



Installing, backrest cover made of fabric

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– If necessary, install backrest heating element ⇒ page 360 .
– Fit backrest cover on backrest padding ⇒ page 355 .

Removing, backrest cover made of leather or having leather elements

WARNING

Observe general safety regulations when working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components).

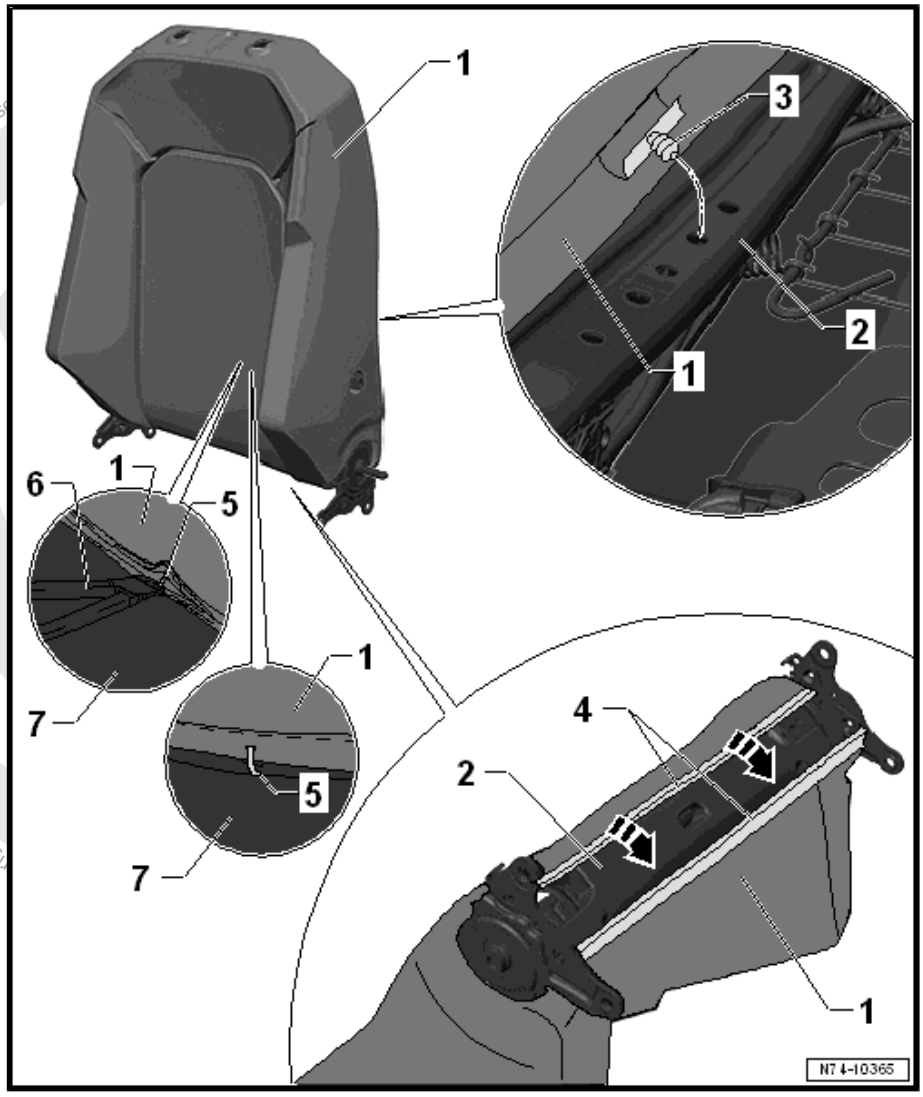
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 275 .

Note

If the front passenger seat has a backrest which folds down completely, the removal procedure described below does not need to be carried out.

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 306 .
– If fitted, remove mounting for Rear Seat Entertainment ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Rear Seat Entertainment System (RSE) .
– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 308 .
– If fitted, remove lumbar support adjusting lever ⇒ page 303 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Driver seat and front passenger seat with backrest which folds down completely

– Open beading strip -4- using front-end hook - 3370- .

Front passenger seat with backrest which folds down completely

A zip fastener is installed instead of the beading strip -4-.

– Open zip fastener with “zip closer”; allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Continuation for all seats

– Roll backrest cover -1- upwards at front and rear.

– Pull backrest cover -1- upwards in order to gain access to the upholstery clips -5- on left and right.

– Open upholstery clips -5- using pliers -6-.

– Pull backrest cover -1- on padding -7- upwards.

– Pull backrest cover -1- further upwards in order to gain access to the upholstery clips -5-.

– Detach clip -3- from backrest frame -2- on both sides at the rear.

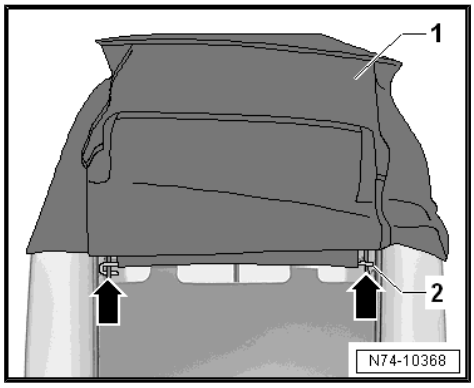
– Use removal wedge - 3409- for this.

– Open upholstery clips -5- on backside.
– Pull backrest cover -1- further upwards in order to gain access to the upholstery clips -5-.

Note

The uppermost retaining clips need not be removed.

– Pull backrest cover on backside upwards up to cross bar -2-.
– Detach cross bar on left and right from seat frame -arrows-.
– Thread out backrest cover and backrest padding on head restraint locking mechanism.
– Remove backrest cover and backrest padding from backrest.
– Thread out wiring harness while doing so.



Installing, backrest cover made of leather or having leather elements

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– If necessary, install backrest heating element ⇒ page 360 .
– Fit backrest cover on backrest padding ⇒ page 355 .

Torque settings

- ⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - cover and padding for backrest”, page 343
- ⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 261
- ⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - front backrest”, page 265

1.7 Separating cover and padding on seat pan

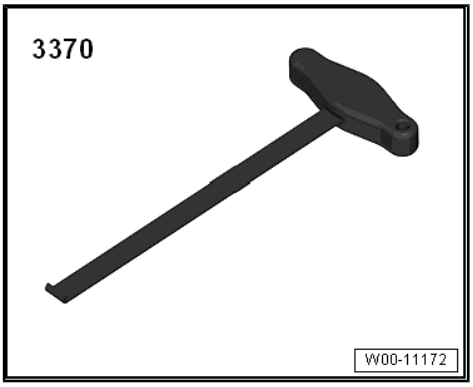
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

♦ Front end hook - 3370-



Removing

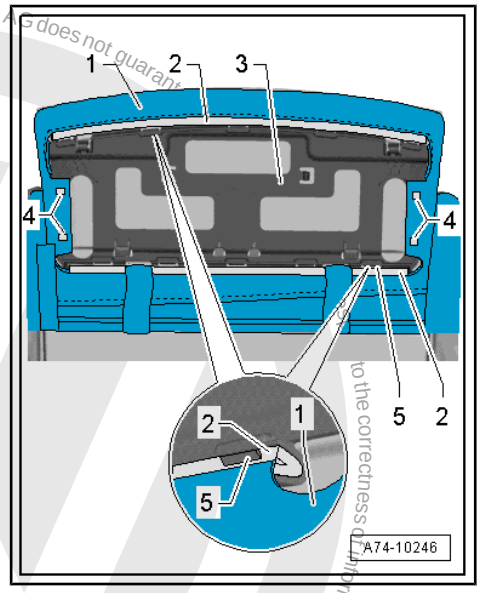
– Remove cover and padding ⇒ page 345 .

Vehicles with seat depth adjustment unit

– Unclip fastening strips -2- from locking lugs -5-.

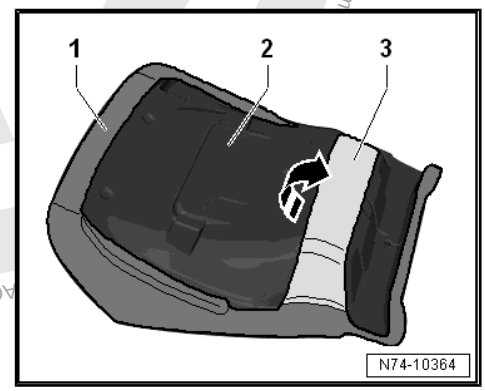
– Detach seat cover from tabs -4- on both sides using front-end hook - 3370- .

– Remove carrier -3- with seat padding and seat depth adjustment from seat cover -1-.



Continued for all vehicles

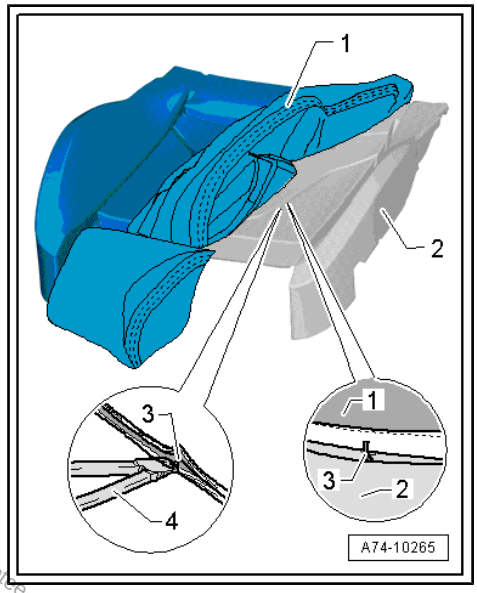
– Pull retaining tab -3- of seat cover -1- in -direction of arrow- off seat padding -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Pull seat cover -1- off seat padding -2-.

– Cut through upholstery clips -3- using pliers -4-.

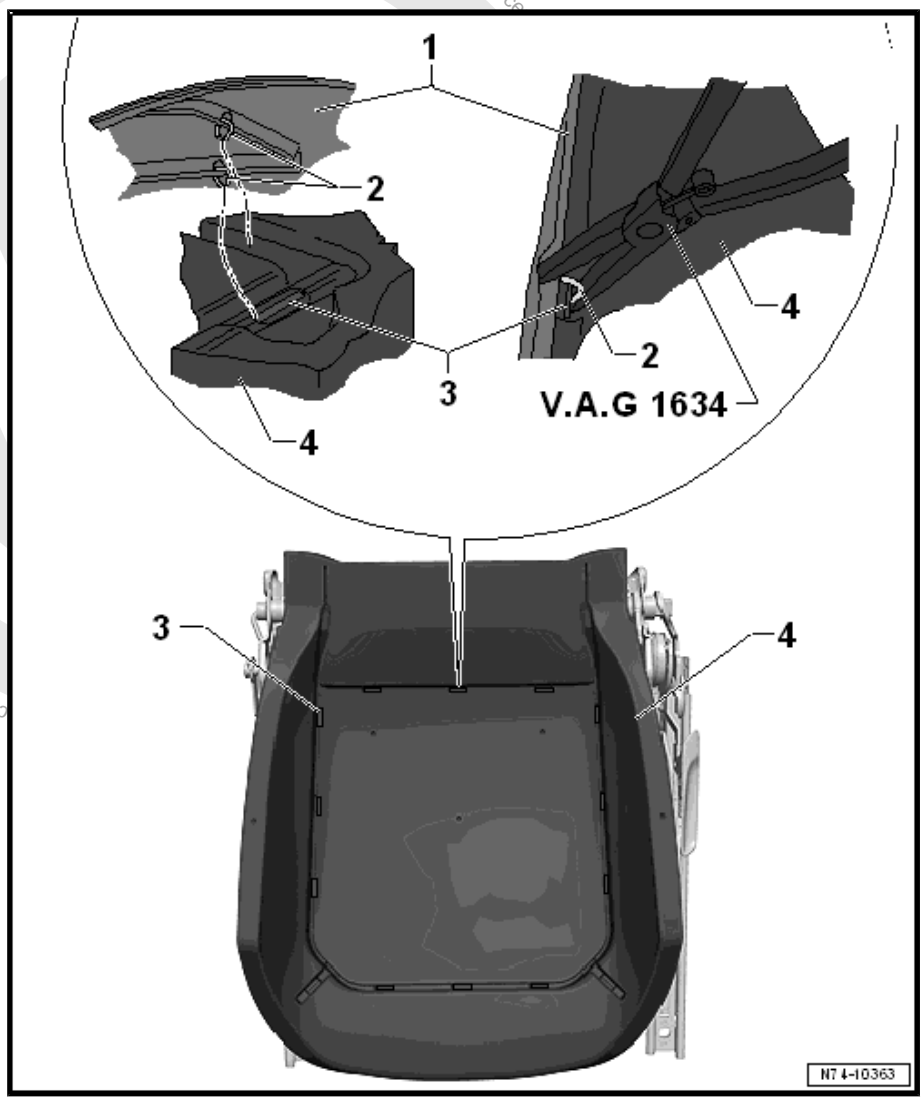


Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Renew all opened retaining clips ⇒ Item 1 (page 343) and fit them in the same positions.

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or acce



– Pull seat cover -1- over padding -4-.

– Secure seat cover -1- with upholstery clips -2- in mountings -3-.
– Use upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- for this.
– Ensure that seat cover -1- is free of creases.

Torque settings

- ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - cover and padding for seat pan”, page 340
- ⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - front backrest”, page 265
- ⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 261

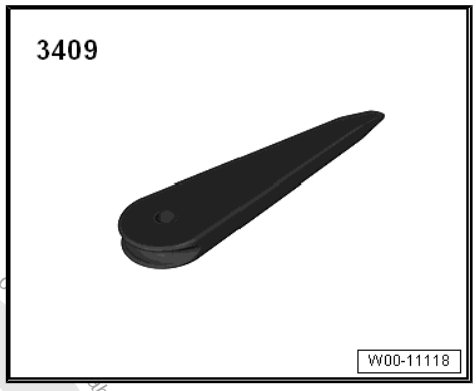
1.8 Separating cover and padding on backrest

Note

Removal and installation is described for the left seat. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation of right seat components as appropriate, unless the front passenger seat backrest can be folded downwards completely.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-

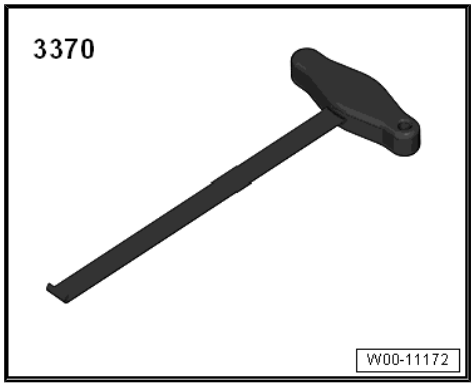


- Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

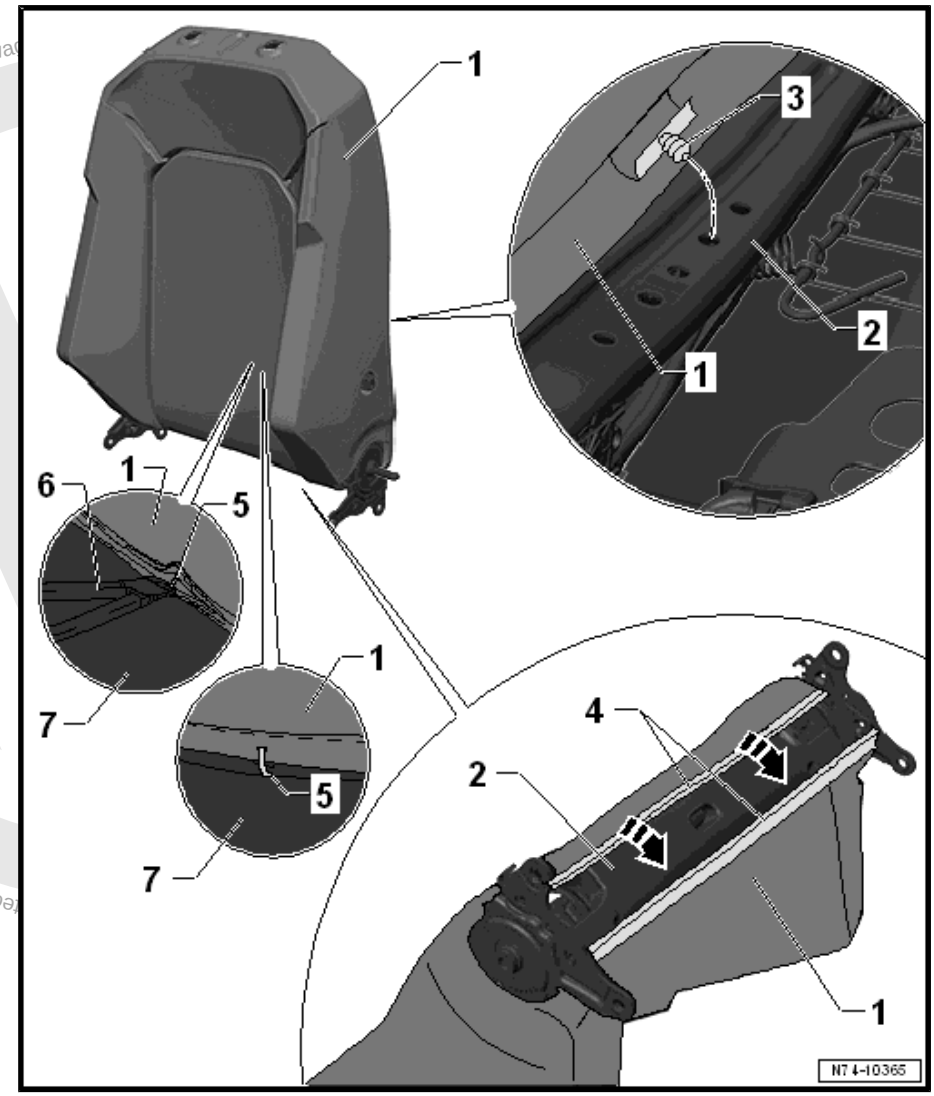
♦ Front end hook - 3370-



Removing

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 308 .

– Remove lumbar support adjusting lever ⇒ page 303 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswa

– Release locking mechanism of channel -4- using front-end hook - 3370- .

– Roll backrest cover -1- upwards at front and rear.

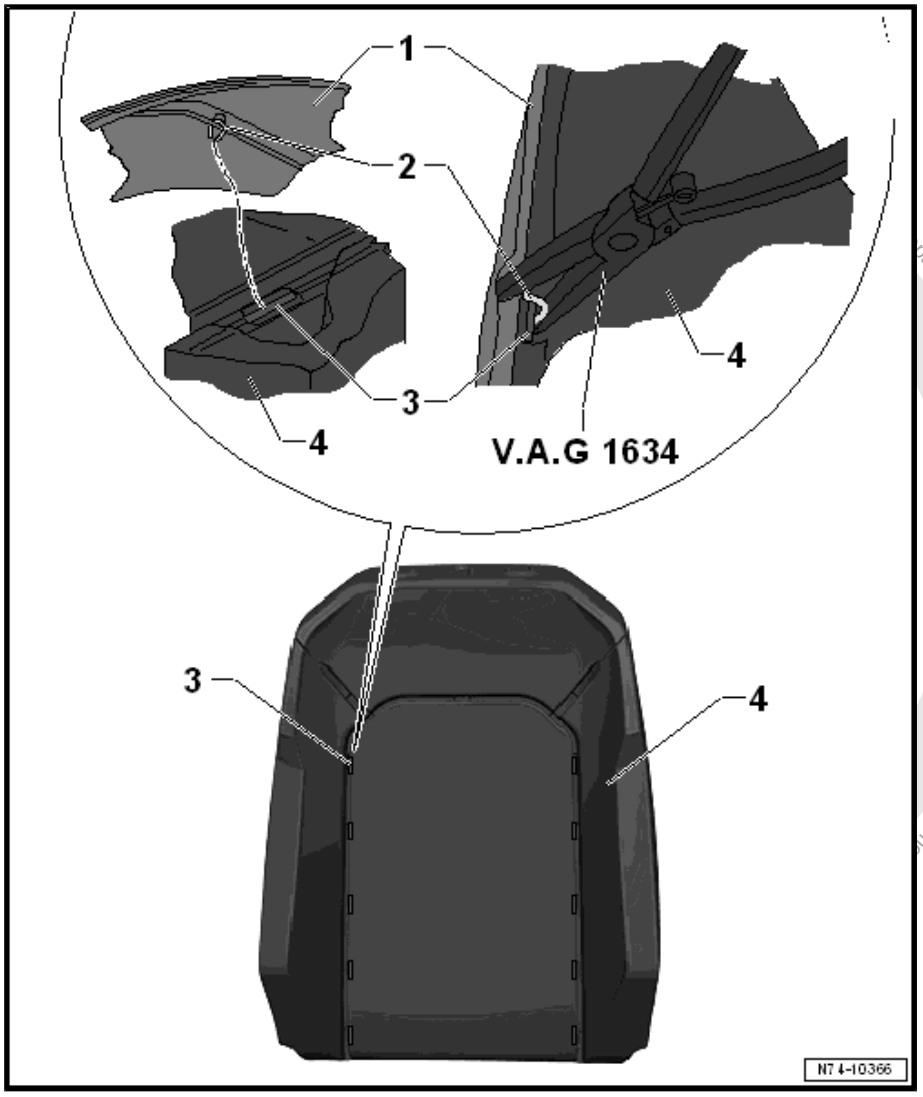
– Pull backrest cover -1- upwards in order to gain access to the upholstery clips -5- on left and right.
– Open upholstery clips -5- using pliers -6-.
– Pull backrest cover -1- on padding -7- upwards.
– Pull backrest cover -1- further upwards in order to gain access to the upholstery clips -5-.
– Detach clip -3- from backrest frame -2- on both sides at the rear.
– Use removal wedge - 3409- for this.
– Open upholstery clips -5- on backside.
– Pull backrest cover -1- further upwards in order to gain access to the remaining upholstery clips -5-.
– Thread out backrest cover on head restraint locking mechanism.
– Remove backrest cover from backrest padding.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

• Renew all opened retaining clips ⇒ Item 1 (page 343) and fit them in the same positions.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Pull backrest cover -1- over padding -4-.
– Thread in backrest cover -1- on head restraint guide.
– Secure backrest cover -1- with upholstery clips -2- in mountings -3-.
– Use upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- for this.
– Ensure that backrest cover -1- is free of creases.

Torque settings

- ⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - cover and padding for backrest”, page 343
- ⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - front backrest”, page 265
- ⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 261

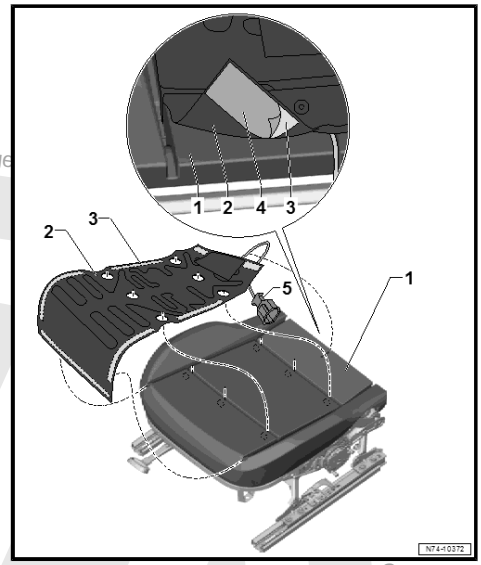
ot any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this docum

1.9 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8-

Removing

– Separate seat cover from seat padding ⇒ page 352 .

– Cut through wire -5- immediately at old heater element -2-.



Note

The old seat heating elements remain fitted on the seat padding -1- and the new heating elements are bonded in onto the old ones.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Thread electrical wire -5- through cable duct.

– Align new heater element -2- on seat padding -1-. Do not pull off the backing film when doing this.

– Pull off backing film -4- from adhesive tape -3- in succession. Ensure that heater element is not damaged.

– Bond in new heating elements so that they coincide with the old ones and are free of creases.

– Place connections of the individual heating elements on bottom of recesses.

Torque settings

- ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - cover and padding for seat pan”, page 340
- ⇒ “1.3 Assembly overview - seat heating element”, page 344
- ⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - front backrest”, page 265
- ⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 261

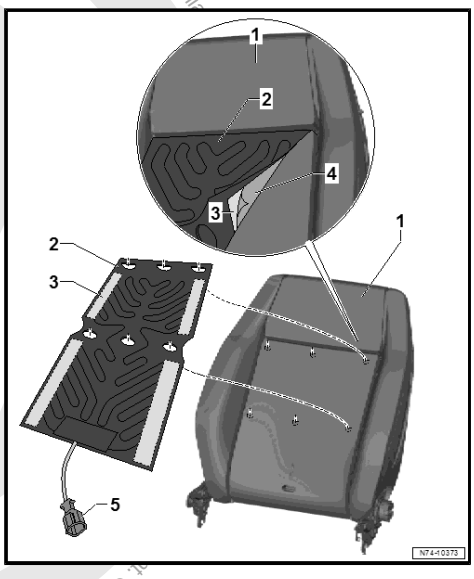
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1.10 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9-

Removing

– Separate backrest cover from backrest padding ⇒ page 355 .

– Cut through wire -5- immediately at old heater element -2-.



Note

The old seat heating elements remain fitted on the seat padding -1- and the new heating elements are bonded in onto the old ones.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Thread wire -3- through cable guide.

– Align heating element -2- on padding -1-. Do not pull off backing film when doing this.

– Pull protective films -4- one after other off heater elements. Make sure not to damage heater elements -2-.

– Bond in new heating elements so that they coincide with the old ones and are free of creases.

– Place connections of the individual heating elements on bottom of recesses.

Torque settings

- ⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - cover and padding for backrest”, page 343
- ⇒ “1.3 Assembly overview - seat heating element”, page 344
- ⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - front backrest”, page 265
- ⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 261

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2 Rear seat covers and padding

⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - cover and padding for bench seat”, page 361

⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - rear seat backrest cover and padding”, page 363

⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - seat heating element”, page 364

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing cover and padding for bench seat/ individual seats”, page 364

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing rear seat backrest cover and padding”, page 366

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing cover and padding of load-through hatch”, page 368

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing intermediate padding”, page 369

⇒ “2.8 Separating cover and padding for rear bench seat”, page 370

⇒ “2.9 Separating cover and padding for rear seat backrest”, page 371

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing seat heating element”, page 372

⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing backrest heating element”, page 373

2.1 Assembly overview - cover and padding for bench seat

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1 - Seat cover

- ❑ Different equipment versions.
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Separating seat cover from seat padding ⇒ page 370
- ❑ After installation, check that there are no creases in seat.

2 - Upholstery clip

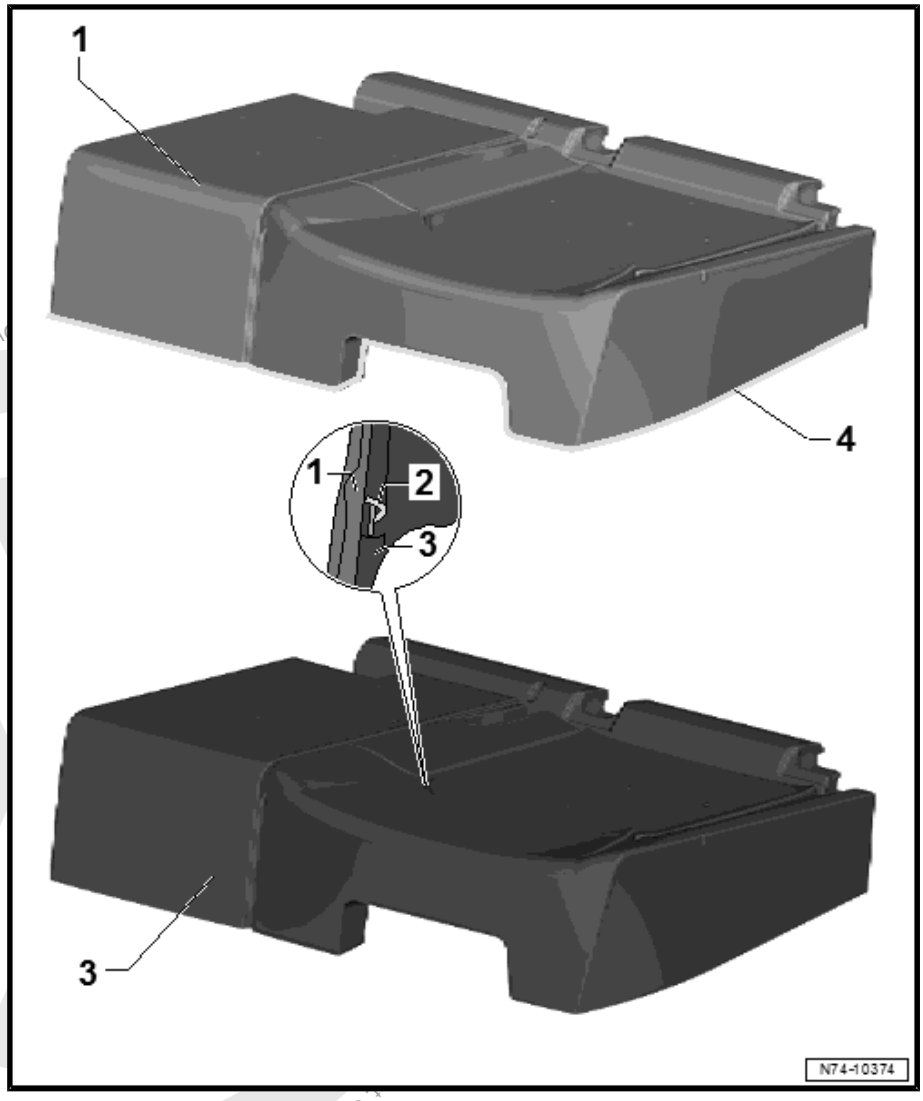
- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding
- ❑ Renew after removal
- ❑ When installing, fit in same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-

3 - Seat padding

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ With wire frame
- ❑ Separating seat cover from seat padding ⇒ page 370

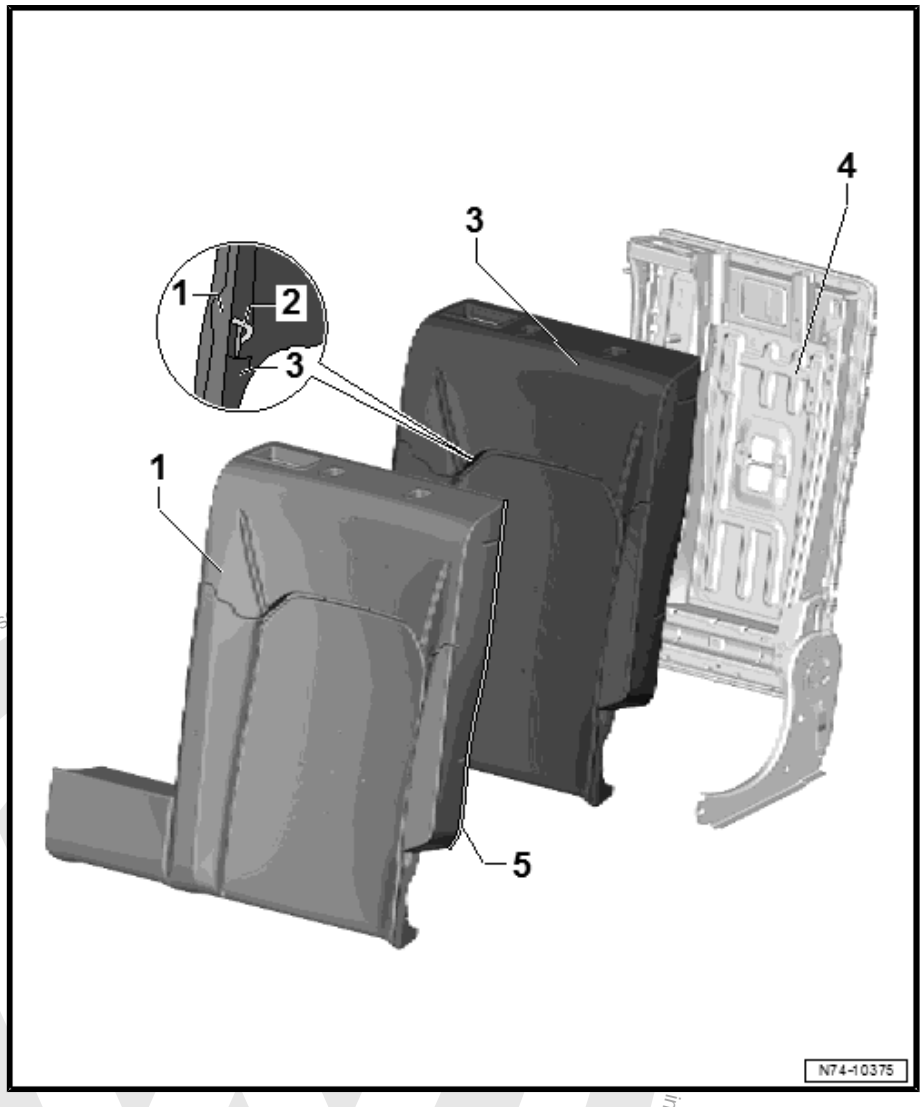
4 - Channel

- ❑ Sewn to seat cover
- ❑ For securing seat cover to wire frame in seat padding using clips



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.2 Assembly overview - rear seat backrest cover and padding



1 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Different equipment versions.
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 366
- ❑ Separating backrest cover from backrest padding ⇒ page 371
- ❑ After installation, check that there are no creases in seat.

2 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching backrest cover to backrest cushion
- ❑ Renew after removal
- ❑ When installing, fit in same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-

3 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 366
- ❑ Separating backrest cover from backrest padding ⇒ page 371

4 - Backrest frame

- ❑ If back panel trim is renewed, it may need to be adapted using engineering methods

5 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Sewn to backrest cover
- ❑ For attaching backrest cover to backrest frame.

Protected by copyright. Copyright for any communication or publication or dissemination to third parties, including companies not authorised by Volkswagen AG, must be permitted in writing by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document.

2.3 Assembly overview - seat heating element

1 - Wire

2 - Heater element for rear seat backrest

- ❑ Heated backrest for rear left seat - Z11-
- ❑ Heated backrest for rear right seat - Z13-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 373
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

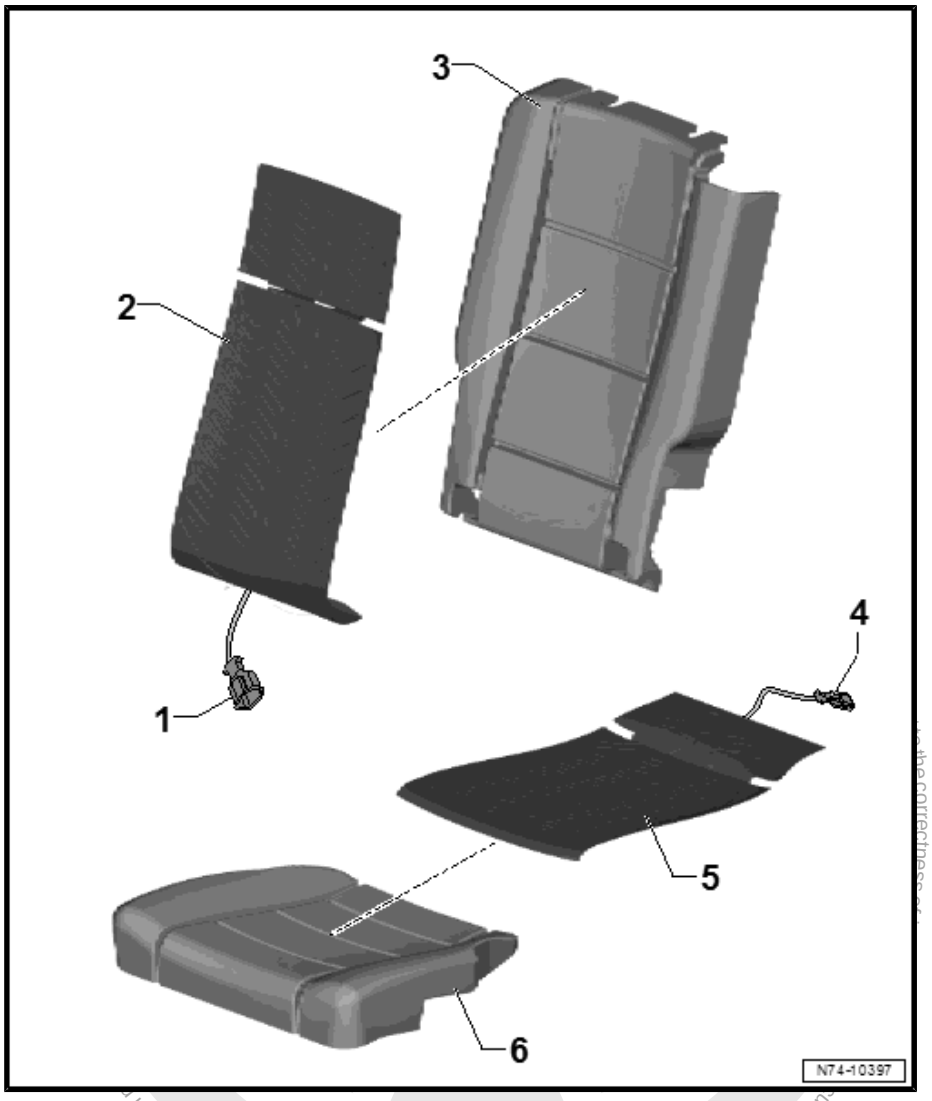
4 - Wire

5 - Heater element for bench seat

- ❑ Heated bench seat cushion for rear left seat - Z10-
- ❑ Heated bench seat cushion for rear right seat - Z12-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 372
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

6 - Seat padding

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



2.4 Removing and installing cover and padding for bench seat/individual seats

Note

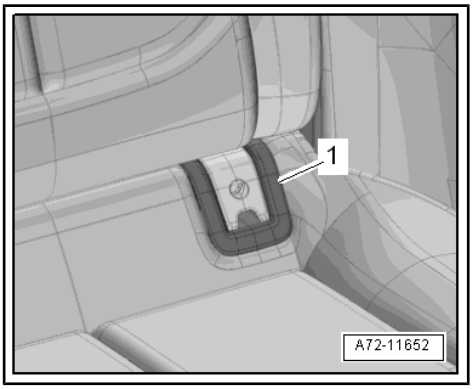
Removal and installation is described for the rear bench seat (2/3). Follow same instructions for the rear bench seat (1/3) as appropriate.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Move front seats as far forwards as possible.

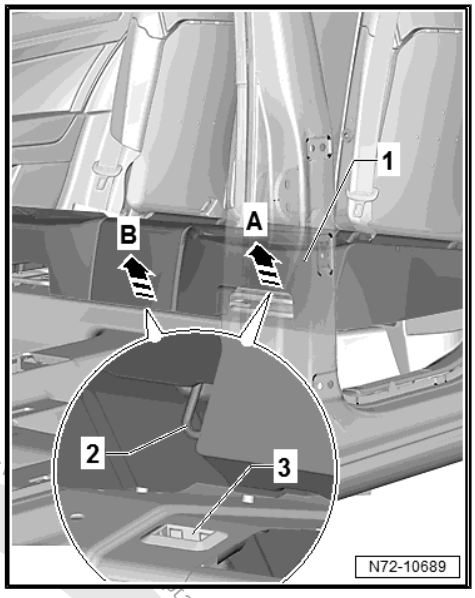
– Unclip guides -1- for ISOFIX child seat anchor (qty. 4) from anchors ⇒ page 96 .



– Grasp with both hands on one side under frame of rear bench seat (2/3).

– Using both hands, pull rear bench seat (2/3) -1- upwards with a firm jerk -arrow A-. This will disengage wire hook -2- from mounting grommet -3-.

– Repeat the procedure on the other side of the rear bench seat (2/3) -arrow B-.



– Slightly lift up rear bench seat (2/3) -1- at front, and pull wire frame -2- towards front out of rear seat frame -3- -arrows-.

– Remove rear bench seat from vehicle.

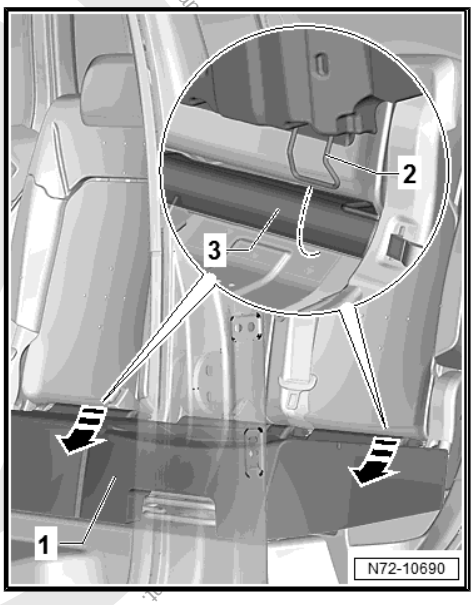
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Remove the used mounting grommets from rear seat frame.

– Check rear seat frame in area of mounting grommets for deformations.

– Repair any deformation on the frame using a plastic hammer.



Note

Slight remaining deformations are permissible.

– Push new mounting grommets in the rear seat frame until they engage audibly.

– Fit rear bench seat and press wire hooks firmly into mounting grommets.

– Ensure that the wire hooks are properly engaged in the mounting grommets.

Printed by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document. This document is protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document. This document is protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.5 Removing and installing rear seat backrest cover and padding

Removing

– Remove rear seats ⇒ page 325 .

– Remove rear head restraint ⇒ page 324 .

Vehicles with rear side airbag

Note

It is recommended to make sketches or take photographs of how the wires for the rear side airbag are routed. This guarantees that everything is re-installed in its original position.

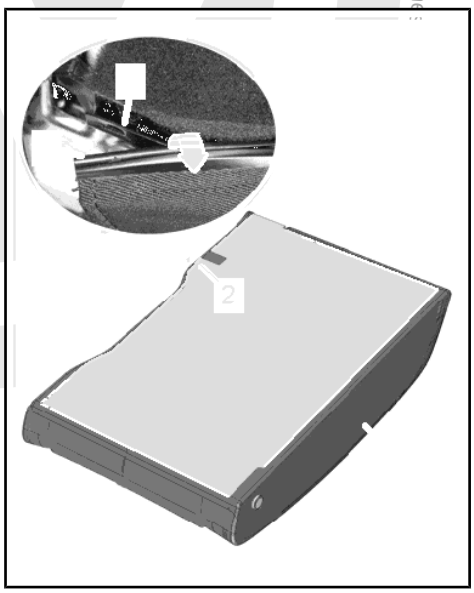
– Remove wire for remove side airbag from seat pan, and lay it to one side.

Rear right seat backrest (1/3)

– Loosen spreader rivet (qty. 2) for gap cover on backrest cover on underside of seat pan.

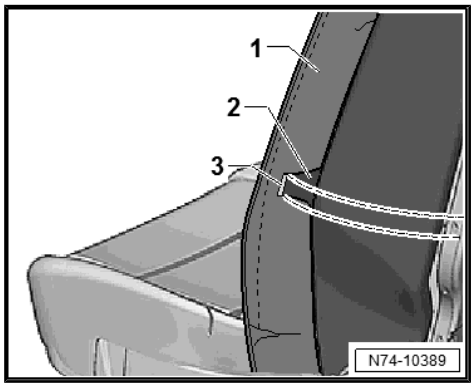
– On vehicles with rear side airbag, thread wire for side airbag out of gap cover on backrest cover.

– Using a screwdriver, lever fastening strip -2- for backrest cover all round off backrest frame -3- -arrow-.



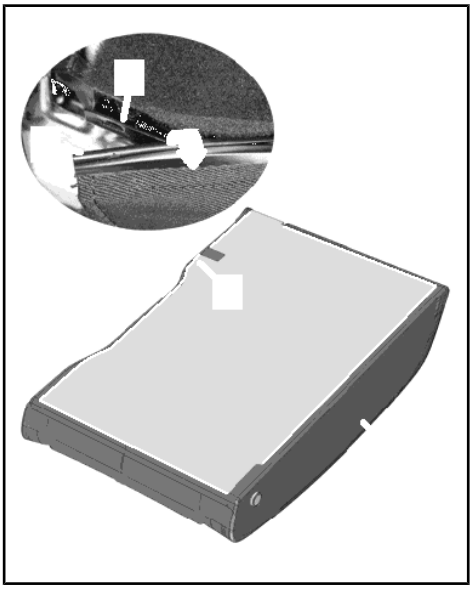
– On vehicles with rear side airbag, detach »airbag belt« -2- on backrest cover -1- from backrest frame.

– To do this, guide strip -3- out of backrest frame.



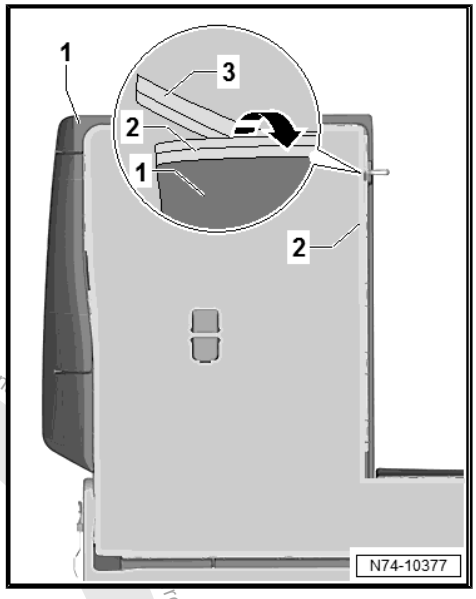
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness

– Thread out backrest cover -1- with backrest padding at head restraint guides.
– Remove backrest cover -1- with backrest padding from backrest frame, taking the wire for the rear side airbag into account.

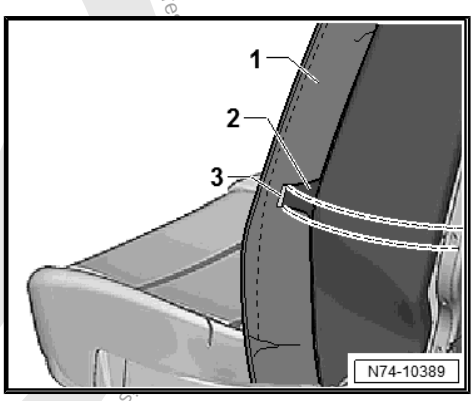


Rear left seat backrest (2/3)

– Remove trim for locking mechanism ⇒ page 329 .
– Remove rear centre belt guide ⇒ page 81 .
– Remove intermediate padding ⇒ page 369 .
– Loosen spreader rivets (qty. 4) for gap cover on backrest cover on underside of seat pan.
– On vehicles with rear side airbag, thread wire for side airbag out of gap cover on backrest cover.
– Using a screwdriver, lever fastening strip -2- for backrest cover all round off backrest frame -3- -arrow-.



– On vehicles with rear side airbag, detach »airbag belt« -2- on backrest cover -1- from backrest frame.
– To do this, guide strip -3- out of backrest frame.
– Thread out backrest cover -1- with backrest padding at head restraint guides.
– Remove backrest cover -1- with backrest padding from backrest frame, taking the wire for the rear side airbag into account.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

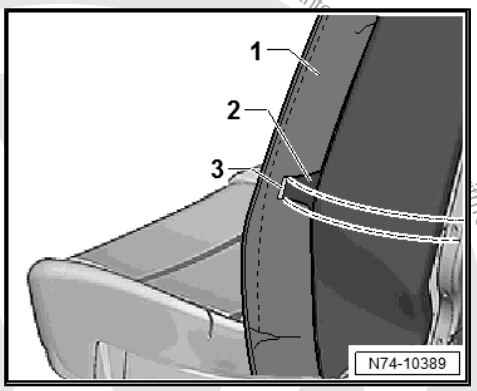
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– On vehicles with rear side airbag, secure »airbag belt« -2- on cover -1- to backrest frame.

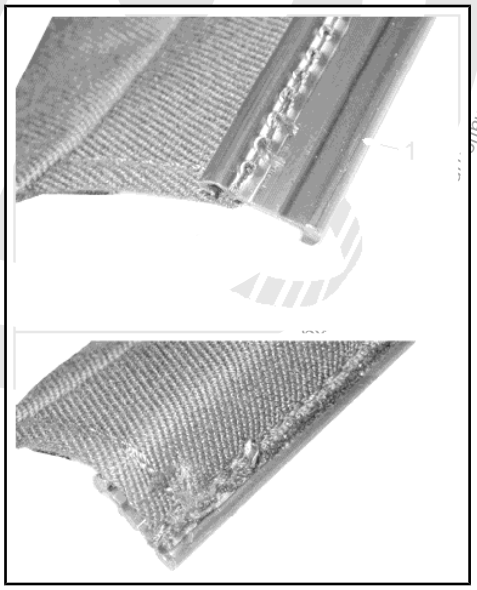
– To do this, guide strip -3- into slot in backrest frame.



– Fold clamping profile -1- 90° inwards -arrow A-.

– Attach fastening strips at side into grooves in backrest frame -arrow B-.

– Attach fastening strip in are of head restraints to backrest frame.



2.6 Removing and installing cover and padding of load-through hatch

Removing

– Remove through-loading aperture ⇒ page 331 .

– Remove rear head restraint ⇒ page 324 .

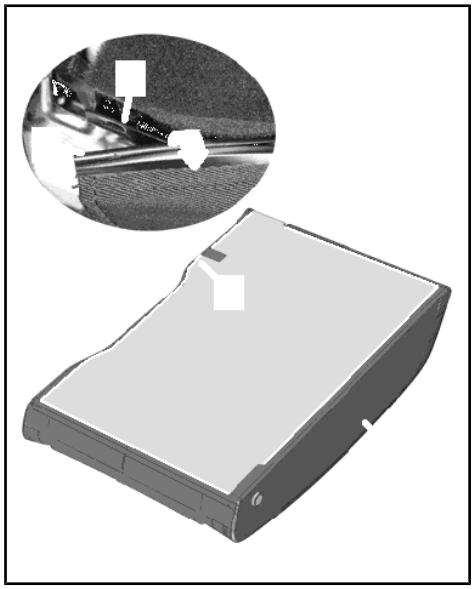
– Remove trim for locking mechanism ⇒ page 329 .

– On vehicles with centre armrest, remove centre armrest and centre armrest bracket from load-through hatch ⇒ page 332 .

– Using a screwdriver, lever fastening strip -2- for cover -1- all round off load-through hatch -3- -arrow-.

– Thread out cover -1- with padding at head restraint guide.

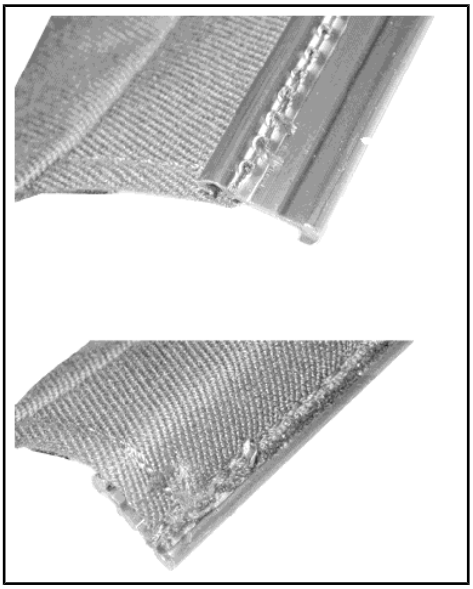
– Remove cover -1- with padding from frame of load-through hatch.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Fold fastening strip -1- 90° inwards -arrow A-.
– Attach fastening strips into grooves in backrest frame -arrow B-.

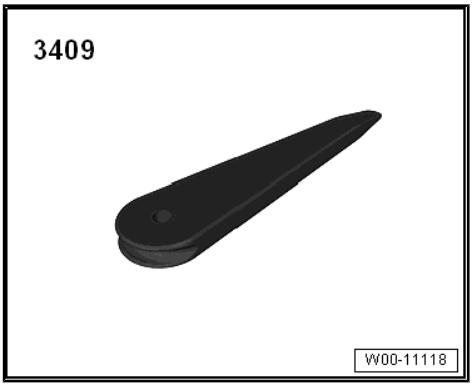


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

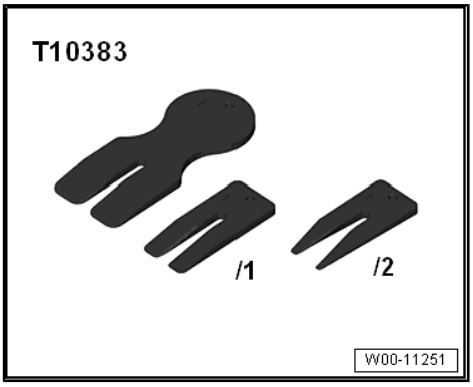
2.7 Removing and installing intermediate padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



- Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

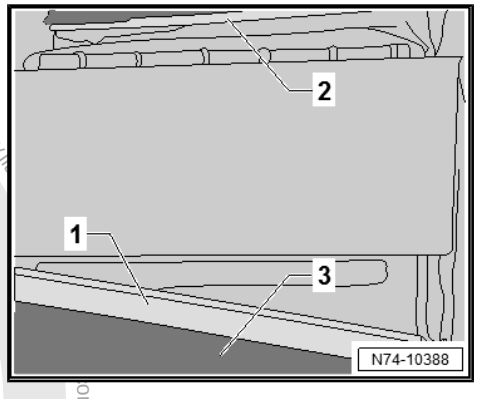
– Remove seat trim on tunnel side ⇒ page 334 .

– Remove through-loading aperture ⇒ page 331 .

– Detach fastening strips at top -2- and at bottom -1- from backrest frame.

– Release spreader rivets (qty. 2) of gap cover on seat frame and cover -3- for intermediate padding.

– Remove intermediate padding from cover.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.8 Separating cover and padding for rear bench seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

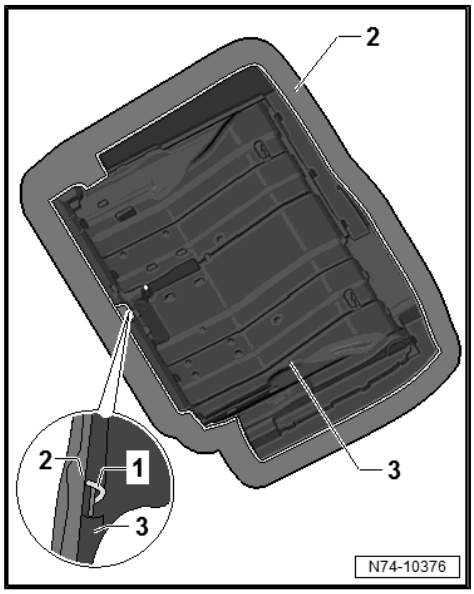
♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



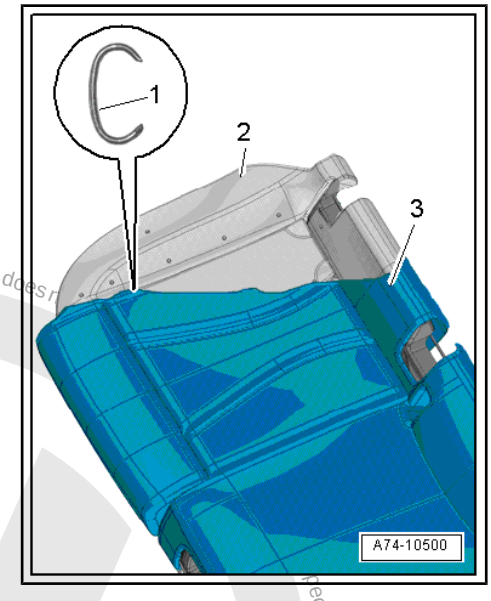
Removing

– Remove rear bench seat ⇒ page 364 .

– Using pliers, cut through all upholstery clips -1- on underside of bench seat. Fold back cover -2- at sides of padding -3-.



– Cut through any upholstery clips -1- in the padding channels.
– Detach seat cover -3- from seat padding -2-.



> **Caution**
>
> *Do not damage seat cover.*
>
> ♦ *Do not pull on seat cover. Otherwise the seat cover might be torn apart.*

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– After installation, check that there are no creases in the seat cover.

2.9 Separating cover and padding for rear seat backrest

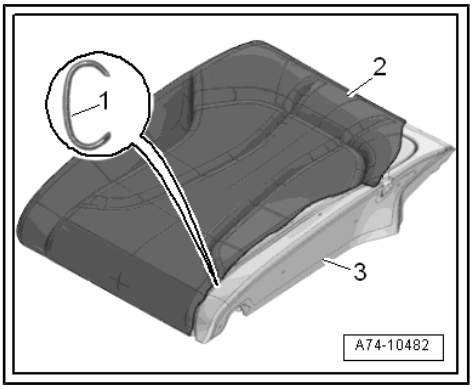
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Removing

– Remove backrest cover with backrest cushion from rear seat backrest ⇒ page 366 .
– Pull backrest cover -3- as far as possible off backrest padding -2-.
– Cut through upholstery clips -1- using pliers.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– After installation, check that there are no creases in the seat cover.

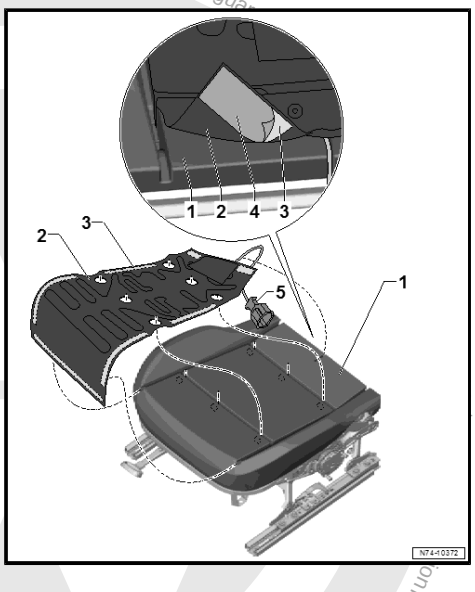
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness

2.10 Removing and installing seat heating element

Removing

– Separate seat cover from seat padding ⇒ page 370 .

– Cut through wire -5- immediately at old heater element -2-.



Note

The old seat heating elements remain fitted on the seat padding -1- and the new heating elements are bonded in onto the old ones.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Thread electrical wire -5- through cable duct.

– Align new heater element -2- on seat padding -1-. Do not pull off the backing film when doing this.

– Pull off backing film -4- from adhesive tape -3- in succession. Ensure that heater element is not damaged.

– Bond in new heating elements so that they coincide with the old ones and are free of creases.

– Place connections of the individual heating elements on bottom of recesses.

Torque settings

- ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - cover and padding for seat pan”, page 340
- ⇒ “1.3 Assembly overview - seat heating element”, page 344
- ⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - front backrest”, page 265
- ⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 261

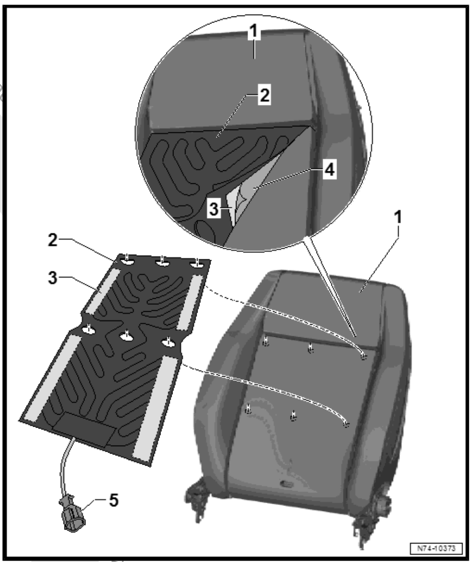
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.11 Removing and installing backrest heating element

Removing

– Separate backrest cover from backrest padding ⇒ page 355 .

– Cut through wire -5- immediately at old heater element -2-.



Note

The old seat heating elements remain fitted on the seat padding -1- and the new heating elements are bonded in onto the old ones.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

– Thread wire -3- through cable guide.

– Align heating element -2- on padding -1-. Do not pull off backing film when doing this.

– Pull protective films -4- one after other off heater elements. Make sure not to damage heater elements -2-.

– Bond in new heating elements so that they coincide with the old ones and are free of creases.

– Place connections of the individual heating elements on bottom of recesses.

Torque settings

♦ ⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - cover and padding for backrest”, page 343

♦ ⇒ “1.3 Assembly overview - seat heating element”, page 344

♦ ⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - front backrest”, page 265

♦ ⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 261

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.